

This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + Refrain from automated querying Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at http://books.google.com/



Über dieses Buch

Dies ist ein digitales Exemplar eines Buches, das seit Generationen in den Regalen der Bibliotheken aufbewahrt wurde, bevor es von Google im Rahmen eines Projekts, mit dem die Bücher dieser Welt online verfügbar gemacht werden sollen, sorgfältig gescannt wurde.

Das Buch hat das Urheberrecht überdauert und kann nun öffentlich zugänglich gemacht werden. Ein öffentlich zugängliches Buch ist ein Buch, das niemals Urheberrechten unterlag oder bei dem die Schutzfrist des Urheberrechts abgelaufen ist. Ob ein Buch öffentlich zugänglich ist, kann von Land zu Land unterschiedlich sein. Öffentlich zugängliche Bücher sind unser Tor zur Vergangenheit und stellen ein geschichtliches, kulturelles und wissenschaftliches Vermögen dar, das häufig nur schwierig zu entdecken ist.

Gebrauchsspuren, Anmerkungen und andere Randbemerkungen, die im Originalband enthalten sind, finden sich auch in dieser Datei – eine Erinnerung an die lange Reise, die das Buch vom Verleger zu einer Bibliothek und weiter zu Ihnen hinter sich gebracht hat.

Nutzungsrichtlinien

Google ist stolz, mit Bibliotheken in partnerschaftlicher Zusammenarbeit öffentlich zugängliches Material zu digitalisieren und einer breiten Masse zugänglich zu machen. Öffentlich zugängliche Bücher gehören der Öffentlichkeit, und wir sind nur ihre Hüter. Nichtsdestotrotz ist diese Arbeit kostspielig. Um diese Ressource weiterhin zur Verfügung stellen zu können, haben wir Schritte unternommen, um den Missbrauch durch kommerzielle Parteien zu verhindern. Dazu gehören technische Einschränkungen für automatisierte Abfragen.

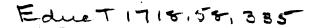
Wir bitten Sie um Einhaltung folgender Richtlinien:

- + *Nutzung der Dateien zu nichtkommerziellen Zwecken* Wir haben Google Buchsuche für Endanwender konzipiert und möchten, dass Sie diese Dateien nur für persönliche, nichtkommerzielle Zwecke verwenden.
- + *Keine automatisierten Abfragen* Senden Sie keine automatisierten Abfragen irgendwelcher Art an das Google-System. Wenn Sie Recherchen über maschinelle Übersetzung, optische Zeichenerkennung oder andere Bereiche durchführen, in denen der Zugang zu Text in großen Mengen nützlich ist, wenden Sie sich bitte an uns. Wir fördern die Nutzung des öffentlich zugänglichen Materials für diese Zwecke und können Ihnen unter Umständen helfen.
- + Beibehaltung von Google-Markenelementen Das "Wasserzeichen" von Google, das Sie in jeder Datei finden, ist wichtig zur Information über dieses Projekt und hilft den Anwendern weiteres Material über Google Buchsuche zu finden. Bitte entfernen Sie das Wasserzeichen nicht.
- + Bewegen Sie sich innerhalb der Legalität Unabhängig von Ihrem Verwendungszweck müssen Sie sich Ihrer Verantwortung bewusst sein, sicherzustellen, dass Ihre Nutzung legal ist. Gehen Sie nicht davon aus, dass ein Buch, das nach unserem Dafürhalten für Nutzer in den USA öffentlich zugänglich ist, auch für Nutzer in anderen Ländern öffentlich zugänglich ist. Ob ein Buch noch dem Urheberrecht unterliegt, ist von Land zu Land verschieden. Wir können keine Beratung leisten, ob eine bestimmte Nutzung eines bestimmten Buches gesetzlich zulässig ist. Gehen Sie nicht davon aus, dass das Erscheinen eines Buchs in Google Buchsuche bedeutet, dass es in jeder Form und überall auf der Welt verwendet werden kann. Eine Urheberrechtsverletzung kann schwerwiegende Folgen haben.

Über Google Buchsuche

Das Ziel von Google besteht darin, die weltweiten Informationen zu organisieren und allgemein nutzbar und zugänglich zu machen. Google Buchsuche hilft Lesern dabei, die Bücher dieser Welt zu entdecken, und unterstützt Autoren und Verleger dabei, neue Zielgruppen zu erreichen. Den gesamten Buchtext können Sie im Internet unter http://books.google.com/durchsuchen.





HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY



THE ESSEX INSTITUTE TEXT-BOOK COLLECTION

GIFT OF
GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON
OF NEW YORK

JANUARY 25, 1924

Stornet T.

Omanut Storm Me.

Practical and Complete

GERMAN GRAMMAR.

A. D.O. U. A. I., STRACHER OF GERMAN SER BORROW.

BOSTON:
PHILLIPS, SAMPSON, AND COMPANY,
18 WINTER STREET.
1858.

Edue T 1718,58,325



MARYARD COLLEGE LIBRARY

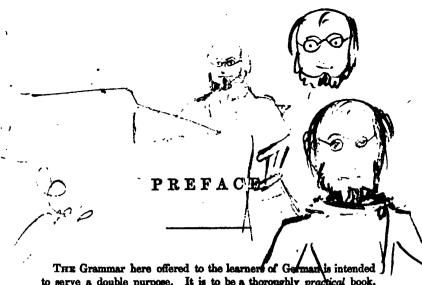
MEUHUL ARTHUS PLISPTON MANUARY 25, 1924

Entered according to Act of Congress in the year 1858, by

PHIELIPS, SAMPSON, AND COMPANY,
in the Clerk's same of the District Court of the District of Massachusetts.



CAMBRIDGE:



to serve a double purpose. It is to be a thoroughly practical book, leading the beginner in German, according to the newest and best method of acquiring the practical use of foreign languages, from the very commencement on to the perfect use of German in conversation. translation, and writing, either with or without the aid of a teacher; and it is to be a complete system of German grammar, according to the latest discoveries and views in grammatical science, --- complete at least as far as a correct and elegant use of German can be mastered by the aid of a grammar, - with a diligent regard to the German equivalents for English idioms.

There are a considerable number of German Grammars before the public; and among them are several that deserve no slight praise on account of the scholarship and practical utility they exhibit. We feel under obligation especially to mention the following:-1. Heilner's (The Grammar of the German Language, philosophically developed, London, 1841, new issue, 1851), a work full of independent and philosophically digested learning. 2. K. F. Becker's (published by his son, Mr. Bernh. Becker, in Frankfort-on-the-Main and London, 1841, second edition, 1845), - a work whose merits no one that is conversant with grammatical matters will doubt for a moment. 3. Aue's (Grammar of the German Language, London and Edinburgh, Chambers, 1853), a meritorious work, based entirely upon Becker's system, and more complete with regard to details and to Anglicisms and Germanisms even than Becker's. 4. Glaubenskiee's (Synthetic Grammar of the German Language, New York, Ivison and Phinney, 1857), a scientific abridgment of the principles of German grammar, devised to complete Woodbury's series of German textbooks. All these works, and many more of lesser note, follow the synthetic or scientific method of grammar, and are therefore, however great their merits in this respect may be, useful only to such pupils as already understand the elements of German, and those of grammar in general, from their previous acquaintance with and study of other foreign languages.

It is a merit of Woodbury in this country conclusively to have shown that the scientific or theoretical way of teaching a foreign language, when exclusively practised, is too tedious to attract the youthful mind, too slow of progress to reach its aim, and too much at variance with our improved modern system of instruction. youth must learn foreign languages, more or less, in the same natural way in which he acquires his own mother tongue. He must begin with hearing it spoken in simple, then in more difficult and compound sentences; he must learn to understand them by analyzing and recomposing them into other sentences and periods. The pupil must learn at the same time to understand the foreign language when spoken, and to speak it himself, to read and translate the foreign tongue fluently into his mother tongue, and to write it like his own. This was the aim of Woodbury. But his system is carried too far. There are too many practical lessons, and consequently too long a preparatory period is required for the pupil to learn to translate and read German books, to converse in the language, and to master its grammatical construction. Besides, the examples chosen to illustrate the rules are often tedious and meaningless, and the thinking or analyzing faculty of the human mind is too little called into activity.

Among those who know Mager's merits in relation to the theory of the true method of learning foreign languages, there can be no doubt that there is but one system possible,—the practico-theoretical system, as hinted at by Ollendorf, Ahn, and Woodbury, and as perfected by Mager, and even further simplified in the present work. The beginning is made with an eminently practical course; the pupil hears the foreign language spoken and sees it written in a series of sentences that form a methodical gradation from the simplest and easiest to the more difficult and compounded. It is of importance that this course should not be prolonged beyond twenty-four lessons, at least not with able pupils; and that the latter should find themselves competent, at



the end of this course, to translate a foreign book, and to understand little stories when told in the foreign language, and to repeat them in the same. This point once gained, everything is gained; the pupil feels already his rapid proficiency, and consequently a lively interest in exerting his own powers, and in studying the foreign language for himself. He can help himself along, even without a teacher, and he will progress much more rapidly than common pupils. He is now able to understand a scientific or merely theoretical grammar, and to study it with profit.

For this purpose it is indispensable that the first or practical course should be well elaborated, so as to comprise all the important forms and syntactical rules of the language, and to be in itself a complete Grammar with the omission of all cumbersome details, and that all these forms and rules should be embodied in short sentences, that may be committed to memory together with the correct pronunciation of the teacher. The pupil must be made to read and to translate the sentences of each lesson, beginning with the very first, the teacher confining himself to corrections; after translation comes Analysis, so that the pupil may point out the meaning of each word, as well as the grammatical form and rule embodied in it. When reading, translating, and analyzing has been repeated, if necessary even a second time, the pupil is prepared to compose new sentences from the elements of those given, the teacher confining himself to corrections and a few suggestions, or to furnishing the pupil with a small number of new words. that enable him to frame as many new sentences from the elements of those first given as possible. No new lesson should be commenced before the preceding one is fully mastered. Each following lesson should be calculated to repeat the elements of the previous ones as often as possible. If this method is consistently carried out, and if the teacher is never satisfied with a lesson imperfectly recited, a rule imperfectly understood, a false pronunciation, etc., he may be morally sure that twenty-four lessons will bring his pupil or pupils to a certain facility in translating from the foreign into the mother tongue, and vice versa, in reading all easy books, in understanding all little tales or descriptions in the foreign tongue when spoken, and in being able to repeat them. The second course may then begin.

In this Grammar a first course of twenty-four lessons is devised, whose efficiency for the purpose mentioned the author knows through his own experience as a practical teacher. Nay, his experience has

taught him that even as many as twenty-four lessons are not indispensable, and that the task may be performed with able pupils in sixteen lessons. The first ten sentences of each lesson are those to be translated, read, analyzed, repeated, and finally committed to memory by the pupil; the subsequent grammatical remarks are mere suggestions for the teacher, or for the abler pupil who wishes to learn German for himself without the advantage of the aid of a teacher. They contain the rules on grammatical forms and construction embodied in the sentences. The teacher should not go a step further until the pupil has comprehended the rules. He may be able to give more of them, - he should not give less. There is no real progress in learning foreign languages until the pupil understands the reasons for each form and each combination of forms implied. No language can be perfectly learned without putting in requisition the thinking faculty of the human mind; much less the German, -a language so much more difficult than the English. The more fundamental and thorough is the foundation of a foreign language in the pupil's mind, the more rapid is the systematical progress afterwards.

The German and English sentences following the grammatical remarks of each lesson are to be translated, and care should be taken by the teacher to add a number of English sentences to be translated into German, formed out of the elements of the first ten sentences, perhaps with the addition of a few words if his pupil should not have become sufficiently proficient. This is a comparatively easy task for a teacher of average ability.

The second course, as devised by the author, should be a theoretical one, continuing at the same time the practical exercises on a larger scale. The teacher explains the rules of the Theoretical Part, and exercises his pupils in understanding and applying them by English sentences to be translated into German. On the other hand, he makes them read and translate easy German reading-matter into English, alternately telling them short stories, such as those given in the fourth part of this book, and at a later period short descriptions, which they must forthwith orally translate into English, and immediately after, or one lesson later, repeat in German. All mistakes made by the pupil should be corrected by referring to the rule; and at the end of each lesson, one or two important rules embodied in the reading matter, or sinned against in repeating the story, should be illustrated by reference to the corresponding section in the Grammar, and by a

number of examples to be made on them. The declensions, conjugations, prepositions, adverbs, and conjunctions must be committed to memory, by repeating them three or four times a year, and fixed in the mind by examples. The teacher should be careful not to crowd the memory of his pupils with rules, but to have as many of them as they have learned understood fully and deeply impressed.

The second course should confine itself to Etymology, and not enter on the details of Syntax, which remains for a third course. Toward the end of the second course, translations in writing from choice English reading-matter into German, to be corrected by the teacher with reference to the paragraphs of the Grammar, should be attempted. If no other English book fit for that purpose is at hand, the "Fairy Book" will do. Tales, fables, and descriptions should be preferred to all other literature.

The third course should have for its object Syntax, treated in the same way as Etymology was in the second. The more difficult German authors should be read and explained by the teacher, in part cursorily, in part more fundamentally; in the latter case the pupils have to prepare themselves with Vocabulary and Grammar for the task of the lesson, in the former case they have not. The teacher should insist that all words met with in translating, and unknown to the pupil, be committed to memory, together with the gender of substantives. Oral translations from good English writers into German, always with reference to the sections of the Grammar, are indispensable to give the pupil a correct and fluent use of the foreign tongue. At the same time German conversation must be begun. To carry it on so that common platitudes may be avoided, the teacher should select a topic for conversation, taken from some German or English classic. and by adroit questions oblige the pupils to speak out their own mind and to form opinions. The study of language treated in this way, becomes one of the best means of developing the thinking faculties and propensities, and of correcting the logic of the pupil. From time to time those topics of the Grammar that were omitted in the former studies as conveying too many details, particularly those on the gender of substantives, on the formation of words, on the construction of sentences, the use of the verbals, etc., are introduced, explained, and the pupil exercised by means of examples, until, at the end of the third course, no topic in the Grammar is left untouched.

Such pupils, on the other hand, as are constrained by sheer neces-

sity to learn German without the sid of a teacher, and feel competent to do so, can profit by this Grammar more than by any other. They should by all means have a few pronouncing lessons, and from time to time some of their written exercises corrected, by some able German; otherwise they would not have sufficient conversational practice. Still they will find in this book the first German Grammar at the same time practical and scientifically complete.

On this head we must say a few words. Much as has of late been done in the science of grammar in general, and in German grammar particularly, there is to-day no complete and reliable German Grammar, either in the German or in any other language. Becker's admirable works, it is true, have reformed the whole system, and disclosed many facts before overlooked; but, written, as they are, for Germans, they do not mention some very important topics, - for instance, with regard to the sex and declension of substantives, the arrangement of words, the vast field of Germanisms, and the rendering of English idioms into German. In this respect the present book is much fuller than any previous one, and, if not perfect, is at least sufficiently complete to enable the attentive pupil to correct conclusions according to given analogies. All the lists of exceptions will, by comparison with other Grammars, be found far richer, and so reliable that the pupil can now, for the first time, know where the rule begins and the exceptions end. There are many important facts, overlooked in all Grammars extant, explained and stated here for the first time. We need not enlarge upon this; the careful reader will find it out for himself.

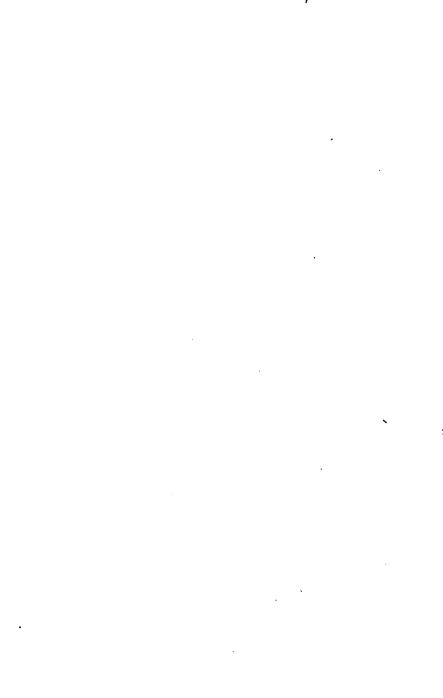
The author owes a great debt of gratitude to the better German Grammars named above. On the whole, he has, in compiling this book, compared more than twenty existing Grammars. Some things that could not be said in a shorter and more forcible or proper manner, are almost verbatim copied from Becker's English edition, Aue, Heilner, and the German editions of Becker. The author has likewise derived the whole skeleton of the grammatical system from Becker, to whose profound works any English scholar of German who wishes to master it thoroughly must at last apply. He does not expect to incur reproach for having done so. This work bears in itself sufficient evidence of independent studies and views to shield him from the charge of plagiarism. Suffice it to say, that his aim was not originality, — which is least of all desirable in grammatical science, — but usefulness.

Some rules are necessarily given, some facts mentioned, twice, or even three times, in this book. Each of the three parts — the Practical Lessons, the Theoretical Part, and the Syntax — forms a whole or course of instruction in itself, appropriate for three successive classes. Many pupils who cannot have the benefit of the second and third course will thus be enabled nevertheless to carry their practical German studies far enough for their purpose; many others, who can afford to go through the first and second courses, will find in them syntactical remarks which will enable them to understand even many difficult German authors, and to carry on German conversation by practice with Germans. At the same time, the thorough student, who goes over the whole book, will find ample and reliable instruction in all the intricacies and difficulties of German Grammar.

Our thanks are due to Prof. James B. Lowell of Cambridge, to Mrs. Julia C. Howe of South Boston, to Mr. Edmund Dana of Boston, and to Mr. M. T. Bigelow, the corrector at the University Press, for their kind assistance in the English redaction of this work.

A. DOUAL

^{***} Owing to the fact that this work was introduced in several of the public and private institutions of Boston and vicinity before the printing was finished, the Index and the short German Reader at the end do not appear in the first copies published.



ABBREVIATIONS.

Sch.	for	Schiller.
G.	"	Goethe.
Wd.	"	Wieland.
Hd.	66	Herder.
Gell.	66	Gellert.
Hdt.	"	Alex. Humbolds.
Jac.	66	Jacobs.
Licht	44	Lichtenberg.
E.	u	Engel.
Uhl.	44	Uhland.
Luth.	66	Luther.
В.	4	Bible (Luther's Translation).
Less.	"	Lessing.
Prov.	4	Proverb.
10	"	Riiman

Termon Exercise for Mountay, my 18 in the form the oceanic (derive in the forom more or doctor) to that he want of we down dwish man, he con july of interior in), That he would lare it; out he is constantly compaining " (mornin) how sick he did south and resceine das in no good. many or from a gain of his ordinalist or ordinalist ordinalis House you to do to be to have carried Guitation (Thinks). 1.623.66

mich Rit-

u, u, pronoun father, are.

1

exercise du Monday, may 18 sine Colorer, in The forom fices the Pres. Cond ich Minning Thomas bed milineter opeliting in forbia. ich filetten ich henryme 7-2 , 60

mil Rist-

GRAMMAR.

INTRODUCTION.

I. REMARKS ON PRONUNCIATION.

THE German Alphabet consists of the following twenty-six Letters:—

A	\mathfrak{a}	=	A	a	ah	N	n	=	N	n	enn
\mathfrak{B}	b .	=	\boldsymbol{B}	b	bay	Ð	ø	=	0	0	0
C	c	=	\boldsymbol{C}	c	tsay	P	Þ	=	\boldsymbol{P}	p	pay
\mathfrak{D}	Þ	=	\boldsymbol{D}	d	day	Q	q	=	Q	\boldsymbol{q}	koo
હ	e	=	\boldsymbol{E}	e	ay	R	r	=	\boldsymbol{R}	r	err
\mathfrak{F}	f	=	\boldsymbol{F}	f	eff	ල	1 8 FF	B =	$\boldsymbol{\mathcal{S}}$	8	ess
ß	g	==	G_{\cdot}	g	gay	T	t	=	\boldsymbol{T}	t	tay
Ş	ħ	=	H	h	hah	u	u	=	$\boldsymbol{\mathit{U}}$	u	00
3	i	=	I	i	ee	V	b	=	V	\boldsymbol{v}	fow, fou
3	j	=	\boldsymbol{J}	\boldsymbol{j}	yot	W	w	=	W	w	vay
R	ŧ	=	K	k	kah	æ	ŗ	=	\boldsymbol{X}	\boldsymbol{x}	iks
${\mathfrak E}$	ĺ	=	\boldsymbol{L}	Z	ell	IJ	ņ	=	Y	y	ipsilon
M	m	=	M	m	emm	3	8	=	\boldsymbol{Z}	z	tset

Several of these letters are similar in shape, and care should be taken not to confound them. For instance, $\mathfrak B$ and $\mathfrak B$; $\mathfrak G$ and $\mathfrak G$; $\mathfrak B$ and $\mathfrak B$

1. Pronunciation of the Vowels.

A, a, pronounced always like the French a, or English a in father, are.

- E, e, pronounced always like the French é or è, or English e, a, in better, name.
- 3, i, pronounced always like the French i, or English i, e, in bit, we.
- D, v, pronounced always like the French o, or English o in rose, more, so.
- u, u, pronounced always like the French ou, or English u in bull, full.

The German , (ipsilon) is never used as a consonant, like the English y, but is always a vowel. The pronunciation is always that of i. It occurs only in words of Greek origin, while in German words it has, of late, fallen entirely into disuse.

2. Pronunciation of the Modified Vowels.

- Ä (Me), ä, is pronounced like the French è, or English ai or ay in lair, prayer, or e in there, where.
- D (Dt), ö, is pronounced like the French eu, or English e or ea in heard, her.
- ii (ii), ii, is pronounced like the French u; the English have nothing like this sound.

3. Pronunciation of the Diphthongs.

- Gi, ei, is pronounced like the English y in my, why, or i in line.
- Eu, eu, is pronounced like the English oy in boy, or oi in oil.
- Mu, au, is pronounced like the English ou in house, or ow in now, how.
- Au (Aeu), äu, is pronounced like eu.
- Mi, ai, which occurs only in about a dozen substantives, is pronounced like ei.

Diphthongs are always long, while all other vowels may be long or short.

4. Pronunciation of the Simple Consonants.

- B, b, and D, b, are pronounced as in English; b in the midst of a word like w.
- C, c, appears only in foreign words, and is pronounced, before ä, e, i, ö, p, like ts (the same as 3); as in Cafar, Cever, Cicero, Cyrus, Cölestin; before all other vowels and the consonants, like k; as in Cato, Concert, Cultur, Credit.
- F, f, M, m, N, n, P, p, T, t, and X, r, are pronounced as in English.
- (9), g, although pronounced differently in different portions of Germany, should always, by the foreigner, be pronounced like the English g in garden, geese; this pronunciation being everywhere in Germany easily understood. After an n it sounds as in English; as, lang, long; fingen, to sing.
- 5, b, is pronounced as in English, but is never mute at the commencement of a word, or, as the German Grammar calls it, in the Anlaut.* It is not sounded after a t, as in thun, to do, Fluth, flood; between two vowels, as in fehen, to see; or after a vowel, as in Suhn, hen, Ruh, cow; or after an r, as in Rhein, Rhine; in a word, in the midst and at the end of radical syllables and words.
- 3, j, (yot,) has the same sound as the English consonant y, in year, 3ahr; yes, ja.
- \Re , t, is like the English k; but is never mute before π . The sign d is a double k.
- \mathfrak{Q} , q, is always followed by a u; qu has the sound of kv.
- \Re , r, is pronounced like the French and Italian r; to wit, shriller than in English.
- S, s, s, is pronounced like the English s. There is no differ-

^{*} In German, that consonant or vowel which begins a radical syllable is called "Anlaut," that which terminates a syllable is called "Auslaut." In the word \$55, bad, the \$b\$ is, therefore, the "Anlaut," the \$b\$ the "Auslaut." A radical syllable may have two or more consonants for "Anlaut," like Blut, blood, fyringen, to spring; and two or more "Auslauts," like Punft, punch, fyringt, springs; or a double "Auslaut," like £amm, lamb, £341, ball, ball, bart, dry.

ence between a hard and a soft s, as in French and other languages. The letters \mathfrak{f} and \mathfrak{f} have no sharper pronunciation than the simple \mathfrak{f} , but are audible as a double s, particularly so the \mathfrak{f} , which is only orthographically different from \mathfrak{f} (ess-tset), occurring only between two short yowels.

 \mathfrak{V} , \mathfrak{v} , sounds like f.

- \mathfrak{B} , w, is pronounced like the French and English v; never like English w.
- 3, 3, is pronounced like ts in gets. The letter \$ (tay-tset) is nothing but a double 3.
 - 5. Pronunciation of the Compound Consonants.
- Ch, th, is a guttural, whose pronunciation resembles that of the Scotch ch in Loch, in all cases when it occurs after one of the vowels a, v, u, or au. The pupil must, therefore, refer to a German teacher for the correct pronunciation. After one of the other vowels (e, i, ei, eu, au) or after a consonant it sounds much softer than after the above vowels. Before all vowels and consonants it sounds like k, and so it sounds when it is followed by an for s.
- 9h, ph, occurs only in Greek words, and is pronounced like f, as in English.
- Sch, sch, like the English sh in ship, Schiff; ashes, Afche.
- It, th, has never the sound of the English th, but only that of a t.

6. Pronunciation of the Long and Short Voucels.

The German orthography is not very consistent; still some rules may be established, which should always be observed, to facilitate a correct pronunciation.

- I. All syllables are long which have for vowels,—
 - 1. aa (in about twelve words); as Haar, hair; Aal, eel.
 - 2. et (in about eighteen words); as See, sea; Seele, soul.

- 3. vo (in four words); Boot, boat; Moos, moss; Moor, morass; Love, lot.
- 4. it. The t is not here pronounced, but serves only to make the pronunciation of t long, in all cases except the pronouns ihr, her, their; ihm, ihn, him; ihnen, to them; where the h serves the same purpose, and is therefore not pronounced.
- 5. ah, th, ih, vh, uh, ah, öh, üh (the h being mute). This h, as the sign of a long syllable, occurs only as "Auslaut," or before one of the "Auslauts" m, n, l, r. Ex. Rahm, cream; Jahl, number; Hahn, cock; lehren, to teach; fühlen, to feel; lehnen, to lean; Reh, roe; jäh, tough; Höht, height; früh, early; Ruh, cow; froh, glad; nah, nigh, near.
- 6. One of the diphthongs; as, au, ai, ei, eu, au.

In all other radical syllables or words, where the vowel is long, this is not made conspicuous by orthography; as in Bab, bath; Blut, blood; Beg, way; Lob, praise. But their number is limited.

The pronunciation of long e is like that of the French d in père, or like the English ai and ay in lair, prayer, or e in where, there. This is the case in all radical syllables ending with a simple liquid for "Auslaut"; as, ber, the; wer, who; wen, whom; Mehl, meal; stehlen, to steal; nehmen, to take (h being mute); and in a few open syllables; as, lesen, to read; Besen, being; Besen, broom; sehen, to see; Schere, shears, scissors; Quere, bias.

The pronunciation of long e is acute, and like the French e or English ey and ay in they, gray, in all open syllables; as, legen, to lay, put; gehen, to go; stehen, to stand; Elend, misery; edel, noble; Esel, disgust; and when the e is doubled or prolonged by a mute h; as, heer, host; Meer, sea; mehr, more.

- II. All radical syllables are short which
 - 1. Double the "Auslaut." Ex. Lamm, lamb; Stall, stall, stable; herr, master; Schiff, ship; hoffen, to hope; voll,

- full; Mull, zero; bid, thick; Sip, seat; muß, must; ftarr, stiff;
- 2. Which have two or more consonants for "Auslaut." Ex. Wald, wood; Salz, salt; Kind, child; scharf, sharp; Rarte, chart, map. The following are the sew exceptions: Art, kind; Bart, beard; Mond, moon; Obst, fruit; Bogt, inspector; Magd, maid-servant; Jagd, chase; erst, first; Herde, slock; Herd, hearth; Erde, earth; Krebs, crab; Pserd, horse; werden, to become; Geberde, gesture; Arzt, physician; zart, tender; Warze, wart; Schwert, sword; werth, worth; todt, dead; Trost, consolation; wust, waste.
- 3. The following prepositions, adverbs, and conjunctions are also short: in, in, ab, off, an, on, mit, with, hin, thither, noth, yet, still, um, around, both, still, yet, bis, till, ob, if, whether, von, of, from, zu, to (in compound prepositions and adverbs); and the verbal form bin, am; the pronouns ith, I, es, it; the article bas, the; the negative syllable un, un-, in compound words; and the interjections ath! alas! and weg! away!
- 4. All prepositions, articles, pronouns, adverbs, and conjunctions are liable, in rapid utterance, to be pronounced short, even though they are naturally long, when they are not accentuated.

All radical syllables not mentioned under the rules concerning short syllables are therefore long, even though they do not exhibit the orthographical sign of a long vowel. But this latter rule does not hold good of radical syllables with the simple "Auslaut" the which may be long or short. The pupil can only by reference to a teacher learn when the former or the latter pronunciation of radical syllables with the simple "Auslaut" the is the right one.

III. All syllables not radical are either short, except when long by orthography, or pronounced shorter than they would be in radical syllables.

IV. Naturally long syllables have a somewhat shorter pronunciation when not accentuated than when accentuated.

II. REMARKS ON THE ACCENT.

We speak here only of the syllabic accent, or that which in words of more than one syllable lays a greater stress on one of them, and has the effect, not only of making the pronunciation of all other syllables shorter than it is naturally, but of making it, at the same time, lower and slighter than that of the accentuated syllable. Of the accent in sentences we shall speak in the Theoretical Part of this book.

In German, words of more than one syllable have the accent on the radical syllable. Syllables serving for inflection of the root and for forming derivatives are, therefore, without accent. Sometimes derivative words of two or more syllables allow of a second or weaker accent beside the main accent.

The only modification of this rule is to be found in compound words. In all compound words, except those compounded with the unaccentuated prefixes be-, ge-, ver-, zer-, emp-, ent-, er-, the accent lies, not on the radical syllable, but on the prefixed syllable. The radical syllable has then a secondary or weaker accent; for instance, An"fang', beginning, Bor"ficht', foresight, Ein"tritt', entrance, Bert"tag', working-day.

Words compounded of two or more independent words have, therefore, as many accents as there are words; but the first, though not conveying the principal meaning or signification, has the principal accent, while the other words have secondary accents, each one on its radical syllable; as haus"hof's mei'ster.

Foreign words, when Germanized, have, for the most part, their accent on the last syllable, in order to characterize them as such; for instance, Student', student, Rultur', culture, Solbat', soldier, Offizier', officer.

All verbs terminating in the infinitive in tren have the principal accent on the t in tren, because they are of foreign origin.

All substantives in ti have, for the same reason, the accent on this termination.

In analogy with these two latter classes of words, even verbs in tren and substantives in the German origin have taken the same accentuation.

Compound adverbs are in many cases excepted. For instance, adverbs compounded with ba, like bamit, therewith, basei, thereby, basur, therefor, basurd, thereby, and similar ones, may have the accent on the syllable ba, or on the preposition compounded with it, just as the former or the latter conveys, in each instance, the principal meaning.

Adverbs compounded with the prefixes hin and her (hither, thither) do not allow of an accent on these syllables. For the accent on adverbs, see § 63 of the Theoretical Part.

The words Ithen'big, living, alive, and Ant'mort, answer, and some substantives and verbs compounded with Un- and Mig-, are the only real exceptions to the above rules.

The prefixes burd, through, hinter, behind, hind-, über, over, unter, under, um, around, wiber, against, miß, mis-, voll, full-, are, according to their different value, either accented with the principal or the secondary accent.

On account of the importance of this subject, we insert here what the celebrated German grammarian, K. T. Becker, in his English-German Grammar (page 4), says on the same topic.

"The accent of German words is regulated according to the same principles by which that of English words of Anglo-Saxon origin is regulated. The primitive syllable, which is in general the first syllable of the word, takes the *principal accent*, whilst prefixes and affixes take either the *subordinate* accent or none at all; e. g.

Ba'ter, father Bet'ter, weather gol'den, golden māch'tig, mighty Freund'schaft, friendship Chri'stenthum, Christendom crstau'nen, astonish erwa'chen, awake bewei'nen, to bewail Erlaub'niß, allowance Unterneh'mer, undertaker Unterneh'mung, undertaking. "In particular, all terminations and affixes are unaccented, except lei, lein, ling, heit, feit, schaft, thum, sal, ung, bar, sam, hast, icht, which take the semi-accent, and et, iren, which take the principal accent.

"The prefixes be, er, ver, ent, zer, and the augment ge-, are unaccented; the prefixes burch, hinter, über, unter, um, wider, miß, voll, are semi-accented, or take the principal accent according to their different value; all other prefixes take the principal accent.

"The personal pronouns, articles, and the monosyllabic forms of the verb sein (to be) are unaccented. All other auxiliary verbs, pronouns, prepositions, and conjunctions are semi-accented."

PART I.

PRACTICAL LESSONS.

LESSON FIRST.

EXERCISE I.—Der Bater, the father; die Mutter, the mother; das Kind, the child; der Sohn, the son; die Tochter, the daughter; Bruder, brother; Schwester, sister; ein, a, one; in, in; mein, my; dein, thy; sein, his; ihr, her; ist, is; hat, has; war, was; gut, good; sehr, very; nicht, not; sind, are; haben, have; hier, here; da, there; das Haus, the house; das Pserd, the horse.

1. Der Bater ist gut. 2. Die Mutter ist sehr gut. 3. Das Rind ist nicht gut. 4. Mein Bater war gut. 5. Der Bater und bie Mutter sind gut. 6. Bater und Mutter sind gut. 7. Mein Bruder hat ein Kind. 8. Sein Sohn ist hier. 9. Meine Tochter und beine Schwester sind da. 10. Meine Schwester hat ein Kind, ihr Kind ist gut.

Grammatical Remarks.—§ 1. From the above sentences it appears that the German language has three forms for the definite article, ber, bit, bas, the first joined to masculine, the second to feminine, the third to neuter nouns.

- § 2. From the 5th and 6th sentences it appears that the definite article may be omitted just as well as employed, when two or more nouns form the subject, the meaning being the same in both cases.
- § 3. From the 5th, 6th, and 9th sentences it appears that the subject when formed by two or more persons or things must be connected with the predicate in plural.
- § 4. From the 4th, 7th, 9th, and 10th sentences it appears that the possessive pronouns mein, bein, sein, isr, and all others, take the place of the article; in other words, cannot be joined

with any article. Mein, bein, sein, ihr are the masculine and neuter, meine, beine, seine, ihre the seminine forms of this pronoun. Ein, a, the indefinite article, has with seminine nouns eine.

- § 5. From the 5th sentence it appears that the adjective, when a predicate, has the same form when connected with a subject in the plural or in the singular; and from the 2d and 3d sentences, that it has the same form with a masculine as when connected with a feminine or neuter. This unchangeable form of the adjective is called the "predicative form."
- § 6. The arrangement of words in these simple sentences is quite the same as in English. The subject comes first; the auxiliary verb or copula, or the verb, when a single form, second; adverbs and objects, third; the predicate is fourth. In questions, the same inversion takes place as in English, the second taking the place of the first, and the first of the second.

The above ten sentences should be committed to memory, of course with the correct pronunciation, as derived from the mouth of a teacher. The following sentences, formed out of the elements of the above ten, may be orally translated, and the mistakes made by the pupil forthwith corrected by the teacher.

Exercise II.— Ift ber Bater gut? Ift bie Mutter sehr gut? Ift bas Kind nicht gut? War mein Bater nicht gut? Gind Bater und Mutter nicht gut? hat mein Bruber ein Rind? Ift sein Sohn hier? Sind meine Tochter und beine Schwester ba? Mein Bater hat ein haus und ein Pferd. Meine Schwester hat ihr Kind hier. Deine Tochter hat ein haus da. Mein Kind ift nicht gut.

My mother and sister are not here. Are not thy son and daughter there? Has not his son a child? Her brother has a house in Boston. The father, the mother, the son, and the daughter are good. Was not the horse here? Was not a house there? Is not thy father very good? My mother was very good. The child is not very good.

NOTE. It is for the teacher to decide whether the peculiar stand-point of his pupils will allow him to reduce from the outset the whole theory of the arrangement of words in a sentence to the following simple standard rule:—

In all of the above sentences the predicate consists of two words, her Bater iff gut. The first of these words, which is always inflected, is the auxiliary verb or copula; the second, the predicate proper, is seldom inflected, and may consist of an adjective, as here; of a substantive with or without attributes, as 'my father is a good father'; or of a participle, as in 'I have been'; or of an infinitive, as 'I shall be'; or of a noun with a preposition, as in ith gehe in Grunde, I go to naught; or of a preposition, as 'I stand up.' Between copula and predicate all the objects are inserted, and likewise all adverbs.

When copula and predicate run together into ONE word, as in 'the bird SINGS,' the man DIED,' then the predicate proper is omitted, but everything else

keeps its place.

When an inversion of the sentence takes place, as in questions: 'is my father good?' the whole change consists of subject and copula changing places; everything else is left unchanged. Or where there is no copula, subject and predicate proper change places, everything else remaining unaltered.

The teacher should practise these rules and direct the attention of the pupils to them by means of a sufficient number of examples for them to become thoroughly versed in these two kinds of construction, before their introduction to the subordinate (dependent, accessory) sentence.

LESSON SECOND.

Exercise III.—1. Ich bin (I am) bein Großwater (grandfather). 2. Du bist (thou art) meine gute Großmutter. 3. Er ist (he is) mein Enkel (grandson) und sie ist (she is) meine Enkelin (granddaughter). 4. Wir sind Geschwister (brother and sister). 5. Ihr seid besser (better) als wir (than we). 6. Sie sind (they are) nicht so groß als ihr. 7. Ich war sein Großgroßwater und du warst seine Großgroßmutter. 8. Er war sein Stiefsschn (step-son) und sie war seine Stieftschter. 9. Wir waren alt (old) und ihr waret (or wart) jung. 10. Sie waren immer (ever, always) sehr reich (rich).

The pupil should be made to inflect the Present and Imperfect tenses of fein.

Grammatical Remarks.—§ 7. The second person singular, bu bift, bu warft, may be translated as well by you are, you were. Among the Germans, parents and children, husband and wife, intimate friends and relations, address each other by bu. Still the pupil should, as a rule, translate bu always by thou. In is the plural of bu, and is employed when addressing several persons, each of whom would be addressed by bu.

When addressing persons not connected with the speaker by relation or friendship, the third person plural is used, the word fit written with a capital letter, so that Sie waren means you were, Sie find, you are.

- § 8. The 1st, 2d, 7th, and 8th sentences show that compound substantives are in German formed, as a rule, by simply compounding two or more different words into one, and writing them as one word, without the use of a hyphen (as in step-son).
- § 9. From the 3d sentence it appears that the masculine form of a noun may be converted into a feminine one by adding in. Thus from König, king, is formed Königin, queen; from Freunt, friend, Freundin, female friend; from Gatte, kusband, Gattin, wife. In doing so, most masculine noute, having for radical vowel an a, v, u, or au, take the Unlaut, that is to say, they change these vowels into ä, ö, ü, or äu; as, Schwager, brother-in-law, Schwägerin, sister-in-law; Thor, fool, Thörin, female fool; Hund, dog, hound, Hündin, bitch; Bauer, peasant, Bäuerin, peasant-woman.

Exercise IV. - 3ch bin nicht bein Gobn. Bin ich nicht beine Tochter? Du bift nicht mein Rind. 3ft er nicht mein Stieffohn? 3ft fie nicht eine Stiefmutter? Mein Stiefvater ift zugleich (at the same time) mein Schwiegervater (father-in-law). Sind wir nicht Geschwister? Seid ihr morgen (to-morrow) ju 3d war feine Sause (at home)? Gie find immer jung. Freundin und Belferin (helper). Du warft ibre Lebrerin (teacher) und jugleich ihre Mutter. Er mar mein Schwiegersobn und hatte (had) ein Saus in New-Jort. Bar fie nicht feine Nichte (niece) und war er nicht mein Reffe (nephew)? Wir waren jufammen (together) in Salem. Wart ibr nicht fein Grofvater und feine Grofmutter? Baren fie etwa (perhaps) Befchwister? Sie find immer gut und weife (wise). Baren Sie nie (or niemals, never) in hartford?

I am his nephew, and thou art his step-brother. He is my step-child, but (aber) she is my daughter. Is she thy friend and teacher? Are we at home here? You are not better than

I am (am is not translated). Are they husband and wife? I was her step-daughter and at the same time her servant (Diener, male servant). Wast thou not ever my God? My horse was very young. His mother-in-law was not a fool. Your sister-in-law and step-sister were not there. Were we not her father and (her) mother? Were you here?

LESSON THIRD.

Exercise V.—1. Ich habe einen Bater in Berlin. 2. Du hast einen Freund. 3. Er hat einen Bruder, eine Schwester und ein Kind hier. 4. Sie hat einen Oheim (or Onkel, uncle), eine Tante (aunt), und ein haus in St. Louis. 5. Wir haben meinen Bater, meine Mutter, und mein Kind geschen (seen). 6. Ihr habt meinen hund und meine hündin, seinen Kater (male cat) und seine Kape (semale cat). 7. Sie haben deinen Rock (coat), beinen Tisch (table), und beinen Stuhl (chair). 8. Kein (no) Bruder ist besser als du. 9. Ich hatte Röck, Tische, und Stühle. 10. Du hattest Freunde, aber keinen Bater und keinen Bruder, keine Mutter und keine Schwester, kein Kind und kein Buch (book).

(The pupil should inflect the three persons, Singular and Plural, of the Present and Imperfect tense of \$aben.)

Grammatical Remarks.—§ 10. From the above sentences it appears that the accusative case of nouns is like the nominative (see for the exceptions § 27), and that the accusative of pronouns is formed by adding en to the masculine form of ein, tein, mein, bein, sein, thr (her), unser (our), euer (your), thr (their); while the seminine form eine, seine, meine, beine, scine, thre, unsere, euere (or eure), thre (their), and the neuter form ein, sein, mein, bein, sein, unser, euer, ihr, are the same in the accusative and in the nominative cases.

§ 11. The 7th and 9th sentences show how, in a great majority of cases, the plural of monosyllabic nouns of the masculine and neuter genders is formed, viz. by adding e to the singular, and giving the radical vowel the *Umlaut*, where it is an a, v, u, or au; as, Sad (bag), Säde; Rod, Röde; Stuhl,

Stühle; Maus (mouse), Mäuse (mice); Freund, Freunde; Tisch, Tische; Bisch (fish), Fische; Busch (bush), Büsche; Sohn, Söhne; Bach (brook), Bäche; Berg (mountain), Berge; Raum (room, space), Räume; Fluß (river), Flüsse.

Note.—The formation of the plural in German, in its chief features, is simply the following:—All words assume an e in the plural, except those that have already an e in the singular, these assuming n, and all masculines and neuters in et, et, en, and tein, taking no termination at all in the plural. A limited number of masculines and neuters, that must be committed singly to memory, assume for easier pronunciation the termination et, and a still smaller number en; and a limited number of feminines in et, et, assume n, and of other feminines not terminating in e assume en. Those that form the plural in e and et assume, as a rule, the Umlaut (a, å; e, å; u, ů; au, åu); those that form the plural in en never do.

- § 12. The 5th sentence shows that, in simple sentences, the participle past is the last word of all the sentence, while the 1st, 3d, and 4th sentences show that the objects, when nouns, take their place before the adverbs or adverbial phrases, the adverbs of time and place only excepted, which may precede all objects.
- § 13. The 3d, 4th, 5th, and 6th sentences exemplify the rule that, when two or more nouns of different genders are enumerated, each one must have its article and pronoun. The German cannot translate "I have a brother, sister, and child," by 3d have einen Bruder, Schwester, und Rind; that would be incorrect. But when nouns of the same gender are enumerated, the article and pronoun may be omitted after the second and the following nouns; so that the 10th sentence would be just as correct if it read as follows: aber seinen Bater und Bruder, seine Mutter und Schwester, sein Rind und Bud; although it would be far more logical and elegant to say sein Rind und sein Bud, because the one is an animate being, the latter an inanimate one.

Exencise VI. — habe ich nicht meinen Stuhl und Tisch? Saft bu nicht einen Freund? hat er eine Gattin? hat die Rape eine Maus? Nein, sie hat zwei (two) Mäuse. hat ber Bach Fische? Meine Tante hatte niemals eine Freundin. haben

wir gar keine Freunde (no friends at all)? Habt ihr unsere Berge und Teiche (ponds), Bäume (trees) und Büsche, Bäche und Flüsse geschen? Die Wände (walls) haben Ohren (ears). Haben Sie kein Geld (money)? Hatte ich Necht (right) ober (or) Unrecht (wrong)? (Was I right or wrong?) Was (what) hattest du gesehen?

I have a step-father in Hamburg and a mother-in-law in Halle. Hast thou not a male cousin (Better) in Europe (Europa), and a female cousin in America? Has not your grandson two sons? Our sister has no child. We have three (brei) bags. Have you not seen their fish? Have they found (gefunden) our money? Had I not thy coat? Thou hadst my dog. Had not your friend a mother and brother? Have you lost (verloren) your wife? Have you chairs and tables enough (genug)? His house had only (nur) one room. I had a nephew and a niece in England, and a brother and sister in Denmark (Dänemart). You have had (gehabt) a male cat and a horse, a cow (Ruh, f.) and a sheep (Schaf, n.). Their aunt had a house and a garden (Garten, m.) in Edinburgh.

LESSON FOURTH.

Exercise VII.—1. Dieser (this) Kerl (fellow) hatte ben Hund, die Kape und das Schaf. 2. Diese Frau (woman) hatte unser Kind. 3. Dieses Haus ist besser als jener (that) Garten, oder jene Wiese (meadow) und jenes Feld (field). 4. Ich werde bald (soon) diesen Fisch, diese Gans (goose), und dieses Buch haben. 5. Du wirst jenen Bogel, jene Kuh, und jenes Pferd haben. 6. Er wird Brüder und Schwäger haben. 7. Wir werden deine Bögel bald genug haben. 8. Ihr werdet heute eure Sättel (the saddle, der Sattel) haben. 9. Unsere Bäter werden ihre Söhne wiederhaben (wieder, again). 10. Wir hatten seine Gärten, ihr hattet unsere Messer (das Messer, the knise), und sie hatten eure Stiefel (der Stiefel, the boot).

Grammatical Remarks. — § 14. The definite article has, in the accusative case, for the masculine gender the form ben,

feminine bie, neuter bas. In an analogous way are formed bieser, bieses, this, and jener, jene, jenes, that; accusative biesen, biese, bieses, and jenen, jene, jenes.

- § 15. The plural of nouns terminating in er, el, en, lein, of the masculine and neuter genders, is formed by adding no termination, but giving to the radical vowel the *Umlaut*; as, Bater, Bäter, Bögel, Bögel, Bruder, Brüder. Thus are also formed two feminines, Mutter, pl. Mütter, and Tochter, pl. Töchter. Such words, therefore, as cannot take the *Umlaut*, have the same form in the plural as in the singular; as, Stiefel, pl. Stiefel; Messer, pl. Messer.
- § 16. From sentences 4-9 it appears how the Future is formed in German. The auxiliary verb,—ich werde, I shall, bu wirft, thou wilt, er wird, he will, wir werden, we shall, the werdet, you will, sie werden, they will,—is connected with the infinitive (all infinitives add en to the root of the verb), which, in simple sentences, takes the last place; and I shall be is therefore ich werde sein; I shall have, ich werde haben; I shall learn, ich werde sernen.
- § 17. The plural of all pronouns is formed by adding e to the radical syllable; as, meine Brüder, my brothers, deine Töchter, thy daughters, seine Töchter, his sons, thre Pserde, her or their horses, unsere Gärten, our gardens, euere (or eure) Stiesel, your boots, teine Bäume, no trees, diese Rerse, these sellows, jene Hische, those sishes; and the definite article is die Bäter, die Mütter, die Pserde, the sathers, the mothers, the horses. It will be seen that the pronouns and the article have in the plural the same termination for all three genders, in the accusative as well as in the nominative cases.

Exercise VIII. — hat bieser Mann (man) gar kein Gelb? Satte jener Bein gar keinen Preis (price)? Hatten wir keine Braut (bride)? Hattet ihr, o Freunde, keinen Bunsch (wish)? Satten diese Bäche keine Fischen? Hatten Sie biesen Walb (wood, forest) nuch (yet) nicht gesehen? Haben Sie jenes Pferd nicht wieder gefunden? Werbe ich (or soll ich) diese Berge nie wieder

sehen (see)? Wirst du Muth (courage) haben ober nicht? Wird er nicht zu Hause sein? Was werden (or sollen) wir zu ihm (to him) sagen (say)? Wo werdet ihr den Bater sinden (sind)? Werden sie ben Tiger sangen (catch)? Werden Sie nicht die Esel (der Esel, the ass) suchen (seek)? Was werden Sie morgen haben, Fische ober Fleisch (meat, flesh)? Alle Mütter haben entweder (either) Söhne oder Töchter. Unsere Röde sind besser als eure.

Had we a book? You had no father, no mother, no child. They had one dog and two sheep (Schafe, without Umlaut). Had you a male and a female cat? We shall have a helper to-morrow. You will have no meat. They will have their brother again. Who (mer) has seen my knife and my axe (Art, f.). I shall catch these tigers. Thou wilt hear (horen) what I say. He will see his uncle and his aunt and their daughters. She will always be good and true (treu). My forefathers (Borvater) were from (von) England. Your sons will be rich. The mothers were once (cinmal) daughters. Her shoes (ber Edub, the shoe) are new (neu). The dogs will be here. The hogs (bas Schwein, the hog) have food (Jutter) enough. Thy wishes are moderate (billig). Thy aid (Bulic, f.) is very dear (theuer). Our windows (bas Kenster, the window) will be too high (11 hod). We shall find these fellows. Have you found those asses? We have seen your mountains, rivers, and brooks. Have you heard their words (Wort, n.)? He has the boots and the coat on (an). Has he forgotten (vergeffen) the wine and the fishes? Have you eaten (gegeffen) the bread (Brot, n.), butter (Butter, f.), and cheese (Rafe, m.)? Yes, we have (3a! We have is not translated).

LESSON FIFTH.

Exercise IX. — 1. Ich liebe (I love) biese Blume (flower) mehr (more) als (than) jene. 2. Liebst bu jene Blumen mehr als diese? 3. Welche (what, which) Farbe (color), ober welche Farben (colors) liebt eure Schwester? 4. Welcher Mann liebt (likes) wohl (pray!) die Kapen? Wir lieben unsere Schwestern.

6. Liebt Ihr schöne (beautiful) Frauen? 7. Die Frauen lieben bie Blumen. 8. Wir waren Freundinnen. 9. Köchinnen (female cooks) tochen (cook) besser als Köche (the male cook, ber Koch). 10. Alle diese Lehrerinnen lehren (teach) Englisch.

Grammatical Remarks. — § 18. The above sentences show the inflection of the Present Tense of the regular German verb. The pupil should find out himself the termination of each of the three persons, singular and plural. Such verbs as have for Auslaut b, t, f, or ff, or gn, dn, ffn, bn, bm, thm, have in the second person singular eft, in the third et, and in the second person plural et; as, ich rebe (I speak), bu rebest, er rebet, wir reben, ihr rebet, sie reben. The present of the irregular verbs has, with a few exceptions, the same terminations in the present tense; as, ich sinbe, bu sinbest, er sinbet, wir sinben, ihr sinbet, sie sinben; ich lese (I read), bu liesest, er lieset (liest), wir lesen, ihr leset (lest), sie lesen; ich trinte (I drink), bu trintst, er trintst, wir trinten, ihr trintst, sie trinten.

- § 19. The above sentences exhibit the plural of feminine nouns. Those having two or more radical syllables assume in the plural an n or en; namely, those terminating in e or el or er, an n; those terminating in in, an en, while the foregoing n is doubled; and a few monosyllabic nouns, inflected in this way, like Frau, Flut (floor, field), Form, Uhr (watch), Welt (world), Zeit (time), assume en.
- § 20. Welcher, welche, welches (which, what), is both an interrogative and a relative pronoun, and is inflected like bitfer, jener.
- § 21. In the fifth sentence it appears that adjectives employed without any article have e in the plural, Nom. and Acc.; as, schön, pl. schöne; gut, pl. gute; weise, pl. weise.

Exencise X. — Ich lobe (I praise) Alles was gut ift. Wen (whom) lobst du, liebe (dear) Mutter? Das Werk (work) lobt den Meister (master). Warum (why) loben wir eure Nichten so sehr? Lobt ihr nicht meine Werke? Die Mütter loben ihre Töchter. Ich lebe (I live) in Boston. Die Bienen

(bie Biene, the bee) leben nicht lange (long). Er wirkt (to work) viel (much) Gutes. Wir wirken als (as) Lehrer in New-Haven. Er sagt nichts. Was ihr sagt ist wahr (true). Was du sindest ist nicht dein. Ihr sindet Blumen überall (everywhere). Die Bögel haben Febern (seathers) und singen. Wirschön sie singt! ('How beautifully she sings!' The predicative form of the adjective is also the form of the adverb.) Die Uhrmacher machen (make) Uhren.

What does the cook (Rödsin)? She is cooking apples (she cooks apples). The roses (bie Rose, the rose), tulips (bie Tulpe, the tulip), pinks (bie Nelfe, the pink), and lilies (bie Lilie, the lily) are blossoming (blossom, to blossom, blüben). These trees bear (tragen) fine (schön) pears (die Birne, the pear). What does she sing? (what sings she?) She sings new tunes (Melodie, f.). The times are coming and going (come and go; to come, fommen; to go, gehen). She hops (hupfen) like (wie) a roe (Reb). Do you know (fennen) this street (Strafe, f.)? He goes to (in bie) school (Schule, f.). Animals (bas Thier, the animal) do live, plants (bie Vilange, the plant) do not, you say? Tigers catch roes. sheep, horses; but no mice, no rats (bie Ratte, the rat). My friend seeks her sisters. I hate (haffen) (the) cats, but not (the) dogs. He praises his cherries (bit Rirfdyt, the cherry) and plums (bie Pflaume, the plum).

LESSON SIXTH.

Exercise XI.—1. Ich liebte (loved) meine Braut. 2. Du liebtest beinen Bräutigam (bridegroom). 3. Er liebte frische Lüste (fresh, frisch; bie Lust, air). 4. Wir liebten große Städte (city, die Stadt) mehr als kleine (little ones). 5. Ihr liebtet warme Rächte (die Nacht, the night). 6. Sie lieben weiße (white) hände (die Hand). 7. Er war, wenn (when) ich redete, still. 8. Die Thüre (door) ist offen (open); wer öffnete die Thüren? 9. Wir landeten (to land) heute (to-day) in Boston. 10. Die Frauen beteten (pray) die ganze (whole) Nacht.

Grammatical Remarks. — § 22. From the sentences 1-6 it appears how the German Imperfect or Past tense is formed. The pupil may find it out for himself. Verbs that have for Auslaut gn, dn, ffn, bn, bm, thm, b, or t, insert before the termination an e, for cuphony's sake; as, öffnete, betete, landete, läugnete, zeichnete, ordnete, widmete, athmete.

- § 23. The plural of monosyllabic feminine nouns is formed by adding the termination e to the root, and giving to the radical vowel the *Umlaut*. Only a minority of feminine monosyllabic nouns are inflected after § 19.
- § 24. The 10th sentence shows that the accusative case without a preposition serves, in German, to express the time at which something is done, or through which an action is continuing.
- § 25. The 4th sentence shows that the English "one" or "ones" following an adjective (or pronoun) without a substantive, is not needed in German, because the German adjective has a termination, the English has not.

Exercise XII. — Ich suchte ihn nicht in Philadelphia, wo (where) er war. Du lobtest diese Bräute. Er zeigte (zeigen, to show) und nicht eine haut (hide, skin), sondern (but; "but," after negatives, is translated sondern) mehrere (several) häute. Wir lachten (to laugh) eine ganze Stunde (hour), mährend (while) ihr weintet (to weep, weinen). Die Kapen jagten (jagen, to chase, to hunt up) die Mäuse. Das alles (all that) wirste nicht. Wir lebten wie arme Leute immer leben. Was er sagte, war gut und wahr. Der Schüler (scholar, pupil) weinte bitterlich.

He wept many nights. She sighed (seusen) loud (saut) and long. The powers (power, die Macht) of (von) Europe sent him (to send, senden) to (nach) England. She denied (to deny, saughen) everything. We praised the pupils (male and semale). You showed us (und) your pigeons (die Laude, dove, pigeon). I chased the tiger for one day (der Lag). Thou blamedst (to blame, tadeln) his work. We sighed for (nach)

assistance (Hülfe, f.). They showed their hands and weapor (die Baffe, the weapon). My grandmother clothed him in linen (linnen).

LESSON SEVENTH.

Exencise XIII.—1. Ich habe meinen Reffen gesucht. 2. Haft bu meine Neffen gesehen? 3. Der Löwe (lion) hat den Affen (ape, monkey, der Affe) gesangen. 4. Wir haben keinen Ochsen (the ox, der Ochse) gesunden. 5. Habt ihr ihm den Hasen (the hare, der Hase) gezeigt? 6. Die Löwen haben den Hirten (herdsman, der Hirte) gezagt. 7. Der Riese (giant) hatte viele Franzosen (the Frenchman, der Franzose) getödtet (tödten, to kill). 8. Wir hatten einen Raben (der Rabe, the raven) gezähmt (to tame, zähmen). 9. Die Juden (der Jude, the Jew) hatten die Russen getäusscht (täuschen, to deceive). 10. Ihr hattet den Buben (the boy, the knave, der Bube) getabelt.

Grammatical Remarks. — § 26. The Perfect tense is formed in the same way as in English, — the pupil may describe it, — the Participle Past being formed by prefixing to the root the syllable ge (called "Augment"), and affixing t to the root of verbs of the modern, en to that of verbs of the ancient form. The t becomes et, for euphony's sake, when the root has the Auslaut b, t, gn, fin, on, bm, tom; as, getodt-et, geläugn-et, gebab-et (bathed — baben, to bathe), gezeichn-et, geworn et, gewohn-et, geathm-et, geöffn-et.

The Pluperfect is formed in the same way, — the pupil may show how.

§ 27. There is a number of nouns naturally masculine, like Mirst, Othse, Bube, &c., which terminate in e. Such have, in all cases, singular and plural, but the Nom. singular, the termination en (new or weak declension). In the same way are inflected the nouns Mensch, man, herr, master, sir, gentleman, held, hero, Graf, count, Narr and Thor, sool, Bär, bear, Hürst, prince, Mohr, negro; and a number of foreign words denoting males, like Abvolat, advocate, Kandibat, candidate,

Husar, hussar, Monarch, Komet, Paragraph, Theolog, theologian, Jesuit, Regent, Tyrann, tyrant, Poet, and a great many more.

This declension never has the Unlaut in the plural; as, ber Knabe, pl. die Knaben (boys); der Bote (messenger), pl. die Boten; der Jude, pl. die Juden.

Exencise XIV. — Die Knaben haben bies (this) gemacht. Ich habe nie die Griechen (Greeks) und Türken geliebt. hattest bu nicht die Russen gelobt? Die Bären und Löwen sind Feinde (enemy, der Feind). Iene Buben haben dies gesagt. Alle Menschen sind mehr oder weniger (less) Narren. Die Jesuiten haben viele Kürsten ermordet (to murder, morden). Wie viele Soldaten (soldiers) habt ihr gesehen? Diese Stlaven (slave, der Stlave) hatten ihre herren nie geliebt. Die Sachsen und Preußen (Saxons and Prussians) haben gut (well) gesochten (fought). Ich bin (have) weder (neither) ein Sachse noch (nor) ein Preuße gewesen (been).

The mothers have praised their boys. I had entirely (gan3) forgotten his words. Hast thou not blamed this prince and that count? The messengers had at last (entité, from Ente, end) found their master. My godfathers (Pathe) and godmothers had praised my face (bas Gesicht). The princesses and countesses were no heroines. I have always hated this tyrant and all monarchs. No man has seen God. The Christians (the Christian, ber Christ) have oppressed (to oppress, brüden) the Jews.

LESSON EIGHTH.

Exercise XV.—1. Ich bin auch (also) ein Kind gewesen, wir alle sind Kinder gewesen (been). 2. Ihr seid keine wahren Männer gewesen. 3. Diese Bücher sind mein gewesen. 4. Das Gelb war nicht dagewesen. 5. Bist du so lange ohne (without) Amt (n. office) gewesen? 6. Ich werde diese (die) schönen Thäler (das Thal, the dale, valley) besuchen (visit). 7. Wirst du, oder wird er Felder kausen (buy)? 8. Er wird die Häuser und die Dächer (das Dach, roof, from decken, to cover) besehen (inspect).

9. Wir werben wie bie Götter leben, und ihr werbet Ehre (honor) und Reichthümer (riches, ber Reichthum, -dom, thum) bekommen (get). 10. Die Bilber (bas Bild, the image, picture) werben verloren gehen (be lost).

Grammatical Remarks.—§ 28. The Perfect tense of the auxiliary verb sein (to be) is not compounded with haben, as in English, but with sein; the same holds good, of course, of the Plupersect. The pupil may insect both forms in all six persons.

§ 29. The Future tense is formed from the regular and irregular verbs in the same way as from the auxiliary verbs (see § 16),—the pupil may explain how. The Infinitive takes, in simple sentences, the last place, like the participle, predicative nouns, and adjectives.

NOTE. — The English language expresses the Future tense by I shall, thou wilt, he will; we shall, you will, they will. "Shall I do it?" and "he will do it," may each mean two different things; namely, "Am I (ordered, bid) to do it?" and "will my doing it go on at a future time?" "he is willing to do it," and "his doing it will go on at a future time." In other words, the English language has only one form for two different auxiliary verbs. In German the Future tense is always expressed by ith terte, never by ith teil, ith fell (see §§ 33 and 36), and the pupil should carefully notice this.

§ 30. A minority of monosyllabic neuter and masculine nouns take in the plural the termination er (with the *Umlaut* in all cases), instead of e, and must, therefore, be carefully committed to memory.

The following masculine nouns have er: Mann, Walb, Leib, body, Geist, spirit, Burm, worm, Rand, edge, Strauch, shrub, Reichthum, and Irrthum.

The following neuter nouns have er: Rind, Dorf, village, Amt, Blatt, leaf, Buch, Rest, Felb, Gelb, Dach, Fach, drawer, Thal, Kleib, dress (cloth), Rind, bullock, Kalb, calf, Lied, song, Rad, wheel, Bad, bath, Schloß, castle, lock, Schwert, sword, Lamm, lamb, Haus, Weib, wife, Bild, Land, Band, ribbon, Pfand, pawn, Tuch, cloth, Beest, Haupt, head, Gras, Glas, Loch, hole, Aas, carrion, Ei, egg, Faß, vat, cask, Grab, grave, Gut, good, Huhn, hen, chicken, Korn, grain, corn, Kraut,

herb, Maul, mouth, Reis, twig, Boll, nation, people, Gemüth, mind, Gesicht, Gespenst, spectre, Geschliecht, family, sex; also all terminating in thum, and two in mal; as, Bisthum, bishopric, Denkmal, monument, Gastmal, collation.

- § 31. The 2d and 6th sentences show that the adjective assumes the termination in en, when following a pronoun or article; this it does in all cases, except the Nom. singular (see § 35); or, in other words, it assumes the terminations of the new or weak declension.
- § 32. The prefixed syllable be (see 6th and 8th sentences) renders neuter verbs transitive: lachen belachen, to laugh at; beweinen, to weep for; besprechen, to discuss (from sprechen, to speak); begehen, to commit (from gehen, to go); bereben, to persuade.

Exencise XVI. — Berbe ich die weißen Rleiber bekommen? Du wirst andere (other) Bölfer sehen. Er wird neue Lieber singen. Wir werben scharse (sharp) Schwerter schwingen (to swing, whirl). Werbet ihr die Bogelnester besingen? Die Hühner werben Eier legen (to lay). Bin ich nicht froh (glad, from freuen, to rejoice) gewesen? Die Baumblätter und Reiser und Gräser und Sträucher und Kräuter sind noch (yet) gestern (only yesterday) grün (green) gewesen. Seine Irthümer waren sein Unglück, n., good luck, Unglück, dad luck) gewesen. Diese braunen (brown) Tücher waren vorher (previously) roth (red) gewesen.

We shall get guests (ber Gast). I shall visit these old graves. Wilt thou laugh at these calves and lambs, bullocks and worms? He will visit foreign (fremb) nations. Will you discuss the families (Geschlecht), principalities (Hürstenthum), monuments, and castles of this country (bieses Landes)? They will draw all the beautiful faces and heads, villages and countries, which they shall see. We shall take (nehmen) warm and cold (fast) baths. We made wry (schief) faces (Maul). These glasses have holes. The woods have never been so fresh and green as this year (bas Jahr). You have improved (gebessert,

from bessern) your bodies, but not your minds and spirits. You will break (zerbrechen) these wheels. Good husbands (Mann) will always have good wives. We have grown (bauen) many grains.

LESSON NINTH.

Exercise XVII.—1. Ich will nicht mehr machen, als ich (machen) muß. 2. Du willft nicht nach (to) Frankreich gehen ? Du mußt. 8. Er will bie bittere Arznei nicht nehmen, welche er nehmen muß. 4. Wir wollen nicht mehr Sprachen (language, die Sprache) lernen, als wir durchaus (absolutely) müssen. 5. Thr Thoren wollt diesen großen Fehler begehen (Fehler, m., the fault, from sehlen, to sail) welchen ihr nicht begehen müßt. 6. Diese braven Eltern (parents) wollen Bücher für ihre Kinder lausen, welche sie nicht lausen müssen. 7. Ich mußte nicht trinken, aber ich wollte. 8. Du mußtest Französisch sprechen, aber du wolltest nicht. 9. Der weise Arzt (physician) wollte ihm keine starken (strong) Pillen geben, aber er mußte. 10. Wir wollten einen guten Wein oder ein gutes Bier trinken; aber ihr wolltet nicht, und wir mußten das schlechte (schlecht, bad) Wasser (water) schluden (swallow).

Grammatical Remarks. — § 33. The above sentences exhibit the inflection of the Present and Imperfect of the irregular auxiliary verbs wollen (to be willing) and müssen (to be obliged). The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future do not exist in English, but they do in German, because this language can form a participle, gemußt, gewollt, and an Infinitive, müssen, wollen. Ich habe gemußt, I have been obliged to; Ich werde gehen müssen, I shall be obliged to (I shall have to) go; Ich habe gewollt, I have been willing, I have intended to; Ich werde wollen, I shall be willing to.

§ 34. From the 1st, 3d, 4th, 5th, and 6th sentences a new arrangement of words appears: als id maden muß. 1. Subject; 2. Object and Adverbs; 3. Predicate; 4. Copula. This arrangement takes place whenever a relative pronoun or a

conjunction commences a subordinate sentence. The following are examples of such conjunctions: als, as, when, ba, as, since, because, weil, because, baß, that, obgleich, although, wenn, if.

§ 35. From sentences 3d, 4th, 6th, 9th, and 10th it appears how the adjective terminates in the nominative of the singular, when connected with a definite article or an adjective pronoun, to wit: ber weise Arzt, bie bittere Arzenei, bas schlechte Basser, the two latter being alike in the Nom. and Acc. cases.

Exercise XVIII. — Ich will bich (thee) nicht bazu (thereto) Wirft bu wollen, bag ich bich beweine (bewail)? Er bereben. wird tein Gelb für biefen Dienst (service, from bienen, to serve) nehmen wollen. Er bat ibn getobtet; er bat es nicht gemußt. fonbern er bat es gewollt. Willft bu bier figen ? Rein (no). benn (for) ich muß bort figen (sit). Die gute Frau wollte es (it) nicht gestehen (confess, avow, from stehen, in the meaning of to be known, in which it is obsolete), aber fie mußte. Wer wollte mobl beutzutage (now-a-days) Landguter befigen ? 3ch mußte_ibn loben, fo oft ale (as often as) er gelobt fein wollte. Bir mollen in jebes (every, each) Land geben, wenn wir muffen. 3hr mußt bas blaue Zimmer (room) bewohnen (from wohnen, to dwell, to live), porgestern (the day before vesterday) mußtet ibr bas gelbe bewohnen. Das arme Rind mußte fterben (to die). Der fcmarge (black) Bengft (stallion) muß gut (well) rennen (to run). mußt einen Mohren nicht weiß waschen wollen.

Must I now (jest) shoot (schiesen)? Thou needest not (do it), if thou wilt not (do it). The poor (arm) fellow (Bursch) is half dead (halbtobt) with fear (vor Furcht); he must have lost all his courage. We must die, even (selbst, sogar) if we will not. You must not stand still. Will you visit the sick (frant) child, or will you not (do it)? It is so easy (seicht, light), you must comprehend (begreisen, from greisen, to gripe, grasp) this sentence (de Sas, from sesen, to put, to state). I had to go, but was not willing to (do so). Thou didst intend to sleep (schlasen). Thou wast obliged to consess it. The next (nächst,

Bed alove

from nah, nigh) consequence (Folge, f., from folgen, to follow) was, that he was obliged to flee (flichen). We would not obey (befolgen) these wise teachings (Lehre, f.). This nice (hübich) tree has fallen (ift gefallen); I have felled (fällen) it; I have had (to do it); I was not at all willing (to do so). Thou wilt perhaps (vielleicht) be willing to go, but thou wilt not be compelled (to). She said that she had been obliged to marry (heirathen), although she had not been willing.

LESSON TENTH.

Exercise XIX .- 1. 3ch foll gehorchen (obey, from hören and borden, to hark, listen), aber ich fann nicht. 2. Du follft miffen (to know,—the root preserved in the English wit, to wit, witness) baff bu ichlecht lefen fannft. 3. Bas ber achte (genuine, from achten, to deem, to esteem) Mann foll, bas fann er auch. 4. Wir tonnen bas ichmere (heavy, grave) Berbrechen (crime, from brechen, to break [law]), welches wir gestehen follen, nicht gestehen. 5. Shr follt eure Eltern nicht belügen (deceive by lies, from lugen, to lie), auch (even) wenn ihr tonnt. 6. Die Knaben tonnen bie unreifen (ripe, reif) Fruchte (fruit, Die Frucht) nicht genießen (to eat, from nup, useful), welche fle geniegen follen. 7. 36 fonnte vieles Gelb gewinnen (to win, gain, - the German root winnen is obsolete); aber mein Bormund (tutor, guardian, pl. Bormunber) wollte, ich follte es nicht. 8. Du fonnteft es weniaftene (at least) wiffen, aber wir fonnten es feineswege (by no means). 9. Er follte ein Gebicht (poesy, from bichten, benten, to think, to feign) hersagen (recite, from her, hither, and sagen), er tonnte es aber fo wenig, als bie Anberen es fonnten. 10. 3ch habe mein Leben lang (all my lifetime) gefonnt, was ich gefollt habe, und werbe immer tonnen, mas ich follen werbe.

Grammatical Remarks. — § 36. This lesson shows the forms of the two irregular auxiliary verbs sollen and können. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future tenses are analogous to mossen and mussen, § 33. 3th soller is sometimes translated 'I should,' oftener 'I was to,' 'I had to,' 'it was my duty to'; as, ith habe

MINN MINN To mitt MINNE Sombridge MINNE LESSONS. 29

gefollt, it has been my duty, or my fate; ich werde sollen, I shall have to, it shall be my duty or fate; ich konnte, ich habe gekonnt, I was (have been) able to, etc. Ich kann is often equivalent to 'I understand,' 'I know how to'; as, ich kann lesen, I know how to read.

§ 37. Derivative verbs and nouns are formed by the prefix ge, this latter not altering the meaning of the root at all, or only intensifying it; as, gewinnen, gestehen, geniesen, gebrauchen (from brauchen, to use, — root in the English to brook), Gewinn, m, genau, accurate, precisely (from nah), genug, etc.

§ 38. The word falled in the 2d sentence has the function of an adverb. Almost all adjectives in their predicative form may be employed as adverbs.

§ 39. The 7th sentence shows that the adjective, when not preceded by an article or pronoun, must assume the inflection of the article in all cases; as, guter Bein, because of ber Bein; gute Milch (milk), because of die Milch; gutes Essen (food), because of das Essen; gute Männer, Beiber und Kinder, because of die Männer, Beiber und Kinder. For the same reason, the adjective must, after the Nominative case of the article ein, ein, ein, which has no inflection in the masculine and neuter gender, assume the above inflections; as, ein schöner Garten, eine reine (clean) Hand, ein genaues Lesen (reading). The same rule obtains after mein, bein, sein, unser, euer, ihr, and kein.

Exencise XX.—Soll ich ein anderes Buch gebrauchen? Aber ich kann nicht. Sollst du, großer Flegel (flail—urchin) nicht gut schreiben (write), und kannst du etwa nicht? Süße (sweet) Milch kann gerinnen (from rennen, to run, curdle), soll es aber nicht (thun, to do, may as well be omitted). Wir sollten das Unrecht bekennen (consess), konnten es aber nicht. Solltet ihr nicht bald wieder gesund (sound,—the German root is lost, healthy) werden (become)? Ihr, o treue Freunde, konntet mir (me, to me) nicht helsen. Ich konnte mich nicht andere (otherwise) behelsen. Wahre Liebe und Treue (love and fidelity) wird nicht lügen sollen. Reiner Wein und klares (clear) Bier wird

30 GERMAN GRAMMAR.

nicht andere ale (not, but) gefund fein tonnen. Du follft nicht ehebrechen (Gbe, wedlock).

You say, I shall commit no misdemeanor (Bergeben); but I cannot do it, even if I would. Nobody (Niemand) is obliged (to do) what he cannot (do). I know somebody (Semant) who could not read aloud, when he ought to do it. Thou canst laugh at my words, when thou shouldst weep? Thou shalt be my steady (stet) friend and companion (Begleiter, from be-ge-leiten, to lead). Can a mere (blog) ghost (Geift) have real (mahr) arms (ber Arm) and legs (bas Bein, bone). Shall a malicious (bös) enemy rob (berauben, from rauben) our fields, and plunder (plundern) our houses? We could not easily deceive (taufden. betrügen) her (sie). You should not forget everything (which. mas) you have learned. We have not been able to order (bestellen, from stellen, to put, place) what (it) was our duty (to do). A noble (evel) life can do no harm (Harm, m.). long coat shall be short (furz) henceforth (hinfort). (lahm) leg could not but (nur, not but) stumble (stelpern). strong arm should adjust (schlichten, from schlicht, slight, simple) Why shall we wait (marten) for (auf) her?

LESSON ELEVENTH.

Exercise XXI.—1. Ich mag (may) sprechen, was ich will, ich barf (dare, must) kein neues Kleid erwarten. 2. Du magst es serlangen (attain), aber du darsst (must) dann nicht zaudern (tarry). 3. Er mag ein großer Mann sein, aber er darf (ought) damit (thereof) nicht prahlen (boast). 4. Wir dummen (dumm, dumd, dull, stupid) Menschen dürsen (are permitted to) erreichen (reach), was wir wünschen, aber wir mögen nicht. 5. Ihr dürst (are permitted to) schwimmen gehen (go), aber ihr mögt es nicht wagen (to risk, to wage). 6. Dein schwacher (weak) Arm und weiches (weak, sost) Gemüth mögen erjagen, was unser starker Leib und hoher Muth nicht versuchen (to seek, to try) dürsen. 7. Ich mochte leise (low) sprechen, wie ich wollte (how low soever I might speak); er durste kein einziges Wort vernehmen (per-

ceive), ober er wurde (became) wild (wild, enraged). 8. Der graue (gray) hut (hat) mochte mir wohl (well) stehen (fit me), aber ich durfte ihn nicht tragen (wear). 9. Obwohl wir es gedurft haben, wir haben es dennoch (nevertheless) nicht gemocht.

10. Ihr werdet das neue Lied entweder nicht singen dürsen, oder nicht singen mögen.

Grammatical Remarks.—§ 40. Mögen and bürfen are the last of those verbs which, together with wollen, follen, fönnen, müssen, sein, haben, and werden, and eight more exhibited in § 89 and § 94, may be said to be the only irregular ones of the German language. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future are analogous to the four former. Ich habe gedurst is often translated by I have been allowed to; ich habe gemocht, I have liked to; and analogous the Future.

§ 41. Derivative verbs are formed by the prefix er, which gives to the root the meaning that its aim has been attained to. For instance, langen and reichen, to reach, to tend, to extend, erlangen, erreichen, to attain to, to reach the object of our desire; werben, to enlist, to sue for, to try to get, erwerben, to earn, to gain; jagen, to hunt, erjagen, to hunt up, to catch; tragen, to wear, carry, ertragen, to succeed in carrying, to endure.

The prefix ver imparts to the root the contrary meaning. Being at the bottom of vor, for, and fort, forth, it distances, destroys, makes undone the meaning of the root; as, vergessen, to forget, from getting and guessing; versesen, to blunder, to miss a thing; verberben, to spoil, and to be spoiled, from barben, to be in want; versieren, to loose, from ser, loose, empty; verbrechen and vergesen, to commit wrong. Less distinct is this meaning in versesen, to understand, versuchen, vernehmen, vertragen, to endure, versagen, to demand, ask, versprechen, to promise.

§ 42. Der neue Hut, to which ihn refers, is a masculine; therefore the pronoun referring to it must be in the masculine gender. Thus it is with the feminine gender; die Liebe ist gütig (kind), ste (it) thut (does) Riemandem Böses.

Exercise XXII. — Du barfft nicht glauben (believe), baß ich dir feind (or gram, averse) bin. Er mag immer schnell laufen, bas errettet (retten, to save, to rid) ihn nicht. Möchtest du wissen, wie ich mich besinde? Ihr mögt denken was ihr wollt, ich verachte (despise) eure Gedanken (thought). Arbeiten mag ich nicht, und zu betteln (to go begging) schäme ich mich. Ihr mochtet nur die Sache (sake, thing) nicht recht (right) bedenken (consider, revolve in your mind). Er mochte Lügen über Lügen erdenken, das konnte ihm nicht zu Geld verhelsen. Sie mochten nicht stehlen (steal), weil sie zu ehrlich (honest) sind. Du kannst nach Boston reisen (to travel); o, ich habe das gestern schon gekonnt, aber nicht gemocht. Wird dieser schwächliche, kränkliche Mensch mich tragen können und mögen? Ich mag nicht gern mein Mittagessen verlieren (midday, noon, Mittag).

You dare not say a single (einsig) word. I don't like to wait for him. If you are allowed to earn something (etwas), why have you not a mind (to do so)? He was not allowed to ask (fragen) a single question (Frage, f.). You must not be lazy (faul). He dares not betray (verrathen, from rathen, to guess, advise) me. He did not like to promise what he could not keep (halten). He did not dare (wagen, or burfen) to show his face. We must not read such (fold) books. He might be four (vier) or five (fünf) or six (feds) years old.

LESSON TWELFTH.

Exercise XXIII.—1. Ich wurde (became) heiser (hoarse) vom Sprechen; er wird es (so) nie. 2. Du wurdest älter und größer und stärker, aber nicht klüger (from klug, prudent, sage) und besser. 3. Er wurde immer kleiner und schwächer, aber sie wurde täglich dümmer und ärger (from arg, arrant, bad). 4. Wir wurden die größten und stärkten, aber nicht die klügsten Kinder in Rorbury. 5. Ihr wurdet die ältesten Leute weit (far) und breit (broad, far and near). 6. Die weisesten und besten Menschen wurden und werden oftmals die unglüdlichsten. 7. Ich bin durch meine Ehrlichsteit unglüdlich geworden (or worden). 8. Die meisten

(most) Schüler find belohnt (rewarded), die wenigsten bestraft worden (have been rewarded, punished). 9. Die Uhren werden überall (everywhere) gesucht; ste sind vielleicht gestohlen (stolen) worden. 10. Die höchsten und schönsten häuser wurden mit Kupfer (copper) gedeckt (roosed).

Grammatical Remarks.—§ 43. Here are the Imperfect and Perfect of the irregular auxiliary verb merben, to become,—the pupil may inflect them,—together with the Present and the Future, ich merbe merben. With this auxiliary verb the German Passive is formed,—the pupil may inflect it. 3ch merbe gelobt, means, not 'I am praised,' although it may sometimes be thus translated, but 'I am being praised,' or 'I become praised,' ich murbe gelobt is 'I was being praised,' or 'I became praised,' and so on.

Note. — The German Passive is somewhat different in meaning from the English; 'I am praised' means nothing but 'I enjoy praise'; 'he is killed,' nothing but 'he is dead by other than natural means.' But in German, 3th werde gelobt means 'I am being praised, I become praised,' I am passive under the action of somebody else, which is going on upon me. Er twird getöbtet means 'he is dying by the action of a subject,' 'suffering under it, he becomes dead.' Great pains should be taken by the pupil, in translating from English into German, never to render 'I am praised,' 'he is killed,' by ith bin gelobt, er iff getöbtet, (this means rather, 'I have been praised,' 'he has been killed and is dead,') but by ith werde gelobt, er twird getöbtet, and so on.

§ 44. The second and third sentences exhibit the German Comparative, which is formed, like the English Comparative in Anglo-Saxon adjectives, by adding the termination er to the root, giving, at the same time, in most cases, the *Umlant* to the radical vowel; as, alt, alter; groß, größer; Ilug, Ilüger.

The Superlative is formed by adding est or st with the regular adjective termination, and with the *Umlaut*; as, ber alteste; ber größeste or größte; ber slügste; — the *Auslaut* t, b, s, s requiring est, the *Auslaut* et and all other *Auslauts* st, for termination.

§ 45. The following Comparatives and Superlatives are irregular: from gut — beffer, ber beste (good, better, best); from viel — mehr, ber meiste (much, more, most); from hoch — höher,

れのがいたが

ber höchste (high, higher, highest); from nah — näher, nächste (nigh, near, nearer, next). Der leste, the last, and der erste, the sirst, are also Superlatives, whose roots, lat (late, latter) and eh (ere), are lost.

§ 46. The German Infinitive of almost all verbs may be employed as a substantive of neuter gender; as in the 1st sentence, bas Sprechen, speaking; bas Resent reading.

Exercise XXIV .- 3ch werbe immer armer. Du wirft jebes Sabr alter, nicht junger. Er wird gewiß (certainly) ber reichste Mann in Rem-Bort. Wir werben taum (scarcely, hardly) reicher, ale wir icon (already) find. Ihr werdet gelobt, weil ibr weiser und beffer werbet. Die Jungfrauen (maiden) werben verheirathet. 3d wurde mächtiger (powerful, machtig, from Macht, f., power) als er jemals (at any time) geworben mar. Er murbe ftete frober (no Umlaut), und fie immer matter (matt. wearied; no Umlaut). Er ift recht ftola (proud) geworben, viel ftolger als alle feine Nachbarn (neighbor). Ihr feib weit (far) rober (raw, rough, rob) geworben, als ibr mart. Gie mar fanfter (fanft, soft, gentle) geworden, als fie porber (previously) gewesen war. Wir find bedrobt (from broben, to threaten) worben, weil wir gabmer (tame, mild) find ale Anbere. Werben mir fatter (from fatt, satiated) werben, als wir bereits (already) geworben find ? Eure Gate werben immer falider (false). Die folantften (fclant, lank, slender), Menfchen werben nicht felten (seldom) bie ftartften. Die gefundeften Monate (month) werben bie trodenften (dry, troden) fein, bie naffeften (naß, wet) find wenigstens (at least) bie ungefunbeften.

I became his best friend. You grow fatter (fett) every week (bit Boche). He became our worst enemy. He has grown more stupid than he was. These dogs will become more ferocious when they have grown older and stronger. My sisters become leaner (mager, meager) than ever (jc) before. I am being bathed, because I cannot bathe myself (mich selfst). He is sometimes seen in Boston. We are praised because we learn faster (sometime, rash, quick, fast) than other people. He was

PRACTICAL LESSONS.

(Perf.) killed, because he became wilder every hour (Stunde, f.). His youngest sons turned out his most prudent ones. The (ie) higher a house, the (ic) cheaper it is built (bauen). The highest mountains of Europe are found in Switzerland (vie Schweiz). She becomes dearer (lieb, theuer) to me, the more beautiful she grows. The next aid is always the most welcome (willfommen). They have been sent to Missouri to become farmers (um Farmer zu werden). The last evil (libel, n.) proved the greatest.

LESSON THIRTEPATH

Exercise XXV. - 1. 3ch wurde (should) franter merben, wenn er mich verlaffen (quit, from laffen, to let, to leave) wurde. 2. Du wurdeft une vertennen (misrepresent) wenn bu fo fprechen murbeft. 3. Bir murben bochft (most, highly) ungludlich fein, wenn ihr une nicht vergeben (or verzeihen, pardon) wurdet. 4. Gie murben und Unrecht thun, wenn fle une Thoren nennen (call) wurben. 5. Berbe meifer ! werbet verftanbiger (from Berftand, m., intellect). 6. Gei ein guter Junge! feib mutbig, meine Jungen! fein Gie großmuthig (generous), meine herren! 7. Sabe Bedulb (f., patience, from bulben, to suffer), mein Rind! Sabt Webuld, meine Rinder! Saben Gie Mitleid (n., sympathy. from leiben, to suffer) mit mir, meine Damen ! 8. Liebe beinen Rächften wie bich felbft! Liebt eure Beiber mehr als euch felbft! Lieben Gie einander (each other), wie mabre Gatten follen! 10. Lerne bich felbft beberrichen! Lernt euch mit einander vertragen (to bear with), ihr Dummtopfe! Lernen Sie Deutsch, geebrte Buborer (hearer, audience).

Grammatical Remarks. — § 47. 3ch würde is the Subjunctive Imperfect of werden, and is employed with the Infinitive to express the Conditional: I should be, ich würde sein; you would have, ihr würdet haben; we should go, wir würden gehen. The pupil should give its whole inflection.

§ 48. From the 5th to the 10th sentence, you find the form of the German Imperative of the verbs fein, werben, haben,

and the regular verb. The pupil should form it from all the foregoing regular modern verbs.

§ 49. The above sentences exhibit some of the Personal Pronouns. We give here a complete list of them. Ich has in the Genitive meiner (of me), Dative mir (to me), Accusative mich (inc); Tu has Gen. beiner (of thee), Dat. bir (to thee), Acc. bid (thee); er has Gen. seiner (of him), Dat. ihm (to him), Acc. ihn (him); sie (she) has Gen. ihrer (of her), Dat. ihr (to her), Acc. sie (her); wir has Gen. unser (of us), Dat. unser (to us), Acc. unser (us); thr has Gen. eurer (of you), Dat. euch (to you), Acc. euch (you); sie (they) has Gen. ihrer (of them), Dat. ihnen (to them), Acc. sie (them). Sich expresses himself, herself, itself, themselves, one's self; the syllable self not always being translated by selbst. Es (it) has Gen. seiner, Dat. ihn. Acc. es. The German man (French on) is translated by one or they; as, they say, man sagt; one would think, man sollte benten.

§ 50. The most common form of address in German is that by Sie, you, which is employed in addressing every one except relations and intimate friends. You are, you have, you were, you had, you love, you find, are, therefore, translated by Sie sind, Sie haben, Sie waren, Sie hatten, Sie lieben, Sie sinden, whenever we address persons not our relations and intimate friends; you is translated by Ihr whenever we address more than one relative or friend, every one of whom we should address singly by bu.

Exercise XXVI. — Macht mir Plat (m., place, room) ihr Burschen! Senben Sie einen Boten nach kondon! Sepe dich nieder (down, take a seat), Kleiner! Legt die Lügen ab (off) und redet die Wahrheit! Sagen Sie doch (pray), was Sie thun würden, wenn ich Ihnen keine Antwort (answer) geben würde? Erfüllt, was Ihr versprecht! habe Geduld mit uns, liebe Tante, wir wollen uns bessern! Sei nicht ungeduldig, mein Mädchen (girl, diminutive form from Magd, maid), seid nicht albern (absurd), Kameraden (comrades)! Ich würde mich schämen (be

ashamed), wurde ich einen folchen (or folch' einen) gehler machen. Du murbeft bich irren (be mistaken, to err) murbeft bu Solches glauben. Er wurde bestraft werben, wollte er bir Schaben (m., damage) thun. Sie wurden nur sich selbst fchaben, wenn fle euch belügen wurden.

Be welcome, Charles (Rarl)! Speak the truth, boys! Lay the swords down, soldiers! Believe me, honored guests, I should do that, if I could (fönnte, subjunctive). Sit down, girls! Take chairs (der Stub!), my friends! Hear what I tell (fagen) you, sinners (Sünder, from Sünde, f., sin)! He would give his life for her health (Mejundbeit, f.). Would you not laugh at me? We should be traitors (Berräther) if we should confess it to you. She would be spoiled in New Orleans. You will be killed, if you go among (unter) them. I tell you, gentlemen, I would not do that for a thousand (cintaujend) dollars. Will (Conditional) you tell (erzählen) us a story (Mejchichte, f.)? Have mercy (Gnade, f.) on us, O Lord! Have pity, and pardon us! Become not angry (wild), little one! Become as (fo) good and great as (als) Washington, boys!

LESSON FOURTEENTH.

Exercise XXVII.—1. Ich binde die Rosen mit dem gelben (yellow) Bande (das Band, ribbon). 2. Er band die Blumen, welche der Gärtner schon gebunden hatte, noch einmal (once more). F. Er sand, was du nirgend sinden wirst, warme Freunde. A hast du dem armen Bater sein verlorenes Kind wieder gesunden? 5. Die Zeiten schwinden (decrease, vanish) dem ernsten Manne rascher, als sie dem frohen Knaben schwanden. 6. Der Schnee (snow) ist vor dem heißen (hot) Winde in einem Ru (moment) verschwunden. 7. Die Mädchen winden ihrem lieben Lehrer Kränze (der Kranz, wreath), so schön wie sie noch keine wanden. 8. Wir haben der Mutter, unserer theuren Mutter, Blumensträuße (der Strauß, nosegay) zum Geburtstage (birthday) gewunden. 9. Die Bögel singen im Walde so schön, wie

For for the vine in

man with the second

fie noch nie gefungen haben. 10. Die Barben fangen, ich fang, bu fanaft. er fang : wir fangen Alle.

Grammatical Remarks.—§ 51. Here we have the old form, or, as it is less properly called, the irregular form of the verb, according to which many of the most common verbs are inflected. The Imperfect and Participle assume a modification of the radical vowel; as, binben, banb, gebunben; fingen, fang, gefungen; the former omits, at the same time, the t characteristic of the Imperfect, and the termination of the first and third persons of the Singular; the latter assumes, instead of the t, for termination an en; as, ich fang, er fang, gefungen.

In the same way are inflected schinden, to skin, flay (schund), geschunden; bingen, to bargain, dung or dang, gedungen; bringen, to urge, brang, gedrungen; gelingen, to succeed, gelang, gelungen; stingen, to sound, flang, gestungen; schlingen, to sling, swallow, schlang, geschlungen; schwingen, to swing, schwang, geschwungen; springen, to spring, sprang, gesprungen; zwingen, to sorce, zwang, gezwungen; sinten, to sink, sant, gesunten; trinten, to drink, trant, getrunten; beginnen, to begin, begann, begonnen; gewinnen, to win, gain, gewann, gewonnen; rinnen, to run, gerann, geronnen; sinnen, to meditate, sann, gesonnen; spinnen, to spin, spann, gesponnen; schwimmen, to swim, schwamm, geschwommen; and sommen, so come, tam, gesommen.

§ 52. The above sentences show the Dative of the singular of masculine and neuter substantives. The article has been and einem, and the adjective pronouns assume the same termination; as, meinem, beinem, seinem, unserem (or unserm), eurem (or euerem), ihrem; biesem, jenem, solchem, welchem, seinem, jedem, manchem, etc. The adjective has en, the weak or modern declension, when preceded by an article or pronoun. But when not preceded by them, it must assume the termination of the article em, instead of en; as, bein guten Baser, einem armen Kinde, diesem reichen Manne, but gutem Basser, eblem Weine. The reason is, that the sign of the Dative must somewhere appear.

- \$ 53. The Dative of the singular of the feminine is inflected as follows: the article has ber, einer, and so have the adjective pronouns meiner, beiner, etc., dieser, sener, seiner; and the adjective has en, when preceded by an article or pronoun, when not, it assumes the termination of the article er, instead of en; for instance, ber guten Mutter, einer schönen Hand, dieser armen Frau, but guter Misch, reiner Butter.
- § 54. The Dative of monosyllabic masculine and neuter substantives terminates in e; the masculines and feminines of more than one syllable generally have no inflection; the same holds good of all feminines.
- § 55. The following prepositions are always connected with the Dative: ans, from, out of, auger, besides, out of, bei, at, near, binnen, within, mit, with, nach, after, to, nebst, together with, seit, since, von, from, of, su, to, at.
- § 56. Here we have two compound nouns, Blumensträuße and Geburtstag. On account of euphony in the first instance the word Blume has entered into the composition with its plural form, the latter with a euphonic 6.

Exercise XXVIII. - Bir haben fieben (seven) Rnechte (knight, servant) gebungen (hired). Er bringt in uns, bag wir ihm baares Geld (cash) geben follen. Die Feinde find in die Stadt gebrungen (invade). Er brang vor in bie Mitte (midst) bes haufens (heap, crowd). Es gelingt mir Alles. Es ift bem Richter (judge) gelungen, was Riemanbem noch gelang, ben Berbrecher (criminal) ju entbeden (discover). Bie flingen bie Gloden (bie Blode, bell) fo fcon! fconer ale fie vorgestern (the day before yesterday), ja (nay), als fie jemals flangen. Die Reben (bie Rebe, vine) folingen fich an bem Baume in bie Sobe (upwards). Er verfclang bas Brot mit feinem Auge (bas Auge, eye). Sie murbe von ber boben Belle (wave) verschlungen. Die lammer fprangen an bem bugel (hill) auf und ab (up and down). Der bofe Anabe ift über einen breiten Graben (ditch, from graben, to dig) gefprungen. 3ch gwang meinen Rachbar gu einem Bertrage (contract). Unfere hoffnungen (bie hoffnung, hope) find immer

tiefer (tief, deep) gesunken. 3ch trant Baffer aus fout of ber boblen (hollow) Sand. Sabt ibr nicht von meinem beiten Weine getrunten? Wir beginnen unfere Arbeit mit einem froben Spruche (sentence). Würden wir bas Frangofifche begonnen haben, hatten wir andere gefonnt? Der Morgen (morning) begann mit ichonem Wetter, ber Abend mit ichlechtem. Wer bat ben Dreis bei bem Scheibenschiefen (bie Scheibe, target) gewonnen? Die Stabt gewann (profit) viel bei biefem Feste (bas Fest, festival). Blut rinnt langfam (slowly) in ber Lunge (lung). Alle Baffer find zu festem (sirm) Gife (ice, bas Gis) geronnen (curdle). Die tluge Frau fann über bas, mas fle zu effen machen follte. Wir haben feit bem frubeften (fruh, early) Morgen gesponnen. nen einer einzigen Stunde wird er über ben See (lake) und gurud (back) gefcommen fein. Er fcmamm von meinem Garten bis (up) ju bem Damme. Du tamft nebft einem Begleiter nach mei-

ner Wohnung. Seit bem neuen Jahre find acht (eight) ober neun (nine) Regen (rain) gefommen. Er tam julest (at last)

Who has fastened (binben) the criminal with the chain (Rette. f.)? I found the whole city on fire (Truer, n.). What you did not find within ten days you will not find in eleven. My hope vanished with the light (Licht, n.) of day (des Tages). wound his finger with a thread (Saben, m.). The work has not succeeded. He succeeded better with sour (fauer) wine than with sweet (wine). I came to his house with a handful (banbooll) (of) fine grass. We ate the bread with the butter and (the) cheese. Will you not repeat (wiederholen, from holen, to haul, fetch) what you sang this evening? The poets (Did)ter) have sung much of a paradise (bas Paradies). She sang with a clear (flar), pure (rein), beautiful voice (bie Stimme). Nobody forced him to do this. I forced myself to sing a long song (ber Gefang). A dwarf (3merg) sprang forth (hervor) from the box (bie Schachtel). A poodle (Pubel) has jumped (springen) from a window (bas Fenster). They were at a frolic (Suffbarfeit, f.), and drank of his old wine. The new year has

40

au Gdaben.

begun at last (enblich); when the last one began, how unhappy we were! Our grandmothers spun and wove (weben) their own linen and wool (Bolle, f.) I swam several times (Mal, n.) over (hinüber) and back. Out of a pure heart come sober (fauber, rein) thoughts. After the dinner nothing was brought in (tommen) but (außer) old cheese, rancid (rangig) butter, fresh bread, and red wine.

LESSON FIFTEENTH.

Exercise XXIX. - 1. Wir befehlen (command) ben Anechten fo. und bu befiehlft ihnen andere ? 2. Der Felbberr (general) befiehlt ben Golbaten, mas er ihnen icon öftere (oftener) befohlen 3. Befiehl Jemandem (somebody) was (bir) ber Oberft (colonel) befahl. 4. 3ch fteble ihnen ihre Beit, und fie fteblen mir meine gute Laune (humor). 5. Du flieblft bem lieben Gott Die Tage ab. und er flieblt Belb wie ein Rabe. 6. Der Dieb (thief) ftabl biefen Leuten awölf Thaler, und nachbem (after) er fle gestoblen batte, empfahl er fich freundlich (took leave, empfehlen, to recommend). 7. Geben ift feliger (more blessed) als Reb-8. Nimm Feinden nichts, geschweige benn (much less) men. 9. 3ch nahm ben Dieben Alles wieder, mas fle beinen Freunden. meinen Eltern genommen hatten. 10. Silf une, wir belfen bir ein anderes Dal; wer Anderen half, bem wird wieder geholfen.

Grammatical Remarks. — § 57. The above verbs of the old form, besehlen, stehlen, nehmen, and helsen, are in their Umlaut similar to those of the Fourteenth Lesson. One irregularity is shown here in the second and third person singular of the Present, and in the Imperative, the e being umgelautet into i or it. Thus are inflected empsehlen, to recommend, bu empstehls, exempsiehlt, Imperat. empsiehl, Imperf. empsahl, Part. empsohlen; gebaren (to bear children), gebier, gebar, geboren; gesten (to be worth), gist, gast, gegosten; schelen; sergen (to cover, hide), birg, barg, geborgen; sterben, stirb, starb, gestorben; verberben (to spoil), verbirb, verbarb, verborben; werben (to sue for), wirb, warb, geworben; wersen (to

throw), wirf, warf, geworfen; berften (to burst), birft, barft, geborften; brechen, brich, brach, gebrochen; fprechen, fprich, fprach, gefprochen; stechen (to sting), stich, stach, gestochen; erschreden (to be frightened), erschrid, erschrat, erschroden; treffen (to hit), triff, traf, getroffen.

§ 58. The dative plural of all substantives, adjectives, and adjective pronouns, and of the articles, has n or en, the former when the nominative of the plural had already an e, the latter when not; when the nominative plural has already an n, the dative does not add one more; as, ben guten Bätern, ben guten Frauen, ben guten Rinbern; biesen armen Anaben. There is not a single exception to this rule at least.

§ 59. The English he—who is rendered by ber—welcher, seldom by ber—werzor berjenige welcher, the former being often omitted; as, wer Anderen Gutes thut, bem thun sie wieder. Gutes, 'who does good to others, to him they do good again'; wer stick ift ein Dieb, he who steals is a thief. The definite article is often employed as a relative or a demonstrative pronoun.

EXERCISE XXX. - Empfehlen Gie mich biefen herren. sing gilt viel bei ben Deutschen. Die preufischen Thaler gelten auch in Amerita. Bas galt ber Buichel Rartoffeln (potatoes)? Sie ichelten mich ohne (without) Grund (ground, reason). Schilt nicht wieber, wenn bu gescholten wirft; auch Chriftus ichalt nicht wieder, wenn er gescholten ward. 3ch bin in Berlin geboren. Seine brei Beiber gebaren ihm zwölf Cohne und breigehn Tochter. Er hilft feinem Ungludlichen; aber wir halfen allen, bie ju uns Wir fterben nur einmal, beghalb (therefore) ftirb getroft (consoled, from the root Troft, m., trust). Er ftarb vierzehn Tage nach ben Reiertagen (holidays). Das Getraibe (the grains, from tragen, to bear) verbarb auf ben Relbern. Wirb um (for) bie Braut, und bu wirft fle erwerben. Du wirfft mit großen Steinen (m., stone) nach Menfchen, bie bich nicht geworfen haben. Ranone (gun) barft von vielem Schiegen. Brich, armes berg (heart), ba (since) bein Anter (m., anchor) gebrochen ift! fprach er und bantte (to thank), brach bas Brot und gab es ibnen.

PRACTICAL LESSONS.

Bir haben mit ben Berfolgern (persecutor) gesprochen, sprich nicht weiter mit ihnen. Er traf ihn in's Herz.

He who will (mollen) learn to command, must first (erft) learn to obey (gehorchen). The older brothers commanded their younger ones to hide what they had stolen. He broke his father's (must be rendered 'to his father the') heart. Leah bore to her husband (Mann) Jacob ten sons, and Rachel bore him two. We recommended to the gardener and his wife coffee (Raffee), and to his children milk (Mild, f.). He died half an hour (cine balbe Stunde) after (nachbem) he had taken the poison (Gift, n.). The Greeks said to Diagoras: Die, Diagoras, for all thy desires (Bunich, m.) are fulfilled (erfüllen)! Live so as thou wilt rejoice to have lived when thou diest. broke the door open with a club (Reule, f.) Achilles hit Hector with his large spear (Speer, m.). Do not be frightened, boy. Do not be frightened, my dear sir! With what gentleman have you spoken of the matter (Sache, f.)? With none at She speaks Latin very well; I spoke it once much better, but I have not spoken it for a long while. The roses sting the prettiest (bubid) fingers, like the ugliest (ugly, bablid), with their thorns (Dorn, m.). He is happy who has enough for (au with the definite art.) life (Leben, n.), and tranquillity (Rube, f.) in his soul (Seele, f.).

LESSON SIXTEENTH.

Exencise XXXI.—1. Die Bögel bes Waldes sliegen (fly), aber die Besegten (sliegen, to be victorious, besiegen, to conquer) sliehen (stee). 2. Er floh vor den Wassen (die Wasse, weapon) seines Gegners (adversary) so schnell daß er beinahe (nearly) flog. 8. Die schönen Tage des Sommers sind verslogen, und unsere Lieben sind uns entslohen. 4. Ich ziehe (draw) einen Splitter (splinter) aus der Wunde des armen Kindes; ich zog vorige Woche sunszehn heraus. 5. Wir sind in den legten Tagen dieses harten Winters von Boston auf das Land (or nach dem Lande) (country) gezogen (to move). 6. Er bog (bend) die Eisenstange (iron dar)

- Je so jour local

mit der Stärke eines Löwen; brei unferm Leute konnten (fie) nicht biegen. 7. Ich habe einmal gelogen, aber beim Barte (beard) des Propheten! ich lüge nicht wieder. 8. Der Sohn dieser armen Wittwe (widow) belog und betrog Jedermann (everybody). 9. Selbst die Gewässer der salzigen See gefrieren, ste sind wenigstens seit dem Ansange (m., commencement, beginning) der lepten Boche gefroren. 10. Ich friere (feel cold) heftiger (more violent) als ich vorbin (a short time since) fror.

Grammatical Remarks.—§ 60. The above class of verbs of the old form—the pupil may exhibit their inflection—form the second and third person of the singular, and the imperfect, regularly. Thus are inflected, furthermore, schieben, schob, geschoben, to shove, push; wiegen, wog, gewogen, to weigh; versieren, versor, versoren; bieten, bot, geboten, to offer, to bid;—the following with a short o: sleben, sott, gesotten, to seethe, boil; sließen, sloß, geslossen, to flow; genießen, genoß, genossen; gießen, goß, gegossen, to pour, to found; schießen, schoß, geschossen, to shoot; schließen, schloß, geschlossen, to shoot; strießen, schloß, geschlossen, to sprous; verbrießen, verbroß, verbroßen, to grieve; slimmen, klomm, geslommen, to climb; trießen, kroß, gestochen, to creep; riechen, roch, gerochen, to smell, reek; trießen, tross, gestroßen, to drip.

§ 61. The above forms of the Genitive of the singular show that it is inflected by adding es to monosyllabic nouns, s to those of two syllables or more, of masculine and neuter gender, except those of the weak or modern declension, which, like lime, assume an en or ns the latter being likewise the inflection of the adjective, preceded by an article or adjective pronoun. If no article or pronoun precede, the adjective assumes its termination es, and before feminine nouns er. The articles have bes and cines for the masculine and neuter, ber and einer for the feminine gender, and analogous is the inflection of the adjective pronouns; as, biefes, biefer, biefes; jence, jener, jenes; welches, welcher, welches; folches, folches; meines, meiner, meines, etc.

- \$ 62. The 4th and 9th sentences show that by addition of the affix ig (y) adjectives are derived from prepositions; as, vor, vorig, former; über, over, übrig, remaining;—from nouns; as, Salz, salt, saline; wässerig, watery;—from adjectives; as, gut, gütig, kind; heil, hale, heilig, holy;—from adverbs; as, jest, now, jesig, present; hier, hiesig, of this place; bort, bortig, of that place; heute, heutig, of to-day;—and from pronouns; as, mein, meinig, mine; bein, seinig, seinig, thine, his; unserig, our.
- § 63. Derivative verbs are formed by prefixing the syllable ent, meaning away; as, entfliehen, entspringen, entlausen, entsichen, to deprive; entsliehen; entschliehen sich, to resolve upon; entspriehen; empschlen; entnehmen; entsommen, escape; entbinben, to deliver, to free; empsinben, to feel; entrinnen, to escape.
- § 64. Derivative adverbs are formed by prefixing the syllables hin, from the presence of the speaker, thither, and her, into the presence of the speaker, hither, to prepositions; as, hinaus, out thither, heraus, out hither; hinaus, over thither, heraus, over hither; hinau, thither, herau, hither.
- § 65. Derivative verbs compounded with the prefixes ge, be, ver, ent, em, zer (to pieces, as zergehen, to melt), m i ß (misin English compounds), voll (full- in English compounds), wiber (re- in English compounds), hinter, behind, do not allow of an augment in the Participle Past; as, begonnen, from beginnen, not begegonnen; genossen, from genießen, not gegenossen; vergessen, not vergegessen, forgotten; entstohen, not entgeslohen; zerborsten, burst, not zergeborsten; and so on.

Exencise XXXII. — Der herr bes Gartens zog und schob seinen Karren (car) selbst. Sie wog zwei Pfund (n. pound) grünen Raffees ab (off). Je mehr wir verloren besto mehr gewann er. Er hat ben Bellen bes wilben Meeres Stillstand geboten. Der heilige Laurentius wurde, wie man sagt, in Del (oil) gesotten. Als das Wasser aus der Basseruhr gestoffen war, war eine Stunde verstoffen. Der Bekannte (acquaintance) meines Mannes genoß sechzehn hartgesottene Eier in der Zeit eines Au-

House of Minings wife

genblides (moment, from bliden, to giance). Als das Del fott, goß er es mit Gulfe einer Ragd aus. Wir schossen mehrere Augeln (ball, die Augel) in den Stamm (stem) jenes alten Eichbaumes (oak, die Eiche). Der Kreis war geschlossen, und ber bleiche (bleak, pale) Sünder froch hinein. In wenigen Rächten ist dieser Strauch dis zur Höhe einer reichlichen (ample) Elle (ell, yard) aufgesprossen. Da ein Fest beschlossen worden war, so schloß der Lehrer die Schule. Es verdroß die Bormünderin des Knaben, daß die Strafe (punishment) ihn wirklich getrossen hatte. Wohin ift er getrochen? in das hinterhaus des Rachbars.

Whither has the crowd of boys fled? They fled thither (borthin). We concluded (fdliegen) a compact (ber Bunt) of friendship (Freundschaft, f., with the definite article). The nightingale (Nachtigall, f.) flew into the bushes of the hedge (Sede. f.). They drew the swords from their sheaths (Die Scheide). He was drawn through the ice of the frozen brook. The nephew of the present minister (Marrer) has lied and betrayed his acquaintances. The bow (ber Bogen) was so much bent that it broke to pieces. The twins (3milling, m.) of this young woman weighed together (zusammen) seventeen (siebzehn) or eighteen (achtzehn) pounds. We were ushered (schieben) into the room of the young girl. Each of the butcher's (Heister) oxen has lost from nineteen (neunzehn) to twenty (zwanzig) pounds. She offered me twenty-one (tin und amanaia) dollars for twenty-two The niece of the miller's (Müller) wife boiled ham (Schinlen, m.). The river flowed over into the city. We have enjoyed (genießen) much pleasure (Bergnügen, m.). He poured oil into the fire. Much blood was spilled (vergießen).

LESSON SEVENTEENTH.

Exercise XXXIII. — Ich tann breißig Pfund mit Leichtigkeit (ease) heben (to heave, lift); sonft (formerly) habe ich
vierzig gehoben, ja manchmal hob ich funfzig. 2. Penelope sollte
ein Gewebe von großer Länge und Breite weben; aber was sie
bei Tage gewoben hatte, löste sie Racht wieder auf. 3. Das

47

Bier biefer Brauer (brewer, from brauen, to brew) will nicht gähren (ferment) es hat sehr wenig gegohren. 4. Es ist eine Seltenheit, daß Schase später als im Mat geschoren (to shear) werden; wir schweren die unserer herren im April. 5. Wir hatten aus Dummheit und Schwachheit einen Eid (oath) geschworen (to swear) daß wir nie wieder schwören wollten. 6. Er konnte vor Schwäche nicht fechten (sight) denn (for) er hatte mit jedem seiner Gegner gesochten; er sagte: sicht du für mich, denn ich socht für dich. 7. Sie slicht (twine, plait) Blumen in's haar (hair) der Mädchen; sie kann gut slechten; denn sie hat viel gestochten. 8. Wir melten die Kühe nur einmal, früher molten wir zweimal des Tages. 9. Sie milkt die letzte der Ziegen (goat), weil sie se vorher nicht gemolken hatte. 10. Das Eis will nicht schmelzen (melt); gestern schmolz es trop (in spite of) der Kälte des Windes.

Grammatical Remarks.—§ 66. The above class of verbs of the old form — the pupil may give their inflection — embraces also the following: bewegen, to induce (bewegen, to move, is inflected in the modern form), bewog, bewogen; pflegen, to be wont (to nurse, modern form), pflog, gepflogen. The following have, moreover, an Umlaut in the second and third person singular of the Present, and in the Imperative: brefchen, brifch, brofch, gebrofchen, to thrash; auslöschen, erlöschen, and verlöschen, to become extinguished; lisch, losch, gesoschen; schmelzen, schmilz, schmolz, geschmolzen; quellen, to well forth, quill, quoil, gequoilen; schmellen, to swell, schmoll, schmoll, geschmollen. Four with the radical vowel au assume o: saufen, to drink (of beasts), soff, gesosfen; saugen, to suck, sog, gesogen; schnauben, to snort, schnob, geschnoben; schrauben, to screw, schrob, geschroben.

§ 67. The genitive plural of the article of all genders, and of the pronouns, has the termination er; as, ber, biefer, meiner, feiner, feiner, meicher, etc. In all nouns it has the termination of the nominative; all adjectives terminate in the form of the nominative, viz. en, but when the article or a possessive pronoun does not precede the adjective, it assumes the termina-

tion er of the article; as, die Mutter ber guten Kinder; bie Mutter guter Rinder.

- § 68. Abstract substantives are formed from adjectives by the affix e with the Unlaut, or by the affix heit, -kood, when formed from primary adjectives, and by the affix keit or igheit from secondary adjectives, sometimes disused ones; as, Wärme, warmth, Höhe, height, Rälte, cold, Güte, goodness; Gesundheit, health, Kransheit, sickness, Freiheit, freedom, Haulheit or Trägheit, laziness, Weisheit, wisdom, Dummheit, stupidity, Rlugheit, prudence; Dansbarkeit, gratitude (from bansbar, grateful), Fruchtbarkeit, fertility, Heiligkeit, holiness, Dulbsamkeit, tolerance (from bulbsam, tolerant), Freundlichkeit, affability, Frömmigkeit, piety (from fromm, pious), Mübigkeit, Mattigkeit, weariness (from mübe, matt, weary), Schlechtigkeit, badness (from schlecht). All these abstract nouns are feminines.
- § 69. Substantives expressing a measure, money, and weight, are seldom employed in the plural; as, zwanzig Pfund, zehn Eent, hundert Maß (bushel). The substantive expressing the matter weighed, measured, or counted is seldom employed with an article or termination; as, dreißig Pfund Zuder; etn Dollar Cente, a dollar's worth of cents; sechzig Stüd (pieces) Kirschen; drei Maß Beizen (wheat).
 - § 70. The 1st sentence, soult have ich gehoven, shows that an inversion takes place in German, when an adverb (or object or predicate) is taken out of its proper place after the copula, and for the sake of emphasis placed at the commencement of the sentence. Subject and copula then exchange their place, exactly as they do in a question. Compare, 3ch bin nun fertig (ready), with Nun bin ich sertig; 3ch have die Ruh gemolfen, with Die Ruh have ich gemolfen, nicht die Ziege.
 - § 71. The definite article is often contracted into one word with a preposition; as, im = in bem, zum = zu bem, vom = von bem, am = an bem, beim = bei bem, zur = zu ber, in's = in bas, aus 's = auf bas, burch's = burch (through) bas, über's = über bas, unter's (under) = unter bas, vor's = vor bas.

Hustra More Blummentwolike FRACTICHE JOSPONS. AS JOHN ON THE PROPERTY OF THE P

Exercise XXXIV. — Der Strom ift festimollen zum Rande. ie Wunde schwillt an. Die Erbsen (pen) quellen im Baffer, Die Bunde fdwillt an. icon find fie ju großer Dide gequollen. Das Blei (lead) fcmilgt am Teuer eber glo bas Binn (pewter), und wenn es gefchmolgen ift, ift es vom iconiten Gilbermeif. Der Berratber bewog ibn au einer Schlechtigfeit, natürlich (of course) hat er ihn auch gu allerlei (all kinds of) Thorheiten bewogen. Der Weber bat ihr ein Gewand (gurment) jum Sefte gewoben. Alle gegobrenen. Betrante (liquors) find wegen (on account of) gleicher Schablichteit (gen.) verboten (forbid) Bom Erhabenen (other form for erhoben, sublime) jum Lacherlichen (ridiculous) ift nur ein Schritt (pace, step). Gie fchworen alle Arten neuer und alter Bor Ralte erlofd bas Licht (light). Er flicht fic blubenbe (blooming) Rrange in's Saar. (Geibel.) Lift aus, mein Licht, auf ewig (for ever) aus! (Burger.) Die Gieblumen am Genfter gerschmolgen. Die Barte ber Bergen muß burch's Feuer ber Roth (need, misery) geschmolzen werben. Die Rergen find burch ben Luftzug (draught, from ziehen) verloschen. Der Gaugling foa Die gemoltene Biegenmilch mit vieler Willigfeit (willingness). foff fich unter's Gras.

We fought in the heat of the sun (compound) with great violence (heftigfeit). Yesterday I thrashed rye (Korn or Roggen) of great value (Güte). These beautiful girls intertwined their hair with garlands (Gehänge) of roses (comp.). The horses of the neighbors snorted like elephants. He thrashed the grain (Korn) to pieces. The river swelled over its bank (Ufer, n.). Seventy pounds of rice (Reis) are soaked (quellen) in pure water, and afterwards (nachher) fermented, until they become of (befommen) an agreeable (angenehm) sourness. A stream of melted ores (Erz, n.) sprang forth from the volcano (Bullan) and was extinguished in the sea. He screwed the boards (Bret, n.) together with a screw (Schraube, f.).

5

1

50 GERMAN GRAMMAR.
LESSON EIGHTEENTH

Exercise XXXV .- 1. Unfere beimifden (home) Berge liegen noch (still) wo fie bamals (at that time) lagen und immer gelegen 2. Du bitteft (beg) um Gnade? und biefen biebifchen Schurten (rascal) haft bu barum gebeten ? ach, ich bat ihn aus findischer Angit (anxiety). 3. Wir fagen (sat) im Grunen, wo wir fo oft gefeffen haben und auch gegen (towards) Abend werben wir ba figen. 4. Wir treten (step) in ben Schatten (shade), tritt mit uns in die Laube (bower). 5. Er trat (step) vorsichtig (cautiously) auf; ohne feine Borficht murbe er auf eine giftige (poisonous, from bas Gift) Schlange (snake) getreten fein. 6. Aus Feindschaft gegen mich ag, ober vielmehr (rather) frag (freffen, is eating, of animals) er Alles auf, was ich weislich nicht gegessen, sondern aufgehoben (to reserve, spare) hatte. Beforgniß eines Betrugs maß ich bie Leinwand (linen cloth) nochmals (once more), obicon ich fie zweimal gemeffen batte (meffen, to measure). 8. Sein Bebachtniß ift ju fcwach ; er vergift Alles ; gestern vergaß er seine Dube (bonnet, cap) oft schon bat er fein bemb (shirt) vergeffen. 9. Gein Befigthum (or Befig, m.) war präcktig (Prackt, f., pride, brightness, magnificence), ich sab es vielmale. 10. Bergig nicht, mir für meinen huften (m., cough) etwas mitzubringen, und fieh, was es Reues in ber Stadt giebt (what news there is).

Grammatical Remarks.—§ 72. The above kind of verbs of the old form comprises also the following verbs, all of them having the *Umlaut* also in the second and third person singular, and in the Imperative: lesen, lies, las, gelesen; geschehen, gescheh, geschehen, geschehen, geschen, to recover, — genas, genesen.

§ 73. Adjectives are derived, by the affix is, from names of persons; as, frechtist, slavish, slavish, methists, effeminate, findish, childish, biebists, thievish, herrists, imperious (all of them expressing something blamable);—from adverbs; as, heim, heimists;—from names of countries and places; as, englists,

MALOTICAL DESSONS.

fpanifc, fcottifc, beutfc, fcwebifc, folnifc, of franzöllich. By lich from abstract nouns; as, anothlich, Cologne, berlinisch. anxious, friedlich, peaceful (ber Friede), ehrlich, redlich, faithful, jahrlich, täglich, gefährlich, dangerous (bie Wefahr), abicheulich, horrible (Abicheu, m., from icheuen, to be shy), gludlich; abfictlich, intentional (die Absicht); - from names of persons; as, mannlich, manly, male, weiblich, feminine, female, finblich, child-like, brüberlich, brotherly, fonigith, royal, vaterlich, fatherly, paternal, mutterlich, etc.; - from Adjectives; as, altlich, elderly, rothlich, schwärzlich, reddish, blackish, franflich, sickly, süglich, sweetish (some of them in a diminutive sense);—the following are used as adverbs only: erstlich, firstly, folglich, consequently, freilich, it is true, fürglich or neulich, lately, treulich, faithfully, ganglich. entirely, schwerlich, hardly, sterlich, surely, mabrlich, indeed, and some others.

§ 74. Abstract substantives are formed from names of persons by the affixes schaft and thum; as, Freundschaft, Herrschaft, Knechtschaft, Bürgerschaft (the body of citizens), Fürstenthum, Christenthum (Christianity), Bisthum (bishopric);—and by the affixes niß and sal or sel from verbs and substantives; as, Gedächtniß (memory, from benten), Bedürsniß (want, from bedürsen, darben), Hinderniß (obstacle, impediment), Schidsal (sate, from schiden, to send), Räthsel (riddle, from rathen), etc. Those in schaft are all seminines; those in thum, sal, sel are all neuters; those in niß neuters, with a sew exceptions, as die Finsterniß (darkness), die Betrübniß (affliction, from trübe, dark, sombre).

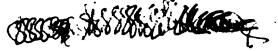
§ 75. The prepositions burch thy through), für, gegen, wider (against), ohne (without), um (about, around), are always connected with the accusative; as, burch das Haus, für den Magen (stomach), gegen alle Feinde, wider mein Erwarten, ohne alles Geld, um eine Waare (for a ware) handeln (to bargain).

§ 76. The following prepositions are connected with the dative and accusative: in, in, into, an, at, on, auf, on, upon, hinter, behind, vor, before, neben, near, by, uber, unter, swiften; with

the former when the action expresses locality, with the latter when it expresses direction; as, ber Bogel fliegt in das Haus, when the bird was out of the house; der Bogel fliegt in dem Hause hin und her, when he is confined to the house; ich gehe auf den Berg, when I was at the foot of the hill; ich gehe auf dem Berge, when I am pacing the mountain.

Exercise XXXVI.—Es liegt mir mehr am herzen, als es dir lag. Die Stadt New-York ist au hudjonflusse gelegen. Er hatte um Erbarmen (n., pity) gebeten. Die Mutter der Königin besaß (possess) einen Park in der Gegend (k., region) von Dresden. Sklaven sind bloßes Eigenthum (property) und werden besessen. Er betrat die gefährliche Bahn (road) mit schiberer Bekümmerniß (from sich kümmern, to griever Betrittnie des Lasters (n., vice) Psad (path), einmal betreten, wird er nicht leicht wieder verlassen (quitted). Iß und trink und sei fröhlich! vergiß, was dir geschehen ist, deine Trübsal und dein Leide (suffering)! Als er vor drei Monaten genas, hatter alle seine Leden vergessen. Der gräuliche (awfal) Riese maßkleben und ein halb Fuß, vielleicht noch ein paar (a couple of) Zoll (or Zolle) mehr. Er las in einem Buche. Als das Unglück geschah, aß er eben (just) Ruchen (m., cake, pie).

I sat down behind the bushes and wept bitterly, and while I sat there (was sitting) he asked me for a cent. They squandered by their gluttony (auffressen) their possessions (Besighthum) in a sew years. With the same measure (Maß, n.) with which you mete, it shall be meted to you again. He sank into oblivion (Bergessenheit). He was sitting beside the stove (Dsen, m.) while we were fighting the battles of freedom or servitude. Our room is above yours. The army (Armee) marched, or rather fied over the river. A deadly hatred (Haß, m.) spoke out of his looks (Blid, m.). He steps upon a volcano. Everything under the sun is exposed (auggesett) to error (Irrthum). She crept under (unter) the bench (Bant, s.). The money was distributed (vertheilen, from Theil, deal, part) among (unter) them. They read in my eyes that I had forgiven (vergeben)



PRACTICAL LESSONS.

and forgotten. I am happy in being permitted to sit beside (neben) you, where I have not sat for a long time. Take a seat by my side. It is true, I measured seventy-two inches on the last of June (3uni), but I measured more in May. Do not step upon the ice, it is treacherous (verratherisch)! He read the story before a large (groß) audience (3uhörerschaft). Look on the road before you, what lies there? Give me thy friendship.

S LESSON NINETEERING G

Exercise XXXVII. - 1. Du gleichst (resemble) bem Beift, ben bu begreifft (comprehend), nicht mir. (G.) 2. Sie glichen in ibren Bewegungen wunderbaren Erscheinungen (appearemen, from icheinen, to seem, to appear). 3. Wann babe ich einem furchtfamen Rinblein geglichen? 4. Arbeitfame und fleifige Mabchen ichleichen (sneak) nicht binter ble Schule. 5. Ehrenhafte Denichen sind nie wie Zeiglinge (coward, from feig, cowardly) geschlichen. 6. Wir weichen, weil bie Feinde gewichen find (to vield). 7. Das Uebel wich einer weisen argtlichen Bebandlung (treatment, from handeln, to handle, to act). 8. Er ergreift ben golbenen Becher (cup) und trintt ibn leer bis auf ben letten Tropfen (drop). 9. Gine unfichtbare Gewalt (power, from malten, to wield) ergriff ibn und murbe auch bie Befellichaft ergriffen haben, wenn ich nicht war (but for me). 10. Bas fie leiben muffen und feit gestern Nacht (last night) gelitten baben, bas litt nie ein Menich.

Grammatical Remarks.—§ 77. In the same way as the above verbs of the old form the following are umgelautet: greifen, griff, gegriffen; kneisen (to pinck,—root of knise), kniss, geknissen; kreichen (to strike, stroke), strich, gestrichen; pfeisen (to whistle), psiss, gepsissen; schleisen (to grind), schliss, geschlissen; schneiten (to cut), schnitt, geschnitten; bleichen (to bleach), blich, geblichen; schneisen (to smite), schniss, geschmissen; gleiten (to glide), glitt, geslitten; schreiten (to stride, step), schritt, geschritten; streiten (to quarrel), stritt, gestritten; reiten (to ride on horseback), ritt, geritten; beißen (to bite), biß, gebissen; reißen

ĸ.

(to tear), riß, geriffen; schleißen (to slit), schliß, geschliffen; fich befleißen (to apply one's self'), befliß, beflissen.

§ 78. Abstract substantives are made from many verbs, mostly compound ones, by affixing to the root ung (feminine); as hoffnung, from boffen; Genefung, from genefen; Erbolung. recreation, from fich erholen; Tröftung, from tröften, to console; Uebersegung, translation, from übersegen. Concrete substantives are formed by affixing er, which mostly forms names of males occupied with the action of the verb; as, Schreiber, writer, Yuufer, runner, Lacher, Ganger, Lehrer; - by affixing ling, denoting males, sometimes in a slighting manner: as, Reigling, Saugling, Findling (foundling), Jüngling, Sperling (sparrow), Frembling (foreigner, stranger), Günftling (favorite), Amilling (twin), etc.; - by affixing then or lein, forming diminutive nouns of neuter gender, the former being preferred after a liquid Auslaut; as, Baumchen, Gohnchen, Stublchen, Baechen, Knablein, Magblein, Buchlein, Bodlein (little tree, little son, chair, hare, boy, girl, book, buck). They express oftener endearment than small size.

§ 79. Adjectives are derived by the prefixes bar (the English affix ible, expressing what may be done), sam (some in 'lone-some'), and haft, expressing habit, constancy; as, sichtbar, visible, bantbar, thankful, esbar, eatable, trintbar, drinkable, bentbar, imaginable; surchtsam, einsam, lonesome, sparsam, sparing, wachsam, watchful; tugenbhaft (Lugenb, virtue, from taugen, to be worth, valuable), standhaft, constant, sündhaft, sasterhaft, vicious, schwashaft, talkative, lethaft, lively, schmeichelhaft, stattering. From all these adjectives abstract nouns may be formed by affixing seit, or igseit. Adjectives expressing matter are formed by adding en or ern to the root; as, golden, silbern, cisern, bleiern, sinnern, hölzern, steinern, supsern, beinern, metallen, thönern (of clay).

Exencise XXXVIII. — Wer reitet fo fpate burch Racht und Bind? (Goethe.) Sie ritten im Galopp über bie braune heibe (heath). Wir ftritten um bes Raifers Bart; benn mas haben

PRACTICAL LESSONS

mna

wir nun erstritten? Er schnitt sich in den Finger (his singer), er hat sich den Daumen (thumb) weggeschnitten (away). Das Rärrchen litt es nicht, daß ich ihr die haare (her hair) verschneiden wollte. Die Kinderchen schritten und glitten rasch über das glatte Eis. Er riß sich jedes graue härchen heraus. Rur noch ein einziges Schrittchen und er würde ihn ergriffen haben. Das arme hündchen wird von Flöhen (slea, Floh) zerbissen. Er riß einen Bissen (bit, piece, morsel) Brot für mich vom Latbe (loaf) ab. Seine Kleider waren zerrissen, und der Wind pfist hindurch. Die wachsamen Kettenhunde zerrissen den unbedachtsamen (inconsiderate) Eindringling (interloper, invader). Unhördar und unsühlbar, aber merkbar (perceivable, from merken, to remark, mark) ist er vorübergeschritten (pass by). Dieser Dichterling stritt sich mit seiner Muttersprache. Er ist eines ehrenhaften Gewerdes (trade) bestissen.

He seized the rifle (Būchfe, f.) and sneaked behind his back (der Rücken). This trick (Streich, m.) resembled the action (Handlung) of a coward. This virtuous little woman applied herself to the learning (Erlernung) of foreign languages. He ground the knife of the old beggar (Bettler) for nothing (umfonst). The swords were ground and sharpened, but no dreadful (furchtbar) war began. The horse has bitten to dieces its bit (Gebis, n.). We take every day a ride on horseback. They quarrel about trifles (Kleinigstit). I threw the load (Ladung) (of) wood behind the cooking-stove (Kochofen, m.). She tore (entreisen, with the Dat.) from his hands the cruel (grausam) secret (Gebeimnis). He disputed with a will (ciftig) for the honor of his country. We shut (Jusammenkneisen) our eyes, and slid down hill (den Hügel hinab).

LESSON TWENTIETH.

Exencise XXXIX.—1. Mein Diener schrie (to cry), ich sollte bleiben (remain). 2. Das Schreien hilft gar nichts, ich ware von felbst (of my own account) geblieben, hatte er auch nicht geschrien. 3. Bas blieb mir übrig, als ihm einen groben (coarse,

,

grub, rough) Brief (letter) zu schreiben? Derjenige, welchen er mir schrieb, war ja auch grob genug geschrieben. 4. Wollen Sie mir nicht ein Bündel (bunch, bundle) Stroh (n., straw) leihen (lend), ich habe Ihnen doch so Manches geliehen? 5. Der Prässident verlieh dem schwaphaften Bewerber ein Amt um ihn schweigen (to be silent) zu machen. 6. Er verschwieg, daß ich immer allein (alone) und einsam gewesen war. 7. hättest du geschwiegen, so wärest du ein Philosoph geblieben. 8. Die hirten treiben ihre Schasherden über die Gebirge, im herbste werden sie hierher zurückgetrieben. 9. Was trieb ihn zum Selbstmord? 10. Der Trieb (instinct) zum Leben ist stärker, als jeder andere.

Grammatical Remarks. — § 80. In the same way as the above, the following verbs of the old form are umgelautet: speien, spie, gespien, to spit; gedeihen, gedieh, gediehen, to prosper, thrive; zeihen, zieh, geziehen, to accuse of; reiben, rieb, gerieben, to rub; meiben, mich, gemieben, to shun; scheiben, schieb, geschieben, to part, separate; steigen, stieg, gestiegen, to ascend; scheinen, schien, geschienen, to shine, to seem; preisen, pries, gepriesen, to praise; weisen, mies, gewiesen, to show.

- § 81. The conjunction baß, that, is sometimes omitted, as in English. In this case the regular arrangement of words is retained (1. Subj., 2. Copula, 3. Obj., 4. Pred.), which after baß is changed (§ 34).
- § 82. According to the 9th sentence, wenn, if, can be omitted, as in English. This causes the same inversion as in English; as, hatte ich bas gesehen, so glaubte ich's, had I seen that, I'd believe it.
- § 83. When, in compound sentences, the main sentence is placed second, while the sentence dependent upon it precedes it, this inversion of sentences causes an inversion of words in the main sentence; as, wenn bu geschwiegen hättest, so wärest but in Philosoph geblieben (1. Cop., 2. Subj., 3. Obj., 4. Pred.; the same arrangement as in questions and § 82). The conjunction so in this case commences the main sentence, but is as often omitted.

§ 84. Here appears the Subjunctive mood (Imperfect) of ich war, viz. ich mare, bu mareft, er mare, mir maren, ihr maret, flewaren; and of ich hatte, viz. ich hatte, bu hatteft, etc. Analogous is the formation of ich wurde, viz. ich wurde, bu wurdest, etc.; of ich mußte, ich mußte; of ich burfte, ich burfte; ich tonnte, ich fonnte; ich mochte, ich mochte; but ich wollte and ich follte form ich Analogous with the last two is the formation mollte, ich follte. of the Subjunctive mood of the Imperfect of all verbs of the new form; all those of the old form take the Umlaut (a a, p b. u ü) wherever it is possible, and the termination in e; as, its trant, trante; ich warf, marfe (or murfe); ich gab, gabe; ich bob, bobe : ich ichob, icobe : ich log, loge : ich folug, ichluge : ich trug. The Subjunctive mood of the Present tense is ich binich fei, bu feift, er fei, wir feien, ihr feiet, fie feien; ich habe - ich babe, bu babeft, er babe, wir baben, ihr babet, fie baben ; ich merbe -ich werbe, bu werbeft, er werbe, wir werben, etc. Analogous with ith habe and werbe are all Subjunctives of the Present of the regular verbs. 3ch muß has ich musse; ich barf, ich bürfe: ich mag, ich moge; ich tann, ich tonne; - but ich foll, ich folle; ich will, ich wolle. The pupil may inflect a few verbs of every description in the Present and Imperfect of both moods.

Exercise XL. — Er wies mienein Bilb (picture), welches er mir noch nicht gewiesen hatte und nie wieder weisen wird. Es scheint mir (it seems to me) die Preise des hopfens (hops) und Malzes (malt), also auch des Bieres werden steigen; sie stiegen gestern ein wenig. Bäre er in's Boot gestiegen, so wären wir alle ertrunken (drowned). Es schien, er hatte ein Jusammentressen zu vermeiden gewünscht. Der Frühling schied mit seinen Freuden. Scheiden und Meiden thut weh. Die jesigen Zeiten sind von den früheren verschieden (different). Das Glüd hat ihn hartnädig (hard-necked, stiff, from der Raden, neck, pertinaciously) gemieden. Die Frommen (pious) preisen Gott dafür. Sie hätten uns noch mehr gepriesen, hätten sie nicht das Aussehen (scandal) vermieden. Es ist entschieden (decided): wir verschweigen das Geschehene. Die Geschwister haben lange Muste und

frembe Sprachen getrieben. Biele Madchen find beim Tange figen geblieben. Er hat den Befehl unterschrieben, der Berbrecher follte hingerichtet (executed) werden. Reden ist Silber, Schweigen ift Wold.

I cried aloud, and for this they accused me of treachery (Perratherei). From whom have you borrowed this pair (Das Daar) of shoes? When the guests parted, they were silent. The sun shines as brightly (glungend) as it shone on creation (Edipfung) day. When the moon was shining, they used to ascend the summit (Gipfel, m.) of the hill. The prices rose and fell very fast. He has seldom been silent for so long a time. What happy accident (Bufall, m.) has shown you the way? We have parted with (bon) each other in tears (Thrane, f.). The colors are rubbed on a stone table. The wheels (Rad, n.) are driven by steam (Dampf, m.). The wants (Brburinifi) of everybody are somewhat (etwas, einigermaßen) different. My companions seemed perfectly (volltommen) happy. He said he had avoided a dispute (Streit, m.). As soon as the sun shines again, we shall plough (adern, pflugen) our fields. Had the crops thriven well, we should have left something for the poor (plural). Had you remained awake, we should have stayed longer. If he were obliged to write, he would be unable to. He spat in the face of the monument. I have always willed that he shall be our teacher.

LESSON TWENTY-FIRST.

Exercise XLI.—1. Ich rathe (advise) keineswegs, was bu rathft, noch was Karl rath, noch was Franz rieth, noch was Gustav gerathen hat. 2. Ich schlafe länger als du schläfft und als er schläft, und als die Andern geschlafen haben. 3. Er schlief auf beinen Rath und Befehl von Mittag bis Mitternacht. 4. Er siel, und als er gefallen war, stand er rasch von seinem Falle wieder auf. 5. Fällst du zu Boden (to the ground) so fällt er alsbalb (forthwith) ebenfalls (likewise). 6. Ich halte das für Lug

12.00

S SS PRACTICAL LESSONS.

t es für

und Trug; bu haltst es sur Scherz (fun, sport); er halt es für Sohn (sneer); wieder Andere haben es für täuschende Berstellung (simulation) gehalten; nur Marie hielt es sur Wahrheit. 7. Wenn ich ihn frage (question), oder du ihn fragst, oder Papa ihn fragt, so macht er eine lachende, höhnische Miene. 8. Der Bube frug mich dieselbe Frage, welche ich ihn gefragt hatte. 9. Wie er mich jeht schlägt, so schlug er mich schon vielmals, so hat er mich schon hundertmal geschlagen. 10. Trage immerhin die schwere Last, die du trägst; ich trug sie selber, Jeder von uns hat sie getragen.

Grammatical Remarks.—§ 85. In the same way as the verbs in sentences 1-6, the following are formed: blasen, to blow, bu bläsest, blies, geblasen; braten, to roast, fry, bu brätst, briet, gebraten; sangen, bu fängst, sing, gesangen; hangen, to hang, bu hängst, hing, gehangen; lassen, bu lässest, selassen; hauen, to hew, cut, bu hauest, hieb, gehauen; lausen, to run, tu läusst, sief, gelausen; heißen, to call or to be called, bu heißest or heißt, hieß, geheißen; stogen, to push, bu stößest or stößt, sieß, geheißen; stogen, to push, bu stößest or stößt, sieß, gestoßen; rusen, ries, gerusen.

In the same way as the verbs in sentences 7–10, the following are formed: graben, to dig, bu grabit, er grabt, grub, gegraben; laden, to load, du ladt, er ladt, lud, geladen; tragen, to bear, carry, du trägst, trug, getragen; fahren, to move, ride in a wagon, du fahrst, suhr, gesahren; schaffen, to shape, create, du schafft, schus, geschaffen; wachsen, to grow, du wachset or wächt, er wächt, wuchs, gewachsen; waschen, to wash, du wäschest, er wäscht, wusch, gewaschen;

Of the following the Past Participle only (with a passive meaning) is conjugated in the ancient form; the Past and Present in the new one: ich falte, fold, gefalten; ich palte, split, gespalten; ich mable, grind, gemablen; ich salt, gesalten. Baden, to bake, gebaden, forms the second and third person singular of the Present bu bädit, er bädt.

§ 86. Derivative substantives without affixes and prefixes, or with the latter alone, are formed, as a rule, from the Past tense;

1859 1860

as, Trieb, from trieb; Jug, draught, from zog; Abschieb, leave, from schied; Steg, bridge, from stieg; Schmiß, blow; Riß, chink; Biß, biting; Schnitt, cut; Ritt, ride; Schritt, pace; Psiss, whist-ling; Kniss, pinch, trick; Griss, handle, seizure; Strich, stroke; Schlich, ruse; Maß (n.), measure; Fraß (m.), seed; Schwur, (m.), oath; Schur (f.), shearing; Hub, listing; Geruch, smell; Berdruß, grief; Sproß, sprout; Schluß, conclusion; Schuß, shot; Guß, casting; Genuß, enjoyment; Fluß, river; Absud, decoction; Gebot (n.), commandment; Berluß, loss; Froß, frost; Flug, slight; Trug, deception; Lug, lie; Bug, bow; Schub, pushing; Diebstahl, thest; Trans, drink; Gestant, stench; Jwang, compulsion; Sang, song; Schwang, shock; Klang, sound; Drang, throng; Band, wall; Schund, trash; Band, volume; Hieb, blow; Schied, partition. They are masculines, with very sew exceptions.

Such of them as assume, when thus formed, an e or t for affix, are feminines; as, die Stiege, ladder; die Gabe, gist; die Lage, condition; Sprache; Fuhre, load; Grube; Flucht, flight; Zucht, raising; Bucht, impetus; Bucht, bight; Geburt, birth.

Other such derivatives are formed from the Participle Past; as, Bund, confederation; Fund, finding; Schwund, decrease; Schwung, swinging; Sprung, leap; Trunt, potion; Burf, throw; Bruch, fraction; Spruch, legend; Spalt, split; Schlag, blow; Ruf, call; Stoß, shock; Lauf, course; Gelaß, space; Hang, inclination; Fang, catching; Halt, hold; Fall, fall; Schlaf, sleep; Rath, advice; Laben, Graben, Braten. All of them masculines. The feminines among them are formed with the termination e or t; as, Hufunft, arrival, Geburt, birth.

Others are formed from the Present; as, Schein, shine, Steig, path, Berbleib, abode, Schrei, cry, Fleiß, diligence, Berschleiß, sale, Streit, dispute, Leib, n., Siß, seat, Schmelz, enamel, Geslecht, n., Schreden, Stich, Besehl, Gewinn, Beginn. All of them masculines, except the few marked.

The feminines among them are formed with the affix e or t; as, Pflege, care, Gewebe, web, Frage, question, Spalte, fissure,

Ming (14m)

HACTICAL LESSONS. 61

Falte, fold, Basche wash, Trage, Bahre, barrow, Tracht, habit, Blase, blister, Weise, kind, Bitte, prayer, Schraube, screw, Schwelle, sill, Quelle, spring, Lüge, lie, Schwinge, wing, Schere, scissors, shears, etc.

§ 87. The Participle Present is formed by adding b to the Infinitive; as, liebend, loving, taufchend, deceiving, lachelnd, smiling, from lacheln.

§ 88. The adverb of the comparative has the same form with its adjective. That of the superlative is formed thus: am längsten, longest, for the longest time, am größten, greatest, am höchsten, highest, am meisten, most. Söchstens, meistens, wenigstens, längstens, spätestens, frühestens, are exceptional forms.

Exencise XLII. — Er verräth uns durch seine Schliche, wie er uns wenigstens dreimal schon verrathen hat. Er gräbt nach Gold in den Spalten des Gebirges. Er liegt auf dem Kirchhof zu R. R. begraben (buried). Er vergrub seine Rostbarkeiten in einem Graben. Es ist mir entfallen, wo er eine Wohnung bauen läßt. Ich gefalle (please) dir, nicht wahr (do I not)? Du gefällst mir auch; ich gesiel dir ja vorhin nicht; habe aber sonst Jedermann gefallen. Er stieß und hieb um sich herum mit gewaltigen Schlägen. Wohin läusst du (wo läusst du hin)? Die siedende Milch läust über. Die Klänge der Glode riesen mich in die Kirche. Am stärsten und lautesten schlägt die Glode dieser Thurmuhr (Thurm, tower, steeple). Der schafsende Geist des Menschen schuf Kunst (k., art) und Wissenschaft (science). Er wäscht seine hände in Unschuld.

How strongly the wind blows, — stronger than ever. He blew the cow-horn. She is frying a bag (Sad, m.) full of fishes. When Charles falls asleep (einfchlasen), one can hear him snoring thirty yards off (weit). The sexton (Lobtengräber) dug a grave in the adjoining (anstosen) churchyard. The ants ran quicker than those who tried to catch them. You who have entered (eintreten) here, leave every hope behind (bahinten). The coachman (Rutscher) stowed (laben) twelve persons in a small (schmal, stein, eng) coach (Rutsche).

She washes her hands and face twice a week. My step-brother has, at most, grown two inches. The little tree of which I spoke grew behind a fence. Who of you cried and called loudest? He hewed a branch (Aft, Burig, m.) from the little bush. He bade (heißen) me follow him with (in) the quickest pace (lauf).

LESSON TWENTY-SECOND.

Exencise XLIII.—1. Bohin ich auch gehe, da geht und steht er. 2. Ich habe ihn stehn und gehen lassen und bin nach hause (home, homeward) gegangen. 3. Er ging (went) und hat gehen müssen wegen (on account of) seines bösen Gewissens (n., conscience). 4. Wo wir standen da haben wir Riemandem im Wege gestanden (stood). 5. Anstatt (instead of) seiner that ich, was ich gethan habe und habe thun können. 6. Während des Gottesdienstes (service) thust du und thut er nichts als Unsug (mischies). 7. Längs (along) dieser Reihe (series, range) häuser standen prächtige Bäume. 8. Was habt ihr gethan? Richts, als was wir haben thun sollen und dürsen. 9. Haben sie ihn nicht unweit des Marktes stehen sehen? 10. Wir haben thu trop (in spite of) unseres schlechten Gehörs innerhalb des Saales (hall) singen hören.

Grammatical Remarks. — § 89. The pupil may inflect the three irregular verbs stehen, gehen, and thun all through. Derivative nouns are Gang, gait, m., Stand, m., place, condition; That, f., deed, action.

- § 90. The verb gehen is remarkable for its being, in spite of its neuter meaning, connected with other infinitives and participles; as, jagen gehen, to go hunting, effen gehen, to go to dine, verloren gehen, to become lost.
- § 91. The verbs mögen, dürsen, können, müssen, sollen, wollen, hören, sehen, helsen, and geben (the last two only with infinitives without an object) assume the infinitive governed by them without zu, all others with zu; as, ich mag sagen, ich barf glauben, ich kann schwören, ich muß benken, ich soll mich freuen,

ich will schweigen, ich bore fingen, ich febe adern, ich belfe bauen, ich gebe spielen; but, ich belfe ibm feine Pflicht zu erkennen, ich gebe mich ibm zu empfehlen; and ich bente auf Reisen zu geben; ich glaube, bie Wahrheit zu fagen.

§ 92. The above nine verbs (geben excepted), when employed in the Perfect and Plupersect tenses with an Infinitive depending upon them, are never employed in the form of the Participle, but assume the form of Infinitives; as, ich habe reven mögen (not gemocht); er hat spielen bürsen (not gedurst); bu hast effen können (not gesonnt); sie hat lesen müssen (not gemußt); wir haben bezahlen wollen (not gewollt); ihr hättet fragen sollen (not gesollt); ich hatte ihm arbeiten helsen (not geholsen); wir hatten sie singen hören (not gehört); hätten wir euch tanzen sehen (not gesehen)!

§ 93. The following prepositions govern the genitive: wegen, halber, on account of, because of; laut and justige, according to; trop and ungeachtet, in spite of, notwithstanding; mittels and vermittelst, by means of; längs, along; während, during; unweit, not far from; statt, anstatt, instead of; trast, by virtue of; vermöge, by dint of; um — willen, for the sake of; diesseits, on this side of; jenseits, that side of, beyond; oberhalb, above; unterhalb, below; innerhalb, inside of; außerhalb, outside of. Trop and längs occur sometimes with the dative case.

Exencise XLIV. — Gehe (geh) mir aus dem Bege! Geht Eurer Bege! Bie geht es euch, wie ist es zeither (all the time) gegangen? Es ging verzweifelt (desperate) schlecht. Geht es dir wohl, so freut es mich; geht es dir übel, grämt es mich. (Old Popular Song.) Es ging ihm wie es Jedem geht, der etwas meistern will, wovon er nichts versteht. (Pfeffel.) Der Thäter gestand seine That. Was haben wir gethan, daß wir haben sterben sollen? Du hättest dir nicht mit Lug und Trug helsen müssen. Hätten wir dir sollen slieben helsen? Du hast die Gloden läuten (chime) hören, aber nicht die Goldaten marschiren sehen. Der Uebelthäter hätte gestehen sollen. Was du willst, daß dir die Leute thun sollen, thue ihnen auch.

Territory of Met hours

What has the cat done to thee, that thou dost not let her alone (gehen). Houses are standing beyond the mountain also. A mill (Mühle) stands on this side of the brook. Out of town (außerhalb) there are (es giebt) no stone buildings (Gebäude, n.). No trees have been allowed to stand inside of the walls. He had intended to help him by means of a rope, but he was not able (to) on account of the noise (Larm, m.). Below the powder-mill (powder, Pulver, n.), a palace (Palast, m.) stood. An order was given (müssen) that it should be pulled down (niederreißen, Pass.). I heard him cry; he cried for (nad) help. I heard a mouse scrambling (rascen) above the ceiling. For God's sake, do him no harm! I saw him riding along the alley (Gang) of nut-trees (nut, Nuß, f.). I have seen him walking not far from the tower.

LESSON TWENTY-THIRD.

Exencise XLV .- 1. Bringen Gie mir ben erften, zweiten, britten, vierten und funften Band biefes Werfes aus ber Bucherei (library). 2. Den fechten, fiebenten, achten, neunten, gebnten, elften und zwölften brachte ich Ihnen gestern berunter (down). 3. Den breigehnten und vierzehnten, zwanzigsten und einundzwansigften, bunbertften und hundert und erften baben Gie mir noch nicht berunter gebracht. 4. Bir benten barüber nach (reflect on), ob (if) bu ben zweiundzwanzigsten Oftober bier fein tannft. 5. 2Bas hilft es, bag ibr nachdentt? wir bachten früher auch. es fei möglich (possible), wir haben es aber überbacht und eingeschen, bag es unmöglich ift. 6. 3ch bachte, bu brachteft ben Rintern etwas mit. 7. Ale bas Reuer brannte (to burn) nannteit bu bie Sige unerträglich; jest ba es nicht mehr brennt und langft nicht mehr gebrannt bat, nennft bu bie Ralte unausftehlich. 8. Man hat ihn einen Rarren genannt, weil er jeber Schurze (apron) nachrannte, er rennt aber bloß ben bubiden Mabden nad, fann man ihm bas verbenten (find fault with)? 9. 3ch tenne ihn ber Derson nach; bem namen nach babe ich ibn nie gefannt; und wen ich einmal tannte, ben ertenne ich immer wieber. 10.

65

Bertennen Ste mich nicht (misjudge), obwohl ich mich schulbig betenne.

Grammatical Remarks. — § 94. The combination of the Umlaut with the terminations of the new form in the above verbs also takes place in the following: rennen, to run, rannte, gerannt; fenden, fandte (or fendete), gefandt (or gesendet); and wenden, to turn, wandte (or wendete), gewandt (or gewendet). The Subjunctive is, ich brächte, bächte, brennte, fennte, nennte, rennte, sendete, wendete.

§ 95. All verbs compounded with prepositions, nouns, adverbs, adjectives, &c., in a word, all compound verbs, except those compounded with the inseparable prefixes, be, ge, ent, emp, ver, zer, miß, voll, hinter, wider, are separated from their first components, and the latter thrown to the end of the sentence, when the verb is a Present or Imperfect or Imperative, and the sentence a simple one (not dependent on any other or subordinate one); as,

Separable Compounds.

- 1. 3ch bringe bas Buch herunter (bringe ich bas Buch herunter) ?
- 2. 3ch brachte bas Buch herunter (brachte ich bas Buch berunter) ?
- 3. Bringe (bringen Gie) bae Buch berunter.
- 4. 3ch habe (batte, batte) bas Bud heruntergebracht.
- 5. 3ch werbe (wurde) bas Buch herunterbringen.
- 6. Er will, daß ich bas Buch herunterbringe.
- 7. Brachte ich bas Buch herunter, fo truge er es wieder hinauf.

Inseparable Compounds.

- 1. 3d binterbringe bas Bud.
- 2. 36 binterbrachte bas Bud.
- 3. Sinterbringen Gie bas Buch.
- 4. 3d habe (batte) bas Bud binterbracht.
- 5. 3d werbe bas Bud binterbringen.
- 6. Er will, daß ich bas Buch hinterbringe.
- 7. Sinterbrachte ich bas Buch, fo trage er es wieber binauf.
- § 96. The same use obtains with the four prepositions, burd, um, über, and unter, when the main accent or emphasis lies in the prefix; but when it is upon the verb, no separation takes place; as,

Inseparable.

3d burdfude' bie Båderei.

3ch umarmte' ben treuen Freund. 3ch aberlegte' (consider) ben Gebanten.

3ch unterftuße' (support) meine Eltern.

Separable.

3ch fuche burch bas gange Saus hindurch (burch'fuchen).

Er nimmt den Mantel um (um'nehmen). Er feste mit bem Boote aber (aber's festen).

Er legte ein Blatt Papier unter (unter's legen).

§ 97. The German Subjunctive (see 5th sentence) is made use of only when the action expressed has no real existence, but exists only as an idea of some one. This is chiefly the case: -1. In oratio obliqua, viz. after verbs having the meaning to say, to mean, to declare, to think, and when the words or opinion of somebody are related; as, er fagt, bag er in Berlin gewesen fei; ich meine, bag er bies nicht gethan babe; ich bore bag er frant fei; er ergablte, bag er von Rom nach Reapel gereift mare, als er gebort batte, bag ber Dapft gestorben mare, und er fei begigalb aurudgereist. 2. After verbs expressing a wish or an intention, and after bamit, in order that; as, ich will bag bu aufrieden feift; er beabsichtigt, bag ich Latein lerne; ich wollte, ich ware tobt. 3. In conditional sentences, when the contrary of what is real is asserted, either in the Conditional, or in the Subjunctive of the Imperfect; as, wenn ich Gelb batte (but I have no money); fo murbe ich Bucher taufen (but I do not buy any); marest bu reich (but thou art not); so gabest bu ben Armen etwas (but he does not give to the poor).

Exencise XLVI. — Ber überbringt bem Boten biesen Brief, bamit er ihn bem Empfänger (receiver, addressed person) übergebe? Du willst daß er Gutes von dir benke? Aber dann ist es nothwendig, daß du Gutes thuest. Wir bedachten nicht, daß er dawongerannt ist. Er sandte und rannte selbst nach einem Arzte, weil er glaudte, ich stürbe (or würde sterben). Wenn er doch ginge, ich dächte, er wäre beschämt genug! Er hat sich ganz unseren Feinden zugewandt; er nimmt neue Grundsäße (principle) an (annehmen, assume) oder legt sie ab wie man einen neuen Nod anzieht oder ablegt. Nimm mich mit, weil du sagst ich müsse die Welt sehen. Er wandte den Ausdrud an, daß Gott ein Geist sei.

Do not give up the ship! Put on (angieben) your coats! Lay down your arms! He ran up the hill, and jumped down again like a weasel (Bitfel, n.). We drink a bottle of Catawba every day, and eat (up) a dozen (Dusent, n.) apples. She brought up an urn (Lopf) of tea, and invited (ciniquen) us to help ourselves (aulangen) to as much as we wanted; we helped ourselves to one cup each. We proposed (porbringen) a new plan (Plan, m.), namely (namlia), that the whole party might go to (vornehmen) a play (Spiel, n.) The players proposed (fich pornehmen) to make (eingeben) a contract with the manager (Bermalter). He agreed to it, and they sent for a notary (Notar) public (öffentlick) that he might write down the same (berfelbe). He wrote it down, and said everything was right. The monkey burned (verbrennen) his fingers when he attempted to roast chestnuts (Raftanic): so he caught a cat, that she might fetch (bolen) for him the roasted (braten) chestnuts from (aus) the fire. We put the meeting off (aufschieben) to Thursday (Donnerstag) the thirty-first (of) January (Januar), and a second time to Wednesday (Mittwod) the twenty-seventh of February (Jebruar), and the third time to Tuesday (Dienstag) the eleventh of March (Märi), in order that the whole assemblage could be present (annefend). Pardon me, my friend, do not take it ill (übelnehmen), I have not well considered it; the next time I shall make amends for it (wieder gutmachen). He seemed to think that it was easy enough to kill (erschießen) a sparrow with a single shot. I misunderstood him, I did not misjudge him. We drew out (herauszlehen) our weapons, and defended ourselves (fich vertheibigen, from thun). believed that the preacher (Prebiger) was mistaken (im Irrthum), I should have corrected him (berichtigen). Who can wish that his adversary was dead?

LESSON TWENTY-FOURTH.

Exencise XLVII. — 1. Ich weiß, bag alle Reberei vergebens (in vain) ift, aber bu weißt es nicht, ober scheinft es nicht ju wiffen.

2. Der himmel weiß, daß ich nichts von dieser Schurkerei gewußt habe, und daß Alles, was ich wußte, sür mich nicht vorhanden (extant) war. 8. Wir armen Teusel wissen, daß alles Parliren und Controvertiren unnüß ist; und wenn wirs nicht wüßten, so würden wir's zu bald ersahren (experience). 4. Wisse, Elender (wretch), daß du mit deiner Schmeichelei uns nicht düpiren kannst! 5. Der alte Geizhals (niggard) verirte uns dis an sein unseliges Ende. 6. Karl's Eltern haben Franzens Geschwisser besucht. 7. Wir haben dis jest gelesen Schiller's und Göthe's Gedichte, Tied's, Musaus' und Grimm's Mährchen, J. P. Richter's Romane, und Bettina's Bücher. 8. Ich liede Schiller (or Schillern) aber ich gebe Göthen (or Göthe) und Lessing (or Lessingen) den Borzug (prefer). 9. Die Wallensteine und Tillys wären gleichzusehen den Schillers und Göthes? 10. Ich war bei Sumner's zu Besuch.

Grammatical Remarks. — The pupil may inflect the whole of the irregular verb wiffen.

§ 98. The gender of substantives can best be learned only by practice, and this is the reason why the pupil finds in this book the gender marked after each substantive where it occurs for the first time. Still the following rules go far towards establishing the gender of most substantives.

I. Masculines are, -

- 1. All male names and appellations; as, Bater, Bürger, Anabe, Bube, Mensch. Except the diminutives in chen and lein, which are neuters.
- 2. The names of the seasons, months, and days; as, ber herbst, ber April, ber Montag.
- 3. The names of stones and mountains; as, ber Diamant, ber Ricfel, flint, ber Ararat, ber Aetna.
- 4. The names of the winds, and regions of the compass; as, ber Sturm, ber Wind, ber Oftwind, ber Suben, ber Diten, ber Norbosten, etc.
- 5. All derivative nouns ending in ing and ling and all; as, ber haring, ber Jüngling, ber Hall.

LOGINA LESSONS.

6. All derivative monosyllabic nouns formed from the root of verbs without affixes, with or without prefixes, and with or without the *Umlaut* (see § 85). Exceptions: bie Schmach, bie Band, bie Burg, and a few others.

II. Feminines are, —

- 1. All female names and appellations, except the diminutives in then and lein, and the two words bas Beile, has Frauenzimmer, lady.
- 2. All words of two or more syllables ending in e, when not naturally masculine (as, ber Anabe, ber Nesse, ber Löwe, ber Affe, etc.); as, die Eiche, die Buche, beach, Birke, birch, Tanne, sir, Blume, Nelke, Rose, Lilie, Kirsche, Pstaume, Beere; die Liebe, Treue, Güte, Schwäche, Sünde, Bitte, Mitte, Länge, Breite, Dide; die Taube. Exceptions: das Auge, das Ende, der Käse, das Bette.
- 8. All derivative substantives ending in ei, heit, feit, schaft, and ung; as, die Schmeichelei, Zufriedenheit, Wirthschaft, household, Chrbarteit, Schonung. Exceptions: das Petschaft, seal, and der Hornung, February.
- 4. All derivative monosyllabic substantives, not naturally masculine, ending in the affix t; as, Fahrt, Bucht, Bucht, Jacht, Fuhrt, etc. Exceptions: der Aft, der Baft, der Gischt, der Bust, etc.

III. Neuters are, -

- 1. The letters of the alphabet; as, bas 21 bas 23, bas 3, etc.
- 2. The names of metals (except ber Stahl, ber Tombak, bas or die Platina); as, das Gold, das Silber;—and most names of raw materials; as, das Holz, das Del, das Wasser, das Fett.
- 3. The names of countries and places (the article, however, is used only when an adjective precedes the name); as, das reiche England, das stolze Boston. Except die Schweiz, die Pfalz, Palatinate; and all ending in et; as, die Türki, Tartarei, Mongolei, etc.
- 4. The Infinitive mood, when used substantively; as, bas

Sein, das Besen (an old infinitive), das Essen, Trinten; and every other word or series of words when used substantively; as, das Warum, das heute, das Nein, das Gute, das "Bete und Arbeite."

- 5. All diminutives in then and lein.
- 6. Those in niß, with the exception of Finsterniß, darkness, Kenntniß, knowledge, Fäulniß, rottenness, Betrübniß and Bekümmerniß, grief, etc.
- 7. Those in thum and fal or fel, except ber Reichthum, ber Irrthum, bie Trubfal, bie Muhfal, ber Stöpfel.

The gender of compound substantives is always that of the last component; as, die Borschule, der hauswirth, das Lintesaß. Exceptions are, die Anmuth, grace, die Armuth, poverty, die Demuth, humility, die Großmuth, magnanimity, die Sanstmuth, gentleness (from der Muth).

§ 99. The pupil may form the inflection of proper nouns from the above sentences. The saying bei Sumner's is elliptical, meaning bei Sumner's Familie. A kind of English or French plural, die Schillers, die Göthes, is allowed, when the termination of the plural in proper nouns would sound badly.

§ 100. The arrangement of words can in German, as the 7th and 9th sentences show, be inverted for rhetorical effect; either by placing those parts of speech which are to have a particular stress at the end of the sentence, after the predicate (as, id) have gelesen Schiller, Göthe, etc.); or by placing them at the head of the sentence, and inverting subject and copula (see § 70).

THEORETICAL PART.

fraglifet.

PART II.

THEORETICAL PART.

G. CHAPTER I.

OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

- § 1. EVERY thought, expressed in words, forms a sentence. A sentence is either simple; as, 'the birds are singing'; 'a good conscience is the best possible capital';—or compounded (composed of two or more simple sentences, united into one); as, 'man devises, God disposes'; 'wherever we go, our conscience goes with us.'
- § 2. Every sentence, simple or compound, consists essentially of but two members, the Subject and the Predicate; the former the person or thing spoken of, the latter expressing what is said of it. In the above sentences 'the birds,' and 'a. good conscience,' and 'man and God,' and 'our conscience,' are subjects; 'are singing,' is the best capital,' 'devises and disposes,' and 'goes with us everywhere,' are predicates.
- § 3. The Subject is always expressed either by a substantive or a pronoun; the predicate, by a verb. A substantive is the name of a person or a thing; a pronoun is a representative of a substantive, a short word used in its stead. A verb is a word which expresses an action.
- § 4. Substantives and verbs are, therefore, the most important parts of speech, and are called Begriffswörter (notional words), because they express notions, or ideas of beings and actions. All notions, however, being general ideas, the particular or individual kind of being or action cannot be expressed by substantives and verbs, but either by other parts of speech, as adjectives, numerals, articles, pronouns, adverbs, and prep-

71

ositions, or by other substantives referred to them. The sentence, for instance, 'the child sings,' must become limited, in order to mean something definite, either by the article or some other word; as, 'the child sings,' or 'this child sings,' or 'my child sings,' or 'the child of my brother sings.' And the singing must be individualized, if it is to be done, by an addition of what, or where, when, how, the child sings.

- § 5. All words qualifying or individualizing a substantive are called its Attributes; all words qualifying or individualizing a verb are called its Objects. Adjectives, however, may also be individualized by objects, because they may, when connected with the auxiliary verb to be, take the place of a verb.
- § 6. Language has moulded certain forms by which the individualization of substantives and verbs by means of attributes and objects is made intelligible as such to the hearer; as the cases of the substantive (as 'the child's father'), and the prepositions (as 'the man in the moon'), which show the relation between notions of beings and notions of beings and actions, while the relation between notions of actions and notions of actions is expressed by the compound sentence and conjunctions.
- § 7. The German language distinguishes, not, like the English, three, but, like the French and the Greek, four cases; the Nominative, expressing the subject, the Accusative and Dative, expressing the objects, and the Genitive, expressing attributes and sometimes objects.
- § 8. Language has moulded certain other forms expressing the relation of notions to the speaker. Notions of beings are referred to the speaker; —
- a) By the persons of the verb, the first person being the speaker himself, the second the person spoken to, the third the person or thing spoken of, expressed by the personal pronouns *I*, thou, he (or she or it), and, when there are several, by we, you, they.
- b) By demonstrative pronouns and the article; as, 'the man,' 'this man,' 'such a man,' pointing out just the man whom the

Je worney!

speaker speaks of, and 'a man,' expressing that he is a man whom the speaker has not before spoken of.

- § 9. Notions of actions are referred to the speaker by, -
- a) The Time or Tense, expressing whether an action is going on in the time Present to the speaker's mind, or in time Past or Future to his mind.
- b) The Mood, expressing whether the speaker considers the action going on a real one, by the Indicative (as, 'he goes'); or a possible, not a real one, by the Subjunctive or Conditional (as, 'if he were going, but he goes not'); or as a necessary one, by the Imperative (as, 'go!' 'begone!').
- § 10. All these relations under §§ 8 and 9 may as well be expressed by *Adverbs*, expressing the *Time* and *Mood*, and individualizing by means of the *Place* the *Person* or thing or action considered by the speaker.
- § 11. By the compound sentence the relation of notions of action to each other is expressed. They are referred to each other by means of Co-ordination or of Subordination. Two sentences, each intelligible without the other, when simply placed beside each other, or when connected by one of the Conjunctions und, and, aber, but, benn, for, fowelf—als auch, both—as well as, weber—noch, are co-ordinate; as, 'life is short, art is long, bas Leben ift tury, die Kunst ist lang; or, 'art is long, but life is short; or, 'art is long, for life is short'; or, 'life is as short, as art is long.'
- § 12. When two sentences are so connected that one is dependent on the other, a subordinate compound sentence exists. The one which is either the object, or the attribute, or the subject of the other, is called the *Accessory* sentence; the other is called the *Principal* sentence.
- § 13. The following is a table of the different parts of speech:—
 - L Notional Words (Begriffswörter).
 - 1. Verb (Beitwort).
 - 2. Substantive (Sauptwort).

- 8. Adverb (Bestimmungewort).
- 4. Adjective (Gigenschaftewort).

II. Relational Words (Beziehungswörter).

- 5. Article (Beichlechtewort).
- 6. Pronoun (Fürwort).
- 7. Numeral (3ahlwort).
- 8. Preposition (Borsepwort).
- 9. Conjunction (Binbewort).
- 10. Interjection (see § 284).
- § 14. Verbs are either Transitive or Intransitive; transitive, when the action goes over from a subject to an object which is acted upon or suffering; intransitive, when the action rests with the subject, without requiring an object in order to be understood and complete.

When a verb assumes the form of an adjective, it is called a Participle; when that of a substantive, it is called an Infinitive.

§ 15. Substantives are either Abstract or Concrete. Abstract ones are such as indicate things not perceptible by the senses, but only by a thinking process, as the names of actions, qualities, and conditions; as, death, goodness, misfortune.

Concrete substantives are the names of perceptible things and persons; as, horse, child, Boston, William. Such may be either

Common names, or such as are common to all things or persons of the same class; as, city, tree, flower, bear, etc.; — or

Proper names, or such as are confined to only one individual; as, New York, Ontario, Niagara, Francis, etc.

Names of materials, or such as apply to masses without any distinct individuality; as, milk, sand, wood.

Collective substantives, or such as embrace a multitude of Individuals in a Singular; as, government, assemblage.

§ 16. Adjectives (and Participles) are either used as attributes or as predicates. Only the former are inflected in German.

THEORETICAL PART.

Adjectives are employed either in the Positive, or Comparative, or Superlative degree; as, great, greater, greatest.

- § 17. Adverbs are attributes of verbs or predicates, and define and limit their meaning, as adjectives limit and individualize that of substantives, by detailing the time, place, and manner of an action; as, 'I spell fluently'; 'Charles is very diligent.' Adverbs are never inflected.
- § 18. The Article limits or individualizes the meaning of a substantive. The German language has, like the English, a definite article, ber, bit, bas, the, and an indefinite article, ein, eine, ein. a.
- § 19. Pronouns are representatives of substantives or nouns in general, used for the sake of brevity. They are either personal, or possessive, or demonstrative, or interrogative, or relative, or indefinite; as, 'I was happy'; 'his courage failed'; 'this man says'; 'what have you seen?' 'he who lies is wicked'; 'no one is to be seen.'

Pronouns are, at the same time, either substantive; as, I, thou, he, we, etc., that, this, which, each, etc., when not connected with a substantive;—or adjective; as, my, your, that, this, which, when connected with a substantive.

§ 20. Numerals express number or quantity. They are definite numerals; as, one, two, three, the first, the second, the third;— or indefinite; as, some, many, several.

The cardinal numbers, as, one, two, three, fifty, etc., are of a substantive form.

The ordinal numbers, as, the first, the second, etc., have the form of adjectives.

- § 21. Prepositions modify and individualize either the subject, or the predicate, or the object, by connecting them with a modifying noun; as, 'the man in the moon is to be seen'; 'I speak with him on this matter'; 'you like the taste of lemons.'
- § 22. Conjunctions connect either several subjects, or objects or predicates, of the same sentence, with each other; as, 'the father and his son are good'; 'I read and write German'; 'he

speaks English, but not French';—or they connect two or more sentences having certain relations to each other; as, 'you left the city when I arrived.'

§ 23. Interjections express neither notions nor relations, and are not in grammatical connection with the sentence. They are mere exclamations, interrupting the grammatical construction; as, alas! hurrah! oh!

CHAPTER IL

OF THE FORMATION OF WORDS.

§ 24. Words are formed either by derivation or by composition.

I. DERIVATION.

- § 25. The original germs from which words have sprung are called roots. All of them are monosyllables. The idea expressed by them is a certain kind of motion or action. All roots are therefore verbs; but not all verbs are roots, because there is a great number of derivative verbs. Radical verbs, however, are often compounded with prefixes, and the simple root is antiquated; as, ver-lier-en, ge-nef-en. Radical and derivative verbs are, in German, inflected after different conjugations. (See Chapter IV.)
- § 26. Many roots are disused in German, and many other ones preserved only in derivative words; and we must look for the root to ancient dialects, like the Anglo-Saxon, Norse, and Gothic. In other cases the root is common to all or several of the dialects, but has assumed in each a different meaning; like faren, to share, which originally meant to divide (a

This is at least the opinion of Becker, Grimm, Bopp, and some other renowned German grammarians; but the matter is far from being definitely settled.

share, ploughshare, Pflugfchar), but now in German means only to cut off.

§ 27. The derivatives are either *Primary* or *Secondary*. The *Primary derivatives* are such as are formed from roots, with or without a change in the radical vowel. The *Secondary derivatives* are those formed by *affixes* from primary ones. In each further stage of derivation the meaning of the root is more individualized.

II. PRIMARY DERIVATIVES.

- § 28. Substantives and adjectives are formed from roots, either by or without a change of the radical vowel:—
 - 1. Without any affix.
- 2. By the addition of one of the terminations er, el, en, t, e, which, however, do not, like the affixes of secondary derivatives, affect the meaning of the roots; as,—

RADICAL VERBS.

PRIMARY DERIVATIVES.

binden, to bind,

binden, to bind,

binden, to bind,

ber Bund, volume,
tie,
ber Bund, league,
beben, to heave,
lift,

lifting,

fliehen, to flee,
graden, to dig,
engrave,

binden any affix.

binden, volume,
tie,
ber Bund, ribbon,
tie,
ber Bund, league,
ber Bub, elevation,
lifting,

ber heber, siphon, elevation,
ber heber, siphon, ele

The following are some primary substantives and adjectives, whose roots, when not indicated, are lost.

1. Primary Substantives.

Der Mann, man (from Sanscrit manu, to think); ber Kopf, head (kindred with cup, Latin capere); ber Arm, arm; ber Fuß, foot; ber Fluß, river (from fließen, to flow); ber Bach, brook; ber Berg, mountain (from bergen, to hide); ber Baum, tree, beam (from to beam, to emit); ber Bald, forest, wood (kindred with wild, walten, to act, Belt, world, root to huxuriate); ber Beg, way (from be-wegen, to move); ber Sturm, storm (root stur, Eng. to stir); ber Muth, courage, mood (root Anglo-Sax. muchan, mühen, to move); ber Trant, drink (trinten); ber Bater, father; ber Bruder, brother; ber hunger, hunger; ber Hammer, hammer; ber Keller, cellar; ber Teller, the plate; ber Schlummer, slumber; ber Finger, finger; ber Meisel, chisel; ber Bogel, bird; ber Spiegel, looking-glass; ber Abel, nobility; ber Ragel, nail; ber Flegel, flail; ber Hügel, hill; ber Garten, garden; ber Boben, bottom, ground; ber Regen, rain; ber Laben, shop.

Die Sonne, sun; die Tonne, tun; die Taube, dove; die Mitte, middle, midst; die Seife, soap.

Das Haus, house; bas Thal, dale, valley (from theilen, to deal, divide); bas Land, land; bas Geld, money (from gelten, to be worth); bas Pfand, pawn; bas Nest, nest (from nisten, to nestle); bas Held, sield; bas Beid, wise (from weben, to weave); bas Ralb, calf; bas Dach, roof (from beden, to cover); bas Kleid, dress (cloth); bas Bild, image (from bilden, to form, build); bas Fenster, window; bas Feuer, sire; bas Fieber, sever; bas Gitter, gate; bas Rupser, copper; bas Leber, leather; bas Ruber, oar, rudder; bas Biesel, weasel; bas Uebel, evil; bas Segel, sail; bas Mittel, means; bas Rissen, cushion; bas Eisen, iron; bas Beden, basin.

The syllable Ge- is prefixed to many primary derivatives without changing their meaning, and is then called Augment; as in der Geruch, smell (from riechen, to smell, reek); der Gesang, song (from singen, to sing); die Geduld, patience (from bulben, to suffer); das Gesicht, face, sight (from sehen, to see).



2. Primary Adjectives.

\$ 29. They are formed either with or without a change of sound (Umlant), and with or without the addition of one of the terminations or affixes er, el, en, e, some of them assuming the meaningless augment ge; as, weiß, white, grün, green, roth, red, gelb, yellow, groß, great (from growan, to grow), klein, little, small, small, narrow, lang, long (from langen, to reach), turz, short, alt, old, jung, young, sein, sine, nice, schwer, heavy, difficult (weary), leicht, easy, light, hoch, high, bitter, bitter (from beißen, to bite), sauer, sour, better, serene, mager, meagre, lean, munter, brisk; ebel, noble, eitel, vain (idle), übel, ill (evil); eben, plain (even); träge, lazy (from tragen, to bear); strenge, (strong), severe (from strengen, to string); weise, wise (from weisen, to show); leise, low, not loud (from leisan, listen); gesund, sound; gewiß, certain (from wissen, to know); gering, small, wee.

III. SECONDARY DERIVATIVES.

1. Derivative Verba.

\$ 30. Derivative verbs are formed by the addition of suffixes to the substantive or adjective from which they are derived, most of them modifying the vowel; as, transen, to give to drink (from ber Trans); fallen, to fell (from ber Fall); brangen, to urge (from ber Drang, throng); schwächen, to weaken (from schwach, weak); starsen, to strengthen (from stars, strong). The vowel a becomes ä, o becomes ö, u becomes ü, au becomes äu.

2. Derivative Substantives and Adjectives.

\$31. Secondary derivative substantives are formed from primary derivatives by affixing one of the syllables er, ling, in, then or lein, e, heit, leit, shaft, ung, ei, nis, fal or sel, thum, and by modifying the vowels a, o, u, au, into ä, ö, ü, äu; as, Schlosser or Schlösser, locksmith (from Schloß, lock); Liebling, favorite (from lieb, dear); Königin, queen (from König, king); Söhnchen or Söhnlein, little son (from Sohn, son);

Schwäche, weakness (from schwach); Schönheit, beauty (from schön, beautiful); Bitterkeit, bitterness (from bitter); Brüderschaft, brotherhood (from Bruder); Stärkung, strengthening (from stark); Spielerei, trisling (from Spiel, play); Finsterniß, darkness (from sinster, dark); Trübsal, askliction (from trüb, dark, mournful); Räthsel, riddle (from rathen); Raiserthum, empire (from Raiser, emperor).

§ 32. Secondary derivative adjectives are formed by suffixing one of the terminations ig (icht), isch, sam, bar, en, lich, haft, and modifying, for the most part, the vowel by the *Umlaut*; as, heilig, holy (from heil, health, salvation); bergig or bergicht, mountainous (from Berg); weibisch, effeminate (from Beil); heilsam, salutary (from heil); heilsar, curable (from heil); gelben, golden (from Gold); töbtlich, deathly (from Tob, death); swerghaft, dwarfish (from Bwerg, dwarf).

Frequently new or tertiary derivatives are formed from secondary derivatives; as, Dantbarteit, gratitude (from bantbar, grateful); Bürbigteit, dignity (from mürbig, worthy); Bürgerin, female citizen (from Bürger, from Burg, from bergen). Sometimes roots assume one of the above suffixes, and form with them primary derivatives; as, Meinung, meaning, opinion (from meinen, to mean); effect, eatable (from effen, to eat); Trinter, drinker; Schneider, tailor (from schneiden).

All the above affixes or suffixes are significant, modifying the meaning, as indicated below.

Derivatives in cr (er).

§ 33. Names of male persons are formed from names of things by the suffix er; as, ber Bürger, citizen (burgher); ber Sänger, singer (from Sang); ber Nitter, knight (from Nitt, ride); ber Schäfer, shepherd (from bas Schaf, sheep).

Names of persons thus formed from verbs are less common than in English; as, Schneiber, tailor (from schneiben); Lehrer, teacher (from schren); Mäher, mower (from mähen). Names of persons are thus derived from the names of countries and

places; as, ber Englander, Englishman (from England, England); ber Irlander, Irishman (from Irland, Ireland); ber Schweizer, Swiss (from Schweiz, Switzerland); ber Ameritaner, American (from Amerita); ber Italiener, Italian (from Italy); ber Römer, Roman (from Rom, Rome); ber Biener, Viennese (from Bien, Vienna).

§ 34. Names of inhabitants of places are commonly formed in this way, but in many cases there is a different kind of name, terminating in e; as, ber Däne, Dane, Deutsche, German, Franzose, Frenchman, Schotte, Scotchman, Ausse, Russian, Schwebe, Swede, Schwabe, Swabian, hesse, Hessian, Türke, Turk, Franke, Franconian, Böhme, Bohemian, Preuße, Prussian, Sachse, Saxon, Friese, and others.

The suffix er occurs also in a few names of instruments; as, Bohrer, borer, gimlet, Zeiger, hand of a clock, Weder, alarum; and in the words Rater, tom-cat, Tauber, male pigeon, Gänser, gander.

Derivatives in ling (ling).

§ 35. These are substantives, names of males, some with a contemptuous or trifling signification; as, Jüngling, youth, Frembling, stranger, Miethling, hireling, Jögling, pupil, Günflling, favorite, Häuptling, chieftain, Zwilling, twin (from zwet, two). Those marked thus are those in which the contemptuous meaning is in exclusive use.

Derivatives in in.

\$ 36. Names of females are formed from those of males, by means of the suffix in, and the *Umlaut*, where it is possible; as, heldin, heroine (from held, hero); Gräfin, countess (from Graf, count); Hürstin, princess (from Hürst, prince); Röchin, female cook (from Roch, cook); hündin, bitch (from hund, dog); Freundin, female friend (from Freund, friend); Löwin, lioness (from Löwe, lion); Frindin, female enemy (from Frind, enemy). But Gatte, husband, has Gattin, wife; Bote, messenger, Botin; and thus a few more.

The final n is doubled in the plural; as, helbinnen, heroines.

Derivatives in den and lein.

(English kin, et, and let, in lamblin, mannikin, islet, streamlet, hamlet).

§ 37. Diminutives are formed from concrete substantives by the suffixes then and sein and the Umlaut; the suffix then being preferred after a final vowel or liquid; the suffix sein after a mute consonant, and especially after a palatial one; as, Sühnthen, Stühlthen, little chair, Härthen, little hair, Häschen, little hare, Kämmthen, little comb, Eichen, little egg, and Knäblein, Mägblein, Bücklein, Bödsein, little boy, girl, book, buck.

This suffix has not always the effect of a mere diminutive upon the substantive to which it is added; more frequently even it has a caressing signification; as, Bäterchen, Mütterchen, dear father, dear mother; Pferbchen, a nice horse. Mädchen, girl, has entirely lost the diminutive meaning, the root Magd, maid, being reserved for maid-servant. Sometimes they are used to express ridicule or contempt.

Abstract Substantives.

e, beit, and feit.

§ 38. Abstract substantives denoting a quality are formed from adjectives by the Umlaut and the above suffixes. Those formed from primary adjectives take t or beit; those from secondary derivative adjectives taking left. When substantives in left are formed from primary derivative adjectives, the syllable ig is inserted, for the sake of euphony, between the adjective and suffix; as, Frömmigfeit (from fromm, pious).

Die Größe, greatness; die Höhe, height; die Breite, breadth; die Tiefe, depth; die Länge, length; die Dide, thickness; die Bärme, warmth; die Kälte, cold; die Nässe, wetness; die Stärke, strength; die Schwäche, weakness; die Güte, goodness; die Gesundheit, health; die Krankheit, sickness; die Freiheit, freedom; die Schönheit, beauty; die Beisheit, wisdom; die Kühnheit, boldness; die Dummheit, stupidity; die Schwachheit,

weakness; die Reinheit, purity; die Trägheit, idleness; die Seltenheit, rarity; die Gemeinheit, meanness; die Danfbarkeit, gratitude; die Chrbarkeit, decency; die Heiligkeit, holiness; die Sparsamkeit, parsimony; die Chrlichkeit, honesty; die Freundlichkeit, amiability; die Schlecht-ig-keit, badness; die Freucht-ig-keit, humidity; die Unrein-ig-keit, filth.

Only a few in el and er assume leit; as, Citelleit, vanity; Seiterleit, serenity.

Some of those in e, heit, keit, have assumed a concrete signification; as, die Ebene or Fläche, plain; die Flüssiekt, liquid; die Menschheit, mankind; die Geistlichkeit, the clergy; etc. In the older language abstract substantives in heit were also formed from names of persons; the following only are preserved: Rindheit, childhood; Gottheit, Godhead; Thorheit and Narrheit, folly; and with a collective sense Christenheit, Christendom; Menscheit, mankind.

schaft (-ship) and thum (-dom).

§ 39. Abstract substantives are made from names of persons by the suffixes schaft and thum; as, die Freundschaft, friendship; Die Reindschaft, enmity; Die Berrschaft, lordship; Die Rnechtfcaft, slavery; bas Ronigthum, monarchy; bas herrenthum, Ritterthum, the feudal lordship. Most of these substantives. however, have more or less of a collective signification, Freundschaft, Ritterschaft, Burgerschaft, and others in fcaft. meaning, at the same time, the body of friends (relations), of knights, of citizens, etc.; and Ritterthum, Bergogthum (duchy), Fürstenthum (princedom), meaning also a collection of things, or a country, belonging to the persons implied. stantives Eigenschaft, quality, Landschaft, landscape, territory, Biffenschaft, science, Baarschaft, ready money, Gerathschaften, instruments, Briefschaften, letters, and Eigenthum, property, Beiligthum (halidom), sanctuary, Alterthum, antiquity, Reichthum, riches, Wachsthum, growth, Irrthum, error, are the only ones made with these suffixes from words not names of persons.

Be.

§ 40. Collective substantives are formed from primary substantives by the *Umlaut* and the prefix Ge and the affix e, which, however, is dropped in many words.

Das Gebirge, mountain chain; bas Gestirn, constellation; bas Gebüsch, bushes; bas Geräth, furniture; bas Getöse, noise; bas Gebränge, crowd; bas Gespräch, conversation; bas Gemüth, mind.

In the same way, but without the *Umlant, frequentative* substantives are formed from verbs; as, bas Gerebe, Gefinge, Gebeul, Gemehel, continued or repeated talking, singing, crying, slaughtering.

Some are names of persons, implying at the same time the idea of companionship; as, ber Geselle or Gesell, companion, ber Gesührte, sellow-traveller; ber Gehülse, helper, assistant; bie Geschwister, brother and sister, or brothers and sisters.

In some of these words Ge implies only continuity; 22, Gesicht, Gebor, Geruch.

niß, fal, and fel.

- § 41. Abstract substantives in niß (-ness) are formed from verbs, and a few from substantives and adjectives (the Umlaut in about half the cases), denoting a condition or state, in a very few cases concrete notions; as, die Bedrängniß, distress; die Beforgniß, apprehension; die Erlenntniß, insight; die Renntniß, knowledge; die Fäulniß, putrefaction; die Finsterniß, darkness; die Bildniß, wilderness; das Bündniß, alliance; das Beugniß, testimony; das Bildniß, image; das Berzeichniß, catalogue; das Gefängniß, prison. The last three are concrete.
- § 42. The suffixes fal and fel form abstract substantives with a leaning towards concrete notions, from verbs and substantives; as, Trübfal, suffering; Mühfal, trouble; Labfal, refreshment; Ueberbleibfel, remainder; Räthfel, riddle; Schidfal, fate.

el.

§ 43. Substantives in et (y) are formed from verbs, and may be formed from every verb, by adding et to the infinitive of the verbs in rn and In, omitting the n; as, bit Schmeichelei, flattery (from schmeicheln); Anauserei, niggardliness (from snausern);—and ret in all others; as, bit Spielerei; Schreiberei; Gerberei, tanning; Schlägerei, scuffle, fight; etc. They denote repeated action, and may convey disparagement, or assume a concrete meaning, like the latter two.

From names of persons are formed abstracts in ei, denoting condition, business, residence, place of business, or a collection of persons; as, die Fischerei, fishery; Staverei, slavery; Reiterei, cavalry; Jägerei, hunting; Druderei, printing-office; Bücherei, library.

ung (-ing).

§ 44. Abstract substantives are formed from verbs, for the most part from derivative and compound verbs, by the addition of ung to the root, without the *Umlaut*. They may be called verbal substantives, because they have so entirely preserved the meaning of the verb as to govern the same prepositions and cases as the latter; and they allow the passive object in the genitive case to be added when the verb is transitive, the active object in the same case when it is a reflective or neuter verb; as, bie Befreiung bes Slaven; bie Krönung bes Königs; bie Eroberung eines Landes; but die Einbildung eines Thoren; die Erinnerung des Mannes an seine Bergangenheit.

Only a few are derived from roots; as, Meinung, opinion; Saltung, bearing, carriage; Menschwerbung, incarnation; Bichung, drawing; Berbung, enlistment. They express either a simple action, as all the above, or the result of an action, an altered state or condition, sometimes even a concrete meaning; as, Ersubung, invention; Erschrung, experience; Mischung, mixture; Riebung, clothing; Erschfchung, refreshment.

A few substantives assuming ung become collectives; as,

Balbung, forest; Stallung, stabling; Kleibung, clothing; Holzung, woods.

§ 45. As another kind of verbal substantive the Infinitive is used, and is allowable with any verb. It takes the neuter article, and is declined like a substantive, without having, however, a plural; as, das Lesen, reading; das Sprechen, speaking; das Gehen, walking. It shuns governing an object. The German cannot construct, like the Englishman, the reading a book, das Lesen ein Buch, or eines guten Buches, but prefers to say das Lesen in einem guten Buche. Some sew such infinitives, however, have become real substantives, and are employed as such; as, das Essen, dinner; das Leben, life; das Leiden, complaint; das Berbrechen, Bergehen, crime, misdemeanor; das Bergnügen, pleasure; das Berlangen, desire; das Schreiben, letter; das Besen, being; das Andensen, remembrance; das Bewußtsein, consciousness; etc.

ing, ig, rich, ich, icht; uth, ath, end.

§ 46. The above suffixes appear only in a very limited number of substantives, the first five only in concrete, the last three in abstract ones.

ing in der Pfenning or Pfennig, penny; ber Schilling, ahilling; ber Häring, herring; bas Meffing, brass.

ig in ber König, king; ber Effig, vinegar; ber Rettig, radish.

rich in a few names of male persons and animals; as, Bütherich, tyrant; Fähnrich, ensign; Gänserich, gander; Enterich, drake.

ich and that in a few names of animals and in a few collectives; as, ber Kranich, crane; ber Habicht, hawk; Rehrich(t), sweepings; Spülicht, swill; Builich, twill; Didicht, thicket.

uth in die Armuth, poverty;—ath in der or die Zierath, ornament; die Heimath, home;— end in die Tugend, virtue; die Jugend, youth; das Elend, misery (from Elilende, foreign country).

Derivative Adjectives.

ig (y).

§ 47. The suffix ig gives to the primary derivative from which the adjective is formed no modified meaning, but serves only to form adjectives. These when formed from abstract substantives assume, as a rule, the *Umlaut*; when from concrete ones, they do not, except in wässerig (from Basser); förnig (from Rorn), granulous.

Fleißig, diligent; mächtig, mighty; prächtig, splendid; günstig, favorable; nöthig, necessary; gütig, kindly; würdig, worthy (from Bürde); zornig, angry (from Born); sandy (from Sand); blumig, flowery (from Blume); waldig, woody (from Bald); lustig, airy (from Lust); salzig, briny; bergig, mountainous; hügelig, hilly; bornig, thorny. Some take icht; as, bornicht, thorny; salzicht, saltish; bergicht, mountainous.

Adjectives are formed from several adverbs of time and place, by adding ig; as, bortig, of that place (from bort, there); hiefig, of this place (from hier, here); jehig, present (from jeht, now); heutig, of to-day (from heute, to-day); borig, former (from bor, before); foultig, other (from foult, else); übrig, left (from über, over); balbig, speedy (from balb, soon); and from possessive pronouns; as, meinig, mine; beinig, thine; seinig, his; unserig, ours; eurig, yours; thrig, theirs. Saumig, dilatory, is the only one formed from a verb.

The suffix selig, occurring in many adjectives, has arisen from the suffix sal or sel (§ 42); as, Trübsal, Mühsal—trübselig, mühselig. Many adjectives are formed analogously where there is no substantive; as, rebselig, loquacious; glüdselig, fortunate; seinbselig, hostile; leutselig, affable; armselig, wretched; holdselig, most kind; and some others.

isá (-ish).

§ 48. The suffix ift, added to places, countries, nations, parties, creeds, persons, forms a great number of adjectives, without the change of meaning from the original one; as,

englisch, English; scottlich, Scotch; trifc or trlanbisch. Irish: welsch or wältsch, Welsh; spanisch, Spanish; französisch, French; ichmebisch, Swedish; italienisch, Italian; berlinisch, of Berlin; kölnisch, of Cologne; römisch, Romish; athenisch, Athenian; spartanisch, Spartan; jubisch, Jewish; griechisch, Greek; luther= ifch, Lutheran; protestantifch, Protestant; fatholisch, Catholic; mohamebanisch, Mahometan; humboldtisch, of Humboldt; Gofratisch, of Socrates; Palmerstonisch, Palmerstonian; himmlisch, heavenly; irbifd, earthly; böllifd, hellish. Formed from names of persons, these adjectives indicate inclination and similarity; as, biebisch, thievish; knechtisch, slavish; kriegerisch, warlike. In most cases this ifch implies a blamable, slighting notion: as, meibifd, womanish: finbifd, childish. A few such are formed from abstract substantives; as, neibifd, envious; antifd, quarrelsome; - and from verbs; as, murrifd, morose.

This suffix also forms adjectives from all kinds of foreign words, like the English -ic, -ical; as, phosisid, physical; tritich, critical; temisch, comic(al), historical; politich, politic(al); sprisch, lyric(al).

public (from bub, elevation), nice, fine, pretty, beutich (old High-German diutisc), German, and the adjective-substantive Mensch (old High-German mennisco), man, are formed in the same way.

From long and compound names of cities and places, adjectives in cr are preferred to those in ifth; thus, heinelberger Jaß (Heidelberg vat) is preferable to heidelbergisches Jaß, on account of euphony.

lid.

§ 49. Iich (ly) makes adjectives from abstract substantives without modifying the signification; as, anyfilich, anxious; peinlich, painful; chrlich, honest; friedlich, peaceful; schredlich, frightful; glüdlich, happy; absichtlich, intentional; abschulich, horrible; gefährlich, dangerous; jährlich, yearly; täglich, daily.

From concrete substantives it derives adjectives implying

quality; as, manulich, manly, like a man; weiblich, feminine; lindlich, childlike; brüberlich, brotherly, fraternal; löniglich, kingly, royal; wäterlich, paternal, fatherly.

From adjectives it derives adjectives with a diminutive sense; as, röthid, reddish; schwärzlich, blackish; grünlich, greenish; süflich, sweetish; süutrlich, sourish; steinlich, mean; reinlich, cleanly; attlich, elderly; reichlich, liberal.

From verbs it derives adjectives implying feasibility; as, bienlich, serviceable; nüplich, useful; sterblich, mortal; thunlich, seasible; möglich, possible; merklich, perceptible; glaublich, credible; löblich, laudable; unfäglich, unspeakable; vernehmlich, audible; and leserlich, legible (with the syllable er inserted).

The following are never used as adjectives, but only as adverbs:—befanntlich, as is well known; erstlich, firstly; folglich, consequently; freilich, it is true; gemeinlich, commonly; inniglich, heartily; fürzlich, neulich, lately; schwerlich, hardly; sicherlich, surely; treulich, faithfully; vornehmlich, chiefly; wahrlich, verily; and some others. Missich, critical, dubious, is formed from the inseparable prefix miss.

en (en).

§ 50. The suffix en (en) forms adjectives from the names of materials; as, golden, golden; filbern, of silver; eisern, of iron; wollen, woollen. The letter r is in some of these inserted for euphony's sake; as, eisern, of iron; bletern, leaden; hölzern, wooden; steinern, of stone.

bar, sam, haft.

\$ 51. bar, English able or ible, and fam (some), when added to abstract substantives and verbs, produce adjectives expressing possibility or inclination; as, sichtbar, visible; esbar, eatable; trintbar, drinkable; börbar, audible; bantbar, grateful; fruchtbar, fertile; arbeitsam, industrious; sparsam, parsimonious; furchtsam, timid.

A few in sam are made from other adjectives; as, einsam, lonesome; gemeinsam, common, mutual; genugsam and satisam,

sufficient. They were originally adverbs, and have, in a later period, become likewise adjectives, the suffix effecting no change of meaning in the word.

§ 52. haft, when added to abstract substantives and verbs, forms adjectives, denoting a tendency to an action; as, schwah-haft, talkative; janthaft, quarrelsome; standhaft, constant; sund-haft, vicious; tugendhaft, virtuous.

A few of these express feasibility; as, glaubhaft, credible.

A few formed from names of persons express resemblance; as, meisterhaft, masterly; schülerhaft, deficient; riesenhaft, gigantic; schalthaft, waggish.

A few, formed from adjectives and substantives, correspond with those in lich, and may be exchanged with them; as, boshaft, malicious, and böslich; transhaft, morbid, sickly, and translich; wahrhaft, true, veritable, and wahrlich; schmerzhaft and schmerz-lich, painful.

IV. COMPOUND WORDS.

- § 53. When two words are so connected as to form only one notion and word, the word obtained is called a compound word; as, Haushund (from Haus and Hund); Beinglas (from Bein and Glas). The compound word is always written as one word, and the hyphen is not made use of, as in English, except by some writers when a foreign word is compounded with a native one, or when two foreign words are compounded; as, Staats-Domäne; Letterie-Rollettor.
- § 54. In every compound word the first component takes the principal accent (for a modification of this rule see page 7), because it determines or individualizes the general meaning of the second component; while the latter gives to the compound word its gender and declension in a substantive, its character and inflection in a verb.

As an exception to this rule, the words Jahrhundert (century) and Jahrtausend (a thousand years) have the principal accent on the second component. Langeweile, ennui, and Geheimerath,

privy-councillor, assume sometimes the principal accent on the second component, in which case the first one is also declined. It is evident that in this case they do not form compounds, but should be written large Beile and geneiner Rath.

§ 55. Each component may itself be again compounded, and then the accent follows the same rule; as, Schuh'ma'cherhanb'-werl' (the principal accent is here on Schuh, a secondary accent on hand, and tertiary accents on macher and werl), shoemaker's trade.

1. Compound Substantives.

\$ 56. Substantives are compounded with other substantives, as a rule, without changing the first component; as, Runstwert, work of art; Seemann, seaman; Dachilegel, roof-tile; Regenbogen, rainbow; Mondichein, moonshine; Armhöhle, armpit.

The following substantives (all of them abstracts and feminines) are, on account of their signification, particularly fitted for forming compounds: Gier or Begierbe, desire; Luft, longing; Sucht, desire; Art, kind or manner; Runde, knowledge;—as, Geldgier, love of money; Neugier, curiosity; Ehrbegierde, ambition; Eflust, appetite; Bollust, lust, voluptuousness; Streitsucht, contentiousness; Ehrsucht, ambition; Lebendart, manner of living, good breeding; Holgart, kind of wood; Sternstunde, astronomy; Erdsunde, geography. Adjectives in ig are formed from each of them; as, geldgierig, neugierig, chrbegierig, etc.

It is for the sake of euphony that one of the letters e, r, I, n, s is sometimes added to the first component; as in Tag-e-wert, day's work; Aiche-r-mittwoch, Ash-Wednesday; heibe-I-beere, bilberry; Sonne-n-schein, sunshine; Tage-s-zeit, time of day. This insertion is frequent with n and s, these being the terminations of the genitive, the former that of feminine nouns in the plural, the latter that of masculine and neuter nouns. Still, in compound words, euphony is considered more important than gender, and we find Liebe-s-bienst, act of kindness (from Liebe, f.), and Mond-en-schein (from Mond, m.). The pupil cannot be

furnished with any unexceptional rule for forming compound words, but must look for the correct formation of compounds to the dictionary. The insertion of the euphonic s takes place, as a rule, in compounds whose first component is in itself a compound word, or ends in either of the suffixes heit, leit, ung, etc.; as, hodgeitstag, wedding-day; handwertszeug, workman's tools; Freunbschaftsbienst, friendly service; Warnungstascl, warning-poster; Freiheitstamps, struggle for liberty; Armuthszeugniß, pauper-certificate; Religionsfreiheit, religious freedom.

In Braut-i-gam, bridegroom (the word gam being out of use) and Racht-i-gall, nightingale (gall meaning in old German singer), the euphonic letter is an i.

- § 57. The first component is used, as a rule, in the singular number; the plural occurs with monosyllabic neuters and masculines having in the plural er; as, Aemterjäger, office-seeker; Kinderfreund, friend of children; Rieiderschrant, clothes-press; Götterschre, mythology; Eterschale, egg-shell.
- § 58. When the first component is an adjective, it is joined to the substantive without any euphonic addition; as, Grosvater, Grosmutter; Beiseiche, white oak; Schwarzsürber, dyer in black; Edelmuth, magnanimity.
- § 59. When the first component is a verb, its root, as a rule, is joined to the substantive, and only in a few cases a euphonic e is inserted or the whole infinitive is used; as, Neitpferd, riding-horse; Washaus, wash-house; Wohnert, dwelling-place; Eyzimmer, dining-room; but Wartezimmer, waiting-room; Leschuch, reading-book; Bademanne, bathing-tub; Zeichenbuch, drawing-book; Rechenbret, calculating-board.
- § 60. When the first component is a preposition or adverb, it is joined to the substantive without any euphonic letter. All of these are derived from compound verbs, and follow their orthography and grammatical form. Some particles, however, occurring only in compound words, and having the principal accent, are compounded with substantives and adjectives; they are the following:—

un- (English un-, in-, in-, dis-, mis-) negatives the second component; as, Unglüd, misfortune; Unrecht, wrong; Unfinn, nonsense; Unfraut, weeds. In some few words it expresses monstrosity, or a degenerate condition; as, Unmenfch, a brute; Unthier, monster; Ungestalt, deformity; Unthat, misdeed; Unwetter, tempest; Ungeshüm (simple word lost), huge form, monster.

ur= (identical with the inseparable prefix er) signifies a proceeding or originating from; as, Ursprung, origin; Urheber, originator; Urquell, fountain-head; Urbild, prototype; Ursade, cause; and some others. In some adjectives it merely intensifies the idea; as, uralt, very old; ursaled, very bad; urplöglich, very sudden.

ant= (as a verbal prefix ent) meaning forth or towards, is to be found in Antwort, answer, and Antlig, face.

abers, meaning originally the same as after, and

afters (after), what is below the mark, false, spurious, form: Aberglande, superstition; Aberwin, craziness; Afterrede, slander; Afterpacht, under-tenure; Afterfönig, pretender to the throne; Aftergeburt, monstrous birth. The adverb abermals, once more, conveys the same idea.

erz=, arch, is a superlative of substantives; as, Erzengel, archangel; Erzfeind, archfiend; Erzböfewicht, arrant villain; Erzbieh, arrant thief; Erzbichof, archbishop; Erzberzog, archduke, etc.

miß, mis-, enters into compounds with verbs. But a few compound substantives are formed directly from substantives, with this prefix; namely, Mißgriff, mistake; Mißtlang, Mißton, Mißlaut, dissonance; Mißtethat, misdeed; Mißgunst, ill-will; Mißvergnügen, displeasure; Mißtredit, discredit; Mißgeschid, adverse fate; Mißgeschlt, deformity; Mißheirath, misalliance; Mißmuth, ill-humor; Mißtritt, misstep; Mißwachs, scarcity; and the adjective mißhesslig, discordant.

2. Compound Adjectives.

§ 61. Adjectives are compounded, -

1. With other adjectives; as, bummbreist, impudent; grüngest, greenish-yellow.

Here must be mentioned those adjectives compounded with,—

1. reich and voll; as, trostreich (rich in solace), consoling; freubenvoll, joyful;—and their contraries, Iter and Ios; as, freubenseer, joyless; trostlos, inconsolable, comfortless;—of which there is a large number. 2. mäßig and recht, denoting according or agreeably to; as, geschmäßig, according to law, lawful; helbenmäßig, heroic; sentrecht, perpendicular; mintelrecht, rectangular; schulgerecht (with the meaningless presix ge-inserted), strict, according to the school. 3. haltig (found only in composition), containing; as, geschhaltig. 4. sertig, ready to; as, reisesertig, ready for travel; segessertig, ready to sail. 5. merth and mürbig, worthy (compounded always with genitives); as, liebensmürbig, hassensmerth, amiable, hateful.

- 2. With substantives; as, lendenlahm, lame in the loins; arbeitscheu, slothful. After the suffixes heit, keit, ung, etc., a euphonic & is inserted; as, hoffnungsvoll, hopeful.
- 3. With verbs, from the root; as, scheinheilig, hypocritical; merswürdig, noteworthy; glaubwürdig, credible.
- 4. With prepositions, prefixes, and adverbs; as, übermuthig, haughty; vorbehacht, considerate; mitichulbig, accessory to a crime; unrecht, wrong; uralt, very old; erzhumm, extremely stupid. The euphonic rules are the same as with substantives.

Adjectives derived from compound substantives and verbs are not, properly speaking, compound adjectives; as, veryuglid, preferable; anwendbar, applicable. The compound adjectives ver'nchn, gentle, of rank, and ge'nchn, agreeable, are directly formed from the verb nehmen and ver- or ge-.

§ 62. The prefix un is, as a rule, not accented; as, uniterb's lid, immortal; unfag'lid, unutterable, ineffable; ununb'lid, infinite; unglaub'lid, incredible. But when the negation is to be emphatically made, the same words may assume a principal accent on the syllable un, and a secondary on the stem. The same holds good of adjectives which express the positive contrary of their simple adjective; as, un'gefund, ill; un'gezogen, ill-bred; un'verschämt, impudent; un'naturlid, unnatural; un'



fdulbig, innocent; un'asdidid, unhappy; un'gleid, unequal; un'adt, not genuine. Such adjectives, of course, never have the accent on the stem.

There are a few adjectives compounded with un-, of which the simple adjective is not extant; as, unaufhörlich, incessant, ungestüm, boisterous, vehement (the adjectives aufhörlich and gestüm do not exist).

8. Compound Adverbs and Prepositions.

- § 63. 1. Adverbs of place and direction are compounded with prepositions or with other adverbs of place, as her (meaning hither, into the presence of the person speaking) and hin (thither, away from the person speaking), the accent usually lying on the second component, and in only a few exceptions on the first; as, hervor', forth; herû'ber, over here; herun'ter, down here, hither; herein', in here; heraus', out here, hither; hinein', in there; hienie'ben, down here on earth; auf'warts, upward; ab'warts, downward; hin'warts, thitherward; her'warts, hitherward; rūd'warts, backward; vor'warts, forward; heim'warts, homeward; heryu', hinyu', near, hither, thither; hernach', afterwards; herbei', near; herauf', etc.
- 2. A preposition is compounded with another one, forming an adverb; as, veran', on, before; verbet', by, past; veraus', foremost; verü'ber, by, past; mitun'ter, sometimes; veraus', throughout, by all means; überaus', exceedingly, etc.
- 3. A preposition is compounded with a pronoun, forming an adverb or conjunction; as, indem', while; nachdem', after; feitbem', since; judem', moreover; überdieb', besides; unterdeff'en, meanwhile; barin', in this, in that; baran', on this, on that; baran', baran, baju', thereupon, thereat, thereto; worin', in which, in what, wherein; woranf', wovon', woju', wonady', whereupon, whereof, whereto, whereafter.
- 4. A preposition is combined with an indefinite pronoun, forming an adverb; as, überall', everywhere; querft', first; qunicht, at naught.

5. Adverbs and conjunctions are combined to form adverbs and conjunctions; as, alsbann', then, afterwards; al'so, therefore; ben'noch, nevertheless; somohi', as well; obmohi', although; etc.

4. Compound Verbs.

- § 64. Verbs are compounded, either, —
- 1. With nouns; as, friegführen, to wage war; bantsagen, hauchasten, to keep house; stattsinden, to take place; (which may as well be written as two words, thus, Krieg sühren, Statt sinden;) großsprechen, to boast; wohlwollen, to wish well; hechachten, to esteem highly; gutsagen, to guarantee; freisassen, to set free; sesthalten, to hold fast; etc. Verbs derived from compound substantives, however, and therefore not being, properly speaking, compound verbs, must be distinguished from the above; as, handhaben, to manage (from Handhabe, handle); frühstüden, to breakfast (from Frühstüd, n., breakfast); wetteisen, to vie with (from Betteiser, emulation).
- 2. With adverbs and prepositions (the latter assuming the nature of adverbs); as, angiețen, to put on; vorțerfagen, to prophesy; aufstețen, to stand up; nachfolgen, to follow after.

In these two cases the principal accent is always on the first component; as, bant/fagen, porter/fagen, and the compound is then always separated in simple tenses of the verb.

3. With inseparable prepositions, or such as do not exist except in such compounds, and cannot assume the accent (except a few compounded with ant= and miß=). The following belong here: be in bella'gen, to bewail; ent in entilei'ben, to undress; ant in ant'worten, to answer; er in erwa'chen, to awake; ver in verge'ben, to forgive; zer in zerstö'ren, to destroy; miß in mißfal'len, to displease; voll in vollbrin'gen, to fulfil; wider in widerste'hen, to withstand; hinter in hinterge'hen, to cheat.

The augment ge does not modify the signification of the simple verb; as, brauchen and gebrauchen, to use; nügen and

genießen, to enjoy. Except only gestehen, to consess.' But it is inseparable, and has no accent.

§ 65. The prefix be makes transitive verbs of neuter ones; as, belachen, to laugh at; besiten, to possess; begehen, to commit; beweinen, to bewail; bewachen, to guard; besommen, to get, come by; besprechen, to discuss; bereben, to persuade; besügen, to deceive by lies.

The verb beschwichtigen, to appease (from schweigen), changes the stem.

Sometimes it gives a transitive verb a direction towards another object; as, befaen, bebauen, bepflanzen (to sow, cultivate, plant) ein felb, whereas the object of faen would be seed, of bauen, a house, etc.; bemalen, to paint on (a board), from malen, to paint (a picture); berauben, to rob (a person), from rauben, to plunder (money); berathen, to counsel (a person), from rathen, to advise (a thing).

Sometimes it intensifies only the signification of a transitive verb; as, benchmen and nehmen; betreiben and treiben; bestignen and swingen; betrüben and trüben (to afflict, from to darken); behalten, to keep, halten, to hold.

Sometimes it forms transitive verbs (causative) from substantives and adjectives; as, bemühen, to trouble; beneiden, to envy; befreunden, to make friends; befreien, to free; betäuben, to deafen; from Mühe, Neid, Freund, frei, taub. Sometimes an euphonic ig or r is inserted before the termination; as, begnadigen, to pardon; befänftigen, to appease; begeistern, to inspire; from Gnade, sanft, Geist.

It occurs very seldom in neuter verbs with intransitive meaning; as, beharren, to persevere; beruhen, to rest upon; behagen, to please; bestehen, to consist, subsist.

§ 66. The prefix ent expresses privation or separation, and is either compounded with a verb already in use; as, entbinden, to absolve; entflichen, to escape; entnehmen, to take out; entwenden, to steal; entsiehen, to withdraw; entfpringen or entformmen, to escape;—or it is compounded with substantives and

adjectives into verbs; as, enthaupten, to behead; entfraften, to weaken; enterben, to disinherit; entvolfern, to depopulate; entfernen, to remove; entfchulbigen, to excuse; entwerthen, to depreciate. In entsprechen, to correspond, entbieten, to bid, enthalten, to comprise, ent seems to have the same meaning as the preposition ans

emp occurs only in three verbs: empfehlen, to recommend; empfangen, to receive; empfinden, to feel.

\$ 67. The prefix et, originally the same as aus, out, signifies a proceeding out of, and in transitive verbs the attaining to, succeeding in an object; as, erschöpsen, to exhaust; erzichen, to educate; erretten, to save from; erschassen, to create; erregen, to excite; erwachen, to be awakened; erwerben, to earn; erlangen, erreichen, to attain to; ersparen, to save; erstausen, to purchase; ersinden, to invent; erzwingen, to ensoree; erwachsen, to grow up; ersreuen, to make glad; erbauen, to build up; erweden, to awaken; erbetteln, to obtain by begging; ersernen, to learn completely; ersenen, to recognize; erbliden, to get sight of.

It forms verbs from adjectives denoting a transition into another state; as, erröthen, erfalten, erftarfen, erweichen, erblinben, erlahmen, to become red, cold, strong, soft, blind, lame; and erheitern, erweitern, ermuntern, erftären (to explain), erftigen (to refresh), to make glad, wider, brisk, clear, fresh, etc.

§ 68. The prefix ver has sprung from vor or fort, before, forth, and expresses a direction away from a subject or object, consequently a losing, spoiling, annihilating process; as, vergeben, to pass away; verfenden, to send forth; verwerfen, to throw away, reject; vertaufen, to sell; verbieten, to forbid; verlaffen, to forsake; verlieren, to lose; verschwinden, to disappear; vernichten, to annihilate; verbrennen, to burn; vertrinten, to spend in drinking; verspielen, to lose by playing; versennen, to mistake; verziehen, to spoil (a child); verrathen, to betray; verscherzen, to lose by sporting.

In verbs formed with per from substantives and from adjec-

tives, particularly in the comparative form, it expresses only transformation; as, versteinern, to petrify; vergosben, to gild; vertrüppesn, to cripple; verwüsten, to lay waste; verjüngen, to rejuvenate, make young; vergrößern, to enlarge; verarmen, to become poor; verlüngern, to make longer, etc.

Annotation. — The prefixes er and ver are opposed to each other in meaning; as, Er kann nicht erlangen, was er verlangt, He cannot obtain what he demands; Man hat mehr verrechnet, als errechnet (Prov.), They have lost rather than gained by calculating. But this opposition not being one of the original forms of the language, but a later adoption, there is sometimes a vacillating between er and ver; as, erlöschen and verlöschen, to be extinguished; erblassen and verblassen, to grow pale, etc.

- § 69. zer denotes a dissolution or going to pieces; as, zergeben, to go to pieces; zerfallen, to crumble to pieces; zerbrecken, to break asunder; zerfpringen, to burst; zerfließen, to melt away; zerftören, to destroy; zerreißen, to tear to pieces.
- § 70. miß expresses the contrary of the simple verb, like the English mis-; as, mißfallen, to displease; mißslüden or mißlingen, to fail; mißgönnen, to grudge; mißseiten, to mislead; mißbrauchen, to abuse. The accent vacillates between the prefix and the root, while in substantives derived from these verbs it occurs only on the prefix; as, Mißbrauch, Mißgunß, Mißfallen. (See § 60.)
- § 71. The prefix voll (full-) occurs only in vollbringen, to accomplish; vollenden, to finish; vollführen and vollziehen, to execute. In all other verbs it is a separable preposition, and accented; as in voll'machen, voll'füllen, voll'gießen, to fill up.

The prefix un does not make compound verbs, as in the English to unlearn, undress.

§ 72. The prefix witer, against, occurs in widersah'ren, to happen; widerrathen, to dissuade; widersegen, to resute; widerset, to resist; widersegen sid, to oppose.

Some nouns derived from these verbs have the accent on

the prefix; as, Bi'derstand, resistance; Bi'derrus, revocation; and analogously Bi'dersacher, Bi'derpart, antagonist; widersich, disgusting. The following only have the accent on the root: Biderse'gung, resutation; widersey'sich, refractory; widerrussich, revocable; unwiderseh'sich, irresistible.

In witherho'len, to repeat, the adverb wither, again, has also become a prefix.

- § 73. The prefix hinter, behind, occurs only in hinterblei'ben, to remain or to remain undone; hinterlassen, to leave behind; hinterleigen, to lay up; hintergehen, to deceive; hintertreiben, to hinder; hinterbrin'gen, to bring to notice. But all nouns not derived from these verbs have the prefix accented; as, hin'terlist, cunning; hin'tergrund, background; hin'terfuß, hindfoot; hin'terhalt, ambush; hinterlist, back seat.
- § 74. The preposition burch, through, as a prefix, means thoroughly: burchbringen, to pierce; burchfu'chen, burchfor'schen, to search thoroughly; burchfir'ren, to wander through; burchbob's ren, to pierce; burchge'hen, to go through; burchblid'en, burchfe'hen, burchfchau'en, to see, look through; burchwe'ben, to interweave.

All of these verbs, and some more, may just as well be separable, and have the accent on the preposition. In this case the stress is upon the preposition; in the other case it is on the verb itself, and the meaning is figurative or abstract.

Substantives derived from verbs compounded with burth have (with the exception of Durthfu'dhung, examination, search, Durthtrie'benheit, artfulness, smartness, and all those in ung formed from the above verbs) the accent on the preposition; as, Durth'sidt, Durth'gang, passage through; Durth'sidau. For the adverbs, see §§ 263-267.

§ 75. The preposition um, around, as a prefix, denotes a surrounding, as in the following verbs: umar'men, to embrace; umfan'gen, umfaf'fen, to comprise, to contain; umge's ben, to surround; umge'sen, to avoid; umgren'gen, to bound round about; umgur'ten, to gird; umbal'fen, to embrace;

umbül'len, to envelop; umflam'mern, umflaftern, to clasp; umflei'den, to clothe with; umla'gern, to besiege, encompass; umlau'fen, to run around; umpflan'zen, to plant around; umreisen, to travel around; umsdan'zen, to circumvallate; umsdat'ten, to surround with shade; umsdiffen, umse'geln, to circumnavigate; umsdie'ern, to cover with a veil; umsdiese'en and umsdiin'gen, to enclose, embrace; umsdrei'ben, to express a thing by circumlocution or paraphrase; umspan'nen, to span, fathom; umstel'len, to surround, beset; umstrue'en, to strew around; umstrid'en, to surround with snares; umme'hen, to blow around; umwid'eln, ummin'den, to wind around; umwöl'len, to overcast with clouds; umsūu'nen, to enclose with a hedge; umzie'hen, umsin'geln, to surround.

Most of these verbs, and about as many others, have another meaning when the accent and stress lie on the preposition; as, um'gehen, um'laufen, um'reiten, to go a round-about way; um'gürten, to gird one's self with; um'fleiben, um'gichen, to change clothes; um'weben, to blow down; um'arbeiten, to do afresh; um'blafen, to blow down; um'brechen, to break down or up; and many more.

Derivative substantives adopt the accent of their verbs, when terminating in ung; in all other cases the preposition has the accent. For the adverbs, see §§ 263-267.

- § 76. The preposition über, as a prefix, implies, —
- a) Covering a surface or extending over a space; as, über-bau'en, to build over; überbäu'sen, to overburden; überschwem'-men, to overslow; überma'len, to paint over; überstei'gen, to surpass; überblid'en, to look over; überse'hen, to overlook; übernach'ten, to pass the night.
- b) Surpassing or overdoing; as, überbie'ten, to overbid, outbid; überflü'geln, to outflank; überle'ben, to outlive; überlif'ten, to outwit; überman'nen, überwin'den, überwäl'tigen, to overpower, overcome; übertref'fen, to surpass; überftim'men, to outvote; überla'den, to overcharge; übertrei'den, to exaggerate; überar'beiten, to fatigue; sich überef'sen, to eat too much; über-

füllen, to overfill; übereilen, to spoil by kurry; überfüllern, to overfood.

- c) Giving and receiving; as, überbrin'gen, to bring; überlie'fern, to deliver; überneh'men, to accept; überhan'bigen, to hand over; überge'ben, to surrender, to tender; überlom'men, to come by.
- d) It has a metaphorical sense in überre'ben, to persuade; überzeu'gen, to convince; überle'gen, to consider; überset'zen, to translate; überschät'zen, to over-estimate; übersal'sen, to befall; überra'schen, to surprise; überho'sen, to overtake; übertre'ben, to exaggerate; übertre'ten, to transgress; überge'sen, to omit.

When über is a preposition, and has the principal accent, it is, as a rule, converted into one of the adverbs hinüber or herüber, or barüber, or vorüber, and the meaning is changed; as, hinüberschwemmen, to wash away to the other side; übergehen, to go over; herüberschmmen, to come over here; barüberschlen, to fall on or over; vorübertreiben, to drive by; überschen, to cross over; überschen (barüberschen), to look over.

- § 77. The preposition unter, as a prefix, implies, —
- a) Below, under; as, untergra'ben, to undermine; unterjo'chen, to subjugate; unterstüt'zen, to support; untersch'ren, to subscribe; unterstret'chen, to underline; unterzeich'nen, to sign.
- b) Prohibition or omission; as, unterbrud'en, to suppress; untersa'gen, to interdict; unterschla'gen, to defraud; unterbre's chen, to interrupt; unterlassen, to intermit; unterblei'ben, to remain undone.
- c) A metaphorical sense in unterhan'deln, to negotiate; unterhal'ten, to entertain; unterneh'men, to undertake; unterid'ten and unterwei'sen, to instruct; untersu'den, to examine; untersch'een, to distinguish; unterwer'sen, to subdue; sich unterre'den, to converse.

When unter is a preposition, and has the principal accent, it is, as a rule, converted into one of the adverbs himunter or herunter, or barunter, and the meaning is changed; as, un'terfeten, barun'terfeten, to put, place under or down;

un'terlegen, barun'terlegen, hinun'terlegen, to lay, to put, place under, beneath; un'terschieben, to substitute, to forge; herun'terbruden, to press down, to abate (the prices); herun'terlassen, hinun'terlassen, to dig down; barun'terschieben, to write down below.

Substantives formed from verbs compounded with unter and uber adopt the accent of their verbs only when they terminate in ung; in all other cases the preposition has the accent. For adverbs, see §§ 263-267.

- § 78. The four prepositions burd, um, über, unter have, therefore, this common feature, that they can be used as pre-fixes, and thereby lose more or less their local meaning; in other words, cease to express place and locality, and assume a more or less metaphorical meaning. This is the reason why they lose the principal accent, which is taken by the verb. Still, even when they are used as prepositions, the verb assumes a metaphorical meaning; while, on the other hand, in a few cases the local sense is preserved in verbs compounded with prefixes; as, un'terfaiteen, to substitute, to forge; umar-men, and others compounded with um.
- § 79. The import of separable prepositions in compound verbs is properly to be learned from the dictionary. Therefore a few hints only can be given here as to their meaning.
- 1. Ab- denotes, a) off or from, implying separation; as, abreisen, to depart; abnehmen, to take off; b) a gradual decrease; as, abnehmen, to decrease; abnuhen, to wear by use; c) conclusion and purpose (end); as, abrehmen, to balance accounts; abselven, to design; d) negation; as, abselven, to abolish; abselven, to abjure; abrathen, to dissuade.
- 2. An-denotes,—a) approach or direction to the surface of a thing; as, ansehen, to look at; ansprechen, to speak to: ansublent to touch; —b) fastoning to; as, and inden, to tie on, to fasten to; sich ansiedeln, to settle; —c) beginning; as, ansangen, to commence; and rennen, to kindle.
 - 3. Auf-denotes, a) a rest on, or direction upon, the upper

- surface of a thing; as, austegen, to impose; austiegen, to lie on; b) an upright state, or direction upwards; as, austeben, to rise; aussteigen, to ascend;—c) a display; as, austeden, to uncover; aussumption, to search for;—d) opening; as, aussimplication, to unlock; austreden, to break open;—e) completing or using up; as, austessen, to east up; ausgeben, to give up; austren, to cease.
 - 4. Aus- denotes, a) proceeding from out of the midst of a thing; as, austreiben, to drive out; auswählen, to select; b) exemption; as, ausfählegen, to exclude; c) extent; as, austreden, to extend; ausbreiten, to spread; d) thoroughly doing a work; as, ausfüllen, to fill up; ausftopfen, to stuff, to cram; auslachen, to laugh at; ausbessern, to mend; auslesen, to read to the end; ausschlasen, to sleep enough; e) ending; as, auslöchen, to extinguish; austrinten, to empty the glass.
 - 5. Bei- denotes society and attribution; as, beifügen, to add; beistimmen, to assent; beilegen, to attribute, to impute.
 - 6. Ein- denotes, a) direction into the interior; as, eingießen, to pour in; einschließen, to include, enclose; einathmen,
 to inhale; b) contraction; as, einschrumpsen, to shrink; eintrodnen, to dry up; einsallen, to fall in (down, of walls); —
 c) transition into another state; as, einweißen, to inaugurate;
 cinweichen, to soak; einschmelzen, to melt down; einwenden, to
 object.
 - 7. Mit-denotes participation; as, mitspielen, to join in the game; mittheilen, to communicate.
 - 8. Nach- denotes after in all its significations;—a) following; as in nachfolgen, to follow; nachthun, to imitate;—b) inquiry, search; as, nachfragen, to inquire after; nachdenten, to reflect;—c) yielding; as, nachgeben, to yield; nachtaffen, to leave off, to diminish.
 - 9. Db- denotes over, dominion; as, obstegen, to conquer; ob-walten, to prevail.
 - 10. Bor- denotes, a) before, both in space and time; as, vorlegen, to lay before; vorbebeuten, to forebode; vorarbeiten, to

prepare a work; — b) caution and screening; as, verschen (sid), to be cautious; verbeugen, to obviate, prevent; — c) giving an example for imitation; as, verspielen, vermachen; — d) forwardness, eminence; as, verragen, to project; verbringen, to press forward.

11. Bu- denotes, —a) towards; as, suführen, to lead to; sueilen, to hasten towards; —b) fitting, adjusting; as, subcreiten,
to prepare; sutreffen, to agree; —c) addition; as, surechnen,
to add in calculation; sufchreiben, to ascribe; —d) continuation;
as, sulesen, to read on; suboren, to listen to; —e) closing; as,
sulchließen, to shut up.

V. Anomalous Composition.

§ 80. There are compound substantives, anomalously composed, the first component appearing in the second place, and the second one in the first; as in Taugenichts (a good-fornothing fellow), Störefried (disturber of the peace), Saufaus (m., a drunkard), Reigans (m., flight); - or attributive participles being melted with a substantive into one notion; as, Glühmurm (glühenber Burm, glowing worm), Spottvogel (fottenber Bogel, mocking-bird), Singvogel (fingenber Bogel, singing-bird); - or a person being nicknamed from a member of his body; as, Stumpfnase, f., flat-nose (a person with a flat nose); Blaubart, m., blue-beard; Rothrod, a red coat; Blaufrumpf, m., blue-stocking; Runbfopf, m., round-head; ein Trobtopf, a headstrong person; ein Schreihale, a crying-baby;or a whole sentence being employed as a substantive; as, ein Bergigmeinnicht, a forget-me-not; ber Willomm, the welcome; ber Gottseibeiuns (the God be with us!), the Devil; Leberecht, Live right; Hurchtegott, Fear God; and similar proper nouns.

CHAPTER III.

OF VERBS.

- § 81. VERBS are either auxiliary verbs or verbs proper. The former convey no notion, but only relations between subject and predicate and the speaker; as, 'he is going,' 'he has sung,' 'he will sleep,' 'Cesar was murdered.' The latter convey ideas or notions, and constitute the predicate.
- § 82. Verbs proper are either transitive or intransitive (§ 14), the former always requiring a direct object, expressed by an accusative, to be complete and understood; the latter are either neuter verbs, or such as express an action which requires no object at all to be complete and intelligible; or they are intransitives proper, requiring an object in the dative or genitive to be understood. Thus to beat, schlagen, is a transitive verb, because it requires an accusative; to seem (it seems to me), scheinen, is an intransitive verb, because it requires a dative; and to sleep, schlasen, is a neuter verb, because it requires no object at all to convey an idea or notion.
- § 83. Transitive verbs, which comprise the great bulk of verbs of every language, are employed either in the Active or in the Passive Voice;—the former expressing that the subject is acting or working upon an object; as, 'the father praises the child';—the latter expressing that the subject is acted upon or suffering something, or is, properly speaking, an object; as, 'the child is praised by his father.' Such verbs as express that subject and object are the same person or thing, are called Reflexive verbs; as, 'I prepare myself.'

Annotation. — The English language has no reflexive verbs, properly speaking, but only a reflexive use of transitive verbs. But the German is rich in reflexive verbs proper, which are not in use as transitives; as, it freue mid, 'I rejoice,' while it is impossible to say it freue bid.

§ 84. All verbs are inflected by Person, Number, Tense, and

Cilili 'sloe 7m

ľ

Mood. There are three persons in the singular, and three in the plural, of each tense of each mood, except that the Impersonal verbs have only one person in the singular (it rains, it lightens, it rained, etc.) of each tense of each mood.

§ 85. All verbs (without exception in German) have six tenses to express the time of the action; — three absolute tenses, viz.: a. Present, ich singe; b. Perfect, ich have gesungen; c. Future, ich werbe singen; — and three relative tenses, viz.: a. Imperfect, ich sang; b. Pluperfect, ich hatte gesungen; c. Future Perfect, ich werbe gesungen haben. Only the Present and the Imperfect have an inflection simple or proper; the other tenses of the active, and all tenses of the passive voice, are formed by means of auxiliary verbs, and are called compound tenses.

§ 86. All verbs have four moods to express the different relations of the action of the sentence to the speaker, viz.: the Indicative mood, which really asserts the opinion of the speaker, as, et ist mein Bater; the Subjunctive mood, which quotes the assertion of another person than the speaker, as, Man sagt, er set nicht mein Bater; the Conditional, used in conditional sentences, as, Er würde vielleicht mein Bater sein, He might, perhaps, be my father; and the Imperative mood, used in expressing commands or entreaties, as, Set mein Bater! In German the Imperative is formed only in the Present tense; the Conditional only in the Future and Perfect Future.

§ 87. All verbs have two Infinitives and two Participles (Present and Past, see § 14), called *Verbals*.

§ 88. In German, as in English, there are two conjugations according to which all but the following irregular verbs are inflected, viz.: scin, to be; haben, to have; müssen, I must; bürsen, I am allowed; tönnen, I can; mögen, I may; wollen, I will; sollen, I shall; werben, to become; and wissen, to know. These two conjugations are called the ancient and the modern. They differ only in the formation of the Imperfect and Participle Past, and in a few cases in the second and third person singular, and also in the Imperative.

§ 89. A. In the ancient form, the vowel of the verb is modified by the *Umlaut* in the Imperfect and Participle Past, in almost the same way as in the irregular English verbs; as,—

Infinitive.	Imperfect.	Participle Past.
fingen, to sing,	sang, sang,	gefungen, sung.
bitten, to bid,	bat, bade,	gebeten, bidden.
fommen, to come,	łam, came,	gefommen, come.

B. This modification does not take place in verbs of the modern conjugation (with the exception of six); but both the Imperfect and Participle Past adopt the termination et (ed in English), to which are added the terminations of the different persons; as,

Infinitive. Imperfect. Participle Past.
reb-en, to talk, reb-et-e, talked, ge-reb-et, talked.
rechn-en, to reckon, rechn-et-e, reckoned, ge-rechn-et, reckoned.

All Participles Past but those compounded with the inseparable prefixes be, er, ent, emp, zer, ver, ge, miß, voll, hinter, wider, and unter, über, um, durch, when not accented, and all those ending in iren, assume the augment ge; as, geredet, gefungen, gebeten, gefommen, gerechnet, vorgeredet, nachgefungen, etc.

The vowel e in the termination et of the Participle Past is omitted, except after b, t, gn, bn, bm, thm, ffn, or chn; as, gesagt, gesebt, gehofft, geschleppt, gereist; but gerebet, gebetet, geseichnet, gewidmet, geathmet, geöffnet, gezeichnet.

The first vowel e in the termination ete of the Imperfect is, as a rule, dropped, except after b, t, gn, bn, bm, thm, ffn, or chn; as, ich sagte, lobte, hosste, scheppte, reiste; but ich redete, betete, segnete, ordnete, widmete, athmete, offinete, zeichnete.

§ 90. The three Persons, singular and plural, in all simple tenses of the ancient and modern forms, are as follows:—

		Singular.	Plural.
lst	Person.	—e or —	en
2 d	Person.	—est or st	-et or t
8d	Person.	—е or t. or —	en.

The following table shows how these terminations are distributed among the tenses.

Present Tense of both Forms.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Imperative.
Smg. 1. —e	—	
2. —eft or ft	eft	—t or —
8. —et er t	→ ŧ	
Plur. 1en	−−en	
2. —et er t	et	-et or t
3. —en.	tn.	

Imperfect Tense.

1. Of the Ancient Form.	2. Modern Form, the same in Subjunctive.	8. Subjunctive, Ancient Form.
SING. 1. ——	ete	
2. —est or st	eteft	—cft or ft
3. —	—ete	→
PLUR. 1. —en	eten	—e n
2. —et or t	-etet	—ct or t
3. —en.	-eten.	—en.
The vowel is changed.	Vowel not changed.	Vowel of Indic. modified.

C. THE SIMPLE TENSES OF THE VERB.

I. ARCIENT FORM.

II. MODERN FORM.

INFIN. fingen, to sing.

reben, to speak.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

I sing, am singing.	I speak, am speaking.
Sing. 1. to fing-e	ich reb-e
2. bu fing-eft	bu reb-eft
3. er fing-et,	er reb-et,
PLUR. 1. wir fing-en	wir reb-en
2. ibr fing-et	ihr red-et
8. fle fing-en.	sie reb-en.
10	

L ANCIENT FORM.

IL MODERN FORM.

Imperfect Tense.

I sang, was singing.	I spoke, was speaking.
Sing. 1. ich sang	ich red-e-te
2. du fang-est	du red-e-test
3. er fang,	er reb-e-te,
Plun. 1. wir fang-en	wir reb-e-ten
2. ihr fang-et	ihr red-e-tet
3. fle fang-en.	· fie red-e-ten.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The Present differs from the Indicative only in the Sing. 3. er sing-e. er red-e.

Imperfect Tense.

I sang, was singing.	I spoke, was speaking.	
Sing. 1. ich fange	ich rebete	
2. bu fangest	bu rebetest	
3. er fänge,	er rebete,	
PLUR. 1. wir fangen	wir redeten	
2. ihr fänget	ihr rebetet	
8. fie fangen.	fie rebeten.	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	2.	fing-e, sing!	reb-e, speak!
PLUR.	2.	fing-et, sing!	reb-et, speak!

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	fing-end, singing,	reb-enb, speaking,
Past.	gefung-en, sung.	gereb-et, spoken.

Exercises for Inflection.

rinten, to drink,	awingen, to compel,
pringen, to spring, jump,	baden, to bathe,
llingen, to sound,	beten, to pray.

- § 91. The vowel t is, as a rule, dropped,—
- 1. In the termination est of the second person singular of the Indicative of the Present and Imperfect tenses, except after b, t, fin, chn, gn, bn, bm, thm, s, s, a, and sch; as, bu singst, springst, zwingst, klingst, hörst; bu baust, kaust, siehst; bu sangt, sprangst, zwangst, klangst, sahs. But, bu redest, betest, reisest, sichest, beigest, beigest, schwipest; bu redetest, beteest, reisest, sichetest, beigest, schwiptest.
- 2. In the termination et of the third person singular and second person plural of the Present and Imperfect of the Indicative Mood, except after b, t, ffn, chn, gn, bn, bm, thm; as, er fingt, springt, swingt, bört, baut, seht; ihr sangt, springt, swingt, hört, baut, seht; ihr sangt, sprangt, swangt, saht. But, er redet, betet, segnet, ordnet, widmet, athmet, öffnet, zeichnet; ihr redet, betet, segnet, öffnet, zeichnet, ordnet, widmet, athmet; ihr hörtet, bautet, hofftet, schepptet, sischtet, reistet.

Annotation. — The laws of euphony obtain in German to a greater extent than is commonly believed, and are at the bottom of most forms of inflection. The vowel e aids in forming almost all inflections, of whatever kind. Of course, all inflected forms are augmented, in this way, by one or two syllables. Thus the monosyllabic roots and stems become forms of two syllables, and, by a further inflection or derivation, of three syllables. The German has a decided predilection for words of two syllables with a trochaic (___) or iambic (___) rhythm, and accordingly in poetry, whenever the metre allows or requires it, the e reappears in the second and third person singular and second person plural of both tenses, and in the formation of the Imperfect and Participle Past; as, bu fingeft, er finget, the finget, bu fangeft, the fanget, gehüret, gebauet, etc.

In the constant attempt at brevity of form natural to prose and to every-day talk, this euphonic t is often dropped, at the expense of euphony. But the tendency toward abbreviation cannot prevail so far as to violate the first and fundamental law of euphony, which imperatively forbids the immediate juxtaposition of two letters of the same class. No two vowels, two mutes of the same class, two linguals, two gutturals, two dentals, nor two labials, must be sounded together (even if they should be written, to show the derivation).

This explains why the e is not dropped in rebet, rebet; for in rebet, rebt, two or even three mutes would come together, mutes of the same class, linguals or dentals. The same reason holds good for bu reifest, er reist, because only in reisest one s would follow another. In segnest, segnet, athmest, athmest, ordness, ordness, we have not only a crowding of consonants that forbids the elision of the e, but also one of the sew cases where another law of euphony is infringed, namely, that, in a combination of a mute and a liquid letter, the mute should always follow the liquid in the Auslaut, but precede it in the Anlaut. But this infringement of the law is compensated by another law, that in such cases a vowel is always to follow, so as to allow the formation of one more syllable. The words bu segnest, athmest, etc., are now divided as follows: seg-nest, athmest, etc., so that the liquid ceases to be Auslaut.

§ 92. For the same reason, the Infinitive and first and third persons plural Present and Imperfect of sehen, gehen, bauen, gehen, ruhen, freuen, and others where the root ends in a vowel or an h mute, drop the e of the termination en; as, seh'n, geh'n, bau'n, zeh'n, ruh'n, freu'n, sah'n, zeh'n, wherever the rhythm does not require it to be kept, as in poetry or oratory. And the same elision takes place in the Participles Past; as, gesch'n, gezich'n, gesich'n, though not so often. The apostrophe (') in sehn, gehn, geschn, gesich'n is, as a rule, omitted. Nay, the e is, as a rule, written, but remains mute in popular utterance. The learned classes, it is true, pronounce this e, from a kind of affectation very often, and infringe thereby a well-established law of euphony.

That the termination en in the Infinitive and first and third

persons plural never suffers in any other verb an elision of the e, is explained by the n, as a liquid, being forbidden to follow a mute; as, sagen, leben, baben, hoffen, steden, lachen, etc., not sag'n, leb'n, bab'n, hoff'n, sted'n, lach'n.

§ 93. In a few derivative verbs, viz. all those ending in ern (er-en) or eln (elen) in the infinitive, the vowel of the termination is dropped in all inflections and derivatives, except the first person of the Present where the e of the stem is dropped; as, ich hand-l-e, I act; ich manb-r-e, I wander; but, bu hand-elft, handeln, gehandelt, handelte; bu mand-erst, mandern, gemandert, manderte.

§ 94. In two verbs, viz. fenten and menten, the Imperfect fantte, mantte seems to be formed in contradiction to the above law of euphony, the more so, as these forms are preferred to the regular ones fentete and mentete, which are still in use. But in the pronunciation only one t is heard; the second is written to show the derivation of the form. The same holds good of rebte (for rebete), which occurs in poetry.

D. THE SIMPLE TENSES OF A COMPOUND VERB, WITH ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS.

I. ANCIENT FORM.

II. MODERN FORM.

Infin. hervorfommen, to come forth.

auslegen, to lay out.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

I am coming (I come) forth. I am laying (I lay) out.

Sing. 1. ich fomme bervor ich lege aus

2. bu fommft bervor

3. er kommt hervor,

PLUR. 1. wir fommen bervor

2. ibr fommt bervor

8. fle kommen hervor.

ich lege aus
bu legst aus
er legt aus,
wir legen aus
ihr legt aus
sie legen aus

10 *

L ARCIENT FORM.

II. Modern Ferm.

Imperfect Tense.

I layed (was laying) out. I came (was coming) forth. Sing. 1. ich tam bervor

2. bu tamft bervor

3. er tam bervor,

PLUB. 1. wir famen bervor 2. ibr famt berpor

3. fie tamen bervor.

ich legte aus

bu legteft aus er leate aus.

mir leaten aus

ibr leatet aus fie legten aus.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing. 1. ich fomme bervor

2. bu tommeft bervor . 3. er fomme bervor.

ich lege aus bu legeft aus er lege aus.

Plural like the Plural Indicative.

Imperfect Tense.

Like the Indicative Imperfect. Sing. 1. ich fäme bervor

2. bu fameft bervor

3. er tame bervor,

Plur. 1. wir famen bervor

2. ibr famet bervor

3. fle famen bervor.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Come forth!

Lay out!

Sing. 2. fomm(e) hervor,

leg(e) aus!

PLUR. 2. fomm(e)t bervor.

leat aus!

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. hervorfommend, coming forth, auslegend, laying out, Past. hervorgefommen, come forth. ausgelegt, layed out.

Exercises for Inflection.

austrinken, to drink up, nachfpringen, to spring after, wohlflingen, to sound well,

aufstellen, to put up, vorsepen, to set before.

§ 95. SIMPLE FORMS OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS.

Invin. sein, to be. ha

haben, to have.

werben, to become.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

•		I am.	I have.	I become.
SING.	1.	ich bin	ich habe	ich werbe
	2.	bu bift	bu hast	du wirst
	3.	er ift (fle, es ift),	er hat,	er wird,
PLUR.	1.	wir find	wir haben	wir werben
	2.	ihr feib	ihr habt	ihr werbet
	8.	se sind.	fie haben.	fie werben.
		Impe	rfect Tense.	
		I was.	I had.	I became.
Sing.	1.	ich war	ich hatte	ich wurde*

2. bu warst bu hattest
3. er war, er hatte,
Pluk. 1. wir waren wir hatten
2. ihr wart (waret) ihr hattet

bu wurdest er wurde, wir wurden

2. ihr waren (ware

ihr wurdet sie wurden.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

fie batten.

Present Tense.

,		I be.	I have.	I become.
Sing.	1.	ich sei	ich habe	ich werbe
	2.	bu feift	bu habest	bu werbest
	8.	er fei,	er habe,	er werbe,
PLUR.	1.	wir feien	wir haben	wir werben
	2.	ibr feiet	ihr habet	ihr werbet
		fle feien.	fle haben.	fie werben.

Instead of this form of the singular, there are in use ich tearb, bu tearbif, er tearb (ancient form), more in poetry than in prose.

Imperfect Tense.

	I were.	I had.	I should become.
SING.	1. ich wäre	ich hätte	ich murbe
	2. bu mareft	bu hätteft	bu murbeft
	3. er mare,	er hätte,	er würbe,
PLUR.	1. wir waren	wir hätten	wir würden
	2. ihr wäret	ihr hättet	ihr würdet
	3. fle maren.	fle hätten.	fie murben.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	2.	sei, be,	habe, have,	werde, become,
		seid, be-	habt, have.	werdet, become.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	seiend, being,	habend, having,	werbend, becoming,
Past.	gewesen, been.	gehabt, had.	geworden, become.

Instead of generoen, in all compound forms of the Passive morben is used.

§ 96. COMPOUND FORMS OF CONJUGATION.

The Perfect and Pluperfect tenses are formed by the Participle Past of the verb and the Present and Imperfect tenses of one of the auxiliary verbs haben or fein, exactly as in English. Which of these two auxiliary verbs is to be used will be seen from § 110, the use being to some extent different in both languages.

The Future tense is formed by the Infinitive Present of the principal verb and the present tense of merben.

Perfect Tense.

gefungen haben, to have sung. gerebet haben, to have spoken. gehabt haben, to have had. ausgelegt haben, to have laid out.

gesprungen sein, to have sprunggewandert sein, to have wandered. gewesen sein, to have been. bervorgesommen sein, to have come forth.

INDICATIVE.

- ich habe (er hat) gesungen, I have (he has) sung.
- ich bin (er ift) gesprungen, I have (he has) sprung.
- ich habe (er hat) geredet, I have (he has) spoken.
- ich bin (er ift) gewandert, I have (he has) wandered.
- ich habe (er hat) gehabt, I have (he has) had.
- ich bin (er ist) gewesen, I have (he has) been.
- ich bin hervorgetommen, I have come forth.
- ich habe ausgelegt, I have laid out.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

- ich habe (er habe) gesungen, I have (he has) sung.
- ich sei (er sei) gesprungen, I have (he has) sprung.
- ich habe (er habe) gerebet, I have (he has) spoken.
- ich bin (er fei) gewandert, I have (he has) wandered.
- ich habe (er habe) gehabt, I have (he has) had.
- ich sei (er sei) gewesen, I have (he has) been.
- ich sei hervorgekommen, I have come forth.
- ich habe ausgelegt, I have laid out.

Pluperfect Tense.

INDICATIVE.

- ich (er) hatte gesungen, I (he) had sung.
- ich (er) hatte ausgelegt, I (be) had laid out.
- to (er) war gesprungen, I (he) had sprung.
- ich (er) war hervorgekommen, I (he) had come forth.
- ich (er) hatte gerebet, I (he) had spoken.
- ich (er) war gewandert, I (he) had wandered.
- ich (er) hatte gehabt, I (he) had had.
- ich (er) war gewesen, I (he) had been.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

- ich (er) hätte gesungen, I (he) would have sung.
- ich (er) hätte ausgelegt, I (he) would have laid out.
- ich (er) ware gesprungen, I (he) would have sprung. .
- ich (er) wäre hervorgekommen, I (he) would have come forth.

- ich (er) hatte gerebet, I (he) would have spoken.
- ich (er) ware gewandert, I (he) would have wandered.
- ich (er) hatte gehabt, I (he) would have had.
- ich (er) mare gemesen, I (he) would have been.

Future Tense.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

I shall	fingen,	sing.
Sing. 1. ich werbe	fpringen,	spring.
2. du wirst	reben,	speak.
3. er wird	wanbern,	wander.
PLUR. 1. wir werben	haben,	have.
2. ihr werdet	fein,	be.
8. sie werben	bervortommen,	come forth.
•	auslegen.	lay out.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	I shall	fingen,	sing.
SING.	1. ich werde	fpringen,	spring.
	2. bu werbest	reben,	speak.
	3. er werbe	wandern,	wander.
PLUR.	1. wir werben	haben,	have.
	2. ihr werbet	fein,	be.
		,	come forth.
		auslegen,	lay out.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

	I should	fingen,	sing.
Sing.	1. ich würde 2. bu würbest	fingen, fpringen, reben,	spring.
Рг пр	3. er murbe 1. wir murben	wandern, haben,	wander.
I LUK.	2. ihr murbet	fein,	be.
•	8. sie würden	hervorkommen, auslegen,	come forth.

Past Future Tense.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Sing. 1. ich werbe
2. du wirst
3. er wird gesprungen haben, I shall have sung,
etc. etc.
gesprungen sein, I shall have sprung,
etc. etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Sing. 1. ich werde etc. etc.
2. du werdest gesprungen sein, I shall have sung, etc. etc.
3. er werde etc. etc. etc.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Sing. ich murbe gesprungen fein, ich murbe gerebet haben, I should have leapt, spoken.

§ 97. The Passive Voice is formed by the Past Participle and the auxiliary verb merben. The English have no Passive voice, properly speaking, and the use of the German Passive, therefore, is for them the most difficult feature of the German Grammar. Ich werde getöbtet is commonly translated by I am killed, but should more properly be translated by I am being killed; I am undergoing the action of, I am about being killed. He was saved is equivalent to he was safe, but er wurde gerettet means he was being saved, and at last became safe.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Present.

INFIN. geliebt merben, geliebt zu merben, to be loved.

INDICATIVE MOOD. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. I am loved, I am being I am loved, I am being. loved. loved. Sing. 1. ich werbe geliebt ich werbe geliebt 2. bu wirft geliebt bu werbest geliebt

> 3. er wird geliebt, er werbe geliebt, etc. etc.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Imperfect Tense.

I was loved, I was being loved. I were, or I would be loved.

Sing. 1. ich wurde geliebt

ich würde geliebt bu würdeft geliebt

2. bu wurdeft geliebt 3. er wurde geliebt,

er wurde geliebt,

etc.

etc.

Perfect Tense.

INFIN. geliebt worden sein, or zu sein, to have been loved.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

He has been loved.

He has been loved.

Sing. 3. er ift geliebt worben.

er fei geliebt worben.

Pluperfect Tense.

He had been loved.

He had been loved.

Smg. 3. er mar geliebt worben.

er mare geliebt worben.

Future Tense.

He will be loved.

He will be loved.

Smg. 8. er wird geliebt werden.

er werbe geliebt werben.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Er würde geliebt werden, he would be loved.

Past Future Tense.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

He will have been loved.

He will have been loved.

Sing. 8. er wird geliebt worden fein. er werde geliebt worden fein.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Er würde geliebt worden sein, he would have been loved.

§ 98. The following is a complete paradigm of a verb of the modern, and also of one of the ancient conjugation.

COMPLETE PARADIGM OF THE MODERN CONJUGATION.

A. ACTIVE VOICE.

Infin. lieben, ju lieben, to love.

INDICATIVE MOOD. I. Pressn	Subjunctive Mood.
I love, I am loving.	I love.
Sing. 1. ich liebe	tch liebe
2. du liebst	bu liebest
8. er (fie, es) liebt,	er liebe,
PLUR. 1. mir lieben	wir lieben
2. ibr liebt	ibr liebet
8. se lieben.	fie lieben,
II. Imperfect or P	ast Tense.
I loved.	I loved.
Sing. 1. ich liebte	ich liebte
2. bu liebteft	du liebteft
3. er (fie, es) liebte,	er liebte,
PLUR. 1. wir liebten	wir liebten
2. ihr liebtet	ihr liebtet
8. sie liebten.	fle liebten.
III. Perfect	Tense.
Infin. geliebt haben, geliebt ju	haben, to have loved.
I have loved.	I have loved.
Smo. 1. ich habe geliebt	ich habe geliebt
. 2. bu haft geliebt	bu habest geliebt
8. er hat geliebt,	er habe geliebt,
PLUR. 1. wir haben geliebt	wir haben geliebt
2. ihr habt geliebt	ihr habet geliebt
8. fie haben geliebt.	fle haben geliebt.
IV. Pluperfect	Tense.
I had loved.	I had loved.
Sing. 1. ich hatte geliebt	ich hätte geliebt
2. bu hatteft geliebt	bu hättest geliebt
8. er hatte geliebt,	er hatte geliebt,
11	

_		
INDIC	ATTUR	Moon

- PLUR. 1. wir hatten geliebt
 - 2. ihr hattet geliebt
 - 3. fie hatten geliebt.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

- wir hätten geliebt ihr hättet geliebt
- fie hatten geliebt.

V. Future Tense.

I shall love.

- Sing. 1. ich werbe lieben
 - 2. bu wirft lieben
 - 3. er wird lieben,
- PLUR. 1. wir werben lieben
 - 2. ibr werbet lieben
 - 3. fle werben lieben.

I shall love.

- ich werbe lieben bu werbest lieben er werbe lieben.
- er werde tieden, wir werden lieben
- ihr werdet lieben
- fie werben lieben.

VI. Conditional Mood.

I should love.

- Sing. 1. ich murbe lieben
 - 2. bu murbeft lieben
 - 3. er murbe lieben,

- We should love.
- PLUR. 1. wir würben lieben
 - 2. ihr murbet lieben
 - 8. fie murben lieben.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

VII. Past Future Tense.

I shall have loved.

- SING. 1. ich werbe geliebt haben
 - 2. du wirft geliebt haben
 - 3. er wird geliebt haben,
- PLUR. 1. wir werben geliebt haben
 - 2. ihr werbet geliebt haben
 - 8. fie werben geliebt haben.

- I shall have loved.
- ich werde geliebt haben du werdest geliebt haben
- er werbe geliebt haben, wir werben geliebt haben
- ihr werdet geliebt haben
- fie werben geliebt haben.

VIII. Past Conditional Mood.

SINGULAR.

I should have loved,

- 1. ich murbe geliebt haben
- 2. bu würdeft geliebt haben
- 3. er würde geliebt haben.

PLURAL

- We should have loved.
- 1. wir wurden geliebt haben
- 2. ihr wurdet geliebt haben
- 3. fle murben geliebt haben.

IX. Imperative.

PLUR. 2. liebt, love! Sing. 2. liebe (liebe bu), love! 3. lieben Sie, love !

X. Participle.

Past. geliebt, loved. Present. liebenb, loving.

B. PASSIVE VOICE.

Invin. geliebt werden, geliebt zu werden, to be loved.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

I. Present.

I am loved.

Smg. 1. ich werbe geliebt

2. bu wirft geliebt

3. er wird geliebt,

PLUR. 1. wir werben geliebt

2. ihr werbet geliebt

3. fie werben geliebt.

I be loved.

ich werbe geliebt

bu werbest geliebt

er werbe geliebt, wir werben geliebt

ihr werbet geliebt

fie werben geliebt.

II. Imperfect Tense.

I was (was being) loved.

Sing. 1. ich murbe geliebt

2. bu murbeft geliebt

3. er murbe geliebt,

PLUR. 1. wir wurden geliebt 2. ihr murbet geliebt

8. fie murben geliebt.

I were (being) loved.

ich würbe geliebt bu würdest geliebt

er würbe geliebt,

wir würben geliebt

ihr würbet geliebt

fie murben geliebt.

III. Perfect Tense.

I have been loved.

Sing. 1. ich bin geliebt worden

2. bu bift geliebt worben 3. er ift geliebt morben,

PLUR. 1. wir find geliebt worben

2. ihr feid geliebt worden

8. fie find geliebt worben.

I have been loved.

ich sei geliebt worben

bu feiest geliebt worben er fei geliebt worben,

wir feien geliebt worben ihr feiet geliebt worben

fie feien geliebt worben.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IV. Pluperfect Tense.

I had been loved.

Sing. 1. ich war geliebt worden

2. bu marft geliebt worben 3. er mar geliebt worben.

PLUR. 1. wir waren geliebt worden

2. ihr wart geliebt worden

& fie maren geliebt worben.

I had been loved.

ich mare geliebt worden

bu mareft geliebt worben er mare geliebt worben,

wir wären geliebt worben ihr wäret geliebt worben

fie maren geliebt worden.

V. Future Tense.

I shall be loved.

Sing. 1. ich werbe geliebt werben

2. bu wirft geliebt werben

8. er wird geliebt werben,

PLUR. 1. wir werben geliebt werben

2. ihr werdet geliebt werden 8. fie werden geliebt werden.

I shall be loved.

ich werbe geliebt werben bu werbest geliebt werben

er werbe geliebt werben, wir werben geliebt werben

ihr werbet geliebt werben

fie werben geliebt werben.

VI. Conditional

SINGULAR.

I should be loved,

1. ich murbe geliebt werben

2. bu murbeft geliebt merben

8. er murbe geliebt werben.

PLURAL

We should be loved.

1. wir murben geliebt werben

2. ihr murbet geliebt merben

8. fie murben geliebt werben.

VII. Past Future Tense.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Subjunctive Mood.

I shall have been loved. I shall have been loved.
Singular.

1. ich werbe geliebt worben fein ich werbe geliebt worben fein

2. bu wirft geliebt worden fein bu werbest geliebt worden fein

3. er wird geliebt worden fein, er werde geliebt worden fein,

1. wir werben geliebt worben fein wir werben geliebt worben fein

2. ihr werbet geliebt worden fein ihr werbet geliebt worden fein

3. fie werben geliebt worben fein. fe werden geliebt worben fein.

VIII. Past Conditional.

SINGULAR.

PLITE AT.

	I sl	hould h	ave be	en love	ł,
1.	iá	würbe	geliebt	worben	fein

We should have been loved. wir murben geliebt morben fein 2. bu murbeft geliebt worben fein ihr murbet geliebt worben fein

8. er murbe geliebt worben fein.

fle wurden geliebt worben fein.

Annotation. - Instead of ich murbe geliebt, bu murbeft geliebt, er wurde geliebt, there is another form in use in poetry, - ich ward geliebt, bu wardst geliebt, er ward geliebt.

COMPLETE PARADIGM OF THE ANCIENT CONJUGATION.

A. ACTIVE VOICE.

Infin. schlagen, ju schlagen, to beat.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

L Present Tense.

I beat, rout.
ich schlage
bu schlageft
er schlage,
wir schlagen
ihr schlaget
fie schlagen.

II. Imperfect or Past Tense.

I beat, routed.	I beat, routed (should beat)
Sing. 1. ich schlug	ich schlüge
2. bu schlugst	bu schlügest
3. er fclug,	er folüge,
PLUR. 1. wir fclugen	wir schlügen
2. ihr schlugt	ibr fcblüget
3. fle ichlugen.	fle schlügen.

III. Perfect Tense.

Infin. gefchlagen haben, gefchlagen ju haben, to have beaten.

Indicative Mood.

I have beaten.

I have geschlagen

bu habest geschlagen

er habe geschlagen,

wir haben geschlagen,

etc.

IV. Pluperfect Tense.

I had beaten. I had beaten.
Sing. 1. ich hatte geschlagen, ich hätte geschlagen, etc.

V. Future Tense.

V. Kutura Ta	nse.
I shall beat.	I shall beat.
Sing. 1. ich werbe schlagen	ich werbe schlagen
2. bu wirft schlagen	bu werbest schlagen
3. er wird ichlagen,	er werbe schlagen,
Plus. 1. wir werben ichlagen	wir werben folagen
2. ihr werdet schlagen	ihr werbet schlagen
8. fle werben schlagen.	fie werben folagen.
~	_

VI	. Conditional.
SINGULAR.	Plural.
I should beat,	We should beat.
1. ich murbe fchlagen	1. wir murben fchlagen
2. bu murbeft ichlagen	2. ihr murbet fclagen
& er wurde folagen,	3. fle murben ichlagen.

VII. Past Future Tense.

	INDICATIVE MOOD.	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.
	I shall have beaten.	I shall have beaten.
Sing.	1. ich werbe geschlagen haben	ich werbe geschlagen haben
	2. bu wirft geschlagen haben	bu werbest geschlagen haben
	3. er wird gefchlagen haben,	er werbe gefchlagen haben,
PLUR.	1. wir merben gefchlagen hab.,	wir werben gefchlagen bab.,
	etc.	etc.

VIII. Past Conditional.

SINGULAR.

I should have beaten,

PLURAL.

- We should have beaten.
- 1. ich würde geschlagen haben
- 1. wir wurden gefchlagen haben
- 2. bu murbeft gefchlagen haben
- 2. ihr murbet gefchlagen haben
- 8. er murbe gefchlagen haben,
- 8. fie würden geschlagen haben.

IX. Imperative Mood.

- 2. schlage! (schlage bu!) beat!
- 2. fclagt! (fclagtifr!) beat!
- 3. fclagen Gie! beat!

X. Participles.

Present. ichlagend, beating.

Past. gefchlagen, beaten.

B. PASSIVE VOICE.

Infin. geschlagen werden, geschlagen zu werden, to be beaten.
Indicative Mood.

Subjunctive Mood.

I. Present.

I am beaten (being beaten). Sing. 1. ich werbe geschlagen

2. bu wirft geschlagen

3. er wird geschlagen,

PLUR. 1. wir werben gefchlagen,

I am being beaten.
ich werde geschlagen
bu werdest geschlagen
er werde geschlagen,
wir werden geschlagen,

II. Imperfect or Past.

I was beaten (being beaten). Sing. 1. ich wurde geschlagen, etc. I were (being) beaten.
ich würde geschlagen,
etc.

I have been beaten.

III. Perfect Tense.

I have been beaten.

SING. 1. ich bin geschlagen worben, ich sei geschlagen worben, etc.

IV. Pluperfect Tense.

I had been beaten.

I had been beaten.

Sing. 1. ich war geschlagen worden, ich wäre geschlagen worden, etc.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

V. Future Tense.

I shall be beaten.

I shall be beaten.

- SING. 1. ich werbe geschlagen werben ich werbe geschlagen werben
 - 2. bu wirft geschlagen werben, bu werbest geschlagen werb., etc.

VI. Conditional Mood.

Sing. 1. ich murbe geschlagen werben, I should be beaten.

VII. Future Past.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

I shall have been beaten.

I shall have been beaten. ich werbe geschlagen worden

Sing. 1. ich werbe geschlagen worben fein

sein

2. bu wirst geschlagen worben sein, etc. bu werbest geschlagen worben sein, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

VIII. Conditional Past.

Sing. 1. ich murbe geschlagen worden sein, I should have been beaten.

COMPLETE PARADIGM OF THE AUXILIARY VERB fein, to be.

Infin. sein, zu sein, to be.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

I. Present.

I am.	I may be, or I am.
Sing. 1. ich bin	ich sei
2. bu bist	bu feist
3. er ift,	er fei,
PLUR. 1. wir find	wir feien
2. ihr feib	ihr feiet
8. se find.	fie feien.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

II. Imperfect.

I was.

I might be, or I were.

Sing. 1. ich war

2. bu warst bu wärest

3. er war, er wäre,

Plur. 1. wir waren

2. ihr wart ihr wären

8. sie waren.

III. Perfect Tense.

Infin. gewesen sein, gewesen zu sein, to have been.

INDICATIVE MOOD. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. I may have been. I have been. Sing. 1. ich bin gewesen ich fei gewesen 2. bu bift gemefen bu feift gemefen 3. er ift gemefen, er fei gemefen, PLUR. 1. wir find gewesen wir feien gewefen 2. ihr feib gemefen ihr feiet gewesen 8. fle find gemefen. fie feien gemefen.

IV. Pluperfect Tense.

I had been.

I had been (I might have been).

Sing. 1. ich war gewesen ich wäre gewesen

2. du warst gewesen,

8. er war gewesen,

Plue. 1. wir waren gewesen

2. ihr wart gewesen ihr wären gewesen

3. ste waren gewesen.

ste wären gewesen.

V. Future Tense.

I shall be. I shall be.

Sing. 1. ich werde sein ich werde sein
2. du wirst sein du werdest sein
3. er wird sein, er werde sein,

Indicative Mood.

Pluk. 1. wir werden sein wir werden sein
2. ihr werdet sein ihr werdet sein
8. sie werden sein.

VI. Conditional.

I should be, We should be.

Sing. 1. ich würbe sein
2. du würbest sein
3. er würbe sein,
3. sie würden sein.

VIL. Past Future.

INDICATIVE MOOD. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. I shall have been. I shall have been. ich werbe gewesen fein Sing. 1. ich werbe gewesen fein 2. bu wirft gewesen fein bu werbest gewesen fein 3. er wird gewesen fein, er werbe gemefen fein, PLUR. 1. wir werben gemefen fein wir werben gemefen fein 2. ihr werbet gewesen fein ibr werbet gewesen fein 3. fle merben gemefen fein. fie merben gemefen fein.

VIII. Past Conditional.

SINGULAR. PLUBAL.

I should have been,
1. ich würde gewesen sein
2. du würdest gewesen sein
3. er würde gewesen sein,
3. er würde gewesen sein,
3. sie würden gewesen sein,
3. sie würden gewesen sein,
3. sie würden gewesen sein,

IX. Imperative Mood.

Sing. 2. sei, be! Plur. 1. seien wir! let us be! 3. er, sie, es sei, he may be! 2. seiel! be! 3. seien Sie, be!

X. Participles.

Present. feiend, being. Past. gewesen, been.

COMPLETE PARADIGM OF THE AUXILIARY VERB basen, to have.

Infin. haben, zu haben, to have.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

I. Present.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. 1 / 28274

	I have.	I may have.
Sing.	1. ich habe	ich habe
	2. bu hast	bu habest
	8. er hat,	er habe,
PLUR.	1. wir haben	wir haben
	2. ihr habt	ihr habet
	8. sie haben.	se haben.

II. Imperfect Tense.

		I had.	I had or I might have.
Sing.	1.	ich hatte	ich hätte
	2.	bu hatteft	bu hättest
	8.	er hatte,	er hätte,
PLUR.	1.	wir hatten	wir hätten
	2.	ihr hattet	ihr hättet
	8.	fie hatten.	fle hatten.

III. Perfect Tense.

Infin. gehabt haben, gehabt zu haben, to have had.

		INDICATIVE MOOD.	Subjunctive Mood.
		I have had.	I have had or I may have had.
Smg.	1.	ich habe gehabt	ich habe gehabt
	2.	bu haft gehabt	bu habest gehabt
	3.	er hat gehabt,	er habe gehabt,
PLUR.	1.	wir haben gehabt	wir haben gehabt
	2.	ihr habt gehabt	ihr habet gehabt
	3.	fie baben gebabt.	fle baben gebabt.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IV. Pluperfect Tense.

I had had.

I had had, I might have had.

Sing. 1. ich hatte gehabt
2. bu hattest gehabt
3. er hatte gehabt,
Plur. 1. wir hatten gehabt
2. ihr hattet gehabt
3. se hatten gehabt
4. ihr hättet gehabt
5. se hatten gehabt
6. se hatten gehabt
7. ihr hattet gehabt
8. se hatten gehabt
9. se hatten gehabt
1. se hätten gehabt
1. se h

V. Future Tense.

I shall have.	I shall have.
Sing. 1. ich werbe haben	ich werde haben
2. du wirft haben	bu werbest haben
3. er wird haben,	er werbe haben,
PLUR. 1. wir werben haben	wir werden haben
2. ihr werbet haben	ihr werbet haben
3. fle werben haben.	fle werden haben.

VI. Conditional.

	V1.	Conditional.	•
	I should have,		We should have.
Sing.	1. ich würbe haben	PLUR. 1.	wir murben haben
	2. bu murbeft haben	2.	ihr mürdet haben
	3. er würde haben,	8.	fle würden haben.
	VII.	Past Future.	

	INDICATIVE MOOD.	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.
	I shall have had.	I shall have had.
Sing.	1. ich werbe gehabt haben	ich werbe gehabt haben
	2. bu wirft gehabt haben	bu werbest gehabt haben
	3. er wird gehabt haben,	er werbe gehabt haben,
PLUR.	1. wir werben gehabt haben	- wir werben gehabt haben
	2. ihr werbet gehabt haben	ihr werbet gehabt haben
	3. fle merben gehabt baben.	fe merben gehabt baben.

VIII. Past Conditional.

STRUCTLAR.

PLURAL

I should have had.

We should have had.

- 1. ich würde gehabt haben
- 1. wir würden gehabt haben
- 2. bu murbeft gehabt baben
- 2. ihr murbet gehabt baben
- 8. er murbe gehabt baben,
- 8. fle murben gehabt haben.

IX. Imperative Mood.

. Sing. 2. habe, habe bu! have! Plue. 1. haben wir! let us have!

2. babt! have!

3. baben Sie! have!

X. Participles.

Pres. babend, having.

Past. gebabt, had.

COMPLETE PARADIGM OF THE AUXILIARY VERB merben, TO BECOME.

I. Present.

Infin. werben, ju werben, to become.

INDICATIVE	Mood
------------	------

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

I become.

I may become.

Sing. 1. ich werbe

ich werbe

2. bu wirft

bu merbeft

3. er mirb. PLUR. 1. wir merben er werbe. wir werben

2. ibr werbet

ibr werbet fie merben.

8. fle werben.

II. Imperfect.

I became.

I might become. Sing. 1. ich murbe ich murbe

> 2. bu wurbeft 8. er murbe.

bu murbeft er murbe.

PLUR. 1. wir wurden

wir würden ibr mürbet

2. ibr murbet 8. fle murben.

fe würben.

12

III. Perfect.

Infin. geworben sein, geworben ju sein, to have become.

	INDICATIVE MOOD.	SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.
	I have become.	I have become.
Sing.	1. ich bin geworben	ich fei geworden
	2. bu bift geworben	bu feift geworben
	3. er ift geworben,	er fei geworben,
PLUR.	1. wir find geworben	wir feien geworben
	2. ihr feib geworben	ihr feiet geworben
	3. fie find geworben.	fle feien geworben.

IV. Pluperfect.

	I had become.	I might have become.
Smg. 1	. ich war geworben	ich wäre geworben.
2	. bu warst geworben	bu wärest geworben
8	er war geworben,	er wäre geworben,
PLUR. 1,	wir waren geworben	wir maren geworben
2.	. ihr wart geworden	ihr wäret geworben
	fle waren geworben.	fle wären geworden.

V. Puture Tense.

	I shall become.	I shall become.
Sing.	1. ich werbe werben	ich werde werden
	2. bu wirft werben	bu werbest werben
	3. er wird werben,	er werbe werben,
PLUR.	1. wir werben werben	wir werben werben
	2. ihr werbet werben	ihr werbet werben
	3. sie werben werben.	fle werben werben.

VI. Conditional Mood.

	I should become,	We should become.
SING.	1. ich würbe werben	Plun. 1. wir murben werben
	2. bu murbest werben	2. ihr würdet werben
	3. er murbe werben,	3. fle würben werben.

VII. Past Future.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

I shall have become.

I shall have become.

Sing. 1. ich werbe geworben fein 2. bu wirft geworben fein ich werbe geworben fein bu werbest geworben fein

3. er wird geworben fein,

er werbe geworben fein,

VIII. Conditional Past.

Sing. 1. ich würde geworden sein, I should have become.

IX. Imperative Mood.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

2. werbe! become, be!

2. werbet! become, be!

8. er (fie, es) merbe! he (she, it) 3. werben Sie! become, be! may become!

X. Participles.

Present. werbend, becoming.

Past. geworben, become.

The following is the inflection of all verbs compounded with fein; as, fpringen, to leap.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres. ich fpringe, bu fpringft, etc. ich fpringe, bu fpringeft, etc.

Past. ich fprang

ich fprange

Perf. ich bin gesprungen

ich fei gesprungen

Plup. ich mar gesprungen Fut.

ich mare gesprungen ich werbe, bu wirft fpringen ich werbe, bu werbeft fpringen

P. Fut. ich werbe gesprungen fein. ich werbe, bu werbeft gesprungen fein.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PAST CONDITIONAL MOOD.

ich würde fpringen.

ich murbe gesprungen fein.

CLASSIFICATION OF VERBS OF THE ANCIENT FORM.

§ 99. Of the German verbs over 4,500 are inflected after the modern form, and only about 500 after the ancient; the former comprising, not only all derivative, but also some radical verbs, whilst the latter are all radical verbs, or verbs compounded with them. Compound verbs generally follow the conjugation of the simple verbs from which they are formed.

Verbs of the ancient form change their radical vowel by the *Umlaut* in the Imperfect Tense and Participle Past, and a few of them also in the second and third person singular of the Present, as well as in the singular of the Imperative. All these verbs may be divided into three classes, according to their original vowel and its change in the above forms; and these three classes are again subdivided, according to the particular kind of this change.

The first class agree in having a double *Umlaut*, the radical vowel t or ϵ , and in two cases \tilde{a} , being twice modified, in the Past and Participle Past.

The second class agree in having a simple *Umlaut*, the same in the Past and Participle Past.

The third class agree in taking the Rücklaut, having the same radical vowel in the Participle Past as in the Present.

These verbs assume the *Umlaut* according to the following table:—

~-	 т
	 1.

CLASS	l.	
Infinitiva.	Imperfect.	PAST PART.
Subdivision 1. i	a	u
2. t or e (ä)	α	Đ
CLASS I	I.	
Subdivision 1. i (ie, ü), e (ä, ö, au),	2 0	0
2. ei	i (short)	i (short) ·
3. ei	ie (long)	ie (long)
CLASS I	II.	
Subdivision 1. a (au, v, u, ei)	i or ie	a (au, o, u, ei)
2. a	u	a
. 3. i or e	a	ę.

THEORETICAL PART.

English Analogies.

I.	1.	fingen	fang	gefungen	to sing	I sang	sung.
	2.	gebären	gebar	geboren	to bear	I bare	borne.
II.	1.	heben	hob	gehoben	to heave	I hove	hoven.
	2.	reiten	ritt	geritten	to ride	I rode, rid	ridden.
	8.	treiben	trieb	getrieben	to drive	I drove	driven.
III.	1	fallen	fiel	gefallen	to fall	I fell	fallen.
	2.	tragen	trug	getragen	to draw	I drew	drawn.
	3.	geben	gab	gegeben	to give	I gave	given.

FIRST CLASS OF VERBS OF THE ANGIENT FORM.

§ 100. First Subdivision.

Radical vowel i; Imperfect a; Past Participle u.

Infinitive.	Imperfect.	Past Participle.
binden, to bind	banb	gebunden
— finden, to find	fand	gefunden
schwinden, to decrease	schwand	geschwunden
winden, to wind	wand	gewunden
bringen, to press, to urge	brang	gebrungen
gelingen, to succeed	gelang	gelungen
flingen, to sound	klang	geflungen
ringen, to wring, to struggle	rang	gerungen
schlingen, to sling, to swallow	schlang	geschlungen
schwingen, to swing	schwang	geschwungen
fingen, to sing	sang	gefungen
springen, to spring, to leap	sprang	gesprungen
- awingen, to force	zwang	gezwungen
- finten, to sink	fant	gefunten
+ stinten, to stink	stant	gestunten
- trinten, to drink	trant	getrunten.

Note 1. Dingen, to hire, has in the Impersect bung or bingte, in the Participle Past gebungen. Schinden, to skin, flay, has schund, geschunden.

Infinitive.

rinnen, to run, to flow

- beginnen, to begin

gewinnen, to win

fteden, to stick (intrans.)

treffen, to hit, meet

Note 2. Umringen, to surround, is inflected after the modern form.

§ 101. Second Subdivision.

Radical vowel i and e (short or long), v short (a); Past a short or a long; Past Participle v short or v long.

Imperfect.

begann

gewann

rann

Past Participle

begonnen

gewonnen

geronnen

geftoden

getroffen

7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		8	****		
finnen, to meditate	fa	fann fpann fcwamm		gesonnen		
spinnen, to spin	q)			gesponnen		
schwimmen, to swim	fd			ommen.		
Infinitive. I	mperative.	Imperf.	Subj. Imperf.	Past Part.		
bergen, to conceal	birg	barg	bärge	geborgen		
gelten, to be worth	gilt	galt	gälte*	gegolten		
schelten, to scold, chide	schilt	schalt	schölte	gescholten		
helfen, to help	hilf	half	hälfe †	geholfen		
sterben, to die	stirb	starb	ftarbe ‡	gestorben		
verberben, to spoil §	verbirb	verbarb	verbürbe	verborben		
werben, to sue for	wirb	warb	würbe	geworben		
werfen, to throw	wirf	warf	würfe	geworfen		
werden, to become	bu wirft	ward	würde	geworben		
bersten, to burst	birst	barst	bärfte	geborften		
brechen, to break	brich	brach	bräche	gebrochen		
breschen, to thrash	brisch	brasa	brafche	gebrofchen		
sprechen, to speak	(price)	(prad)	[prache	gesprochen		
stechen, to sting	stich	stach	stäche	gestochen		
erichreden, be frightened	erfchrid	erichrat		erfcroden		

triff

stat

traf

stäle

träfe

^{*} or gotte. † or bute. ‡ or ftate. § or to be spoiled. | or wurde. ¶ Erschreden, to frighten, and febien, to miss, err, are conjugated in the modern form. Berbebien, to conceal, has berbebiet, berbebien; raden, to avenge, rader, geroden. Steden (transitive), to put, belongs to the modern conjugation.

Imperation. Imperf. Bulj. Imperf. Past Part. befiehl befabl beföhle befohlen befehlen, command empfehlen, to recommend empfiehl empfahl empföhle empfoblen gestoblen flehlen, to steal Riebl stabl Röble gebären, to bear (children) gebier gebäre aebar aeboren - nehmen, to take nimm nähme nabm genommen - fommen, to come fäme aetommen. fa m

Poun

NOTE 1. These two subdivisions of the first class exhibit the Umlaut most completely and systematically; i being the radical vowel for the Present, a for the Past, and u for the Participle; - e being but a modification of i, as is shown by the Imperative birg, brid, befiehl, nimm, and the second and third persons of the Present singular bu birgft, er birgt; bu brichft, er bricht: bu befiehlft, er befiehlt; bu nimmft, er nimmt; - and o being but a modification of u. as is proved by derivatives like Burf, Spruch, and the Subjunctives Imperfect bulfe, fturbe. The i and e of the Present were originally everywhere short. even in empfehlen, befehlen, ftehlen, nehmen, gebaren. The Past was short in the singular, long in the plural; while, in modern German, singular and plural are alike, and are short before a twofold or doubled Auslant, long before a simple Auslant (including the as brack, ftack, fprack, brafch). Erfchrat, traf, and fam assume, on account of the radical vowel becoming long, a simple Auslaut.

Note 2. The verbs sterben, verberben, werben, have in the Subjunctive Imperfect more frequently the Umlaut ü; as, stürbe, verbürbe, würbe; helsen and wersen have hälse, wärse, about as osten as hülse, würse. The Umlaut of the Subjunctive is ö in besehlen, empsehlen, stehlen, etc., gelten, schlen, beginnen, gerinnen, rinnen; but gewänne, schwämme, sanne, spanne, are sound. Berberbt, spoiled, corrupted, occurs sometimes instead of verborben.

Note 3. The second and third person singular Present of fommen is about as often bu fommst, er fommt, as bu fommst, er

tommt. So, besides gebierst and gebiert, the form gebarft, ge-

Note 4. Beherbergen, to harbor, and bewillfommen, to welcome, are inflected after the modern form.

Note 5. The verbs of this class all have for final consonant a liquid (n, m, l, r); as, beginnen, schwimmen, stehlen, gebären;—or a liquid with a mute; as, binden, bringen, sinten, gelten, belsen, bersen, bersten;—or a semiliquid (f, sch, ch, or d);—none a simple mute, as b, p, b, t, g, t, s. The u of the first subdivision enters into the Participle Past always before a liquid followed by a mute; the v of the second subdivision always before a simple liquid or semiliquid and before d. The vowel is always long in the Imperfect before one of the rough or semiliquid sounds ch, d, sch, sf.

Note 6. In er gift, er foilt, er birft, the t of the termination is thrown off after the radical t.

SECOND CLASS.

§ 102. First Subdivision.

t (ie, ü), —o, —o;	e (a, d, au), —o, ·	—o; a, —o, —o.
Infinitive.	Imperfect.	Past Participle.
schieben, to shove, push,	schob (long v)	geschoben (long o)
stieben, to disperse,	stob	gestoben
biegen, to bend,	bog	gebogen.
fliegen, to fly,	flog	geflogen
wiegen, to weigh,	wog	gewogen
lügen, to tell lies,	log	gelogen
betrügen, to deceive,	betrog	betrogen
fliehen, to flee,	floh	geflohen
gieben, to pull, tug,	30gt	gezogen

^{*} The verb tommen is classified here because the original radical vowel seems to have been i: timmen, tamm, getommen; the forms bu tummen or timmen, trummen, ter tummen or timmen, being still in use as provincialisms.

t in siehen, 109, 301930n, and in siehen, sort, 3010ten, a modification of the Auslant is required by the modification of the vowel; 3 as Auslant being a stronger aspirate than h, and the b in the Auslant sounding always much like t, and after a short vowel like tt.

Infinitive.	Imperfect.	Past Participle.
frieren, to freeze,	fror	gefroren
verlieren, to lose,	verlor	verloren
erfüren, to elect, choose,	erfor,	ertoren
bieten, to offer,	bot	geboten
fieden, to seethe, boil	fott (short v)*	gesotten (short v)
fließen, to flow,	floß, pl. floffen	gefloffen
genießen, to enjoy,	genoß, pl genoffer	n genoffen
gießen, to pour, to gush,	goß, pl. goffen	gegoffen
schießen, to shoot,	schoß, pl. schossen	geschossen
schließen, to shut,	schloß, pl. schlosser	a geschlossen
sprießen, to sprout,	fproß, pl fproffen	gesprossen
verbrießen, to grieve,	verdroß, ploffen	verbroffen
trieden, to creep, crawl,	trod	getrochen
riechen, to reek, smell,	rod	gerochen
triefen, to drip,	troff	getroffen
glimmen, to glimmer,	glomm	geglommen
flimmen, to climb,	Nomm	geflommen
heben, to heave, lift,	hob (long v)	gehoben (long v)
meben, to weave,	toob	gewoben
bewegen, to induce,†	bewog	bewogen _ /
pflegen, to practise,†	pflog	gepflogen to
scheren, to shear,	ſфor	geschoren
gähren, to ferment,	'gohr	gegohren
schwären, to fester,	ſфwor	geschworen
schwören, to swear,	schwor	geschworen
Infinitive.	• •	articiple. Imperative.
fecten, to fight,	focht (o short) gef	
flechten, to twine, plait,	, ,	lochten flicht
breschen, to thrash,	drosch (drasch) geb	
erlöschen, to be extin-		schen erlisch •
verlöschen, guished,	d pertota per	loschen verlisch

^{*} See note † on page 140. † betwegen, to move, has betweger, betweger, and pflegen, to sures and to use (to do), has pflegte, gepflegt.

Infinitive. melten, to milk, schmelzen, to melt, quellen, to spring forth, schwellen, to swell,	Imporfect. molf fchmolz quoll fchwoll	Past Participle. gemolfen geschmolzen gequollen geschwollen	Imperative. milf fchmilz quill fchwill
schallen, to resound, saufen, to drink (of beasts)	schou	geschollen gesoffen	
faugen, to suck, schnauben, to snort, schrauben, to screw,	fog fdnob fdrob	gefogen gefchnoben gefchroben	

Note 1. The verbs bestemmen, to straiten, and taken, to revenge, form thus only a Past Participle, bestommen and gerochen, and this only in poetry. Of verwirren there exists a Past Participle verworren, intricate, and another, verwirren, confused; of verbeblen, to conceal, verboblen, but only in the form unverboblen, unreserved. Quellen, sometien, sometien, sidwellen, sieben, are inflected after the modern form, when used in a transitive meaning; and the same holds good of the simple verb löschen, to extinguish. Gewoben, woven, is only poetical; gewebt takes its place in prose.

Note 2. The second and third persons of the singular Present assume i in sechten, slechten, breschen, löschen, mellen, schmelzen, quellen, schwellen, and sometimes in gähren, schwären, scheren, and äu in saufen; as, bu sichtst (or sicht), slichtst (or slicht), brischt, er erlischt, schmilst, quillt, schwillt, es giehrt, schwiert, es schiert (in the saying was schiert bich bas? what's that to you?), bu säusst, er säust.

Note 3. The Subjunctive Imperfect is formed in the usual way; as, schoole, boge, slope, sloge, gosse, schoole, schoole,

Note 4. In poetry occur some antiquated forms of verbs with the radical vowel ie, assuming the *Umlaut* en in the second and third persons singular of the Present; as, bu beutst, er beut (from bieten); bu sleugst, er sleugt (from sliegen); es sleugt (from

fliegen); bu zeuchft, er zeugt, Imperative zeuch (from ziehen); er freucht (from friechen).

Note 5. The pupil may remark that the long radical vowel of the Infinitive becomes short before the rough sounds th, t, f, fth, f; as, fliesen, flos; triesen, troth; triesen, troff; fausen, soff; — short vowels remain short; as, flechten, floth; — long vowels before a liquid, a semiliquid, or a simple mute, remain long; as, verlieren, verlor; fliesen, flog; bieten, bot; schieben, schob.

§ 103. Second Subdivision.

ei; i (short); i (short).

Infinitive.	Imperfect.	Past Participle.
(fich) befleißen to apply one's self,	befliß,	befliffen
beißen, to bite,	big	gebiffen
reißen, to tear,	riß	geriffen
schleißen, to slit,	salis	geschliffen
schmeißen, to smite, fling,	schmiß	geschmiffen
spleißen, to split,	spliß	gesplissen
erbleichen, to turn pale,	erblich	erblichen
gleichen, to resemble,	glidy	geglichen
schleichen, to sneak, 🕳	fostio	geschlichen
streichen, to strike, stroke,	ftrich	gestrichen
weichen, to yield,	wich	gewichen
greifen, to seize, gripe,	griff	gegriffen
telfen, to chide,	tiff	getiffen
Ineifen, to pinch,	Iniff	gefniffen
fneipen, to pinch, to nip,	Inipp	geknippen
pseisen, to whistle, to pipe,	भिष	gepfiffen
schleifen, to grind,	Milf	geschliffen
leiben, to suffer,	litt	gelitten
schneiben, to cut,	schnitt	geschnitten
gleiten, to glide, slide,	glitt	geglitten
reiten, to ride (on horseback),	ritt	geritten
interiten, to stride, step,	scritt	geschritten
streiten, to quarrel,	ftritt	gestritten

ei; ie (i long); ie.

Imperfect. foreien, to cry, geschrien fárie fpeien, to spit, fpie gefpien gebeiben, to thrive, prosper.~ gebieb gedieben leiben, to lend, lieb gelieben zeiben, to accuse of, ateb aezieben bleiben, to remain.~ blieb aeblieben reiben, to rub, rieb gerieben ichreiben, to write, **Sorieb** gefdrieben treiben, to drive. getrieben trieb meiben, to shun ... mieb aemieben icheiben, to part with, divide, gefdieben fdieb schweigen, to be silent,~ fdwieg. gefdwiegen fleigen, to ascend, ftiea geftiegen scheinen, to shine, to seem, gefdienen fdien preisen, to praise, gepriefen brice weisen, to show, mies gewiefen

NOTE 1. The verb bleichen, to bleach, and sometimes even erbleichen, are inflected after the modern form; likewise schleifen, in other meanings than that of grinding, weichen, to soak, verleiben, to render disagreeable, bemitleiben, to pity, begleiten, to accompany (from geleiten, leiten, to lead, not from gleiten); bereiten, to prepare, and its compounds, are modern verbs.

NOTE 2. Where the vowel is short in the Past and the Past Participle, the Auslant is doubled, except where it is an & or d. In leiben and schneiben the b becomes tt as an The Subjunctive Imperfect is formed by simply adding e to the Indicative Imperfect; as, ich beslisse mich, ich gliche, griffe, litte, schriee (this form is correct, the first e being mute, and i-e not being adverse to euphony), spice, gebiebe, bliebe, fdwiege, fdiene, priefe.

Mille Wille

THEORETICAL PART.

THIRD CLASS.

195. First Subdivision.

a; ie, i; a.

`\	,, .	,	
Infinitive. I	mperfect.	Past Part.	Pres. Sing. 2d & 8d pers.
-blasen, to blow,	blies	geblafen	du blafeft, er blaft
braten, to roast,	briet	gebraten	bu brätft, er brät
rathen, to advise,	rieth	gerathen	bu rathft, er rath
folasen, to sleep,	fchlief	gefclafen	bu ichläfft, er ichläft
- fallen, to fall,	fiel	gefallen	bu fällft, er fällt
-halten, to hold, keep,	hielt	gehalten	bu hältft, er hält
- fangen, to catch,	fing (fieng)	gefangen	bu fängst, er fängt
- hangen, to hang,	hing (bieng)	gehangen	bu hangst, er hangt
- lassen, to let, leave,	ließ	gelaffen	bu läffeft, er läßt
bauen, to hew, cut,	hieb	gehauen	bu hauft, er haut
laufen, to run,	lief	gelaufen	du läufft, er läuft
- heißen, to be called,	hieß	geheißen	bu heißest, er beißt
ftogen, to push,	ftieß	gestoßen	bu ftogeft, er ftogt
rufen, to call,	rief	gerufen.	

Note 1. Brät, räth, hält are, on account of euphony, contracted from brät't, räth't, hält't, the forms bratet, rathet being also in use. In bläsest, lässest, the e is inserted for the sake of euphony; for the same reason both bu heißet, bu heißest, and bu stößt, bu stößest, occur; also bu hälst instead of bu hältst (hälst is pronounced, hältst written).

- 2. The Subjunctive Imperfect is formed by adding e; as, bliefe, briefe, etc.
- 3. The verbs falten, to fold, spalten, to split, salen, to salt, and schroten, to shred, were probably originally inflected after the above conjugation, while they have now the modern form; but there occurs a Past Participle gefalten, gespalten, gesalgen, geschroten, in an adjective sense.
- 4. Hieng and hieng are now antiquated, fing and hing being pronounced short.

§ 106. Second Subdivision.

a; u (long); a.

Infinitive.	Imperfect.	Past Part. Pres. Sing. 2d & 3d pers.
- baden, to bake,	but	gebaden bu badft, er badt
— fahren, to go,*	fuhr	gefahren bu fahrft, er fahrt
graben, to dig,	grub	gegraben bu grabft, er grabt
- laten, to load, charge	, lub	geladen bu labft, er ladt
-fragen, to ask,	frug (fragte)	gefragt { bu frägst, er frägt bu fragst, er fragt
· tragen, to carry,	trug	getragen bu trägft, er trägt
schlagen, to beat, -	fchlug	geschlagen bu schlägft, er schlägt
· schaffen, to shape,	schuf	geschaffen bu schaffit, er schafft
. wachsen, to grow,	wuchs	gewachsen bu machft, er machft
wasch, to wash,	wusch	gewaschen bu maschft, er mascht
stehen, to stand,	stand (stund)	gestanden
mahlen, to grind,		gemahlen.

- Note 1. The second and third persons of the Singular of the Present are long when the first person and the Infinitive are long; as, bu grabs, er grabt; bu trags, er tragt; schlags, schlagt; labs, labt; frags, frags; frags, frags.
- 2. In labt the b only is heard, the t being added to show the derivation. Labest and labet occur. Du waschst is written, wascht is pronounced.
- 3. Frug and fragte are both in use, the former especially in poetry. But is written with one t on account of the long vowel. Batte occurs also.†
- 4. Schaffen is inflected after the modern form when it means to work, to provide for.
- 5. Stehen is classified here because of its antiquated form, ftanben; ftunb is poetical. The verb mahlen, to grind, is regularly formed after the modern conjugation, with the above exception.

[#] I.e. in a wagon or any other conveyance,

[†] But is transitive and intransitive, bufte transitive only; not bas Brot bufte, but buf: and fie buf or bafte bas Brot.

THEORETICAL PART.

6. Heleathen, to marry, berashfchlagen, to deliberate, veranlaffen, to occasion, beauftragen, to commission, and willfahren, to comply with, being derivatives of Heirath, Rathschlag, Anlah, Austrag, and an antiquated substantive Willfahr, are conjugated after the modern form.

§ 107. Third Subdivision.

e, ie, i; a (long); e.				
Infinitive.	Imperative.	Imperfect.	Past Part.	
essen, to eat,-	iß	aß	gegeffen	
fressen, to eat (of beasts),	friß	fraß	gefreffen	
messure,-	miß	maß	gemeffen	
vergessen, to forget,-	vergiß	vergaß	vergeffen	
genesen, to recover, -		genas	genescn	
lesen, to read,	lies	las	gelefen	
fiben, to see, —	fieh	fah	gesehen	
geschehen, to happen,		geschah	geschehen	
geben, to give, -	gieb (gib)	gab	gegeben	
treten, to tread	tritt	trat	getreten	
sipen, to sit, -		saß	gescffen	
hitten, to beg, bid,	<i>:</i>	bat	gebeten	
liegen, to lie, —		lag	gelegen	
s.in (wesen), to be,		war	gewesen.	

Note 1. The second and third persons of the Present Sing. have i when the Imperative has it; as, bu issest (ist), er ist: du frisses, cr frist; du misses, er mist; du vergisses (vergist), er vergist; du liesest (liest), er liest; du slecht, er slecht; du slecht, er glebt; du trittst, er tritt (one t omitted). Genesen has du genesest, er genest, and no Imperative; geschehen has es geschieht. Essen, fressen, messen, vergessen, geden, and treten have a short i in the Imperative and Present.

2. Sigen changes the final consonant in sage (because a simple 3 (sage) cannot form the Auslant after a simple vowel), gesesses but is written with but one t, as is gebeten, on account of the

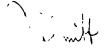
long vowel; in Iag and gelegen the vowel is of course long. All three form the Imperative and the second and third persons Present Singular after the modern form; as, sipe, bu sipes, er sipe; bitte, bu bittes, er bittet; liege, bu liegs, er liegt. 2Besen, the old form of sein, had originally in the Impersect was, as in English. In gegessen a g is inserted for the sake of euphony.

§ 108. IRREGULAR VERBS.

Besides the irregular verbs sein, haben, and merben, only the following sew are really irregular, the irregularity consisting in the second class in a combination of the ancient and modern form. The radical vowel takes the *Umlaut*, while the termination of the modern form is, nevertheless, added. Besides, in bringen, to bring, and benten, to think, the final consonants ng and nt are changed into the consonants of verbs is more numerous in English; as, to seek, sought; to work, wrought; to fight, fought, etc.)

]		
Infinitive.	Imperfect.	Subjunctive Imperf.	Past Part.
gehen, to go,	ging	ginge	gegangen
stehen, to stand,	stand	stände	gestanben
thun, to do,	that	thäte	gethan.
	I	I.	
brennen, to burn,	brannte	brennte	gebrannt
fennen, to know,	fannte	lennte	getannt
nennen, to name,	nannte	nennte	genannt
rennen, to run,	rannte	rennte	gerannt
bringen, to bring,	brachte	brächte	gebracht
benfen, to think,	dachte	dächte	gebacht
senden, to send,	fandte	fen bete	gefandt
wenden, to turn,	wandte	wendete	gewandt.

NOTE. — Senden and wenden are also inflected regularly after the modern form. The following verbs form the Singular



THEORETCAL PART.

Present by a change of vowel, and without any termination in the first and third persons (like the Imperfect Tense of the ancient form); otherwise they follow the modern form.

Infinitive.	Present Tense Indicative.	Bubjunctive.
bürfen	ich barf, bu barfft, er barf, wir burfen	ich bürfe
tonnen -	ich fann, bu fannft, er tann, wir tonnen	ich fonne
mögen	ich mag, bu magft, er mag, wir mögen	ich möge
muffen ,	ich muß, bu mußt, er muß, wir muffen	ich muffe
sollen alak	ich foll, bu follst, er foll, wir follen	ich folle
	ich will, bu willst, er will, wir wollen	. ich wolle
wissen ham	ich weiß, bu weißt, er weiß, wir wiffen	ich wiffe

Imperfect.	Subjunctive Imperfect.	Past F	arti	ciple.
ich burfte, etc.	ich bürfte, etc.	geburft	or	bürfen
ich tonnte	ich fonnte	gefonnt	or	fönnen
ich mochte	ich möchte	gemocht	or	mögen
ich mußte	ich müßte	gemußt	or	müffen
ich sollte	ich follte (föllte antiquated)	gefollt	or	follen
ich wollte	ich wollte (wöllteantiquated		or	wollen
ich wußte	ich wüßte	gewußt.		

Note. — The difference between wiffen and tennen, which both mean to know, is the same as in French between savoir and connaître, the former signifying the knowing of abstract truths and facts, and the latter the knowing of persons and concrete objects in general.

§ 109. Dürfen, tönnen, mögen, müssen, fossen, and wossen are auxiliary verbs of mood, and have a complete conjugation through all tenses, persons, and moods, except the Imperative, which is formed only in wossen; as, will, wossen. The corresponding English verbs, dare, can, may, must, shall, will, being defective in conjugation, and having no Participle Past and Infinitive, the English cannot translate the German Participle Past and Infinitive, nor the tenses and moods formed by their aid, except by circumlocution; as,

Infinitive.

bürsen, to be allowed.
mögen, to like.
müssen, to be compelled, obliged.
fönnen, to be able.
follen to be bid to, to have the dut

follen, to be bid to, to have the duty. gefollt, been bid to. wollen, to be willing. gewollt, been willing.

Participle Past.

geburft, been allowed. gemocht, liked. gemußt, compelled, obliged.

gefount, been able.
gefoult, been bid to.

Future.

ich werbe burfen, I shall be allowed.

ich werbe mögen, I shall like to.

ich werde muffen, I shall be compelled, obliged.

ich werde tonnen, I shall be able to.

ich werbe follen, it will be my duty.

ich werde wollen, I shall be willing.

Perfect.

ich habe geburft, I have been allowed.

ich habe gemocht, I have liked to.

ich habe gemußt, I have been obliged.

ich habe gefonnt, I have been able.

ich habe gesollt, it has been my duty, I was bid to.

ich habe gewollt, I have been willing.

When an Infinitive is dependent on one of the Perfects or Past Participles of these auxiliary verbs, the Infinitive bürfen, mögen, etc. is employed instead of the Past Participle; as,

ich habe, hatte, hätte effen bürfen, I have been (I was) allowed to eat, etc.

ich habe, hatte, hätte gehen müffen, I have been (I was) forced to go, etc.

ich habe, hatte, hätte weinen mögen, I felt disposed to weep, etc.

ich habe, hatte, hatte reben konnen, I have been able to speak, etc.

ich habe, hatte, hätte fragen sollen, it was my duty to ask, etc.

ich habe, hatte, hätte hören wollen, I was willing to hear, etc.

The same use obtains with the verbs lassen, seben, horen, and helsen, and sometimes, though rather incorrectly, sernen and sebren, when connected with an Infinitive; as,

- ich habe, hatte, hatte bis weinen laffen (instead of gelaffen), I let you weep.
- ich habe, hatte, hatte ihn geben feben (instead of gesehen), I saw him going.
- ich habe, hatte, hatte fie lachen hören (instead of gehört), I heard them laugh.
- ich habe, hatte, hätte ihm arbeiten helsen (instead of geholsen), I helped him at work.

§ 110. USE OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS haben AND sein.

A number of verbs are formed with fein, whose representatives in English are inflected by means of to have, viz.:—

- 1. Sein, to be, and werben, to grow, become; as,

 Perfect.
- ich bin gewesen, I have been. ich bin geworden, I have become.

 Phyperfect.
- ich war gewesen, I had been. ich war geworden, I had become.
- ich werbe gewesen sein.

ich werbe geworben sein.

Past Conditional.

- ich murbe gemefen fein.
- ich murbe geworben fein.
- 2. All those intransitive and neuter verbs, expressing transition of their subject from one condition into another; as, genesen, erwachen, entstehen, etc.; or locomotion of their subject from one place to another; as, gehen, reiten, sahren, etc.
- 8. The following neuter verbs: bleiben, to remain, begignen, to meet (with), folgen, to follow, weithen, to yield, and those compounded with them, except verfolgen, to persecute.
- 4. The following impersonal verbs: geschehen, to happen; gelingen, glüden, gerathen, to succeed; mißlingen, mißglüden, migrathen, to fail.

Der Rönig ift gestorben, the king is dead.

Alle Dinge find entstanden, all things have come into existence. Der Binter war vergangen, the winter had passed away.

Die Blume ift verwellt, the flower has faded.

3ch bin zehn Zoll gewachsen, I have grown ten inches.

Das Leber ift eingeschrumpft, the leather has shrunk.

Das Wasser ist gefroren, the water has frozen.

Das Teuer ift ausgegangen, the fire has gone out.

Der Krante ift genesen, the patient has recovered.

Das Schiff ist gescheitert, the ship has foundered.

Dieses Wort ist veraltet, this word has become antiquated.

Das Fieber ift verschwunden, the fever has disappeared.

Er ist gefommen, he has come; Er ist angesommen, he has arrived; and all compounded with sommen.

Er ist gefallen, he has fallen.

Es ift mir entfallen, I have dropped it, and It has escaped my recollection.

Er ift gelaufen, he has run.

Er ift gesprungen, he has jumped.

Er ift geflohen, he has fled.

- § 111. All other verbs are inflected with haben, viz.: —
- 1. All transitive verbs; as, schen, gehen, schlagen, bringen, etc.
- 2. All reflexive verbs; as, sich freuen, sich ärgern, sich betrüsten, sich ändern, etc.
- 3. All neuter verbs, except the above-named; as, stehen, sigen, siegen, steden, etc.
- 4. All impersonal verbs, with the above exceptions; as, es hat geregnet, it has rained; es hat geschneit, it has snowed.
- 5. All auxiliary verbs, except sein and werden; as, mögen, bürfen, etc.
- 6. All intransitive verbs, with the exceptions mentioned in § 110; as, gehören, schaden, etc.
- § 112. The use of the auxiliary verbs fein and haben being determined by the signification of the verb, it often happens that the same verb, according to its different significations, is inflected with both haben and fein, or that compound verbs assume a different auxiliary from their simple verb, as will be seen by the following examples.

3d babe ben Stod gebrochen, I have broken the stick. Der Argt hat ben Rranten geheilt, Die Bunbe ift geheilt, The physician has cured the The wound is healed. patient.

Er hat die Dame ausgefahren, He has given a ride to the lady.

3d habe bas Pferb geritten, I have ridden this horse. Bir haben ber Gefahr begegnet, We have prevented the danger. Alle Belt bat ihn geflohen, Everybody has shunned him. Du haft beute nicht geschlafen, Thou hast not slept to-day. Ich habe gehungert, I have been hungry. 3ch habe gewacht, I have been waking. Das Feuer hat gebrannt, The fire has been burning.

Der Baum ift gebrochen, The tree is broken.

Die Dame ift ausgefahren, The lady has taken a ride (drive) in a carriage. 3ch bin lange geritten, I have taken a long ride. Bir find Euch begegnet, We have met (with) you. Er ift vor Angft gefloben, He has fled for fright. Du bift noch nicht eingeschlafen ? Thou hast not yet fallen asleep? Ich bin verhungert, I am starved. Ich bin erwacht, I awoke, I am awake. Das bolg ift verbrannt, The wood is burned up.

§ 113. Some intransitive verbs, expressing locomotion, assume haben, when no object of the motion is added; otherwise fein; as,

Er hat geeilt, He has been in a hurry. 3ch habe viel gereista I have travelled much.

Er ift nach Saufe geeilt, He has hastened home. Er ift nach Rom gereift, He has gone to Rome.

In the same way the verbs springen, reiten, fahren, schwimmen, segeln, manten, to totter, ftolpern, to stumble, rutschen, to glide, and some others, are used with both haben and fein. The language, however, is not consistent enough to carry out this difference in all cases. Thus, in Upper Germany stehen, sigen, liegen, and some similar verbs, are inflected with scin, and poets imitate this in a few cases; as, 3ch bin vor hohen Fürsten nie gestanten (Schiller), I have never stood before great princes;while gelingen, gerathen, geben assume sometimes haben; as, Bie hat es dir gegangen? How have you been?

§ 114. REFLEXIVE VERBS.

PARADIGM OF A REPLEXIVE VERB.

Present Tense.

	INDICATIVE MOOD.	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.
	I am glad.	I am glad.
Sing. 1.	ich freue mich	ich freue mich
2.	du freust bich	bu freuest bich
3.	er (fie, es) freut fich,	er freue fich,
	wir freuen (freu'n) uns	wir freuen uns
2.	ihr freut euch	ihr freuet euch
	sie freuen (freu'n) sich.	fle freuen fich.
	Imperfect	Tense.

INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE.

PLUR. 1. wir freuten uns Sing. 1. ich freute mich 2. bu freuteft bich 2. ihr freutet euch 8. er freute fich, 8. fie freuten fich. Perfect Tense. Pluperfect Tense. ich habe mich gefreut. ich batte mich gefreut. Future Tense. Conditional. ich werbe mich freuen. ich murbe mich freuen.

Comp. Future. Comp. Conditional. ich murbe mich gefreut baben. ich werde mich gefreut haben.

Imperative.

Sing. 2. freue bich,

PLUR. 1. freuen mir uns

2. freut euch

3. freuen Gie fich.

Participle.

Pres. fich freuend.

§ 115. COMPLETE CONJUGATION OF COMPOUND VERBS.

WITH SEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS, ADVERBS. etc.

WITH INSEPARABLE PREFIXES.

Present.

Indicative. ich gehe aus, I go out, § 89 D. ich bergehe, I perish, §§ 64. 8, 65, etc. Subjunctive. ich gehe aus, I go out. ich bergehe, I perish.

Ind. and Subi. ich ftelle auf, I put up.

ich bestelle, I order.

Imperfect Tense.

Indicative. in ging aus, I went out.
Subjunctive. in ginge aus, I went out.
Incl. and Subj. in fielder auf, I put up.

ich berging, I perished.

ich bestellte, I ordered.

Perfect Tense.

Ind. and Subj. ich bin ausgegangen, I have ich bin (sei) vergangen, I have gone out.

ich habe aufgestellt, I have ich habe bestellt, I have ordered.

put up.

Pluperfect Tense.

Ind. and Subj. ich war ausgegangen, I had ich war (ware) vergangen, I had gone out.

ich hatte aufgestellt, I had ich hatte (håtte) bestellt, I had orput up. dered.

Future Tense.

Ind. and Subj. ich werbe ausgeben, I shall go th werbe vergeben, I shall porish.

ich werde aufftellen, I shall ich werde bestellen, I shall order. put up.

Past Future Tense.

Ind. and Subj. ich werbe ausgegangen sein, I ich werbe vergangen sein, I shall shall have gone out. have perished.

ich werde aufgestellt haben, I ich werde bestellt haben, I shall shall have ordered.

Conditional.

ich wärde ausgehen, I should go out. ich wärde ausgehen, I should put up.

ich würde vergeben, I should perish. ich würde bestellen, I should order.

Past Omditional.

ich wurde ausgegangen fein, I should have ich wurde vergangen fein, I should gone out. have perished.

ich warbe aufgestellt baben, I should have ich warbe bestellt haben, I should put up. have ordered.

WITH SEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS, etc. WITH INSEPARABLE PREFIXES.

Imperatives.

gebe aus, geht aus, gehn Sie aus, go out! bergebe, bergebe, bergeben Sie, perieh! fielle auf, fiellt auf, fiellen Sie auf, put up! befielle, befielle, befiellen Sie, ordar!

Infinitives.

Pres. ausgehen, ausjugehen, go out, to go bergehen, ju vergehen, perish, to out.

Past. ausgegangen sein, ju sein, (to) have bergangen sein, ju sein, (to) have gone out.

Pres. aufftellen, aufzustellen, put up, to bestellen, ju bestellen, order, to

Past. aufgestellt haben, ju haben, (to) have bestellt haben, ju haben, (to) have put up. ordered.

Participles.

Pres. ausgehend, going out. bergehend, perishing.
Past. ausgegangen, gone out. bergangen, perished.
Pres. aufftellend, putting up. bestellend, ordering.

Past. aufgestellt, put up, arranged. bestellt, ordered, made to order.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Present Tense.

Ind. and Subj. ich werde aufgeftellt, I am put up. ich werde beftellt, I am ordered.

Imperfect Tense.

Indicative. ich tourbe aufgestellt, I was ich tourbe bestellt, I was ordered. put up.

Subjunctive. ich wurde aufgestellt, I was ich wurde bestellt, I was ordered.

Perfect Tense.

Indicative. id bin aufgestellt worden, I id bin bestellt worden, I have been have been put up. ordered.

Subjunctive. ich sei aufgestellt worden, I ich sei bestellt worden, I have been have been put up. ordered.

Pluperfect Tense.

Indicative. ich tear aufgestellt worden, I ich war bestellt worden, I had been had been put up. ordered.

Subjunctive. ich toare aufgestellt worden, 1 ich toare bestellt worden, I had been had been put up. ordered.

Future Tense.

Ind. and Subj. ich werde aufgestellt werden, I ich werde bestellt werden, I shall be shall be put up. ordered.

WITH SEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS, etc. WITH INSEPARABLE PREFIXES.

Past Future Ind. and Subj.

ich merbe bestellt worden fein, I shall ich werde aufgeftellt worden fein, I shall have been ordered. have been put up.

First and Second Conditional.

ich wurde aufgeftellt werben, I should be put up.

ich warde aufgeftellt worden fein, I should have been put up.

ich marte beftellt werben. I should be ordered.

ich warbe beftellt worden fein, I should have been ordered.

Infinitives.

Pres. aufgeftellt werben, ju werben, to be put up.

Past. aufgeffellt worben fein, worben ju fein, to have been put up.

beftellt werben, ju werben, to be ordered.

befiellt worden fein, ju fein, to have been ordered.

NOTE 1. Thus are inflected all compound verbs of both classes. Those compounded with burd, aber, um, unter, \$4 75 - 78, are, of course, capable of being inflected in both ways, according to their meaning; while tole terbolen, to fetch back, is inflected like aufftellen, and wiederbo'len, to repeat, like beftellen.

NOTE 2. All verbs compounded with nouns and adverbs, like gutteiffen, friegführen, emportommen, and the numerous class compounded with her, hin, and their compounds, and with compound prepositions and adverbs, like herab, hinauf, poran, bermarts, etc., are also inflected according to ausgeben and auffiellen.

The following only are exceptions, and form their Past Participle and their Present Tense as follows:-

Infinitive.	Past Participle.	Present Tense.
(ju) argivohnen, to suspect,	geargwöhnt, *	ich argwöhne. †
(ju) branbichaffen, to sack,	gebranbfcatt, t	ich brandichage. 6
(ju) frühftüden, to breakfast,	gefrühftüdt,¶	ich frühffüte. **
(ju) frobioden, to exult, triumph,	gefroblodt, 11	ich froblocte. 11
(ju) hofmeiftern, to criticise superciliously.	gehofmeiftert,	ich hofmeiftere.
(ju) handhaben, to handle, manage,	gehandhabt, 66	ich handhabe.
(ju) langiveilen, to annoy,	gelangweilt,	ich langweile.
(ju) liebtofen, to caress,	geliebtoft,	ich liebtofe.
(ju) liebaugein, to ogle, to look love,	geliebaugelt,	ich liebaugte.
(ju) luftwandeln, to take a pleasure walk,	geluftwandelt,	ich luftwandle.
(ju) nothjudtigen, to ravish, violate,	genothjächtigt,	ich nortgildtige.
(ju) rathichlagen, to counsel,	gerathfolagt,	ic rathschlage.

^{*} not arggeipobnt.

i not ich wöhne ara. T not frahgeftadt.

⁴ not ich fouse Brand. tt or froblodt.

tt not ich lode frob.

t not brandgefchaft. ** not ich flute frub.

if not bandgebabt.

Infinitive.	Past Participle.	Present Tense.
(ju) rechtfertigen, to justify,	gerechtfertigt,	ich rechtfertige.
(ju) muthmafe, to suspect,	gemuthmaßt,	ich murhmaße.
(ju) wehtlagen, to lament,	gewehtlagt,	ich wehtlage.
(au) wetteifern, to vie,	gewetteifert,	ich wetteifere.
(ju) willfahren, to comply with,	gewillfuhrt,	ich willfahre.
(su) weiffagen, to prophesy,	geweiffagt,	ich weiffage.

Likewise the impersonal verbs es glatteif, there is a hard frost, and es tretter (such et, there is heat-lightning; and a few more of a comical signification, that occur very soldom, like (iebedieners, specification, specification).

Note 3. There are a number of doubly compounded verbs that are inflected like herbortommen or hinaufficien, and bergehen or beficien, at the same time, because they are compounded of a prefix and a compound separable adverb or noun. The following are examples:—

Infinitive.	Past Participle.	Present Tense.
anertennen, anguertennen,	anertannt,	ich ertenne an.
anvertrauen, anjubertrauen,	anbertraue,	ich bertraue an.
auferziehen, aufzuerziehen,	auferjogen,	ich erziehe auf.
borbehalten, vorzubehalten,	borbehalten,	ich behalte vor.

In the same way are inflected anertennen, to acknowledge; antertranen, to intrust; aufbehalten, anbehalten, to keep on; einberleiben, to embody; abberlangen, to exact; ausbertaufen, to sell out; ausbedingen, to stipulate; umbehalten, to keep round one's self; überbehalten, to keep over one's self; jurildbehalten, to keep back; jurudbegablen, to pay back; jurudberlangen; anempfehlen, to recommend; anbefehlen, to command, intrust; anberaumen, to fix a term; aufbewahren, to preserve; beibehalten, to retain; beigefellen, to associate; einberichten, to report; eingestehen, to concede; eingewöhnen, to accustom one's self to a place: fortbewegen: berausbetommen, to receive change; innebehalten, to keep back; fich mitbewerben, to compete; mitentfiehen, miterlangen; mitgeniefen, fich mirverfdworen, to conspire ; nachbeftellen, nachgeniefen, nachberlangen, nachbebenten; umgeftalten, to transform; borbereiten, to prepare; verbebeuten, to portend; borberbeftimmen, to predestine; borempfinden, to anticipate, have a presentiment; berenthalten, to refuse, keep from; berbehalten, to reserve; berbetvertunden, to foretell; fich wegbegeben, to withdraw; subereiten, to prepare, dress; subetommen, to get in addition; suertennen, to adjudge; sugeboren, to belong; jugefellen, to associate; jugeffeben, to grant; juradberufen, to recall; jufammenberufen, to convene.

NOTE 4. Verbs like berabscheuen, to detest, beruntelnigen, to soil, beransassen, to occasion, beranschlagen, to estimate, and some more, are inseparable compound verbs, on account of the first component of the compound prefix, and are a sheeted like bestellen.

NOTE 5. The verbs andelangen, anbetreffen, to concern, auferduen, aufertrecten, auferstehen, auferlegen, to enjoin, impose, auserlesen, to select, ausertolbien, are not inflected as such, but in their shortened form belangen, betreffen,

etc. There occurs only a Past Participle, ausertouble, auserlesen, ausertoren; auferstanden, auferlege, auserweze, and a very sew forms of the Present tense without any separation; as, tous mich anberrifft or andelangt (but not es anderrifft mich); wenn Christia nicht auferstehen (hut not wit auferstehen); so die Lodeen nicht auferstehen (1 Cor. xv. 16). The verbe lobsingen and lobpreisen occur only in the Infinitive; auserziehen only in the Infinitive and Past Participle.

NOTE 6. The verbs mifbetagen, to displease, mifgebaren, and mifbetsien, are, because doubly compounded, with an inseparable prefix, to all intents and purposes like those with simple prefixes; as, ich misbetsiehe (not betsiehe mis), misbetssienen (Infinitive, misjubetsiehen).

All other verbs compounded with mis are inflected thus: -

```
Infinitive.
miftbeuten,
                 to misinterpret,
                                      ju mifbeuten ;
mifhandeln,
                 to maltreat,
                                      ju mifbanbeln :
mifbilligen,
                 to disapprove.
                                      ju mifbilligen :
mifbrauchen.
                 to abuse.
                                      au mifbrauchen:
miftrauen.
                 to distrust.
                                      au miferauen:
mifleiten,
                 to mislead.
                                       au mifleiten :
miffallen.
                 to displease.
                                      au miffallen :
miflingen,
                                      ju miflingen :
mifalåden,
                 to fail of success.
                                      ju mifgladen:
mifrathen, )
                                      zu mifrathen :
mifgonnen,
                                      ju mifgonnen :
                 to grudge,
       Past Participle.
                                        Present Tense.
                    gemifbeutet :
                                       ich mifbeute.
mifbeutet
              and
mifhandelt
              and
                    gemifbandelt:
                                       ich mißbandle.
mifbilliat
              and
                    gemigbilligt :
                                       ich mifbillige.
                                      ich mifbrauche.
migbraucht
              and
                    gemifbraucht :
                                      ich miftraue.
mifftraut
              and
                    gemiftraut :
                                      ich miffleite.
mifleitet:
miffallen;
                                      ich miffalle.
miflungen :
                                      es miflingt.
mifalådt:
                                      es mifaladt.
                                      es mifratb.
migrathen :
miggonnt:
                                      ich mifaenne.
```

The four verbs compounded with the prefix boll, (see § 71,) and the six verbs compounded with the orefix hinter, (see § 74,) are inflected like pergepen.

CHAPTER IV.

SUBSTANTIVES.

- § 116. The declension of substantive nouns is to be considered under three heads: Gender, Number, and Case. There are three genders, the masculine, the feminine, and the neuter, and for each of them a particular form of the two articles, the definite (ber, bie, bas, the) and the indefinite (cin, cine, cin, a). There are two numbers, a Singular and a Plural, and four cases in each, a Nominative, a Genitive or Possessive, a Dative, and an Accusative.
- § 117. Substantives are names of species of things or persons, expressing them in a general way. The article serves to single out an individual thing or person from others of the same species. The articles, therefore, in German, as in all languages, agree with their substantives in Gender, Number, and Case. The plural of the definite article is the same for all three genders; the indefinite article can, from its nature, have no plural; still the indefinite pronoun cinige may be regarded as a plural of it. The ancient German had no articles; ber, bie, bas was originally a demonstrative and relative pronoun; cin, cine, cin, a numeral.

§ 118. DECLENSION OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.	Plural.	English.
Nominative	, ber	bie	bas	die	the
Genitive,	bes	ber	bes	ber	of the
Dative,	bem	ber	bem	ben	to the
Accusative,	ben	bie	bas	die	the.

Note. — The German has no distinct *Vocative* case, the Nominative serving always in its stead. The Accusative of the Feminine and Neuter is always like the Nominative, in the singular as well as in the plural, in the declension of substantives and adjectives, as well as in the articles.

DECLENSION OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

	Masculins.	Feminine.	Neuter.	English.
Nominative,	ein	eine	ein	a (an)
Genitive,	eines	einer	eines	of a
Dative,	einem	einer	einem	to a
Accusative,	einen	eine	ein	8

Note. — The definite article is often contracted with prepositions into one word; as

- 1. am for an bem. heim for bei bem. im for in bem. vom for von bem. gum for zu bem.
- 2. jur for ju ber.

8. an's for an bas.
auf's for auf bas.
burch's for burch bas.
für's for für bas.
in's for in bas.
um's for um bas.

Some other contractions of this kind are common to the popular tongue, but more or less shunned by good writers; as, unter'm, hinter'm, über'm, außer'm, for unter, hinter, über, außer bem; unter's, über's, hinter's, wider's, gegen's, for unter, über, wider, hinter, gegen bas. But such as auf'm, aus'm, auf'n, burch'n, for auf bem, aus bem, auf ben, burch ben, are forbidden, as infringements of the law of euphony.

§ 119. Use of the Articles.

The definite as well as the indefinite article has much the same use as in English. A difference obtains in the following cases:—

1. In enumerations, both kinds of articles are commonly omitted; as,

Balten trachen, Pfoften fturzen, Fenfter flirren, Rinber jammern, Mütter irren. (Schiller.)

Fort, Ruh, Ralb, Schwein, fort Suhner, Milch und Gier! (Glein.) Wie Kelb und Au, fo blinkend im Thau. (Goethe.)

Meister rührt sich und Gefelle in ber Freiheit heil'gem Schup. (Schiller.)

Richt Jugend, nicht Geschlecht, nicht Stand, nicht Schönheit tonnen die Buth bes Siegers entwaffnen. (Schiller.)

2. When two or more substantives of the same gender and number are joined together, the article need be used only before the first; as,

Der Löwe, Tiger, Luche und Wolf find reißende Thiere.

Der Frangöfische Kalvinist hatte mit bem reformirten Genfer, Englander, Deutschen, ober hollander einen Berührungspunkt. (Schiller.)

But when the gender is different, this omission is faulty, and the article must each time be repeated; as,

hoch über ber Zeit und bem Raume webt lebendig ber höchfte Gebante. (Schiller.)

8. The article is omitted in proverbial sayings and standing phrases, for the sake of eurythmy; as,

Du follft Bater und Mutter ehren. (Luther.)

enten. (Luiner.)

Er hat Weib und Kind verlaffen. Bon Ropf zu Fuß, from top to

toe.

Mit Sad und Pad.

Bu Bette gehen, to go to bed. Mit Mann und Maus ertrinken,

to be drowned to the last man.

haus und hof.

Bei Bofe, at court.

Bu Huß und zu Pferbe, on foot and on horseback.

Bu Sause, at home.

Bei Tische, at table.

Ueber Nacht, over night.

In Zeit, in time.

Roth bricht Gifen.

Morgenstunde hat Gold im Munde.

Gegen (nach) Norben, to the North.

Gegen (nach) Suben, to the South.

Gegen (nach) Often, to the East.

Gegen (nach) Westen, to the

Note. — But in the following exceptional cases, and a few others, we use the article where the English does not: bei ber hand, at hand; zur See, at sea; zum Ucberslusse, in abundance; zum Trop, in desiance, in spite; zur Zeit ber Noth, in time of

need; die Spite bieten, to make head; die Flucht ergreisen, to take to flight; zur Rede stellen, to call to account; am Orte, am rechten Orte, in the right place; zur rechten Zeit (or zu rechter) Zeit, in right time; am Ende, at last; im Ernste, in earnest; auf den Markt zehen, to go to market; in die Stadt zehen, in der Stadt leben, to go to town, to live in town; in die Schule, Kirche zehen, in der Schule, Kirche zehen, in der Schule, Kirche zehen, in der Schule, Kirche sehen, in der Schule, Formen, to come to church, to be at school, church; zur Ruhe kommen, to come to rest; im Zorn, in anger. For a number of other examples, see § 339.

- 4. Titles of books take no article, as in English; as, beutsche Grammatil, a German Grammar.
- 5. The definite article never follows the pronoun beibe, both, but either precedes it or is omitted; as, die beiben Freunde, the two friends, or beibe Freunde, both the friends. The word alles, all, has no article; as, alle Länder, all the countries; alle Menfen, all men. It is not good German to say, alle die Kinder, all the children.
- 6. The definite article is used where the English does not admit of it;—a) before substantives, to express the whole genus or species by a common name; as, die Fische schwimmen und die Bögel sliegen, fishes swim and dieds sty;—b) before the following common nouns, when personisied:—

ber Mensch, man (mankind), bas Thier, animal, ber Himmel, heaven, bie Erbe, earth, bas Paradies, paradise, bie Hölle, hell, bas Fegeseuer, purgatory, bie Religion, religion, bas Christenthum, Christianity, bas Judenthum, Judaism, bas Parlament, parliament, ber Kongreß, congress, ber Abel, nobility, bie Demokratie, democracy, bie Natur, nature, bas Leben, life, ber Tob, death, ber Jufall, chance, bas Glüd, fortune, luck, bie Tugenb, virtue, bas Laster, vice, bie Hoffnung, hope, ber Tag, day, bie Racht, night, ber Chestand, matrimony, bas Schickal, fate, bas Gefet, law, bie Geschichte, history, bie Zeit, time.

- c) It is also used before similar nouns, expressing the person or thing in a dignified way; as,
- Das Leben ist turz, die Kunst ist lang (Goethe), Life is short, art is long.
- Die Weiber sind keuscher als die Manner, or Das Beib ist keuscher als der Mann, Woman is more chaste than man.
- Die Tugend, fle ift tein leerer Bahn (Schiller).

Infinitives and adjectives employed substantively have the article; in English, only the latter; as,

- Das Sprechen ift bem Menschen natürlich, Language is natural to man.
- 3ch liebe bas Reisen, I like travelling.
- Die Armen sind oft glüdlicher als die Reichen, The poor are often happier than the rich.
- 7. The definitive article must be placed before the proper names of days and months and seasons; as, ber Sonntag, ber Juni, ber Berbst, and the words Frühstud, breakfast, Mittageessen, dinner, Abenbessen, supper; - the names of mountains, rivers, lakes, seas, forests; as, ber Ararat, Ararat, ber Bejuv, Vesuvius, Die Elbe, Die Nordfee, ber Bobenfec, ber Schmargmalb; - all masculine and feminine names of countries; as, ber hang, the Hague, die Schweig, Switzerland, die Pfalz, the Palatinate, die Moldau, Moldavia, die Krim, Crimea, die Türfei, Turkey, die Ballachei, Wallachia, and all names of countries terminating in ci; - all names of countries used only in the plural; as bie Bercinigten Staten, the United States; bie Nieberlande, the Netherlands; - the names of all countries, and all proper nouns when connected with an attributive adjective; as, bas fcone Frantreich, fair France, bas gludliche Arabien, Arabia Felix, ber unsterbliche humboldt, immortal

Humboldt, ber verruchte Nero, nesarious Nero, ber arme Johann, poor John, die stolze Marie, proud Mary;—and before all proper names connected with titles; as, die Königin Anne, Queen Anne, der Präsident Buchanan, President Buchanan.

- 8. Proper names stand without an article in all other cases; as, Friedrich, Johanna, Frankreich, Deutschland, Amerika, Wassensigner. But in speaking in a familiar way, they sometimes assume the definite article; as, der Wallenstein, der Tell, die Agrippina, der Frig, Frederic, die Hanna, Jane. The plural always takes it; as, die Medizi, die Horatier und die Curiatier, die Ludwige von Frankreich. And in the Accusative, Dative, and Genitive cases, the article, with the noun proper uninflected, is sometimes, on account of distinctness, preferred to the inflected noun proper; as, ruse den Franz! call Francis! suche die Susanne! go for Susan! Er gab dem August Geld, he gave money to Augustus; Cäsar septe den Ostavian an Kindesstatt ein, Cæsar adopted Octavianus; ich erinnere mich des Davoust, I remember Davoust; des Heer des Kerres, the army of Xerxes.
- 9. The article of a substantive connected with a genitive which is placed before it, is commonly omitted; as, hes Baters Segen baut ben Kinbern Häuser, aber ber Mutter Huch reißt sie wieder nieder (Luther), The sather's blessing builds houses for the children, but the mother's curse destroys them again. See § 290, Note 2.
- 10. The definite article is employed instead of the indefinite in sayings like the following:—twice a week, zweimal bie Woche; ten cents a day, zehn Cent ben Tag; four dollars a pound, vier Dollar bas Pfund.
- 11. The English a is not translated in German in sayings like the following:—a few books, wenige (or einige wenige) Bücher; a hundred times, hundert Male; a thousand years, taufend Jahre. The English the in the following is never translated; as, The following persons were present, folgende Personen waren zugegen.
 - 12. The English arrangement of words is not imitated in

German in sayings like the following: too great a danger, eine ju große Gefahr; so large a city, eine so große Stadt; half the country, das halbe Land; both the brothers, die beiden Brüder.

- 13. The article is sometimes added to indicate the case, where it could not otherwise be pointed out; as, das Leben der Menschen, the life of men (but in das Leben großer Menschen, the life of great men, the article is not required, because the Genitive is pointed out by the termination of großer).
- 14. Names of Abstract nouns do not, as a rule, require an article, except when they signify actions; as, ber Mensch muß Ruhm und Tadel ertragen lernen (Goethe), man must learn to bear both praise and blame; Gleiches Streben bindet Held und Dichter (Goethe), a like striving unites hero and poet. But, der Gang nach dem Eisenhammer (Schiller), the walk to the forge; ein Schrei ertönte, a cry resounded. But even names of conditions and qualities frequently take the article, not only when the abstract notion is individualized,—as, der Frieden der Seele, the peace of the soul; die Liebe einer Mutter, the love of a mother,—but also when the abstract idea is generalized, expressing the whole of the species or genus; as, die Liebe macht den Bettler reich (Tieck), love makes the beggar rich; die Zeit vergeht, time passes away.
- 15. Names of materials do not commonly require an article; as, Milch trinten; holz brennt; Steine nicht; faurer Bein; feiner Sand.

There are only two exceptions:—1. When one species out of several is individualized; as, ein Salz und eine Säure chemisch verbinden, to combine chemically a salt and an acid; ein hartes Holz ausmählen, to choose a hard kind of wood.

2. When the whole of a genus or species is taken together in a general way; as, der Bein erfreut des Menschen Herz (Goethe), wine gladdens the heart of man; das Quecksilber ist ein slüssiges Metall, quicksilver is a liquid metal; das Basser ist sarbles, water is colorless.

16. Collective substantives are used with or without an article,

according to the meaning; as, b as Bolf steht auf (Körner), the people rise; ein Bolt ist einem einzelnen Menschen zu vergleichen (Hdt), a nation is to be compared with a single man; die Bölfer schmachten nach Freiheit, the nations languish for freedom; Bölfer blühen auf, Bölfer verblühen, nations spring up, nations sade away; er hält Bieh, he keeps cattle; das Bieh hat sich verlausen, the cattle are straying.

- 17. The indefinite article is often omitted with nouns used as predicates or in apposition; for instance, ich bin Lehrer (or ein Lehrer), I am a teacher; Leben ist Thätigkeit, und Thätigsein ist Leben; es ist Sitte in Deutschland Gesundheit zu wünschen, wenn Einer niest, it is the (a) fashion in Germany to wish good health when one sneezes.
- 18. The following idiom obtains in German, as in English: nur in Beimar konnten ein Schiller, ein Göthe, ein herber, ein Bieland sich zu bem ausbilden, was sie geworden sind, men like Schiller, Goethe, Herder, and Wieland could only in Weimar develop into what they became (ein Schiller is elliptical for ein Mann wie Schiller). Dergleichen ist nur einem Rapoleon möglich, the like is possible only for a man like Napoleon.

THE GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES.

- § 120. The gender of substantives is either natural or grammatical. All languages, more or less, acknowledge the masculine gender of male persons and animals, and the feminine gender of female persons and animals, by conforming the grammatical gender to them. Der Mann, the man, and ber Das, the ox, are grammatically masculine, bie Frau and bie Rusgrammatically feminine, because they are males and females by nature. Still, like every language, the German also infringes this law in a few exceptional cases, for grammatical reasons. The following are these exceptions:—
- 1. Das Weib, the woman, wife, and das Mensch, the wench, das Frauenzimmer, die Weibsperson, the female (person), die Mannsperson, the male (person), die Schildwache, the sentinel.

Also, all diminutives of males and females; as, das Mädden, the girl; das Fräulein, the young lady; das Knädden or Knäblein, the little boy; das Gänschen, the little goose.

2. Some larger, as well as the domestic animals, have a masculine gender for the male, a feminine gender for the female individuals, and a neuter gender for the generic name, without regard to sex; as,—

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
ber Bengft, stallion, ber Bulluch, gelding,	die Stute, steed,	das Pferd, das Roff, horse.
der Dofe, ox, } der Bulle, bull, }	die Ruh, cow,	bas Rind, cattle.
ber Eber, bour,	die Sau, sow,	das Schwein, hog, swine.
ber Bidber, } ram, wether,	das Mutterschaf, ewe,	bas Schauf, sheep.
der Siegenbod, he-goat,	die Biege, ahe-goat,	bas Biegenvieh, goats.
ber Sahn, cock, rooster,	die Benne, the hen,	das Suhn, chicken.
ber Ganferich, gander,	die Gans, goose,	bas Ganfevolt.
ber Enterich, drake,	die Ente, duck,	bas Entenbolt.
ber Lauber, male pigeon,	die Laube, dove,	das Taubenvolt.
der Birfc, stag, deer,	{ die Sirschtub, } hind,	der Hirsch.
ter Rebod, roe-buck,	die Rehtuh, doe,	das Oteh, ros.
ber Sund, dog,	{ bie Bandin, } bitch,	ber Sund.
ber Rater, male cat,	die Rațe,	die Rafe.
der Lowe, Leu, the lion,	die Edwin, lioness,	ber Lõive.
der Tiger, tiger,	die Tigerin, tigress,	der Ziger.
der Bär, bear,	die Bärin, she-bear,	der Bar.
der Bolf, wolf,	die Wölfin, she-wolf,	ber Bolf.
der Juche, fox,	die Jüchsin, abe-sox,	der Juche.

Where the language has not formed generic neuter hames, the masculine serves as such, and in a few cases (like bit Kapt) the feminine. In a few other cases compound nouns are used; as, bas Ziegenvich, bas Gänsevolt. All other names of animals are only generic, and when the male or female is to be distinguished, a compound is made use of; as, bas Elephantenmännchen, bas Elephantenweibchen, the male and the female

elephant, or das männliche and das weibliche Rameel, the male and female camel; der Kanarien hahn and die Kanarien-Sie, or das Kanarienmäunchen and das Kanarienweibchen, the male and female Canary-dird. A few names of animals with un-German names are neuters, viz.: das Rameel, the camel; das Dromedar, the dromedary; das Krotodil, the crocodile; das Lama, the lama; das Jebra and das Quagga; das Känguruh, the kangaroo; das Gnu, das Aguti, das Rhinozeros;—and also such German ones as are compounded with neuter names; as, das Fluppferd, the hippopotamus; das Bisamschwein, the begudi, etc. All other generic names of animals are either masculine or feminine, and the pupil must learn the gender in every case by committing it to memory.

Young animals are by the language intended to be neuter, because the sex is in them not yet developed; as, das Hüllen, the colt; das Ralb, the calf; das Ferfel, the shote; das Lamm, the lamb; das Huhn, the chicken; das Zidlein, the kid; das Rehlalb, the fawn. And so das Kind, the child. In all cases where the language has not formed a particular name, expressions obtain like der junge Löwe; das Löwenjunge; das Käpchen, kitten; das Hündchen.

Die Baise, the orphan, is seminine, without regard to sex. And so is die Person, the person. Der Mündel and die Mündel, the ward, pupil, of male and semale wards, plural die Mündel (masculine) for both sexes.

- § 121. We should naturally expect all names of things to be of the neuter gender; but by a kind of personification the German assigns the masculine or feminine gender even to many names of things. The gender of such substantives may be ascertained partly from their class, but principally from their form and derivation.
- § 122. The class of things determines the gender in the following cases:—
- 1. The names of seasons, months, and days are masculine; as, ber Frühling, ber Leng, the spring; ber Sommer, the summer;

ber herbst, autumn, fall; ber Winter, ber Januar, ber Dezember, ber Sonntag, ber Sonnabend. But bas Frühjahr, the spring, bas Jahr, the year, and all its compounds, are neuters, and bie Mittwoch, Wednesday, is as often found as ber Mittwoch.

- 2. The names of stones and mountains are masculine; as, ber Granit; ber Basalt; ber Rubin, the ruby; ber Montblanc; ber St. Gotthard. Except those compounded with das Gebirge; as, das Erzgebirge, the Ore Mountains.
- 8. The names of winds and points of the compass are masculine; as, ber Often, ber Norden, ber Süben, ber Besten, ber Norden, etc., ber Oftwind, ber Zephyr, ber Sturm, ber Bind, the wind, ber Orlan, hurricane; but bie Bindsbraut and bie Bö, the gale, are feminine.
- 5. Proper names of countries, cities, towns, and places are neuter; as, Amerita, Massachusetts, Boston. But those ending in et, e, a, or au are feminine; as, die Türkei, die Levante, die Utraine, die Wetterau, die Butowina, die herzegowina; also die Mark, die Krim, die Schweiz, die Psalz. Masculine are der haag, der Peloponnes, and all compounded with der Gau, the county; as, der Breisgau.
- 6. The names of most flowers, fruits, and trees are feminine; as, die Rose, die Nuß, nut, die Eiche, oak. Those compounded with der Baum, der Strauch, der Busch, are exceptions; as, der Apselbaum, der Rosenstrauch, der Haselbusch.
- 7. The names of metals and most materials in a raw state are neuter; as, bas Gold, bas Silber, bas Sifen, iron; except ber

Stahl, steel, ber Tombak, pinchbeck, ber Kobalt, ber and bas Zink, ber and bas Wismuth, bie and bas Platina. Neuters are bas Holz, bas Wasser, bas Laub, bas Heu, bas Gras, bas Glas, bas Erz, bas Metall, bas Mineral, bas Del, bas Salz, bas Fett, etc.

- 8. All names of things not originally substantives, when employed substantively, and even all sayings and sentences employed substantively, are neuters; as, das A, das B, das Benn und das Aber, das Schöne, the beautiful, das Gute, the good, das Reisen, travelling, das Lesen, reading, das "Bete und arbeite," the proverd ora et labora, das "Scin oder Nichtsein," the to be or not to be, das "Bertraue auf Gott und halte dein Pulver troden."
- 9. All compound nouns assume the gender of their last component; as, der Geldring, the gold ring; die Kindeeliche, filial love; das Herbstwetter, the autumn weather. But see § 129.

§ 123. The form or derivation determines the gender in a great majority of cases, viz.:—

Monosyllabic nouns and those compounded with monosyllables by means of prefixes are masculine, when not terminating in t (those in t being for the most part feminine).

§ 124. The following exceptions must be committed to memory: —

a) Feminine Monosyllables.

(All marked thus * have two genders, but with a different signification. See § 181.)

die Acht, proscription
die Angst, anguish
die Art, manner, kind
die Au or Aue, dale, sield
die Art, axe
die Bahn, road
die Bant, bench, bank
die Bai, bay
die Brust, breast

bie Brunst, conflagration
bie Brut, brood
bie Bucht, bight
bie Burg, castle
bie Fahrt, passage, drive in a
vehicle
bie Faust, fist
bie Flucht, flight

die Flur, field

bie Lust, pleasure die Kluth, flood bie Macht, might bie Korm, form *bie Mart, boundary (march) die Fracht, freight Die Marich, marsh die Frist, term *bie Mast, mast, fattening die Krucht, fruit die Kurcht, fright, fear die Maus, mouse die Furt, ford bie Mauth, excise die Gicht, gout die Mild, milk bie Gier, greediness bie Milz, milt die Gluth, glow bie Nacht, night die Naht, seam bie Gruft, grave bie Bunft, favor die Noth, need bie Null, zero oie Haft, prison bie Rug,4 nut bie Sant, hand bie Pein, pain die Haste, haste die Saut, hide, skin die Pest, pestilence die buld, grace die Pflicht, duty bie But, guard bie Post, post die Jacht, yacht bie Pracht, (pride) splendor die Jagd, chase bie Qual, torment die Kluft, clest die Rast, rest bie Rost, food, fare bie Ruhr, dysentery die Kraft, force bie Saat, seed die Runft, art die Scham, shame bie Rur,1 cure, election die Schar, bost, troop bie Laft,2 load bie Schau, show bie Scheu,6 shyness die Laus, louse bie List, cunning die Schicht, layer, stratum die Luft, air die Schlacht, battle

¹ Also die Billtår, arbitrariness.

² Der Ballaft (derivation uncertain) is masculine.

⁸ Also bie Bolluft, lust. But Berluft, loss, comes from berlieren, to lose, and is magculine.

⁴ Der Ruf is a provincialism.

⁵ Die Pflugschar, ploughshare, is also feminine.

⁵ Der Abschen, abhorrence, is masculine.

die Schlucht, Schluft, ravine bie Tracht, load, costume bie Schmach, disgrace bie Trift, pasturage bie Schnur, cord bie Uhr. watch bie Bacht, watch, guard bie Schrift, writing bie Coult, debt, guilt bie Babl, election bie Schur, shearing die Wand, wall Die Schwulst, swelling Die Wehr, defence bie Gec.1 sea bie Welt, world bie Gicht," sight bit Bucht, weight, impetus bie Bulft, pad bie Spreu, chaff bie Wurft,4 sausage bie Spur, trace die Buth, rage bie Stadt, city die Zahl, number bie Statt, stead, place bie Stirn (Stirne), forehead bie Belt, time bie Bier, ornament bie Streu, litter die Sucht, passion bie Bucht, discipline bie Bunft, guild. die That, deed bie Thür (Thüre), door

Also the following compound substantives, of which the simple substantive is lost: Andacht, devotion (the others in dacht are masculine, as Berdacht, suspicion, Bedacht, consideration); and those compounded with tunft (from tommen) and ficht (from fehen); as. Antunft, arrival, Bertunft, Abtunft, lineage, Butunft, future, etc.; and Ansicht, aspect, Dinsicht, respect, Aussicht, prospect, Berficht, caution, foresight. Nachsicht, indulgence, Einsicht, insight, Absicht, intention; die Racter and die Biedertehr, return, die Beinkehr, the return home, and die Umtehr, turning (but der Bertehr, intercourse); die Gegentoart, presence. the present; die Nachticht, want, necessaries; die Ansialt, preparation, establishment; die Nachticht, intelligence (but der Bericht, report, der Unterricht, instruction, das Gericht, court of justice, meal); die Einsalt, simplicity; die Serafalt, carefulness; die Bernunft, reason; die Nachtigall, nightingale; die Unbild, injury.

NOTE. — The seemingly abnormal gender of so many monosyllabic feminines is to be accounted for by their derivation. The majority of words in the above

¹ Der Gee means lake.

² Die Sicht occurs only in the phrases bei Sicht, at sight; nach Sicht, after sight; in Sicht, in sight.

⁸ Bortoand, pretence, and Zuftwand, outlay, expense, are masculine.

⁴ Sanswurft, jack-pudding, is of course masculine.

list is made up of words ending in t (or th or ft) derived immediately from roots, with or without the Umlaut, with the addition of t to it, and are on account of this addition feminines; while all similar derivatives formed without this termination, and those in which the t was already the Auslaut of the root, are masculines or neuters. The language seems by the different gender to have pointed to the difference of derivation. Besides, all of these feminines in t are, or were originally, abstract nouns, a feature which distinguished them. not only from the masculines in t; - as, ber Bart, beard; ber Durft, thirst; ber Duft, vapor, fragrance; ber Gaft, sap, juice; ber Chaft, shaft; ber Tafft, taffety; ber Bort, hoard, protection; ber Ranft, edge of a bread-crust: ber Rarft. mattock, hoe; ber Baft, bast; ber Moft, must; ber Troft, solace; ber Dunft, steam, mist; ber Mift, dung; ber Bifcht or Gafcht, froth, yeast; ber Draht, wire; ber Quaft, tassel; which, with the exception of Durft, Troft, are concrete nouns, and, with the exception of Drabt, Saft, Schaft, Ranft, Bifcht, have t in their root; - but also from the few neuters in t; as, bas 2mt, office; bas Beet, flower-bed; Bett, bed; Blatt, leaf; Blut, blood; Boot, boat; Bret, board; Brot, bread; Docht, wick; Beft, festival; Bett, fat; Bift, poison; Saupt, head; Beft, handle, haft; Rraut, herb; licht, light; loth, ounce; Reft, nest; Doft, fruit; Pult, desk; Recht, right; Scheit, log of wood; Schrot, shot; Schwert, sword; Stift, foundation; Bort, word; Belt, tent; among which, with the exception of 2mt and Rept, no abstract nouns are to be found, and with the exception of Saupt, Seft, Gift, none in which the final t does not belong to the root. The intention of the language seems, therefore, to have been this, - that while the monosyllabic names of things derived from roots, when masculine or feminine, should be abstract nouns, and when neuter, concrete nouns, those monosyllabic names of things derived from roots by adding t should be feminines and abstracts, and when the t belonged to the root, masculines or neuters and concrete.

Among those monosyllabic feminines not terminating in t, a number in ancient High-German terminated in a, and were therefore words of two syllables, and feminines; as, Qual, Prin, Scham, Schar, Bahl, — in ancient High-German Quala, Pina, Scama, Scara, Bala; and the presumption is that all such words have the same origin.

b) Monosyllabic Neuters.

das Amt, office das Blatt, leaf	Joto
5	Joto
bas Bab, bath bas Blech, tin-p	THE
*bas Band, ribbon, tie das Blei, lead	
das Beet, flower-bed das Blut, blood	l
bas Beil, hatchet bas Boot, boat	
bas Bein, leg, bone bas Bret, board	i
das Bett, bed das Brot, bread	i
bas Bier, beer bas Buch, book	

thas Bund, bundle
das Dach, roof
das Daus, ace, deuce
das Ded, deck
das Docht,1 wick
das Ding, thing
das Dorf, village, thorp
bas Ei, egg
das Eis, ice
das Erz, ore
das Fach, compartment
das Faß, vat, cask
das Feld, field
das Fell, skin, pelt
das Fest, feast, festival
bas Fett, fat
das Fleisch, flesh, meat
das Floß, rast
das Fort, fort
das Garn, yarn
das Geld, money
das Gift,2 poison
das Glas, glass
bas Gleis, track of a wheel
das Glied, limb, member
das Glüd, luck
bas Gold, gold
das Grab, grave
das Gras, grass
das Groß, gross
das Gut, property, estate

bas haar, hair

*had Shunh hundle

bas harz, resin bas Saupt, head das Haus, house bas heer, army, host bas Seft, handle, hilt bas Beil, salvation bas bemb, shirt bas Beu, hay bas hirn, brain das Holz, wood das Gorn, horn das Jahr, year bas Jod, yoke das Kinn, chin bas Rleib, garment, cloth bas Anie, knee bas Rorn, corn bas Rraut, herb das Rreuz, cross, crest bas Land, land bas Laub, leaves, foliage bas Leib, suffering bas Licht, light bas lieb, song, lay bas Lob, praise bas Loch, hole *bas Lohn, wages bas Love, lot bas Loth, ounce, plumb-line bas Mahl, meal, repast bas Mal,3 time

bas Malz, malt

¹ Das Docht and ber Docht, wick, are equally in use.

² Die Mitgift, dowry, derived, like Gift, from geben, is feminine.

As employed in vier Ral, jehn Ral, four times, ten times. Ral, mole,

*bas Mart, marrow bas Mag, measure das Maul, mouth, maw bas Meer, sea bas Mchl, meal, flour *das Mensch, wench das Mert, mark, sign bas Moos, moss bas Mus, pap, jam bas Nag, wet substance bas Neft, nest das Ney, net bas Dbft, garden-fruit bas Obr. ear bas Dehr, ear of a needle *bas Dhm, a wine measure bas Del, oil bas Paar, pair, couple das Pech, pitch bas Pfanb, pawn, pledge bas Pfund, pound das Vult, desk bas Quart, quart bas Rab, wheel das Recht, right das Reich,1 empire *bas Reis, twig bas Ricb, reed das Ries, ream das Riff, reef bas Weh, woe

bas Robr, reed, cane das Rog, horse bas Salz, salt bas Schach, check, chess bas Scheit, log of wood das Schiff, ship *das Schild, sign-board das Schilf, rush, reed das Schloß, lock, castle bas Schmalz, grease, lard bas Schod, threescore bas Schrot, shot, groats das Schwert, sword bas Scil, rope bas Sieb, sieve bas Spiel, play bas Stift, endowment bas Strob, straw bas Stüd, peace bas Tau, tow, cable bas Thal, valley, dale *bas Theil, deal, share bas Thier, animal *bas Thor, door, gate das Tuch, cloth das Vieh, cattle bas Bolf, nation, people das Wachs, wax das Wamms, vest

mark, and its compounds Dentmal, monument, Brandmal, brand, stigma, Mertmal, mark, sign, Shandmal, stigma, Muttermal, mole, are likewise neuters.

¹ Der Bereich, reach, extent, compass, is masculine.

² Edec, threescore, and Mitsod, score, are used of things sold by number; as, ein School Birnen, threescore of pears.

bas Behr, weir bas Bort, word
bas Berft, wharf bas Brad, wreck
bas Berg, tow, oakum bas Zelt, tent
bas Bild,¹ game bas Ziel, limit, mark
bas Bohl, well-being bas Zinn, tin.

And all the generic names of animals and young animals mentioned in § 120; as, Pferb, Roft, Schwein, Lamm, Rath, Dubn, etc.; also but Rind, and all adjectives indicative of color, when substantively used; as, but Gran, but Roth, but Schif, but Schwarz, but Staun, but Blau, but Schib, but Rofa, the green, red, white, black, brown, blue, yellow, rose color.

NOTE 1. The following compounds, the simple substantives of which are lost, are also neuters: das Antile, face, das Begeht, desire, das Befted, case of instruments, das Dreied, triangle, Biered, square, and others compounded with Ese, corner, nook loss Es deing a provincialism), das Engelt, consideration. das Rieined, jewel, precious thing, das Gebot, commandment, das Berbet, prohibition, das Berlief, dungeon, das Berhör, trial in court. Das Eind, miscry, is contracted from the old High-German eli-lenti, ellende, another, or a foreign land, exile.

NOTE 2. The above list exhibits no abstract substantives but 2mt, Glad, But, Seil, Leid, Lob, Recht, Spiel, Stift, Beb, Bobl. Thence it appears that. the language did not intend to create a neuter gender in order to express abstract nouns. But a majority of the above words are names of materials, like Zas, Bein (meaning originally bone), Bled, Bier, Blatt, Blut, Blei, Gold, Binn, Bret, Brot, Ding, Gi, Gis, Erg, Belb, Bett, Bell, Bleifd, Barn, Glas, Gras, Saar, Sary, Seu, Sirn, Soly, Sorn, Rleid (in the original meaning of cloth), Korn (grain), Rraut, Land, Laub, Mal, Meer, Moos, Raf, Doft, Del, Ped, Ried, Rohr, Salz, Schilf, Schmalz, Schrot, Strob, Lau (in the meaning of tow, oakum), Luch, Buch, Berg, Bilb, Beng; which, taken together with the fact, that, among the words of more than one syllable, almost all metals and other materials in an unmanufactured state are neuters, goes far to show that the language shaped the neuter gender for raw materials, generic names of persons and animals, infant animals, and next for concrete substantives not derived from verbs, like Beet, Bett, Beil, Boot, Dorf, Glied, Saue, Semb, Jahr, Joch, Rnie, Rreug, Lieb, Loch, Mabl, Mal, Maul, Ret, Dhr, Debr, Rab, Reis, Schild, Stud, Ihal, Ibier, Birth, Bolt, Bort, Belt; and, next to that, for derivative nouns of a concrete meaning, like Bab, Bilb, Bud, Dad, Jad, Buf, Bloff, Gelb, Bift, Grub, Saupt, Beft, Lobn, Loos, Licht, Mart, Mag, Mehl, Mert, Reft, Reich, Riff, Schiff, Schloff, Schmaly, Sieb, Stift, Theil, Bache, Behr, Bert, Beug, Biel, (from baden, bilben, biegen, beden, fugen, faffen, fliefen, gelten, geben, graben,

¹ Das Bilberet, venison, is a corruption of Bilberaten, roasted game.

² Antwort, answer, is feminine.

heben, haben, lohnen, loofen, leuchten, merten, meffen, mahlen, niften, reichen, raufen, schaffen, schliefen, scheilen, scheilen, scheilen, scheilen, scheilen, wechten, wirten, jeugen, zielen); lastly, sor abstracts with a meaning inclining towards the concrete, as Glad (from gelingen), telb (from leiden), etc.

§ 125. Substantives with the augment Ge- are neuter, with the following exceptions: —

a) Masculine.

ber Gebrauch, use, usage
ber Gefang, song, singing
ber Gefallen, favor
ber Gefalt, value, contents
ber Gelaß, space in a house
ber Genuß, enjoyment
ber Gewinn, gain
ber Gewinnft, premium.

b) Feminine.

bie Geberde, gesture, bearing
bie Gebühr, propriety
bie Gebutt, birth
bie Gebuld, patience
bie Gefahr, danger
bie Gemeinde, community
bie Gewalt, power.

bie Gewalt, sufficiency
bie Gefahulst, history, story
bie Gefahulst, swelling
bie Gemähr, security, guaranty
bie Gewalt, power.

Of the above, all masculines are abstract nouns, inclining towards the expression, at the same time, of concrete notions; the feminines also are all abstract nouns, at the same time denoting concrete notions. Of the neuters all iteratives and collectives formed from substantives express concrete notions, many inclining towards abstract meanings; all others express abstract notions, inclining in usage towards concrete meanings.

The names of persons are also excepted, their gender being determined by the meaning; and likewise substantives ending in ung, heit, keit, schaft, sam (see § 127); as, ber Gespiele, die Gespiele, die Gespiele, die Genosse, der Gesährte, die Gesährtin, mate; der Genosse, die Genossen, die Genossen, die Genesung, recovery; die Gelegenheit, occasion; die Gemissenhaftigkeit, conscientiousness; die Gemeinschaft, community; der

Gehorsam, obedience. Exception, das Geschwister, brother, sister.

NOTE. — The number of substantives with the augment Se is very large, and new ones, always neuter, may be formed from almost any verb. The above masculines, with the exception of Gebrauch, Gewinn, and Gewinnft, (which are iterative or collective augmentations from der Braud, Binn, Binnft, the last two now obsolete,) are formed directly, without terminations, from verbs with the Umlaut; namely, from the Past or Past Participle of verbs of the ancient form. No such forms occur among the feminines, which are all derived from the root of verbs (except Seburt and Sefchwulft, derived from die Schwulk and the antiquated Burt), while in Geschichte, Geburt, Geschwulk, Geberde, the t (ft, de) does not belong to the root. The great majority of neuters. when derived from verbs, have no Umlant at all, - like das Gelaufe, running, Befinge, singing, Gemurmel, murmur, Belach, laughter, - and are formed simply by omission of the final n from the Infinitive; or when derived from substantives, have in a great majority of cases the substantival Umlaut (a from a, & from o, i from u, du from au) where it is possible, and with no suffixed terminations, with the exception of Gespinns, spinning; Gespenst, spectre; Gebaude, from Baude, building; Gebraude, brewing; Getubbe, vow, pledge; Betraibe, grain, from the ancient gitragidi, Participle Past of tragan, to bear; Bemalte, picture; Bemacht, work; Befchift, business. Das Befoff, for instance, is not derived from faufen, but from der Goff, drinking.

SUBSTANTIVES OF MORE THAN ONE SYLLABLE.

§ 126. MASCULINES are those ending in el, em, en, er, ing, ling, ig, rich, sam.

The terminations el; en, er, however, are subject to the following exceptions *:—

1. Feminine Exceptions in el.

bie Achsel, shoulder	bie Brezel, bunn
bie Ampel, lamp	die Bummel, tassel
die Amsel, blackbird	bie Cimbel, cymbal
bie Angel, hook, hinge	die Claufel, clause
die Auritel, auricula	bie Dattel, date
die Bibel, Bible	die Deichsel, carriage-pole

^{*} These lists contain many words of Latin and Greek origin, with slightly altered forms, but in most cases retaining the original gender; as, die Jubel, the fable, fabula; die Jufel, island, insula; die Ceder, cedar, cedrus; das Minfer, cathedral, monasterium.

die Distel, thistle die Droffel, thrush die Eichel, acorn die Epistel, epistle die Fabel, fable die Kadel, torch die Falbel, flounce bie Fessel, fetter bie Fiebel, spelling-book bie Fiebel, fiddle Die Fistel, fistula tie Flosfel, flower of speech tie Formel, formula die Fuchtel, flat of the sword die Gabel, fork die Geißel, Scourge bie Gondel, gondola die Gurgel, throat die Haspel, reel bie Sechel, hackle die hummel, humble-bee bie Infel, island die Rachel, saucer-tile bie Rangel, pulpit die Rartoffel, potato bie Rapsel, capsule die Klingel, small bell bie Krämpel, carding instrument bie Stoppel, stubble bie Rugel, ball, globe die Ruppel, cupola die Runtel, distaff die Kurbel, crank die Kuttel, tripe *die Mandel, almond

*die Mangel, mangle bie Mispel, medlar die Mistel, mistletoe bie Morchel, toadstool, moril die Muschel, shell, muscle die Nessel, nettle die Nestel, lace die Nadel, needle die Nudel, vermicelli bie Orgel, organ bie Pappel, poplar bie Pustel, scab, pustule die Parabel, parable die Primel, primrose die Ranunkel, ranunculus die Raspel, rasp die Raffel, rattle die Regel, rule die Rungel, wrinkle die Schachtel, box die Schaufel, shovel die Schaufel, swing bie Schindel, shingle bie Schüssel, dish bie Semmel, roll of bread die Sichel, sickle bie Spindel, spindle bie Roppel, coupling, tie, leash bie Staffel, round of a ladder die Striegel, currycomb bie Tafel, table die Tarantel, tarantula bie Trobbel, tassel bie Trommel, drum die Truffel, truffle

bie Bettel, beldam bie Wachtel, quail bie Baffel, wafer, waffle

bie Bindel, swaddling-cloth die Burzel, root die Zwiebel, onion.

Die Beisel, queen-bee

Also some provincial expressions, like Dachtel, Rettel, etc.

2. Neuter Exceptions in el.

bas Achtel, the eighth part †
bas Bünbel, bundle, bunch
bas Dunkel, darkness
bas Eremvel, example

das Erempel, example das Rapitel, chapter

das Kabel, cable

*bas Mandel, number of fisteent bas Siegel, seal bas Friesel, purples bas Uebel, evil

das Ferkel, young pig das Mittel, means

bas Nösel, pint

bas Drafel, orscle bas Penbel, pendulum bas Räthsel, riddle bas Rubel, herd, flock bas Scharmüpel, skirmish

bas Segel, sail
bas Siegel, seal
bas Uebel, evil
bas Biefel, weasel
bas Bispel, a measure.

3. Feminine Exceptions in er.

bie Aber, vein, artery
bie Ammer, the bunting
bie After, aster
bie Auster, oyster
bie Blatter, small-pox
bie Butter, butter
bie Ceder, cedar
bie Dauer, duration
bie Ester, alder
bie Faser, fibre
bie Feber, feather, pen
bie Feier, celebration

bie Kiber, fibre, nerve

bie Folter, rack, torture bie Flunder, the flounder bie Halfter, halter bie Kammer, chamber bie Raper, caper bie Relter, wine-press bie Rlammer, cramp-iron bie Rlapper, rattle *bie Riefer, pine bie Rlafter, cord, fathom bie Lachter, cord, fathom bie Lauer, lurking-place

bie Leber, liver

bie Leier, lyre

[†] And similar fractional numbers.

[‡] Used of things sold by number.

bie Leiter, ladder
bie Letter, type, letter
bie Marter, torture
bie Maser, measles
bie Mauer, wall
bie Mutter, mother
Die Nummer, number, eipher
bie Natter, adder, viper
bie Letter, adder
tie Oper, opera
bie Orber, order, command
bie Rüster, elm

bie Scheuer, barn
bie Schwester, sister
bie Schleuber, sling
bie Schulter, shoulder
bie Steuer, tax
bie Tochter, daughter
bie Trauer, mourning
bie Besper, vespers
bie Biper, viper
bie Wimper, eyelash
bie Jiffer, cipher
bie Zither, guitar.

NOTE 1. In some of these substantives the termination is not a suffix, but an Auslaut belonging to the root; as in Jeter, Dauer, Jeder, Mauer, tauer, Echeuer, Trauer, in old High-German vira, dura, federa, mura, lura, sciura, etc. And the presumption is, that most, if not all, of them ended originally in a, and are on this account feminine.

NOTE 2. The names of rivers in er and ef are also feminine. See § 121. 4.

4. Neuter Exceptions in er.

das Abenteuer, adventure das Alter, age bas Bauer, bird-cage *bas Dotter, yolk bas Eiter, pus bas Euter, udder bas Fenfter, window das Kieber, fever bas Feuer, fire bas Fuber, load ras Futter, food, fodder das Frauenzimmer, female ras Gatter, gate, grate bas Gitter, gate, grate bas Klufter, cloister bas Roller, collar, bib

das Kupfer, copper bas Lager, layer, camp, couch bas Laster, vice bas leber, leather das Luber, carrion bas Meffer, knife bas Mieber, bodice bas Muster, pattern bas Opfer, sacrifice bas Pflaster, pavement, plaster das Polster, cushion, bolster bas Pulver, powder bas Register, register, index, list das Ruber, oar, rudder bas Gilber, silver bas Quedfilber, quicksilver

*bas Steuer, helm
bas Theater, theatre
bas Ufer, shore
bas Ungcheuer, monster

bas Waffer, water

das Wetter, weather das Wunder, wonder das Zimmer, room das Zepter, sceptre.

5. Neuter Exceptions in en.

bas Almosen, alms
bas Beden, basin
bas Eisen, iron
tas Füllen, colt
bas Gewissen, conscience
bas Kissen, cushion

bas Laten, bed-linen bas Lehen, fief bas Leinen, linen bas Wappen, coat of arms bas Zeichen, token.

Also some Infinitive-Substantives, like bas leben, life, bas Erbbeben, earthquake, bas Erbrechen, vomiting, bas Bohlergeben, the well-doing, bas Bergeben, misdemeanor, bas Berbrechen, crime, bas Belingen, success, bas Miflingen, failure, bas Berlangen, desire, bas Gerathen, thrift, bas Mifrathen, failure, bas Trinten, drinking, bas Berben, Entfleben, the becoming, coming into existence, bas Bergeben, Berichwinden, vanishing, disappearing, bas Bergniften, pleasure, etc., which are the only abstract substantives derived from their verbs. Infinitive can properly be used substantively only where no other abstract substantives (mostly in ung) of the same verbs are extant. The following, however, are masculines, according to their termination, though they are alike infinitives of the same import: ber Braten, roast meat; ber Broden, morsel, crumb; ber Befallen, favor; ber Braben, ditch; ber Suften, cough; ber Rugen, use, profit; ber Chaben, injury; ber Schatten, shadow, shade; ber Schluchgen, hiccup; ber Schnupfen, cold in the head; ber Tropfen, drop; ber Bapfen, spigot. Das Braten means, the roasting; bas Suften, the coughing; and so on.

NOTE. — Of the substantives contained in the above five lists, very few are abstracts with a leaning towards concrete meanings; Regel, Exempel, Rapitel, Babel, Abenteuer, Matter, Gieber, Opfer, Almofen, being foreign words, in which the termination belongs to the foreign stem; Uebel and Mittel are the neuters of adjectives substantively used.

§ 127. FEMININES are those ending in e, ung, heit, feit, schaft, end, in, et.

1. Masculine Exceptions in t.

a) ber Rafe, cheese ber Friede, peace ber Buchstabe, letter of the alphabet ber Funte, spark ber Gebanke, thought ber Glaube, belief, faith

ber haufe, heap

ber Name, name

b) Also a number of names of persons and male animals; as,

ber Barbe, bard ber Bote, messenger

der Bube, knave ber Bürge, security

ber Buriche, fellow

ber Erbe, heir

ber Göpe, idol

ber Beibe, heathen

ber Sirt(e), herdsman ber Insaffe, inhabitant, lodger

ber Jube, Jew

der Anabe, boy ber Runde, customer

ber Laffe, fop ber Neffe, nephew

ber Pathe, godfather

ber Riese, giant ber Schenle, cupbearer

der Schüße, sharp-shooter ber Stlave, slave

ber Beffe, Hessian

ber Grieche, Greek

ber Same, seed ber Schabe, damage

ber Wille, will.

ber Portugiese, Portuguese

ber Preuge, Prussian

ber Schmabe. Swabian

ber Sachse, Saxon

ber Bestphale, Westphalian

ber Tartare, Tartar ber Türke, Turk

ber Pole, Pole

ber Ruffe, Russian ber Lette, Lettian

ber Samojebe, Samoyed

ber Franke, Franconian ber Affe, ape, monkey

ber Bulle, bull ber Drache, dragon

ber Falle, falcon ber Farre (antig.), bullock

ber Safe, hare ber Löwe, lion ber Ochse, ox der Rabe, raven

ber Rappe, black horse.

Also some with the augment Ge, as Geführte, Geselle, Genosse, Gespiele, and a number of patronymics. -

- 2. Neuter exceptions in e are bas Auge, eye, bas Ente, end, *bas Erbe, inheritance, bas Bett(e), bed, bas hemb(e), shirt.
- 3. Exceptions in ung, ichaft, end, are ber hornung, February, bas Petschaft, seal, ber Abend, evening, bas Dupend, dozen, bas Elend, misery, bas Taufend, thousand, bas Jahrzehend, decade, ten years.

NOTE. — The terminations uth (ut) and ath (at) occur only in the following originally German words: bie Armuth, poverty, bie Beimath, home, bie Beirath, marriage, bie or ber Bierath, ornament. For foreign words in ut and at, see § 180.

§ 128. NEUTERS are those ending in then, lein, sal, sel, niß, thum, icht.

1. Exceptions in nig.

bie Bedrängniß, distress
bie Befugniß, authority
bie Befümmerniß, sorrowfulness
bie Beforgniß, apprehension
bie Betrübniß, affliction
bie Bewandtniß, conjuncture
bie Empfängniß, conception
*bie Erfenntniß, cognition,
judgment
bie Erlaubniß, permission

bie Ersparniß, savings
bie Fäulniß, putrefaction
bie Fünsterniß, darkness
bie Renntniß, knowledge
bie Trodniß, drought
bie Berbammniß, damnation
bie Berberbniß, corruption (also neuter)
bie Bersäumniß and Säumniß,
neglect, omission
bie Wildniß, wilderness.

Note. — The great majority of those in nif are neuter, and have, like das Seddonis, memory, das Beddifnis, want, das Bündnis, alliance, das Bengnis, testimony, das Argernis, scandal, etc., a more decided leaning towards concrete notions than the above seminines in nis. Thus die Ertenntnis, cognition, intellect, leans more to an abstract notion than das Ertenntnis, judgment. Still, with the exception of Julinis, Erlaubnis, Berdammis, plurals may be formed from all seminines; and without exception from all neuters in nis.

2. Exceptions in fal and fel.

bie Drangsal, distress bie Mühsal, pain, trouble bie Trübsal, affliction ber Esel, ass, donkey ber Stöpsel, cork, stopper.

Also all in fel under § 126. 1, not formed by the suffix fel, but where the termination belongs to the stem.

3. Exceptions in thum and tht.

ber Irrthum, error ber Reichthum, riches ber Habicht, hawk ber Rehricht, sweepings. § 129. To the rule, under § 122. 9, that all compound substantives follow the gender of their last component, the following seven, compounded with her Muth, courage, are exceptions:—

bie Annuth, grace bie Demuth, humility bie Großmuth, generosity bie Langmuth, forbearance die Sanftmuth, meekness die Schwermuth, melancholy die Wehmuth, melancholy, regret.

§ 130. GENDER OF FOREIGN SUBSTANTIVES.

Foreign substantives keep, as a rule, their original gender; as, die Insel (from Lat. insula), das Kloster (Lat. claustrum), das Münster (Lat. monasterium), der Kerker, prison (Lat. carcer). Hence all substantives in ane, ane, ine (Fr. ane, aine, ène), ie (Lat. ia), ion (Lat. io), tät (Lat. tas), it (Lat. ica), eng (Lat. entia), ina (Lat. ina, Fr. ine), isse (Lat. issa, Fr. esse), ode (Lat. odus), one (Fr. one), üne (Fr. une), ur (Lat. ura), are feminines; all in ment (Lat. mentum) and ma or m (Lat. ma) are neuters, except der Moment; all in ismus, al, an, ant, at, et, ent, in, ist, it, ier, al, log, or or eur, and if (Lat. icus), and similar names of males, are masculines; while all in ter, not names of males, are neuter; as, das Papier, Rappier, Revier, Scharnier, Turnier; except die Manier (la manière).

Examples. — Die Ottomane (a kind of sofa), die Migrane, die Auine (ruin, of a building), die Philosophie, die Frittion, die Pierat, die Lechnit, die Radenz, die Meliffe, (and so the German Horniffe, hornet,) die Periode, die Hone, die Fortune, die Dreffur, Ratur; der Enthusiasmus, der Galan, Beteran, der Kandidat, der Komet, der Bathant, Elephant (Diamant), der Prafibent, (der Ramin), der Pinguin, der Linguist, der Jesuit, der Kanonier, der Kardinal, der Theolog, der Dottor, der Souffleur; das Element, das Phiegma, das System, das Syntem

Exceptions. — Das Organ, (das Porzellan,) das Patent, das Präsent; der and das Arfenit, der Azur; das Jdeal, das Signal, das Fossill, das Archid, das Duell, das Kastell, das Quadrat, das Defret, (das Duett,) das Conchil, das Substantis, das Adjettiv; all of them docause of their gender in the original language.

The following, being assimilated in their form to German analogies take the corresponding gender.

Masculines.

```
ber Aftar, altar (Lat. altare, n.)
ber Keper, body (Lat. corpus, n.)
ber Marmor, marble (Lat. marmor, n.)
ber Marfid, march (Fr. la marche, f.)
ber Palaft, palaco (Lat. palatium, n.)
ber Pfeffer, popper (Lat. piper, n.)
```

Feminines.

```
die Bibel, Bible (Gr. biblia, n.)
die Etage, story, floor (Fr. l'étage, m.)
die Kanone, cannon (Fr. le canon, m.)
die Lille, lily (Lat. lilium, n.)
die Melone, melon (Fr. le melon, m.)
```

Neuters.

```
das Bajonet, bayonet (Fr. la bayon-
                                         das labyrinth (Lat., m.)
                                         bas Orcheffer (Lat., f.)
  nette, f.)
das Edo. ocho (Lat. echo. f.)
                                         das Paradies (Lat., m.)
bas Benfter, window (Lat. fenestra, f.)
                                         bas Pulber, powder (Lat. pulvis, m.)
bus Bieber, fever (Lat. febris, f.)
                                         bas Zalent, talent (Fr., m.)
das Rabinet, cabinet (Fr., m.)
                                         das Benie, genius (Fr. la génie, f.)
bas Krotobil, crocodile (Lat. crocodi-
                                         bas Billet (Fr., m.)
                                         bas Schaffet, scaffold (Fr. Pechafaud, m.)
  lus. m.)
das Ronfulat (Lat., m.)
                                         bas Concert (Fr., m.)
bas Triumbirat (Lat., m.)
                                         das Portrait (Fr., m.)
das Epistopat (Lat., m.)
                                         das Terrain (Fr., m.)
```

bas and ber Barometer, Thermometer.

Note. — The English language not distinguishing the gender beyond names of persons and a few more substantives, the German has adopted a number of English words, sometimes attributing to them a gender according to German analogies; as, bas Parlament, ber Bass, boss, ber Riber, ble Legislatur, bie Eurrency; — sometimes at random; as, bas County, bas Reeting, bie Court, ber Cengreft, bie Office, bas Reeibal, bie Jail, bie Bayou, bie or der Creet, bie Bill, bie Erdange, bie City, bas Itomfbip.

§ 131. Substantives with Two Genders.

The following substantives have two genders, and consequently two different declensions. In most cases this may be accounted for from the fact that in different dialects different genders were assigned to the same word, and that the written language took hold of this difference to express a diversity of meaning. But in other substantives a different derivation is at

the bottom. Those marked with a • do not-allow of a plural, either because it would have the same form in both cases, and lead to mistakes (see § 156), or for other reasons.

ber Band, volume of a book ber Bauer, peasant, boor ber Budel, hump ber Bund, alliance ber Chor, chorus

ber Erbe, heir *die Erfenntniß, intellect, cognition

nition

ber Gehalt, value, contents
ber Gehalt, value, contents
ber Geißel or Geisel, hostage
ber Harz, hold, clasp, rivet

ber Harz, Harz Mountains
ber Heibe, heathen
ber Hiefer, jaw
ber Runde, customer
ber Leiter, conductor

ber Lohn, reward
bie Mandel, almond

ber Mangel, want bie Mark, mark, boundary

(eight ounces of silver) ber Marsch, march

ber Mast, mast of a ship ber Mensch, man

*der Messer, measurer†

*ber Reis, rice ber Ohm or Oheim, uncle

ber Schild, shield

das Band, ribbon, tie das Baucr, cage (bower)

bie Budel, boss

bas Bund, bunch, bundle

*bas Chor, choir (upper portion of a church)

*bas Erbe, inheritance

das Erkenntniß, legal sentence

bas Gehalt, salary Die Geißel, scourge Die Haft, custody

das Harz, resin die Heide, heath

*bie Hut, heed, pasture bie Riefer, pine

die Kunde, news, intelligence

die Leiter, ladder das Lohn, wages

bas Mandel, number of fifteen

bie Mangel, mangle Das Mark, marrow

bie Marsch, marsh

bit Mast, fattening of cattle

das Mensch, wench das Messer, kniss

bas Reis, twig

das Chin, awm

bas Schild, sign-board

[†] But die Jeldmeffer, geometers, occurs.

ber Schwulft, bombast	die Schwulst, swelling, tumor
ber Sec, lake	die See, sea
ber Sproffe, sprout, descendant	tie Sprosse, step of a ladder
bie Steuer, tax, contribution	bas Steuer, helm
ber Stist, tag, peg, pencil	bas Stift, eleemosynary foun- dation
ber Theil, part of a whole	bas Theil, share, deal, portion
ber Thor, fool	bas Thor, gate
*ber Berdienst, earnings	bas Berbienft, merit
die Wehr, defence	das Wehr, weir
ber Weihe, kite	die Beihe, consecration.

Note. — The following compounds with Theil are masculines: der Bertheil, advantage; der Rachtheil, disadvantage; der Entheil, share, interest. The following are neuters: das Gegentheil, the contrary, reverse; das littheil, judgment, sentence; das Erbtheil, hereditary portion; das Berdettheil, fore part; das dintertheil, hind part; das Groftheil; — the latter three occurring also as masculines.

DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 132. There are in German two declensions, the ancient and the modern, formed by addition of the following terminations to the substantive.

ANCIENT DECLENSION.		Modern Declension.		
	Singular.			
Nominative,	_	—t or —		
Genitive,	—€\$ or \$	—en or n		
Dative,	—е or —	—en or n		
Accusative,	_	—en or n		
	Phiral.			
Nominative,	-t or -	—en or n		
Genitive,	-e or -	—en or n		
Dative,	—en or n	—en or n		
Accusative,	—e or —	—en or n		

§ 133. In addition to the above terminations, words belonging to the ancient declension assume the *Umlaut* in the Phural (a, ā; o, ö; u, ü; au, äu), with a few exceptions (see § 143);

those belonging to the modern declension never do. Words having no a, v, u, au, can take no Umlaut.

- § 134. The ancient declension comprises the great bulk of masculine and neuter, with but a limited number of feminine substantives; the modern declension comprises the great bulk of feminine, with but a limited number of masculine substantives.
- § 135. No feminines of either declension have any terminations in the singular.
- § 136. The laws of euphony direct when the ϵ of the terminations in both declensions is to be omitted; namely, in the modern declension, in all words terminating in the nominative in ϵ , ϵ , ϵ , and in the ancient declension, in all words whose root-stem has assumed one of the terminations ϵ , ϵ , or ϵ , and therefore consists of more than one syllable, while in monosyllabic words, or monosyllables compounded with prefixes, the ϵ must be retained.
- NOTE. This peculiarity of the language, which makes the declensions, otherwise simple and logical, complicated and difficult, is to be accounted for by the fact that the German does not like the rhythmical or metrical form of the Dactylus (- -, one long or accented syllable followed by two short or unaccented ones), but decidedly prefers the Trochaus (- -, one accented syllable followed by one short or unaccented one), and next to it the Spondeus (. _ -, one accented and one half-accented syllable) and the Bacchius (- -, one accented, followed by a weakly or half accented and an accentless syllable). This is the reason why bes Sohnes, bes Daufes, dem Sohne, dem Baufe are approved, and bes Bateres, dem Batere, des Tifenes, dem Cohne, dem Reichthums, are equally often used.
- § 137. A small number of masculines, and about one half of the monosyllabic neuters, and all with the suffix thum, form the plural in ϵr instead of ϵ , for the sake of euphony.
- § 138. A small number (six) of monosyllabic neuters (§ 152), and a number of monosyllabic masculines (§ 151), form the plural after the modern declension.
 - § 139. The different principles upon which the German de-

clension is moulded modifying each other so much, it is of importance to have pointed out those rules in the formation of the declensions which never suffer an exception. They are the following:—

- 1. All Datives plural (even of the articles, pronouns, and adjectives) end in n.
- 2. All Accusatives plural, and all Accusatives singular of the ancient declension and of feminines, are like their Nominatives.
 - 3. All feminines have in the singular four like cases.
- 4. All masculines in the modern declension have en or n in all cases except the Nominative of the singular.

§ 140. PARADIGMS OF THE ANCIENT DECLENSION.

I. Monosyllabic Substantives.

		Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
		1. The son.	2. The hand.	\ 3. The word.
SING.	Nom.	ber Sohn	die Hand	4 bas Wort
	Gen.	bes Sohnes	ber Hand	bes Wortes
	Dat.	bem Sohne	ber hand	bem Worte
	Acc.	den Sohn,	bie Hand,	das Wort,
PLUR.	Nom.	die Söhne	bie Banbe	bie Worte
	Gen.	ber Söhne	ber hände	ber Worte
	Dat.	ben Göhnen	ben hänben	ben Worten
	Acc.	die Söhne.	die hände.	bie Worte.
		Musculine.		Neuter.

Masculine.	Newter.
4. The man.	5. The book.
Sing. N. ber Mann	das Buch
G. bes Mannes	bes Buches
D. dem Manne	bem Buche
A. ben Mann,	bas Buch,
Plur. N. bie Manner	bie Bücher
G. ber Männer	ber Bücher
D. ben Männern	ben Buchern
A. bie Manner.	bie Bucher.

GERMAN GRAMMAR.

II. Substantives of more than one Radical Syllable.

	-		-
	Masculine.	Neuter.	Masculine.
	6. The father.	7. The iron.	18. The marshal.
Sing.	N. ber Bater	bae Gifen	ber Marfchall
	G. bes Baters	bes Gifens	bes Marichalles
	D. dem Bater	bem Gifen	dem Marschalle
	A. ben Bater,	bas Eifen,	den Marschall,
PLUR.	N. Die Bater	bie Gifen	die Maricalle
	G. ber Bater	ber Gifen	ber Marfchälle
	D. ben Batern	ben Gifen	ben Marschällen
	A. die Bater.	die Gifen.	die Marschälle.
	Masculine.	Neuter.	Newter.
7 9	. The cheese. 410.	. The mountain cha	in. 1. The weight
	N. ber Rafe	.bas Gebirge	das Gewicht
	G. bes Rafes	bes Gebirges	bes Gewichtes
	D. bem Rafe	bem Gebirge	bem Gewichte
	A. ben Rafe,	bas Gebirge,	bas Gewicht,
PLUR.	N. die Rafe	bie Gebirge	bie Gewichte
	G. ber Rafe	ber Gebirge	ber Gewichte
	D. ben Rafen	ben Gebirgen	ben Gewichten
	A. die Rafe.	die Gebirge.	bie Gewichte.
8	141 PARADIGM	OF THE MODER	DECLENSION.

§ 141. Paradigm of the Modern Declension.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Feminine.
1	2. The boy, knave.	13. The wife.	14. The niece.
SING.	N. ber Bube	die Frau	bie Nichte
	G. bes Buben	der Frau	der Nichte
	D. bem Buben	ber Frau	ber Richte
	A. ben Buben,	die Frau,	Die Nichte,
PLUR.	N. bie Buben	die Frauen	bie Richten
	G. ber Buben	ber Frauen	ber Nichten
	D. ben Buben	den Frauen	ben Nichten
	A. bie Buben.	bie Frauen.	Die nichten.
	4.	**	·

Feminine.	Feminine.
15. The sister.	16. The virtue.
SING. N. bie Schwester	die Tugend
G. ber Schwester	ber Tugenb
D. ber Schwester	ber Tugenb
A. bie Schwester,	bie Tugenb,
PLDR. N. bie Schwestern	bie Tugenben
G. ber Schwestern	ber Tugenben
D. ben Schwestern	ben Tugenben
A. Die Schwestern.	die Tugenben.

§ 142. MIXED DECLENSION.

Masculine.	Newter.
17. The state.	$\frac{18. \text{ The eye.}}{2}$
Sing. N. ber Staat	- bas Auge
G. bes Staates	bes Auges
D. bem Staate	bem Auge
A. ben Staat,	bas Auge,
PLUR. N. bie Staaten >	bie Augen
G. ber Staaten	ber Augen
. D. ben Staaten,	ben Augen
A. die Staaten.	bie Augen.

	Feminine.	Masculine.	Neuter.
	19. The mother.	+20. The name.	≈ 21. The heart.
Sing.	N. die Mutter	ber Name	bas Herz
	G. ber Mutter	bes Namens	bes Bergens
	D. ber Mutter	bem Namen	bem Bergen
	A. bie Mutter,	ben Ramen,	bas Berg,
PLUR.	N. die Mütter	die Namen	bie Bergen
	G. ber Mutter	ber Namen	ber Bergen
	D. ben Müttern	ben Namen	ben Bergen
	A. bie Mütter.	bie Namen.	die Bergen.

§ 143. According to the first paradigm, ber Sohn, are inflected all monosyllabic masculines, except the following, which differ only in taking no *Umlaut*.

Singular.	Phiral.	Bingular.	Plural.
ber Bal, ool,	die Wale	ber Mold, salamander,	die Molche
ber Mar, eagle	die Aare	ber Mond, moon,	die Monde †
ber Urm, arm,	die Arme	ber Mord, murder,	die Morde
der Befuch, visit,	die Befuce	der Drt, place,	die Orte †
der Born, well, spring,	die Borne	ber Part, park,	die Parte
ber Docht, wick,	die Dochte	der Pfad, path,	die Pfude
ber Doich, dagger,	die Dolche	der Pfau, peacock	Die Pfane ‡
ber Dom, dome, .	die Dome	der Pole, pole,	die Pole
der Drud, * pressure, print,	die Drucke	der Pule, pulse,	die Pulse
der Grad, degree,	die Grade	der Puntt, point,	Die Puntte
der Gurt, girth, belt,	Die Gurte	der Ruf, call,	die Rufe j
der Salm, (halm,) blade,	die Halme	der Schuft, rascal,	die Schufte
der Sauch, breath,	die Sauche	der Solud, dram, draught,	
der Suf, hoof,	die Bufe	det Shuh, shoe,	die Schuhe
ber hund, dog, hound,	die Hunde	ber Staar, starling,	dis Staare
der Rnall, knoll,	die Analle	ber Stoff, stuff, material,	die Stoffe
der Kort, cork,	die Korte	ber Sund, sound, strait,	die Sunde
der Krahn, pulley,	die Arahne	der Tag. day,	die Zage
der tache, salmon,	die tachse	der Tatt, tact, measure,	die Latte
ber &uc, lacquer, varnish,	bie Lace	der Thron, throne,	die Throne
ber laut, sound,	die Laute	ber Berfuch, trial, attempt,	die Bersuche
der Luche, lynx,	die Luchse	der goll, inch,	die Bolle.†

§ 144. According to the second paradigm, bte Sant, are inflected the following feminine monosyllables, all of them taking the *Umlaut*.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
die Angff, anguish, die Ausflucht, evasion,	die Zengfie die Zusffächte	die (Jeuerebrunft), confis- gration.	bie Feuers-
die Art, axe,	die Aerte	die Frucht, fruit,	Die Frachte
die Bant, bench,	die Bante	die Gans, goose,	die Banfe
die Braut, bride,	die Braute	die Gruft, grave,	die Grufte
die Bruft, breast, die Jauft, fist,	die Brüffe die Fäuffe	die Sand, hand, die Saut, skin,	die Hände die Häuse

The plural of the compounds Abbrud, copy, Ausbrud, expression, Radbrud, reprint, has the Umlant.

[†] See § 154.

¹ Or Pfauen.

And die Berufe, Mustufe.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Piural.
die Rluft, cleft,	die Rlufte	die Roth, need,	die Roche
die Kraft, strength,	die Krafte	bie Ruf, nut,	die Raffe
die Kub, cow,	die Rube	bie Sau, sow,	die Clue
die Runft, art,	Die Ranfie	die Schnur, string,	die Schnare
die tane, louse,	bie Laufe	die Studt, city,	die Seadre
Die Luft, air,	die läfte	bie 2Band, wall,	die Bande
die auft, desire, lust,	die Laffe	die Burft, sausage,	die Barfte
bie Macht, might,#	die Mächte	bie Bunft, guild.	Die Banfte
die Ragd, servant,	die Magde	Die Bufammentunft,	die Bufammen.
die Raus, mouse,	die Maufe	meeting,	tänfte
die Racht, night,	bie Rachte	(No singular,)	Die Gintunfte, in-
die Rath, seam,	die Räthe		come, revenue.

And (without Umlaut) all ending in nif, and the three feminines, Trubfal, Drangfal, Rabfal. Plur. Die Trubfale, Drangfale, Muffale.

- § 145. According to the third paradigm, bas Mort, all monosyllabic neuters are inflected, none of them having the *Umlaut* except those declined according to the fifth paradigm (see § 146) and those declined after the eighteenth paradigm (see § 152). Das Boot, however, has bie Böte, and bie Boote.
- § 146. 1. According to the fourth or fifth paradigm are inflected the following monosyllabic masculines and neuters, all of them with the *Umlaut*.

Masculines of one syllable, like ber Mann, fourth paradigm.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
ber Befewicht,t villain,	Die Bofewichter	ber Drt, place, .	Die Derter !
ber Beift, spirit,	die Beifter	ber Rand, edge,	die Mander
ber Gott, God,	bie Gåtter	ber Bormund, guardian,	die Bormander
ber Leib, body,	die Leiber	ber Bald, forest, wood,	bie Balber
ber Mann, man,	die Manner	der Burm, worm,	die Barmer.

Neuter monosyllables, like bas Buch, fifth paradigm.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plura i .
bas Zas, carrion,	ble Aefer	bas Bild, picture,	die Bilber
bus Umt, office,	bie Wemter	das Blutt, lenf,	die Blätter
dus Bud, bath,	die Bäder	bas Bret, board,	die Breter
das Band, ribbon,	bie Bånder	das Buch, book,	die Bacher

^{*} The plural of Dhumacht, awoon, is Dhumachten, and of Bellmacht, power of attorney, Bellmachten.

[†] Der Wicht, wight, forms the plural Bichte.

^{\$} See \$ 154.

Singular.	Plural.	Singulár.	Plural.
bas Dach, roof,	die Dacher	das Lamm, lamb,	die Lämmer
bas Daus, deuce, ace	die Dauser	bas land, land, country,	die Länder
(at card:),		bas licht, light,	die Lichter
bas Dorf, village,	die Dörfer	bas lieb, song,	die Lieder
bas Ci, egg,	die Gier	bas tod, hole,	die Löcher
das Jad, compartment,	die Fächer	das Gastmahl, dinner,*	die Guftmabler
das Jaf, vat, cask,	die Gaffer	das Dentmal, monument	, die Dentmaler
das Feld, field,	die Felder	das Maul, mouth,	die Mäuler
das Geld, money,	die Gelder	das Menfc, wench,	die Menfcher
das Glas, glass,	die Glafer	das Reff, nest,	die Refter
das Glied, limb,	die Glieder	das Pfund, pawn,	die Pfander
bas Grab, grave,	die Graber	das Rad, wheel,	die Mäder
tas Gras, grass,	die Grafer	das Reis, twig,	die Meiser
das Gut, estate, boon,	bie Garer	bus Rind, neat cattle,	die Minder
das Haupt, head,	die Häupter	ðus ⊗φiíð, sign-board,	die Schilder
das Saus, house,	die Häuser	das Schloff, lock, castle,	die Schlöffer
das holl, wood,	die Bolger	das Schwert, sword,	die Schwerter
bas forn, horn,	die Borner	das Stift, eccles. found.	, die Stifter
das Suhn, fowl,	die Buhner	das Thal, valley,	die Thälert
das Kalb, calf,	die Kälber	das Tuch, cloth,	die Tücher
bus Kind, child,	die Kinder	das Belt, nation,	die Bolter
bas Kleib, garment,	die Aleider.	das Wamms, jacket,	die Bamfer
das Rorn, grain,	die Rorner	das Beib, wife,	die Weiber
das Kraut, herb,	die Kräuter	das Wort, word,	die Börrer.‡

2. Further, the following six, with the augment Ge:

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
bas Gemach, apartment,		das Gefict, face,	die Gesichter
tas Gemuth, mind,	die Gemuther	das Gefpenft, spectre,	Die Befpenfter
die Geschlicht, sex, gen-	die Geschlechter	das Gewand, garment,	die Gewänder.
eration.			

3. Further, all substantives with the suffix thum; as,

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
bas Burftenthum,	die Garftenthamer	ber Reichthum,	die Reichthamer.
ber Grrtbum.	die Errebamer		

NOTE. — There is no abstract noun among the above words, except 2mt, 3stb, 3stb, Stift, all with a decided leaning towards concrete notions. On the con-

^{*} Other compounds of Mal and Mahl, and these words themselves, have Male and Mahle.

[†] Thale for Thiler is a provincialism. Goeths has once, die Thale dampfen, die Hohen glibn, the valleys are steaming, the hills glowing.

[‡] See § 154.

trary they almost all belong to that class of concrete nouns which are most in use in daily life, and therefore most liable to assume this euphonic r, which indeed greatly relieves the hard pronounciation of the final e, and appears almost spontaneously. For this reason several German dialects have a great many other monosyllabic masculines and feminines ending in et in the plural, which the written language has not always sanctioned; as, Docter, wicks, for Docte; Dorner, thorns, for Dorne. Names of materials do not like the termination in et, as implying a strictly concrete notion; or when they assume it, as in Grafer, Soller, they express distinct individuality. Thus the language found a means of expressing different meanings by different forms of the plural; as, 2Borte, words connected in sentences, 2Borter, unconnected words : Dornen, thorns as a whole, Dorner, thorns taken singly : Benichte, visions, Befichter, faces; lichte, candles, lichter, lights; Banbe, ties, Banber, ribbons; Orte, connected places, Detter, single places. The generic names of animals, and the names of young animals, like the form et in the plural; as, Rinder, Buhner, tammer, Ralber, Gier, Rinder, Beiber, Menfcher; - and so do the abstracts in thum, when becoming concrete in the plural; as, Burftenthis mer, 3rrebamer, Reichtbamer.

§ 147. According to the sixth or seventh paradigm are inflected all masculine and neuter substantives of two or more radical syllables terminating in the suffixes er, el, en, then, and lein; but only the following among them have the *Umlaut*.

1. Masculines, like Bater.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
ber Wder, acre,	die Beder	ber Schwager, brin-law,	die Schwäger
der Bruder, brother,	die Brüder	ber Bater, father,	die Bater
der Sammer, hammer,	die Hammer .	ber Puchter, farmer,	die Pachter.
ber Boben, bottom, floor,	die Boben	der Raften, chest, box,	die Raften
ber Saben, thread,	bie Jaben	ber laben, shop,	die Laden
ber Barten, garden,	Die Garten	ber Magen, stomach,	die Magen
ber Graben, ditch,	Die Graben	ber Dfen, stove, oven,	bie Defen
ber Rragen, collar,	die Krägen	ber Schaben, damage,	die Schaben.
ber Safen, harbor,	die Safen		
ber Apfel, apple,	Die Aepfel	der Rabel, navel,	die Räbel
ber Sammel, wether,	die Sammel	ber Ragel, nail,	die Rägel
ber Sandel, commerce,	die Banbel,	ber Sattel, saddle,	die Garrel
affair, quarrel,	quarrels,	ber Schnabel, beak,	die Schnabel
der Mantel, cloak,	die Mantel	der Bogel, bird,	die Bögel.

2. Neuters.

Only das Riofter, pl. die Riofter; das Pflaster, the plaster, die Pflaster; and das Pulver, (in the meaning of medicinal powder, die Pulver, and) die Palver; das Basser, die Basser and die Basser.

§ 148. According to the eighth, ninth, tenth, or eleventh paradigm are declined all masculines and neuters of more than one radical syllable not terminating in er, el, en, chen, and lein; chiefly those with the suffixes ig, ing, icht, rich, ling, sam, sal, (eighth,) and those with the augment Ge- terminating in none of the feminine suffixes (scaft, heit, leit, ung, in), but in e (tenth) or the simple Auslaut (eleventh), when not naturally males (§ 149). According to Räst no other word is declined.

But only the following have the Umlaut, viz.: Marschall, Marschalle; Herzog, Herzoge, duke; Bischoff, bishop; a sew foreign words (see § 155); and of those with the augment Gc-, the masculines Gebrauch, Geruch, Gesang, Geschmad, Gestant, Genuß.

- § 149. According to the twelfth paradigm, ber Bube, and always without *Umlaut*, are inflected all masculines in e (a complete list of them is given under § 127. b), and also the following:—
- A number of such as originally terminated in e, but have now thrown off this termination, viz.:—

ber Bar, bear,	all other	cases,	Bären
ber Christ, Christian,	"	"	Christen
ber Fint(e), finch,	"	u	Finten
ber Fürst, prince,	. "	"	Fürften
ber Ged, fop,	"	44	Geden
ber Graf, count,	"	"	Grafen
ber helb, hero,	"	"	Belben
ber herr, master, sir,	66	"	Berren
ber Ramerab, comrade,	u	"	Rameraben
ber hirt(e), herdsman,	66	"	Birten .
ber Leu, lion,	"	44	Leuen
ber Mensch, man,	"	"	Menfchen
ber Mohr, moor,	"	"	Mohren
ber Narr, fool,	"	u	Narren
ber Nerv, nerve,	"	"	Nerven
ber Oche(c), ox,	"	"	Ochsen

ber Prinz, prince, all other cases, Prinzen ber Thor, fool, " Thoren ber Spaz, sparrow, " Spazen;

and the compounds ber Hagestolz, old bachelor, and ber Borsahr, ancestor. Der Beamte, officer, ber Bediente, servant, ber Gelichte, learned man, are declined as adjectives (see § 178).

- 2. The patronymics, ber Sachse, ber Preuße, etc., a list of which is given under § 127. b, and to which must be added ber Barbar, ber Baier, ber Kasser, ber Tartar, ber Ungar, ber Kalis, ber Tvrann.
- 3. The foreign words ending in ast, at, e, et, ant, ent, eut, is, ist, it, log, og, nom, ot, soph, arch, denoting naturally males; as, ber Kanbidat, ber Poet, ber Komet, ber Musikant, ber Präsibent, ber Tourist, ber Jesuit, ber Astrolog, ber Astronom, ber Philosoph, ber Monarch, and many similar ones; but not those in or, as, like Doktor, Rarbinas.
- § 150. According to the thirteenth, fourteenth, fifteenth, or sixteenth paradigm are declined all feminines (the great majority) not enumerated in § 144, viz.:—
- 1. All monosyllables not excepted in § 144, like Frau;—all feminines of more than one radical syllable, like Tugend;—and all derivatives in ung, schaft, et, heit, teit, and in (the latter doubling the n in the plural), as hoffnung, Erbschaft, Meierei, farm, Schönheit, Artigleit, politeness, Königin, Königinnen, like Frau.
- 2. Those dissyllable feminines terminating in er and el, enumerated in § 126. 1, 3, like Schwester.
 - 8. Those terminating in e, like Nichte.
- § 151. According to the seventeenth paradigm, ber Staat, are inflected the following masculines: —

Der Ahn, ancestor, Der Bauer, peasant, Der Dorn, thorn, Der Jorff, forest, Der Gau, district, dale, ber Gebatter, godfather, ber Geifiel, hostage, ber Riefer, jaw, ber torbeer, laurel, ber Rafi, mast of a ship, ber Rachbar, neighbor,
ber Pantoffel, slipper,
ber Pfau, pencock,
ber Rift (die Rifte), ornock,
ber See, lake,
ber Sporn,
ber Sporn,
ber Sporn,
ber Seaat, state,
ber Staate,
ber Staate,
ber Staate,
ber Staate,
ber Staate,

Also all foreign words denoting males ending in or; as, Dettor.

- § 152. According to the eighteenth paradigm, bas Auge, are inflected bas Bett(e), bed; bas Ende, end; bas Hemb(e), shirt; bas Thr, ear; bas Leid, woe, suffering.
- § 153. According to the twentieth paradigm, ber Name, are inflected the following masculines in e or en (both terminations being in use):—

ber Buchfiabe, letter of the alphabet, ber Daum (or Daumen), thumb, ber Fiss (or Felsen), rock, ber Funte, pain, ber Schnetz, pain, ber Schnetz, pain, ber Spriede, peace, ber Gebante, thought, ber Glaube, faith, belief, ber Blube, will.

NOTE. — The irregularity in this paradigm consists merely in the nominative of the singular being sometimes used in the shortened form; in all other respects they are inflected according to the sixth paradigm. Here belong also the nouns ber Rerb(tn), North, ber Df(tn), East, ber Gh(tn), South, ber Beff(tn), West, and their compounds, as Serboff(tn), etc. These take end in the Genitive, en in the Dative and Accusative, and, with the exception of Beff (bie Beff(t), the zephyrs) form no plural. Still with prepositions may be found, son North nad Silb, gen Df und Beff (rather poetical).

According to hers, no other word is inflected, and according to Mutter, only bie Tochter.

Notes to the Paradigms.

NOTE 1. Secondary derivative substantives formed by the suffixes ing, ling, thum, nif (neuters), icht, require, because these suffixes have a secondary accent, the termination e (those in thum, et) in the Piural, and es, e in the Genitive and Dative singular; as, des Jung lingses, dem Bringses, dem Bringses, dem Christenthume; des Heichniffes, dem Bringses, dem

MEORETICAL PART.

the Genitive and Dative singular of words in ig; 22, des Königs, dem König, des Honigs, dem Honig, although Schiller has, das muß ich dem König e geben.

NOTE 8. The singular of monosyllable feminines was originally inflected after the modern declension, a few examples of which declension are preserved in sayings like these: auf Erden, on earth; zu Gunsten, in favor. And in poetry, Röstein auf der heiden. (Goethe.) Shau wie das stintert in der Sonnen. (Schiller.)

NOTE 4. When the terminations es, e, en, er, are joined to Substantives with the Auslant f (final double f) or s (final simple f), the former is changed into f only when the radical vowel is short, and in the suffix nif; the latter always into f; an, der Jinf, des Jinfes, die Jiffes, die Riffes, des Riffes, die Riffes, des Dauss, des Daufes, die Hinfer; das Hinderniff, des Hinderniffes, die Hinderniffes. But Spafi has Spafies, Spafie; Gruf, Grufes, Grufes; because the radical vowel is long heré.

§ 154. The following substantives have a double plural with different meanings:—

Plural.		
die Bander, ribbons,	die Banbe, ties.	
die Bante, benches,	die Banten, banks.	
bie Dinger, (nice) things,	die Dinge, things, matters.	
Die Dorner, thorns,	Die Dornen, thorns.*	
bie Befichter, faces,	Die Befichte, visions.	
die Borner, horns,	die Borne, kinds of horn.	
die Männer, men,	bie Mannen, army, warriors.	
die Edden, shops,	die laben, shutters.	
	die Lande, portions of a	
die lander, countries,	country.	
•	die Ländereien, lands.	
die lichter, lights, flames,	die Lichte, candles.	
die Monde, moons,	bie Monben, months(poetic).	
die Derter, single places,	die Orte, places.*	
die Silue, sows,	die Sauen, swine, hogs.	
	bie Bander, ribbons, bie Bante, benches, bie Dinger, (nice) things, bie Derner, thorns, bie Gefichter, faces, bie Honner, horns, bie Manner, men, bie Aden, shops, bie tander, countries, bie tichter, lights, flames, bie Nonde, moons, bie Orrrer, single places,	

Singular.	Plural.		
ber Strauf, nosegny,	die Stråufer, nosegnys,	die Straufe, ostriches.	
battle, ostrich,	bie Straufe, battles,	die Straufen, ostriches.	
das Ctud, piece,	bie Stude, pieces,	die Graden, fragments.	
bas 2Bort, word,	die Borter, single words,	die Borte, coherent worde.	
ber Boll, inch, toll,	die Bolle, tolls, duties,	die Belle, inches.	

Such as have already a double gender in the singular (§ 131) form of course different plurals, according to their genders; as, die Bauern, peasants, die Bauer, cages; die Budel, humps, die Budein, dosses; die Bünde, Bündninge, alliances, die Bunde, bunches; die Eutern, conductors, die eitern, ladders; die Besonungen, rewards, die idden, wages; die Stifter, soundations, die Stifte, pegs; die Schilde, shields, die Schilder, aign-boards; die Ihoren, sools, die Ihore, gates; die Renschen, men, die Renscher, wenoles; die Debme, uncles, die Ohme, awms. But the same plural obtains in die Heiden, heathens, and die Heiden, heathers; die Riefern, jaws, die Kiefern, pines; die Sprossen, sprouts, die Sprossen, rounds of a ladder; die Iheise, parts, die Anthelie, Iheise, shares.

Note. — Mann also has, in compound words, the Plural leute (people, men) when used in a collective sense; as, Arbeitemann, Arbeiteleute, working people; Bergmann, miner; Jerkmann, forester; Juhrmann, teamster; Edelmann, nobleman; Handelsmann, trader, pedler; Raufmann, merchant; tandemann, countryman; Miethemann, lodger; Bimmermann, carpenter; which have Mergleute, Jorfleute, Juhrleute, etc. But others of this description have the regular plural, implying a moral praise; as, Biedermänner, honest men; Chrenmänner, men of honor; Createsmanner, statesmen; and Chemänner, husbands, as distinguished from Cheleute, husbands and wives.

DECLENSION OF FOREIGN SUBSTANTIVES.

- § 155. Beside the rule given for the declension of foreign substantives in § 149. 3 and § 151, the following rules obtain.
- 1. Most names of persons and things of the masculine and neuter gender, not comprised in the above lists, follow the ancient declension and first paradigm, with e in the Plural, and es or s, e in the Genitive and Dative Singular (the e omitted, as a rule, only after the liquids I, m, n, r); as, her Chor, des Chors, hem Chore, die Chöre; her Instinkt, des Instinktes, tie Instinkte; das Monument, des Monumentes, die Monumente; das Diadem, des Diadems, die Diademe; das Turnier, des Turniers, die Turniere; der Topas, die Topase; der Usas, die Utase; der Saphirs, die Saphire; der Meteor, des Meteors, die Meteore.

The following assume the Umlaut: ver Abt, Aebte; ver Altar, Altäre; ver Bischof, die Bischöse; ver Choral, die Chorale; der Kanal, die Kanale; der Kaplan, die Kaplane; ver Morast, die Moraste, ser Palast, die Paläste; der Papst, die Päpste, pope; ver Probst, die Pröbste, provost. The Umlaut and the whole form prove that these words are more completely Germanized.

The following, however, form the Plural in er: bas hospital and bas Spital, die hospitäler, Spitäler; das Regiment, die Regimenter; das Portal, die Portale and Portäler; das Rapitäl (capital of a column), die Rapitäler, but das Rapital, die Rapitale, capitals; das Ramisol, jacket, die Ramisoler. General has Generale or Generale; Kardinal, Rardinale or Kardinäle.

- 2. Those names of male persons ending in aner, ener, iner, oner, euner, and most in er, as Dominitaner, Italiener, Athener, Benediftiner, Dragoner, Zigeumer, Magister, follow the sixth paradigm, but without Umlaut.
- 8. After the mixed declension and seventeenth paradigm are declined, besides those in or, those in the (Latin tivum); as, bas But Motiv, Regitativ, Abjeftiv, bes Abjektive, bie Abjektiven. Somitto, form the plural in t. After the twenty-first paradigm are declined the neuters in ium, al, il (Lat. ium, ale, ile), plural ien; as, bas Studium, bes Studiums, bie Studien; bas Evangelium, gospel, bes Evangeliums, die Evangelien; bas Abverb-(ium), bes Abverbe, bie Abverbien ; bas Partizip(ium), bes Partigips, bie Partigipien; bas Rapital, bes Rapitale, bie Rapitalien (and Rapitale); bas Fossil, bes Fossilo, bie Fossilien; and, occurring only in the plural, die Curialien, die Formalien, die Naturalien, Die Mobilien. Likewise bas Individuum, bes Inbivibuums, bie Individuen. After the seventeenth paradigm are declined the following masculines: Diamant, Fasan, pheasant, Juwel, jewel, Capaun, capon, Impost, tax, Consul, Mustel, Pantoffel, Prafett, Pfalm, Rubin, Trattat, and all in em and ismus; as, Sophism and Sophismus, Gen. bes Sophisms and Sophismus', pl. die Sophismen. After the eighteenth, the fol-

lowing neuters: das Insett, Pronom, Statut, Berb, das Prisma, das Panorama, Phantasma, Dogma. But Alima has in the Plural Alimate.

- 4. According to the modern feminine declension are declined all feminines; as, Linktur, Natur; Jone, Base, basis; Kakultät, Majestät. But the Greek words in is have en added in the plural, instead; as, Basis, Plur. Basen; Thesis, Thesen.
- 5. A few Latin names have retained the Latin declension; as, ber Casus, bee Casus, die Casus, die Modi.
- 6. A few English and French words form the plural in &; as, die Meetings, die Courts, die Creeks, die Bottoms, die Fonds, die Genies, die Lords, die Golos or Goli.
- 7. Das Interesse, the interest, concern, advantage, has another meaning in the plural, namely, bie Interessen, the interest of money.

§ 156. Words used only in the Singular.

1. The following abstract substantives are not susceptible of a plural, although the corresponding substantives in English assume it, and must be used in the singular wherever such an English plural is to be translated, or must take the plural of some synonymous noun.

Sing	ular.	Pheral.
die Aufnahme,	reception,	•
bie Untunft,	arrival,	•
ber Unschein,	appearance,	
bas Unfehen,	authority,	
ber Argivohn,	suspicion,	
ber Beginn,	beginning,	die Anfange,
ber Befit,	possession,	die Befigungen,
ber Bund,	alliance,	(Bunbe, antiquated) bie Bundniffe,
ber Dant,	thanks,	bie Dantfagungen, Dantesbezeugungen,
der Drud,	oppression,	die Bedrudungen,
Die Ehre,	honor,	Die Chrenbezeugungen,
das Elend,	misery,	
das Erbe,	inheritance,	die Erbichaften,
der Empfang,	receipt,	
die Blucht,	flight,	
Die Burcht,	fear,	

Singular.

Plura.

	sany.		2 tu/ ue.
	der Gefallen,	favor,	die Gefälligteiten,
	der Glang,	splendor,	
	das Glück,	fortune,	die Glüdefälle,
	die Gnade,	mercy,	die Gnadenbezeugungen,
	der Gram,	grief,	
	der Baf,	hatred,	
	ber Baber,	dispute,	
	die But,	heed, pasture,	die hutungen, pastures,
	der Jammer,	wailing,	
	der Rummer,	affliction,	die Kammerniffe,
	das Leben,	life,	die Lebensläufe,
	die Liebe,	love,	· ·
	das lob,	praise,	die Lobsprüche,
	der Lohn,	reward,	die Belohnungen (die tohne means wages
	bie Mabe,	pain, trouble,	bie Bemühungen, Muhfale, pains, trouble
	der Mund,	mouth,	die Mauler,
	die Pracht,	splendor,	
	ber Rath,	advice,	die Rathfclage,
	der Raub,	spoil,	die Maubereien, Beraubungen,
	ber Schein,	appearance,	•
	ber Schmud,	ornament,	die Somudfachen,
	ber Segen,	blessing,	die Segnungen,
	der Stoll,	pride,	
	ber Strand,	strand,	
	bas Streben,	striving,	Die Beftrebungen,
	ber Streit,	dispute,	die Streitigteiten,
	ber Stury,	the fall,	-
	ber Somue,	dirt,	
	der Tabel,	reproach,	
	der Taufch,	exchange,	die Austauschungen,
	der Tod,	death,	die Lodesfille, deaths,
	der Troft,	consolation,	die Tröffungen,
	das Unrecht,	wrong,	die Ungerechtigteiten,
	bas Unglad,	misfortune,	die Ungladefalle,
•	ber Unterricht,	instruction,	die Unterweisungen,
	der Urlaub,	furlough,	die Beurlaubungen,
	der Berbacht,	suspicion,	
	der Berdienft,	earnings,	
	der Berftand,	understanding,	
	der Berbruf,	vexation,	die Berbrieflichteiten,
	bas Bergnugen,	pleasure,	bie Bergnugungen, amusements,
	die Borfict,	precaution,	die Berfichtemafregeln,
	die Borforge,	provision,	·
	ber Babn,	illusion,	
		10	

Singular.

Phyral

wit, smartness, ber 2Bis, ber Bant,

quarrel. constraint.

dispute, dissension.

die Bite, Biteleien, witticisms, bie Bantereien,

ber Awana. der Swift.

die Amanasmafregeln. die Amiffiateiten.

die Bunahme, increase;

and some others.

2. Likewise the substantive-infinitives Leben, life, Entfepen, fright, Entstehen, the coming into existence, Entzüden, rapture, bas Anschen, authority, Einfommen, revenue, Bergeben, Berfdwinden, disappearance, bas Einsehen, insight, bas Austommen, competence, Bermogen, fortune, Berlangen, desire, and some others; for some of them plurals are taken from other abstract nouns of the same derivation; as, Entrudungen, Bergehungen. misdemeanors, Einsichten, bie Einnahmen, receipts.

Note. - Properly speaking, all abstract notions can be conceived only as singulars. Whenever an abstract noun is used in the plural, it has ceased to be a mere abstract; it has got at least a leaning towards concrete notions, and has, even in the singular, besides its abstract meaning, assumed a lateral concrete signification. Thus, Swift meant originally the condition or state of quarrelling; but later it has assumed also the lateral meaning of quarrel, a single quarrelling action, and may therefore have a plural, Swiffigfeiten, quarrels. Thus most abstracts may in some way or other form a plural, but always with a leaning to concrete notions. With regard to those abstracts formed with the suffixes ung, beit, fcaft, teit, nif, and e or t, that allow of a plural, the vocabulary must be consulted.

The following abstract nouns admit of a plural in German, while the corresponding English do not: Befchift, Befchafte, business; Erfahrung, Erfahrungen, experience; Berlaumdung, Berlaumdungen, slander; Niedertradriafeit, Niedertradtigfeiten, baseness; Ungerechtigfeit, Ungerechtigfeiten, injustice.

Here belong the following phrases: in der hoffnung (not plural) ihn ju feben, in hopes of seeing him ; eine Ueberfetung in Berfen, a translation in ve ohne Umftande, without ceremony ; ju Ihren Dienften, at your service ; in Englifden Dienften, in the English service.

3. Likewise most names of materials do not, as a rule, admit of a plural; as, ber Sand, sand, ber Schnee, snow, ber Robl. cabbage, ber Mali, malt, bas Dbit, fruit, bas Schilf, reeds, bas Unfraut, weeds, ber Beigen, wheat, Die Gerfte, barley. When, however, different species of a genus are to be expressed, the plural may be formed of almost any of these materials; as, tie Baffer, waters, tie Unfrauter, weeds, bie Thane, dews, Die Brufer, grasses, Die Roble or Roblarten, cabbages, bie Regen, rains. But of Getraide the plural is always Betraibearten ; of Dbft, Dbftarten.

\$ 157. Words used only in the Plural.

1. Collective nouns implying a plurality of individuals: —

Eitern, parents

Miren, Alps (the singular, die Mire, meaning Alpine pasture)

Beintleider, Sofen, trousers, breeches (Sofe occurs sometimes as singular)

Bebraber, brothers

Sefcwifer, brother and sister, brothers and sisters

Stiedmaffen, limbs leute, people.

2. Collective nouns, without distinction of individuals: — Brieficaften, letters

Gintunfte, revenue

Befülle, rents Berechtsame, privileges

Roften, expenses, Mafern, measles

Rollen, wheys

Also die Jinangen, finances.

The five following originally expressed a plurality of days: -Buffen, Lent

Berien, vacation Oftern, Easter

Mante, tricks Rothein, measles

Sportein, fees

Treber, loes Trammer, ruins

Truppen, troops (Truppe, sing., is band) Beitlaufte, times.

Pfingften, Whitsuntide Beibnachten, Christmas.

3. The following words are used in both plural and singular. but the corresponding English words are used only in the plural.

die Afche, the ashes bus Erchip, the archives bus Zufgebot, the banns bas Billiard, the billiards ber Blafebalg, the bellows eine Brille, a pair of spectacles eine Brandung, breakers (surf)

ber Galgen, the gallows

bas Sångeiband, the leading-strings

das Gebirn, the brains ber Bafer, the oats ber hopfen, the hops ber Inhait, the contents ber Rehricht, the sweepings ber lohn, the wages

bie Mathematit, mathematica

die Retaphysit, metaphysics

die Optit, optics

der Rädffand, arrears die Scheere, scissors das Quartier, the quarters das Berlöbniß, the espousals die Bermählung, Sochzeit, the nuptials die Bange, a pair of tongs die Sirtel, a pair of compasses.

§ 158. The names of measures, numbers, and weights, when preceded by numerals, do not assume the plural; as, brei Schritt weit, three paces distant; fünf Fuß lang, five feet long; sechs Paar Schuhe, six pairs of shoes; sieben Pfund, seven pounds; acht Dupend, eight dozen; neun Stüd Aepfel, nine apples; achttausend Mann, eight thousand men (of soldiers). And the object measured or weighed, when a material, does not allow of declension; as, ein Pfund Juder, elf Pfund Rasse. But when not a material, it allows, at least, of a plural (Nom.); as, zehn Stüd Birnen; drei Centner Nägel, three hundred-weight of nails.

Feminine substantives, however, and names of measures of time and money, are excepted from this rule; as, sechs Ellen Luch, zwei Jards Leinwand, steben Meilen, fünf Jahre, sechs Stunden, neun Tage, vier Wochen, zwei Monate, sechs Pfennige, zehn Dollar(s), fünfzig Cent(s).

The expression es ist vier Uhr, "it is four o'clock," is elliptical, instead of es ist vier an der Uhr.

DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES.

§ 159. Those proper names which are used only with the article, as, according to § 119.7, the names of rivers, seas, lakes, mountains, and forests, and the names of countries of the masculine or feminine gender, are declined like common names. But the following rules are observed with regard to those proper names commonly used without the article; that is, names of persons, places, and neuter names of countries.

§ 160. The feminines among them ending in e, and the males terminating in a sibilant (e, ß, r, sch, z), take ens in the Genitive, and en in the Dative and Accusative singular; while the former have en, the latter e, in the Plural; as, Marie, Mariene, Mariene, Dussen, die Mariene, Dussen, die Marene, Marene, die Mare.

209

THEORETICAL PART.

§ 161. All other names of males and females have in the Genitive Singular s, in the Dative and Accusative en or no termination, in the Plural e or s or no termination; as, Karl, Karls, Karl(en), die Karle; Friedrich, Friedrichs, Friedrichen, die Friedriche; Bertha, Bertha's, Bertha'(n), die Berthas; Seneca, Seneca's, Seneca'(n), die Senecas; Amerika, Amerika's, Amerika, die Amerika's; Affen, Affens, Affen, die Affen; Berlin, Berlins, Berlin, die Berline.

§ 162. Foreign names ending in one of the unaccented terminations as, es, is, us, take no terminations at all, but have recourse to the definite article; as, Kerres, bes, bem, ben, bie Kerres; Acneas, bes, bem, ben, bie Acneas; Mäcenas, bes, bem, ben, bie Mäcenas (comically die Mäcenasse, bie Kerresse); Themis, ber, ber, bie, bie Themis; Paulus, bes, bem, ben, bie Paulus (the Latin declension Pauli, Paulu, Paulum, and Christus, Christ, Christo, Christum is rather antiquated).

The same expedient is employed even with names that can be inflected, for the sake of greater certainty as to the case pointed out; as, die Briefe des Cicero and die Briefe Cicero's; Er zieht Schiller'(n) dem Göthe vor, he prefers Schiller to Goethe; where an ambiguity is avoided. When, however, the Genitive precedes the governing noun, this expedient is not resorted to; as, Plato's Schriften, Seneca's Transcriptele, Sofrates' Tob (the latter and similar forms being less agreeable and common, because the s of the Genitive cannot be heard in the pronunciation, and the apostrophe used in its stead can only be seen in reading).

§ 163. When proper names of places terminate in a sibilant, the Genitive cannot take an s, and a common name is placed in apposition before the proper noun, while the latter remains uninflected; as, die Isore der Stadt Paris; der Befehlshaber der Festung Mainz, the commander of the fortress of Mayence. Or the preposition von is resorted to; as, die Ihore von Paris; der Befehlshaber von Mainz; die Lage von Suez und Cadir, the situation of Suez and Cadiz.



NOTE 1. — This latter expedient has largely obtained even in words which do not terminate in a sibilant, so that the regular Genitive has become rather poetical; as, die Berricher von Frantreich (Frantreichs more poetical); der König von Belgien; der Kaiser von Rufland; dem Königreich Spanien ift Frantreich überlegen, France is superior to the kingdom of Spain.

NOTE 2. — The Latin form of the plural is partly retained in Die Scipisnen, die Reronen, die Cafaren.

Nore 8. — Those in ei, en, er, take no termination in the plural; as, die Schlegei, die Schiller, die Franconias).

NOTE 4. — In the sayings, Shiller's find qu haufe, the family of Schiller is at home; Geethe's find verreifi, the Goethe family are from home; Miller's have visitors; wir geben jest qu Shmidt's, we are going now to Smith's; — we have an ellipsis, family being omitted, and the s being the sign of a Genitive, not of a plural.

§ 164. When the name of a person is preceded by the definite article, with or without an adjective, or by a common noun, expressing the person's title or occupation, the name of the person is not declined; as, her Schiller, hes Schiller, bem, hen Schiller; ber große Goethe, bes, hem, hen großen Göthe; bes Raisers Joseph, hem, hen Raiser Joseph; (ber) König Karl.

But when the Genitive precedes the governing substantive, this rule is departed from; as, des großen Friedrich's Thaten, the great Frederick's deeds; Doftor Luther's Lischgespräche, Dr. Luther's dinner-talks. The Christian name and the title in this case are not inflected; as, Ludwig Uhland's Balladen; August Wilhelm von Schlegel's Schriften.

CHAPTER V.

ADJECTIVES.

§ 165. Adjectives single out an individual or a species among the different individuals or species belonging to a genus (the genus being expressed by the substantive), by attributing to the genus a single peculiarity; as, the good man, a large house, fine peaches.

Howather Chark

§ 166. When this peculiarity is considered as inherent in the genus expressed by the substantive, we have an attributive Adjective, as in the above three examples; when it is to be first ascribed to it, and has, therefore, the power of a verb, we have a predicative Adjective; as, the man is good; a house may be large; the peaches will, this year, be fine.

§ 167. The German has a different form for the attributive and for the predicative Adjective; the latter, as a rule, has no termination, and is therefore susceptible of being used as an Adverb (§ 196). (Only the adjective both, high, changes its Auslant in the attributive form into bother, e. es.) The former are inflected by Gender, Number, and Case, and must always agree in the same with their substantives. The latter are never inflected.

§ 168. There are two different declensions which every attributive Adjective can undergo, the ancient and the modern.

Ancient Declension.

	£	Singular.		PLURAL
	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.	M. F. N.
Nominative.	-er	—ŧ	—es	— е
Genitive.	es (en)	er	es (en)	er
Dative.	em	er	em	en
Accusative.	en	e	es	<u>—</u> е

Modern Declension.

	Singular.		PLURAL	
	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.	M. F. N.
Nominative.	 e		e	-en
Genitive.	-en	en	en	en
Dative.	-en	-en	-en	—en
Accusative.	en	<u>—</u> е	— ŧ	—en

I. MODERN DECLENSION OF THE ADJECTIVE.

§ 169. Adjectives take the modern declension, when preceded by an article, pronoun, or numeral which has a termina-

ties of the ancient declension. In all other cases they are inflected according to the ancient or mixed declension.

Only the definite article ber, bie, bas, the pronouns biefer, welcher, folder, jener (this, which, that, such), berfenige, that (which), berfelbe (the same), and the indefinite numerals, as mander (many a, many), vieler (much, many), weniger (little, few), and the participle folgender (the following), are followed by the modern declension of the adjective.

	SINGULAR.	
Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
N. ber gute Mann,	bie gute Frau,	bas gute Kind
G. bes guten Mannes,	ber guten Frau,	bes guten Rinbes,
D. bem guten Manne,	ber guten Frau,	bem guten Rinbe,
A. ben guten Mann.	die gute Frau.	bas gute Rind.

PLURAL.

- N. bie guten Manner, Frauen, Rinber,
- G. ber guten Männer, Frauen, Rinder,
- D. ben guten Mannern, Frauen, Rinbern,
- A. Die guten Manner, Frauen, Rinder.

NOTE. — The law which underlies this double declension of the Adjective and its single forms is suphonic,—the definite article, and the above pronouns and numerals having already the forms of the ancient declension of the adjective, and sounds like ber guter Mann, bas gutes Kinb, bie gute Manner, Grauen, Rinber, bes gutes Mannes, Rinbes, ber guter Manner, Grauen, Rinber, being intolerable to the German ear.

II. ANCIENT DECLENSION OF THE ADJECTIVE.

§ 170. Adjectives not preceded by an article take this decleasion:—

	SINGULAR.	
Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
N. guter Wein,	gute Luft,	gutes Brot,
G. gutes (en) Beines,	guter Luft,	gutes(en) Brotes,
D. gutem Beine,	guter Luft,	gutem Brote,
A. guten Wein.	gute Luft.	gutes Brot.

PLUBAL.

N. gute Beine, Lufte, Brote,

G. guter Weine, Lufte, Brote,

D. guten Beinen, Luften, Broten.

A. gute Beine, Lufte, Brote.

Note 1. - This form is not only in use with names of materials and nouns not preceded by an article or one of the pronouns, mentioned in § 169, but also when a Genitive precedes the noun; as in meines Brudere alteffer Cobn und tleines Madden, my brother's eldest son and little girl; Rarle neuer But und alte Rleiber.

And likewise after one of the indefinite neuter numerals etwas, some, pict, much, nichte, nothing, genug, enough, allerlei, of all kinds, einerlei, of one kind. bergleichen, such like, folch', such, lauter, mere, nothing but; and after the definite numerals swei, two, brei, three, vier, four, etc.; as, etwas after Bein, viel folechter Pfeffer, mand' armer Mann, fold' neues Bier; bier gute Rode, etc ... mit genug foonem Tuche, etc.

Note 2. - On account of euphony guten Beines, guten Brotes, is preferred to gutes Beines, gutes Brotes. Still, the latter form is in use with good writers.

Note 8. - The Nominative and Accusative of the neuter singular often drop their termination in poetry and common conversation; as, gut Bret, frifth BBaffer, fcon Better, fine weather. Bung, whole, and balb, half, omit this es always before names of countries and places without the definite article; as, gang England, balb Rom. But with the article: bas gange England, bas balbe Rom. And so does all', all, before a possessive or demonstrative pronoun; as, all' mein Sehnen, all my longing (see § 251).

III. MIXED ANCIENT AND MODERN DECLENSION.

§ 171. The indefinite article ein, eine, ein, and the possessive pronouns mein, my, bein, thy, sein, his, ihr, her, unser, our, euer, your, ihr, their, 3hr, your, and the numeral fein, no, in the Nominative singular of all three genders, and in the Accusative singular of the neuter gender, are followed by the adjective in the ancient declension; in all other cases, by the adjective in the modern declension.

SINGULAR.

Feminine. Neuter.

N. ein guter Mann, eine gute Frau, G. eines guten Mannes, einer guten Frau,

Masculine.

- D. einem guten Manne, einer guten Frau,
- A. einen guten Mann. eine gute Frau.

ein gutes Rind, eines guten Rinbes, einem auten Rinbe. ein gutes Rind.

PLUBAL.

- N. feine guten Manner, Frauen, Rinber,
- G. feiner guten Männer, Frauen, Rinder,
- D. feinen guten Männern, Frauen, Rinbern,
- A. feine guten Manner, Frauen, Rinder.

Note. — The reason underlying this mixed declension is, that the Nominative of ein, mein, bein, sein, unfer, euer, ihr, tein, has (except the feminine) no termination indicative of the gender and case and number, which must therefore be pointed out by the Adjective. And it is the same with the Accusative Neuter singular. In all other cases these pronouns and numerals have the ancient termination, and euphony requires that in the Adjective the modern declension should be substituted for the ancient one.

§ 172. Adjectives with the Auslaut e drop this e before the termination of the attributive form; as, mübe, ein müber, ber mübe; weise, ein weiser, ber weise; — and adjectives with the Auslaut el, en, er (as evel, noble, golven, theuer, dear) omit the e of the Auslaut in the inflection; as, ein evler Mensch, der golvne Becher, theurer Wein. Adjectives with the Auslaut el and er, however, may just as well omit the e of the termination instead of that of the Auslaut; as, eines sichern Hasens, of a secure harbor; dem bittern Geschmade, to the ditter taste; die edelu herren, the noble lords.

Note. — The law of euphony objects to such dactylic rhythms as ebete Menschen, although Schiller has einen goldenen Becher werf ich hinab. Still, another law of euphony, that in the Auslaut a liquid must not sollow a mute, presers such dactylic rhythms as sicheren (Raum waren die kesten im sicheren Hore, barger), and the hard pronunciation sicheren, bittern, eden, to the sorms sichen, bittern, eden, in which the liquid sollows the mute in the Auslaut. In bittern Sarme. (Uhland.) Er sich in seiner sichern Beste. (Schiller.)

§ 173. After einige, etliche, some, wenige, few, mehrere, several, andere, others, solche, such, viele, many, manche, many, welche, which, the adjective takes the ancient or the modern declension indifferently in the Nominative and Accusative plural, and even in the Genitive plural. The pupil, however, should not imitate this, but stick to the rule, the law of euphony being infringed by heaping terminations in e and er; as, einige andere

gute Leute, some other good people; mehrerer anderer waderer Männer, of several other brave men.

§ 174. After the personal pronouns ich, bu, Er, wir, ihr, Sie, the adjective takes the mixed declension; as, ich armer Mann, mir armen Mann, mich armen Mann, wir, und drmen Männer; bu alter Sünder, dir alten Sünder, dich, euch alten Sünder, Sündern; Er dummer Mensch, you fool; Sie junger Lasse, you young sop. After ihr, however, the practice varies, as will be seen by comparing the following passages: ihr blöden Thoren, you dull sools (Chamisso); ihr zarten Forellen, you tender trout (Schwab); ihr geliebte Tristen, ihr traulich stillen Thäler, sebet weist, ye cherished pastures, ye friendly, quiet valleys, farewell! (Schiller.) Perhaps the terminations in e may here be explained as Vocatives, those in en as Nominatives with an omitted article, die.

§ 175. Adjectives formed from proper names of places in er are not susceptible of declension; as, das Heidelberger Haß, des Heidelberger Haßes, etc.; ein Leidziger Student, eines Leidziger Studenten, etc.; die Londoner Börse, der Andoner Börse, etc.; and cannot de used in a predicative sense, except when used of persons; as, dieser Herr ist ein New-Yorker, oder ein Bostoner, this gentleman is a New Yorker or a Bostonian; in which case they form feminines, as Neu-Yorkerin, Bostonerin, a lady of New York or Boston, and in both genders are susceptible of declension.

The adjectives in isch, indicative of nationality, however, are declinable, and may be used both as attributive and predicative adjectives; as, bet englische Handel, die englische Krone, das englische Bolt, ein ameritanischer Hafen, eine ameritanische Zeitung, an American newspaper, ein ameritanisches Land, an American country, das ist gang beutsch, diese Sitte ist ameritanisch.

Nork. - Der Deutsche is the only adjective indicative of nationality in isch that is in use both as a substantive and as an adjective; as, ber Deutsche ift bein Englander; ein beutscher Graf.

- § 176. The following adjectives likewise are not in use as predicates:—
- 1. Derivatives in en and ern, as golben, filtern, at least not in prose. But hölgern in the signification of clumsy, and eifern, fleinern, in that of obdurate, occur as predicates.
- 2. The following derivatives in list, is the and ig: rauberist, rapacious, heuterist, hypocritical, physist, demist (but tritist and similar ones are so used); jartist, taglist (but menatist, toddentlist, and similar ones, are so used); ganglist (gang is used instead); natist, toddentlist, bitter is used instead); neutist, mandlist, bauptsatist (but similar ones, like strict, langlist, dissently to their adoption as predicates. Not so with adjectives formed from adverbs of time, place, etc. in ig, like bass, biss, south, sessing, sessing, lessed of which the adverb itself can be used as predicate. Only abrig, less, less, remaining (from aber, over), is indispensable as a predicate, on account of its signification.
- 8. The participles present with su (Gerundium, see § 311); as, das su übersetende Gedicht, 'the poetry to be translated,' but not das Gedicht ift su übersetend; instead of which we may say das Gedicht ift su überseten. For other participles, see § 177.

Norz. — The following adjectives, on the other hand, cannot be used as attributes, but only as predicates: —

bereit, ready, ready made brach, fallow feinb, hostile gar, ready (boiled or done) gang unb gabe, current getroft, confident getbatht, aware getbattig, expectant gram, averse irre, mistaken, wrong tund, known feid, sorry noth, needful (noththun) nü&(e), useful quer, oblique (queer) quitt, quit wohl, well (of health).

The same is true of the following derivatives and compounds: -

abhold, disinclined abformitig, alienated abtornitig, estranged anfiddig, getting sight of eingebent, mindful babbaft, possessed of handgemein, hand to hand theilhaft, partaking unpaf, unfoots, unwell bertuftig, forfeiting berteibet, disgusting.

Compounds are formed; instead, for attributive use; as, bereitvillig, Brachfeld, feindlich, gargetocht (gares leder occurs), geläufig or landläufig (instead of gang und gabe); getroft occurs attributively in getroften Muthes, cheerfully; bertändigt (for tund); nüglich (for nüg, but unnüg is preserred to unnüglich); querliegend. Sold occurs as a predicate, and gedent is as common as eingedent.

§ 177. All participles being verbal adjectives, they may assume the declension and use of adjectives; as, ber sterbende Fechter, the dying gladiator; die reizende Frau, the charming lady; das bebende Kind, the trembling child; ein rasender Mensch, a raging man; eine glänzende Sonne, a brilliant sun; ein sächelndes Mädchen, a smiling girl; das gepriesene Italien (Schiller); ein anstoßendes Zimmer, an adjoining room (Schiller); das versonne (versonne) Paradies (G.); der verwundete Krieger, the wounded warrior; ein geleerter Becher, an emptied cup.

Present participles can be used only in the attributive connection; and only such as have, from long usage, assumed entirely the nature and meaning of adjectives, may also be used as predicatives. The following are of the latter description:—

abstoffend, repulsive abwechfelnb, changing, varied abweichend, different abwefend, absent anwefend, present anhaltend, assiduous anmafend, arrogant ansprecend, angiebend, attractive anfiedend, contagious auffuhrend, irritable auffallend, striking auddauernd, persevering ausschweifend, extravagant bebeutend, important beleidigend, offensive bejaubernd, enchanting bringend, pressing, urgent brudent, oppressive burchdringend, piercing einnehmend, captivating emporend, revolting enticheibend, decisive entipredend, adapted entipurdigend, degrading entjudend, ravishing feffeind, interesting

flieffend, fluent gebührend, gegiemend, proper, becoming genügend, sufficient alangend, brilliant hinreifend, ravishing trantend, mortifying labend, refreshing lachend, smiling todend, enticing rafend, frantic reisend, charming (dredend, (in compounds) forestend, suspended, continuing fpannend, fascinating fforend, troubling abereinstimmend, harmonious aberführend, convicting abetjeugend, convincing überraschend, surprising abermaltigend, overpowering aberwiegend, preponderant umfaffend, comprehensive unterhaltend, entertaining unternehmend, enterprising unwiffend, ignorant perheerend, desolating

bermögend, wealthy bielfagend, expressive borherrichend, borwiegenb, predominant wuthend, furious.

Also some others, chiefly those compounded with un, as unbedeutend, with tonend, tlingend, lautend, as wohl- (ubel-) tonend, helltlingend, wohllautend, and with prepositions, as absorbed end, deterring.

The past participle of those intransitive verbs which require the auxiliary verb haben can be used neither in the predicative nor in the attributive connection; such phrases as gestandener Bein, gefeffenes bemb, being un-German. Still, gelegen has in reality become an adjective, with the meaning opportune. And the following adjectives, originally participles of neuter and of transitive verbs, must be committed to memory; as, ein verbienter Mann, a deserving man; ein verschwiegener, erfahrener, unüberlegter (unbebachter), verbroffener, unbeholfener Mensch, a discreet, experienced, inconsiderate, listless, helpless man; ein gelehrtes Buch, a learned book : ein Betrunfener. a drunken man; ein geziertes Weib, an affected woman; ein entschlossener Menich, a resolute man; ein verirrtes Schaf, a straved sheep; (from the reflexive verbs, sich betrinken, sich gieren, sich entschließen, sich verirren;) ein ausgebienter Golbat, a soldier who has served out his time.

§ 178. Both adjectives and participles can be used as substantives, always retaining, however, the declension of adjectives. The masculine and feminine are used in both numbers (supplying in thought ber Mann, bie Frau) to denote male and female persons; the neuter in the singular, to denote abstract notions in a general way.

The German carries this practice to a far greater extent than the English. Examples: der Beutsche, the German, eine Deutsche, a German woman, die Deutschen, the Germans; die Großen, nobles, distinguished persons; ein Sterblicher, a mortal man; die steven Beisen Briechensand, the seven wise men of Greece; ein Reisender, a traveller; die Umstehenden, the bystanders; der Redende, the speaker; ein Geiehrter, der Gelehrte, the (a) learned man; ein Bedienter, der Bediente, the (a) servant; der Beamte, ein Beamter, the (am) official; der Gesandte, ein Gesandte, ein Gesandte, ein Gremder, the (a) stranger; der Eiende, ein Elender, the (a) wretch; der Gefangene, ein Gesangener, the (a) prisoner; der Beistliche, ein Geistlicher, the (a) minister, clergy-

man: ber Beliebte, ein Beliebter, lover; ber Blubige, ein Blubiger, believer, ber Unglaubige, ein Unglaubiger, infidel (but ber Blaubiger, creditor, is a substantive); ber Beilige, ein Beiliger, saint; ber Meineidige, ein Meineidiger, a perjurer; ber Mitjouldige, ein Mitfouldiger, accomplice; der Dberfte, ein Dberfter, colonel; ber Sterntundige, ein Sterntundiger, astronomer; ber Berbungte, Bermief, ne. ein Berwiesener, exile; ber Berfcworene, ein Berfchworener, conspirator; ber Bertrandte, ein Berwandter, the (a) relation; ber Befannte, ein Befannter, the (an) acquaintance. Some of these form the feminine, like eine Betannte, eine Bertvandte, eine Belehrte, regularly; one by adding in, as, die, eine Befandtin; a few have a separate feminine substantive; as, Bedienter, Raid, female servant. Das Bute, das Schone, das Bahre, the good, the beautiful, the true. Sanget bem Buten an, cleave to that which is good. (B.) Groffes habt ihr in furger Beit geleiftet (Sch.), you have done great things in a short time. Ber tunn bas Moglice berechnen (G.), who can calculate possibilities? Das Roth(e), Gran(e), Schwarz(e), Beiff(e), etc., the red, green, black, white color; das Raffe (Raf) und bas Trodene, moist and dry lands or things. Almost every adjective may thus be substantively used.

§ 179. When two or more adjectives are attributively joined to a substantive, all of them are declined in the same way; as, ber gute, arme, alte Mann; ein hübsches, neues Buch; eine junge, nette, reizende Frau; alter, starker, edler Wein.

Likewise two pronouns preceding a substantive do not affect each other; as, das Haus dieses meines Baters, the house of this my father; mit allem unserem Trachten erreichen wir's nicht, we do not gain our point with all our striving.

Norm.—The law of euphony does not consider this an infringement of §§ 170 and 171, because, in pronouncing several adjectives (or pronouns) after each other, little pauses are observed between each pair of them, while articles and pronouns are connected with the adjectives following them without such a short interval of time.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 180. When a quality is ascribed to a person or thing without any regard to other objects, the adjective stands in its fundamental form, called the *positive* degree; as, ber Mann ist reich, the man is rich; herr N. ist ein reicher Mann, Mr. N. is a rich man.

When a quality is ascribed to a person or thing in a comparative relation to other persons or things which have the same en . 1 . 4

quality, the latter may be proper to both in an equal degree, or in an unequal one. In the former case an improper Comparative is used, which is formed, as in English, by adding certain particles to the Positive; as, herr N. if so reid, als (ganz so reid) als, gerade so reid, als) herr M., Mr. N. is as rich as (just as rich as) Mr. M. The same kind of comparative obtains, when two or more qualities of the same person or thing are ascribed to it in the same degree; as, er ist so edd als flug, he is as noble as prudent;—or when they are asserted only in different degrees; as, er ist nicht so alt als ich, he is not as old as I am;—or when two qualities are predicated of two persons or things, one of each, but both in the same degree, or only in different degrees; as, er ist so weise, als du thorisch bist, he is just as sage as you are foolish; or, Alcibiades war nicht so thoright, als Sotrates weise war.

§ 181. When the quality spoken of is ascribed in a higher degree to one person or thing than to another, the *Comparative proper* is used, which is formed, as in English, by adding er to the Positive in its predicative form; as, er ift meifer als bu, he is wiser than thou.

But when two qualities of the same person or thing are compared with each other, and one of them ascribed to it in a higher degree, the compound Comparative is used; as, er ift mehr glüdlich als weise, he is more lucky than wise.

- § 182. The Comparative proper is never formed by placing mehr, more, before the Positive, as in English, where adjectives not of Anglo-Saxon origin are thus transformed into the comparative.
- § 183. The Umlaut (a into ä, o into ö, u into ü, au into üu) takes place in all comparatives proper, except those adjectives formed by means of prefixes and suffixes,—as gewandt, skilled, erhaben, elevated, munter, brisk, bunfel, dark, gelben, golden, ruhig, quiet, traurig, dreary, sad,—and the participles adjectively used, as lacend,—and the following:—

THEORETICAL PART.

barfd, harsh fnapp, tight blau, blue lahm, lame brav, brave laf, tired bunt, variegatea lant, loud bumpf, dull, muffled lefe, loose fate, insipid, stale mager, lean, meagre falb, fallow matt, wearled fabl, fallow morfd, rotten, frail fulfd, false nactt. naked flad, flat platt, flat flau, insipid, dull, flat plump, clumsy froh, glad raft, quick, rash glatt, smooth raub, rough, raw rob, rough new hunt gran, gray hohl, hollow rund, round beid, favorable fuct, slow tabl, bald fanft, soft, gentle targ, stingy

fart, satiated foal, insipid foliaff, slack, languid foliant, lank, slender folau, smart, sly (oroff, rugged, rough ftarr, stiff ftels, proud firaff, tight, stretched framm, tight, stretched flumpf, blunt flumm. mute tell, mad taub, deaf boll, full wahr, true 14hm, tame.

The practice varies with bang, afraid, blaß, pale, gerade, straight, fromm, pious, gentle, gefund, sound, healthy, flar, clear, naß, wet, jart, tender.

NOTE. — The English language presents an analogy to this Umlaut in old, elder, eldest.

§ 184. The comparative when used as a predicate remains without inflection, like the predicative positive. But when used attributively, it assumes the declension of the adjective. For instance: Herr B. ift weiser als ihr, Mr. B. is wiser than you; but herr B. ift ein weiserer Mann, als ihr, Mr. B. is a wiser man than you; or herr B. ift ber weisere (weiseste Mann von euch beiten, Mr. B. is the wiser man of you two.

NOTE. — The last example shows that the German can also use the Superlative when only two persons or things are compared.

What we said of the Positive holds good of the Comparative also (§ 170, Note 3), that the termination es of the Nominative and Accusative singular of the neuter is omitted sometimes in poetry as well as in common conversation; as, kein schöner (höneres) Bis sab ich in meinem Leben (C.), no finer picture ever saw I in my life;—and that in poetry in the Genitive singular of the musculine and neuter the termination en is employed instead of es; as, bessere Beines, schärferen Salzes (§ 170, Note 2.)

- NOTE 1. Adjectives with the Austant el, er, en, always omit the e of the Austant when elevated to the comparative degree; as, ber eblere, ein eblerer, Predicate ebler; ber muntrere, ein muntrerer, Predicate muntrer; ein golbnerer, ber golbnere, Predicate golbner. But see Note 2. Adjectives in e, as weife, måbe, drop the final e before the termination; as, weif-er.
- Norm 2. Such forms of the attributive comparative as ein gröferer Rann, besserrer Wein, being of dissilut pronunciation both on account of the two syllables er sollowing each other, and of the dactylic rhythm, should be avoided; they become intolerable, and the language does not like them, when the adjective has one of the sussilves er, el, en; as, ein edierer Rensch, ein muntererer Bogel, goldnerer Wein; and still less after the sussilves ig, icht, sich, sich, bast, san; such rhythms as ein siessigerer Schäler, ein thörichterer Rensch, gischstichere Butunft, træchticherer Renschen, etchenhafteres Benehmen, such rhythms as ein siessigerer Schäler, ein thörichterer Rensch, gischsichere Butunft, træchticherer Renschen, etchenhafterer Benehmen, such rhythmy. They may easily be avoided by turning the attributive into a predicative adjective; as, ein Rensch, welcher noch edler ist; ein Weich, noch goldner; ein Benehmen, biel ehrenhafter, etc.
- NOTE 8. The particle than after the comparative is expressed by als or benn; but the latter is rather antiquated, and used only when there is already another als within the sentence; for instance, et wird mehr Gifat baten als express, be nn als Schriftsteller, he will have more luck as a teacher than as a writer.
- NOTE 4. The particle the the before correlative comparatives is translated by je besto (or um so); more rarely by je je; as, je alter ber Wein, besto bester ift er; je alter ber Rensch, um so weiser; aber je alter du wirst, je dammer wirst du.
- § 185. The Superlative form of an adjective is used when a quality is ascribed to a person or thing in the highest degree either that is possible (Absolute Superlative), or among all other beings of the same class or those mentioned (Relative Superlative). He is utterly wretched, er ist höchst elent, is an example of the absolute; he is the most wretched of all men, or of them, er ist ber elenteste aller Menschen, or unter ihnen, of the relative Superlative.
- § 186. The Absolute Superlative is formed by adding to the Positive degree one of the following adverbs, which are arranged according to their force of meaning, beginning with the less and ending with the most expressive: radt, much, right; febr, very; gar febr and radt febr, very much, very indeed;

ganz, ganz und gar, quite, entirely; ganzlich, vollfommen, entirely, wholly, perfectly; vorzüglich, hauptfächlich, particularly, eminently, principally, chiefly; ungemein, uncommonly; äußerst, außerordentlich, ungeheuer, überaus, extremely, extraordinarily, enormously, egregiously, exceedingly.

NOTE 1. The English 'so very great,' and similar expressions, are to be rendered in German [0 groß, seldom [0 febr groß. I was so very unhappy, ich war [0 ungildflich.

NOTE 2. The following compound adjectives, whose number may be considerably increased by happy combinations, are of an absolute superlative meaning without addition of any of the above adverbs.

bettelarm, as poor as a beggar
bleiscott, heavy as lead
bliscott, heavy as lead
bliscott, heavy as lead
bliscott, quick as lightning
bliscott, quick as lightning
bluttoth, red as blood
eistalt, cold as ice
feberleicht, light as a feather
fasernact, entirely naked, without
a rag of clothing
felsenfest, firm as a rock
feuerroth, red as fire
benigsof, sweet as honey
tobsicottary, black as coal

fugeirund, round as a ball

nabelidarf, sharp as a needle nagelneu, brand-new riefengroff, big as a giant riefenflart, strong as a giant ioneeweiß, white as snow friegelglatt, smooth as a mirror Reinalt, very old ficinbart, hard as a stone fleinteid, enormously rich uralt, very old urplöflich, very sudden utiblect, very bad tounderschön, wonderfully beautiful wunderlieblich, very lovely juderfüf, sweet as sugar, etc.

§ 187. The Relative Superlative is formed, as in English, by adding to the root of the positive st or est, the latter if the Auslaut is b, t, e, s, sd, a, s (a sibilant), and giving the root the Umlaut (§ 183) in all cases where the comparative has it. It is declined like all adjectives when it is used attributively. For instance, die reichsten Leute sind nicht immer die glüdlichsten, the richest people are not always the happiest; der kürzeste Lag; die breitesten Straßen; liebster Freund!

Note. — The relative superlative may be strengthened by prefixing the Genitive affer, of all; as, ber afferreichte Mann, the richest man of all; bas affer hobbite Mådden, the finest girl of all. Und man botte bet hof die afferhobenen Gefange (G.), the most beautiful songs were heard at court. The adjective affertiebt, charming, has entirely lost this meaning of comparison.

§ 188. Only the following comparatives and superlatives are irregular in their formation: -

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
groß, great, grand, tall,	größer,	der größte or größefte,
∽big,		
gut, good,	beffer,*	ber befte,
hoch, high,	höher,	der höchste,
nah, nigh, near, neigh-	näher,	ber nachfte,
boring,		
viel, much, many,	mehre or mehrere, †	ber meiste,
wenig, little, few,	weniger,	ber wenigste,
menty, mine, lew,	minber,	ber minbeste.

NOTE 1. The superlative bet erfit, the first, is formed from th, early, before, (comparative efer, rather, before,) and the superlative per teste, the last, latest, (from the old lat, late, now out of use). From these two superlatives there are again formed new comparatives, ber erftere, ber lettere, the former, the latter.

NOTE 2. The following adjectives, derived from adverbe of place, have the form of comparatives but the meaning of positives, and make the following superlatives: --

der aufere (from aufen, outside), outer, exterior, ber auferfte, the extreme, utmost, ber innere (from innen, inside), inner, interior, ber innerfte, intime, inmost, der hintere (from hinten, behind), hinder, der bordere (from born, fore), fore, ber obere (from oben, up), upper, der untere (from unten, down), under, ber mittlere (from mitten, amidst), middle,

ber hinterfte, the hindmost, ber porberfte, the foremost, ber oberfie, the uppermost, ber unterfie, the undermost, ber mittelfte, the middlemost.

NOTE 8. The adjectives with the Auslaut el, er, en, form the superlative regularly, as der edeifte, der unterfte, der goldenfte.

§ 189. The Relative Superlative is never formed by adding an adverb, as in English, where most adjectives not of Anglo-Saxon origin form it by placing the most before the positive. The most unfortunate, the most successful, the most deserving, is, therefore, always translated by unglüdlichfte, ber erfolgreichfte, ber verdienstvollste. See, however, § 191, Note 1.

^{*} From an ancient positive, baf, good, which is still in use as an adverb in comic poetry.

[†] mebrere means several

§ 190. There are some adjectives which do not admit of the formation of the comparative proper and the relative superlative, because they express qualities that cannot be conceived of as increased or diminished; as, toot, dead, lebendig, alive, ftumm, dumb, taub, deaf, blind, blind, leer, empty, recht, right, abelig, of noble birth, einzig, only, sole; also some derived from adverbs of time and place, as heutig, of to-day, morgend, of to-morrow, basig, bortig, hiesig, abermalig, bamalig, vorig, nachherig; and all expressive of materials, as steinern, hölzern, golden.

When, however, such adjectives assume a figurative signification, they also admit of the degrees of comparison, commonly implying a comical meaning; as, her leerste Kopf, the emptiest head; sein Betragen war hölzerner als je, his behavior was more awkward than ever; tobter als tobt; stummer als ein Hist; tauber als ein Stein; blinder als ein hesse; das einzigste Mal, the only one time. Only recht never admits of a comparative proper and relative superlative.

§ 191. Only such participles, present and past, admit of the formation of a comparative proper and relative superlative as have entirely assumed the nature of adjectives. For the participles present, see the list in § 177*; of the past participles the following list is as complete as possible:—

(abgeneigt), disinclined
abgenuit, worn out
abgefagt, renounced
ausgefaffen, extravagant
angefehen, distinguished
angegriffen, affected, weakened
angemeffen, fit, apt
aufgeblafen, haughty, vainglorious
aufgeregt, excited

ausertoren, auseriesen, auserwählt, ausgebreitet, ausgebehnt, ausgeseichnet, excellent ausgeseichnet, enlightened ausgeräumt, aufgetoedt, brisk, lively, gay

^{*} Of the whole list there given, only anterfend and abtrefend can undergo, on account of their meaning, no comparison. But all of them are adverse to a comparative in attributive use, like sin reigenders Bit (see § 184, Note 2). On the other hand, the relative superlative of these participles may be used both attributively and predicatively; as, bus reigendite Bith, diefes Bith if bus reigendite.

ರ್ಷಕ್ರೇ ಇದ್ದಾರಿಕ

المراتات من مستويدا t toriginal topics to Sameran . Trans 41, Coppe , Wan -- T 91.75. 39. 39. 49. W. there operations 'sr are . 2701 titues . Killen ter in act, or present terf search way in fall their fear , verse; in books 21'1-1, 0 Yr. 151 times , cher. o. est fhemmelt . we . tur fberfdige . feireine berahme, on obrahed (betett, e.w. uent befennen, pruderit befoden, tipny befergt, appreliensive, careful beid fen, qual Sed, of a kind beld iftige, occupied, busy befinmet, definite, certain belucht, visited, frequented beschräntt, limited betrunten, inebriated bevöltert, peopled (bemanbert), versed betwehnt, inhabited bewundert, admired bemåbrt, tried burdbacht, well pondered burderieben, cunning entartet, degenerated entfernt, distant (entlegen), remote enticieben, decided entichleffen, resolute entvoltert, depopulated entwidelt, developed entifict, ravished erbittert, erboft, angry erfahren, experienced ergeben, devoted

etiania eletaria salumo etunione, et unitabli errere, trai free are become, recognissive, advanced ar No en rucci genitter, tell fenered etring, et viet et'unes in m gebeiden i genuine ercert, benered artist, graffer, collected, composed gengen, fremund grieter, jermed geticht, beloved, charished eriangen, well delte ermificate to of thick ermtitt, mitelus erneur, mell el geratten, a ivisable grist, grave (aeiduft), ekiiful (arittet), moral, decent gefrannt, intense actuat, sought for geabt, practised gewunden, winding geneernt, accustomed gemogen, favorable åbereilt, rash åberladen, overfraught (überlegen), superior übertrieben, excessive aberlegt, well reflected on unbefangen, free, unbiased unbeflect, unblemished (unbefugt), illicit unbeholfen, clumsy unbefannt, unknown (unbefcolten), untarnished unbeschräntt, unlimited uneingefchrantt, unerhört, untold, unheard of unerfdroden, intrepid uncrivartet, unexpected unerwiesen, not proven ungezogen, ill-bred

ungebunden, frank, unfettered unacarůndet, unfounded ungehalten, angry ungehindert, free, frank ungereimt, absurd ungeftaltet, misshapen, (ungefdladt). formed ungefdliffen, ill-mannered ungeffert, undisturbed ungestvungen, unconstrained unuberlegt, inconsiderate unummunden, unceremonious unperdorben, uncorrupted unperbroffen, indefatigable unverhofft, unlooked for unperfolime, impudent unberfdulbet, undeserved unpersage, unterrified unterbrückt, oppressed perandert, changed peractet, despised berborgen, hidden berbreitet, spread, extensive berborben, corrupted berbient, merited berfehlt, abnormal, blundering bergnügt, amused perhartet, obdurate verbaft, hateful perfebrt, wrong

berlegen, embarrassed berlogen, lying berliebt, enamored berlicht, worn out bermeffen, rash, foolhardv berrufen, decried (berrucht, profligate) berrictt, crazy berichioffen, reserved peridrien, defamed peridroben, perverse berichwiegen, silent berfoffen, ever drunk berfiedt, concealed perstimmt, out of humor berftodt, obdurate pertraut, intimate permahrioff, neglected bermandt, related berwerfen, vicious pertubbnt, pampered bertagt, timid vertvorren, intricate bergartelt, effeminate berjogen, spoiled (of a child) beriadt, enraptured betameifelt, desperate (bolltommen), perfect gerftreut, absent-minded.

The above participles included in parentheses, as begitter, betefen, etc., are participles only in form, no verb existing from which they could be derived, and must be considered as adjectives proper formed after the analogy of participles.

Here belong also the adjectives geffetert, gefpornt, geficefelt, feathered, booted, spurred, and generat, with teeth, gerandert, edged, generateit, divided into quarters, and similar ones.

NOTE 1. Such other participles past as do not admit of a comparative and superlative formed by inflection, may nevertheless form the same, as in English, by placing metr and meift or am meiften (böth, beft, am böthen, am beften) before the positive; as, it in meth (flutter, larger) beleidigt als its; it in am meiften (flutten) beleidigt ben euch allen, I have been more insulted than you, I am the most insulted man of all of you. Nay, all participles, past and present, may form the comparative and superlative in this way, those given in the above list and in \$\frac{1}{2}\$ 177 included; and this form of the comparative and super-

behaut, cultivated befreundet, friendly berubt, gifted bratudt, blessed bearenst, limited (begütert), wealthy (behaftet), afflicted with (beherit), courageous (bejahrt), aged (betannt), known bettemmen, oppressed beinmert, sorrowful (belefen), versed in books belebt, enlivened (beliebt), cherished (bemittelt), wealthy (berüchtigt), famous berühmt, celebrated (beredt), eloquent befonnen, prudent befoffen, tipsy beforgt, apprehensive, careful befduffen, qualified, of a kind beschäftigt, occupied, busy bestimmt, definite, certain befucht, visited, frequented beschräntt, limited betrunten, inebriated bevöltert, peopled (betoandert), versed bewohnt, inhabited bemunbert, admired bewährt, tried burchdacht, well pondered burdtrieben, cunning entartet, degenerated entfernt, distant (entlegen), remote entichieben, decided entfcloffen, resolute entvöltert, depopulated entwidelt, developed entilidt, ravished erbittert, erboft, angry erfahren, experienced ergeben, devoted

ergriffen, touched erhaben, elevated, sublime erleuchtet, enlightened errrobt, tried fortgefdritten, progressive, advanced gebilbet, educated gebunden, tied, fettered arbranut, crowded gediegen (from gebeiben), genuine geebrt, honored gefaft, gelaffen, collected, composed gelegen, opportune gelehrt, learned geliebt, beloved, cherished gelungen, well done gemåfigt, moderate gemifcht, mixed up genetat, inclined gerathen, advisable gefeßt, grave (gefdidt), skilful (gefittet), moral, decent gefrannt, intense gefuct, sought for genbt, practised gewunden, winding gerpohnt, accustomed gemogen, favorable abereilt, rach åberladen, overfraught (aberlegen), superior übertrieben, excessive aberleat, well reflected on unbefangen, free, unbiased unbeflect, unblemished (unbefugt), illicit unbeholfen, clumsy unbefannt, unknown (unbefdeleen), untarnished uneingeschränte, unlimited unerhört, untold, unheard of unerfdroden, intrepid unertourtet, unexpected unerwiesen, not proven ungezogen, ill-bred

stood; as, he is the better man of the two, er ift ber Bessere (Beste) von Beiben; he is the best man of all, er ist ber beste Mann von allen; Napoleon was the greatest of all generals, Napoleon war ber größte von allen Felbherren, or ber größte aller Felbherren. This complement is, as the above examples show, always expressed by the Genitive, or the preposition von with the Dative, after the superlative; and almost exclusively in the latter way after a comparative.

§ 194. The superlative when predicatively used assumes another form than when attributively used, as follows: am schönsten, am besten, am weisesten, this being the preposition an with the Dative of the Superlative; as, die Rathsperren sind am klügsten, wenn sie vom Rathhause kommen (Proverb), the Councilmen are wisest when coming from the Council-house; so wird es am besten sein, this will be the best way; des Morgens und Abends sind die Schatten am längsten, des Mittags am fürzesten, the shadows are longest in the morning and evening, shortest at midday.

Still, the attributive form may just as well take the place of the predicative; as, ber gerade Weg ist immer der beste (Proverb), the straight way is always the best; die neuen Häuser sind nicht immer die gesündesten, new houses are not always the healthiest. The same is often the case in the comparative; welcher von den beiden Brüdern ist der jüngere (der jüngste)? which of the two brothers is the younger (one)? being just as good as welcher von den beiden Brüdern ist jünger? Still, this latter use of the attributive superlative is less German, except in sentences like the following: ich werde für den ältesten unter und Brüdern gehalten, I am held to be the oldest of us brothers; man sieht diese Kirche für die schönste in der Stadt an, they consider this church the sinest in the city.

NOTE. — The adjective always precedes the substantive with which it is grammatically connected. But in poetry, when there are two or more adjectives to one substantive, they may follow the latter in the predicative form; as, sin Schwert, source in Schwert, source pointed and

sharp hung over the head of Damocles; ein Eveltnecht fanft und ted (Sch.), a page gentle and brisk; ein Jaus will ich die bauen, größer und schöner als das verbrannte, a house I'll build for you, larger and finer than the one burnt. But the superlative is, in this case, always used in the attributive form; as, Månner, die startfen und besten, verjagten, men, the strongest and best, heaitated. (See § 290, Note 1.)

- § 195. What the adjective is to the substantive, a complement of speech, individualizing the general notion of the same, the adverb is to the general notion of the verb; it singles out the individual or particular species of the action or predicate; as, dieser Garten ist some angelegt, this garden is beautifully arranged; bit Bögel singen I it b I it, the birds are singing charmingly.
- § 196. Almost every adjective may be converted into an adverb;—in English, by affixing, in most cases, ly to the stem; as, rich, richly; fine, finely; nice, nicely;—in German, by using simply the predicative form of the adjective, as the above examples show. And this holds good of the comparative and superlative, as well as of the positive; as, Boston ist unregelemäßiger gebaut als alle Städte Amerikas; der Spottvogel singt am schönsten unter allen Bögeln. For particulars, see § 261.

CHAPTER VL

PRONOUNS.

§ 197. Pronouns are short words used in the place of nouns, for the sake of brevity and euphony, and expressing at the same time the relation in which the person or thing spoken of stands to the speaker. They may be divided into Substantive and Adjective Pronouns, the former having the independent nature of substantives, while the latter must be joined with a substantive. To the former class belong id, bu, cr, wir, etc., wer, was, Nicmand, Jebermann, etc.; to the latter, mein, bein, welcher, etc.

THEORETICAL PART.

- § 198. According to their meaning they may be divided into six classes, viz:—
- 1. Personal Pronouns. ich, I, bu, thou, cr, he, sie, she, wir, we, ihr, you, sie, they, and their cases.
- 2. Possessive Pronouns. mein, my, bein, thy, sein, his, ihr, her, unser, our, euer, your, ihr, their, and their cases.
- 3. Demonstrative Pronouns. ber, that; berjenige, he (who), that (which); berselbe, the same; dieser, this; jener, that; soloter, such.
- 4. Interrogative Pronouns. wer? who? was? what? welscher? which? was für ein? what kind of?
- 5. Relative Pronouns. wer, who; was, what; ber, which; welcher, which.
- 6. Indefinite Pronouns.—man, one; Jemand, somebody; Niemand, nobody; etwas, something; nichts, nothing; Jedermann, everybody, etc.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

§ 199. The personal pronouns point out three different grammatical persons;—a) the person speaking: I, ich (plural we, wir, when the speaker is among the persons spoken of);—b) the person spoken to: thou, bu (plural you, ihr, when the person spoken to is among the persons spoken of);—c) the person spoken of: he, er (feminine she, fit; neuter it, es; plural for all three genders they, fit).

They are declined as follows:—

Singular.

FIRST PERSON.

Nominative. ich, I bu, thou

Genitive. meiner (mein), of me beiner (bein), of thee

Dative. mit, to me bir, to thee

Accusative. mich, me. bich, thee.

THIRD PERSON.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Newter.
N.	er, he	sie, she	cs, it
G.	feiner (fein), of him	ihrer, of her	feiner (fein), of it
D.	ihm, to him	ihr, to her	ihm, to it
A.	ihn, him.	fit, her.	es, it.

Plural.

First Person.	Second Person.	THIRD PERSON.
N. wir, we	ihr, you	fir, they
G. unser, of us	eurer (euer), of you	ibrer, of them
D. uns, to us	euch, to you	ihnen, to them
A. une, us.	euch, you.	sie, them.

NOTE 1. The Genitive mein, bein, sein, seuer is the ancient form, and therefore the more poetical, occurring also in a sew sayings; as, vergis mein nicht, forget me not; ich gedente dein, I think of thee; man spottet sein, people sneer at kim. The corresponding Genitive ith, for theer, is no longer in use. Unser is now generally substituted for unserer, on account of the dactyl in the latter.

NOTE 2. The neuter es is for the sake of euphony often joined by contraction to the preceding word, or, at the commencement of sentences, to the following one; as, toas giebt's? what is the matter? ift's and toah? is it true, indeed? 's ift su following,'t is too bad; 's toumt Regen (Sch.), rain is coming.

§ 200. Since every substantive has, in German, a distinct gender, the English use of referring the neuter pronoun of the third person, it, to preceding substantives not names of persons, cannot be imitated. The sentences: 'The sun does not revolve round it'; 'I have lost the key, where is it?' 'Cowardice is to be despised, it must be considered as a vice,' — must be translated: die Sonne breht sich nicht um die Erde, sie steht sich, und die Erde dreht sich um sie Erde, sie steller, wo ist er? Feigheit ist zu verachten, sie ist als ein Luster zu betrachten.

Note. — But when pronouns refer to diminutive names of persons, the natural gender is preserred; as in Bas macht ihr Thetenen (Sohncen)? ich hoffe, sie (er) ift besser, How is your little daughter (son)? I hope she (he) is better. Raricen would not obey, but he land

to submit. And so with das Weib, das Kind, das Frauenzimmer, die Mannsperfon, die Weibsperson.

§ 201. The Genitive and Dative of \$3 (kin and ihm) are liable to be mistaken for those of er, being of the same form. They are therefore used only when referring to a neuter substantive, not when referring to a neuter pronoun, or a sentence or fact, and in the latter case beffen and be:a (Genitive and Dative of the neuter demonstrative pronoun) are employed; as. bas Webeimniß ift verrathen worden, ich erinnere mich fein nicht mibr, ich habe ihm fold' ein Schidfal vorhergefagt, the secret has been betrayed, I think no more of it, I always prophesied for it such a fate; Dies ift bein Rind, vergift bu feiner gang? giebft bu iom frine Erzichung? this is your child, do you forget it entirely? don't you give it any education? Bas er mir fculbgiebt - ich bin mir beffen nicht bewußt, what he charges me with, I am not conscious of; Das ift mabr, ich bin beffen gewiß, that is true, I am sure of it. Still, both kinds of expression are avoided by good writers, and still more in common conversation, as may be easily done, most verbs and adjectives governing a Genitive being capable of taking the Accusative or a preposition instead; as, ich vergeffe es, ich erinnere mich baran.

§ 202. The neuter pronoun of the third person cannot be joined to a preposition. In its stead the adverbs hie, ba (before vowels hier, bar) are combined with the preposition, forming adverbs; as, hierin, in it, in this, barin, in it, in that; hieran, on it (at it), on that (at that); hiemit (hiermit), with it, with this; bamit, with it, with that; hierburch (hieburch), through it, through this; baburch, through it, through that; hiervon (hieven), bavon, hiernach (hienach), banach (barnach), hieraus, baraus, hierzu (hiezu), bazu, hierbei (hiebei), babei, etc., of, after, out of, to, at, by it (this, that). Examples: Sie irren hierin (dari.i), you are mistaken in it (in this, that); er war zufrieden bamit, he was satisfied with it (that); er fragte mich barum, he asked me about it, questioned me about it; Sie lönnen fid) barauf verlaffen, you may depend on it. Such adverbs may be

referred both to following and to preceding names of things, but not of persons; as, er spricht von Musit, versicht aber nichts davon, he talks of music, but understands nothing of it.

§ 203. Es answers to the English so, when the pronoun is the object or predicate, in such phrases as, I hope so, ich hoffe es; I believe so, ich glaube es; Jest seit ihr frei, ihr seit's durch dies Gesch, now are you free, you are so through this law (Sch.); dann waren wir Staven und verdienten es zu sein (Sch.), then should we be slaves, and deserve to be so. We die Geschr eine gewöhnliche Erscheinung ist, da ist es auch der Muth (Jacobs), where danger is of frequent occurrence, courage is so also.

Es cannot be the subject when one of the personal or demonstrative pronouns is the predicate. Who is it? it is I, it is thou, it is he, it is we, you, they, it is this, it was that, must, therefore, be translated: wer ist es? id, bin's, bu bist's, er ist's, wir sinb's, ihr seib's, sie sinb's, bieser (bieses) ist's, jener (jenes) war's.

But it can be the subject even when a male or semale person is the predicate, provided it is no pronoun; as, wer ist das? es ist ein fremder Herr, eine junge Frau. And in sentences like these are peaches, those were sisters, we must not translate diese sind Psirschen, jene waren Schwestern, but dies or es sind Psirschen, das (es) waren Schwestern. Es sind die Urner die am längsten säumen (Sch.), it is the men of Uri that delay longest. Die Richter sind es nur, die ich verwerse, it is only the judges that I reject.

- § 204. The regular form of addressing persons is: —
- 1. Members of the same family, school-fellows, lovers, and intimate friends address each other with bu, and when addressing more than one, ipt. Teachers address their pupils as long as they are not full grown, masters their apprentices, employers their servants, and adults all young persons, in this familiar way.
- 2. All others address each other with Sie (third person plural), and so, too, pupils address their teachers, apprentices their masters, servants their employers, and the young their elders, except near relatives.

8. In all stories and representations of antiquity, when all persons addressed each other with bu, plural thr, this kind of address is preserved. God is addressed with bu, and God and all mythological persons address mortals in this way.

NOTE 1. In the Imperative, Sie must always follow the verb; as, geben Sie mit, give me; fagen Sie ihm, tell him.

Note 2. In ancient times the German addressed everybody with bu. From the Romanic languages the custom was adopted, in the thirteenth century, of addressing men and women of rank in the second person plural, 3tr, Euch, Euch (Gwer in the contemporary orthography). From the Spaniards was adopted, after the sixteenth century, the address in the third person singular, Er and Sit, until even this usage had lost its respectability by being extended to people of an inferior rank, and the third person plural was resorted to, at the middle of the last century. Er, Sit, (third person singular,) and 3tr (second person plural) are still in some portions of Germany the address of superiors to inferiors, and as such are found in the classical writers.

NOTE 3. A lingering trace of this pedantic fashion is to be found in Ctv. Rajefilt, Ctv. Dobeit, Ctv. Durchlaucht, (pronounced Cuer,) and Into Majefilt, Into Dobeit, Into Durchlaucht, as kings and queens, dukes and duchesses, princes and princesses are addressed.

. NOTE 4. The pronoun id, I, is never written with a capital, but Sic, you, and the possessive pronoun corresponding, 3ir, your, are always so written.

NOTE 5. Governing princes always speak of themselves in the plural; as, 2Bir haben grubt, we have resolved. Likewise authors in their writings, as in English; as, wir bitten die leser dieses unseres Bertes um Rachsicht, we beg indulgence of the readers of this our work.

Reflexive Pronouns.

§ 205. The reflexive form of the personal pronoun is in the first and second persons singular mir, mich, bir, bich, plural une, euch; but for the third person in all genders the form fich, him, her, them, himself, herself, themselves in English, (see the complete conjugation of a reflexive verb in § 114,) both for the Accusative and Dative; as, ich majche mich, I wash myself; er mäjcht fich, he washed himself.

Note 1. The English reflexive pronouns myself, thyself, himself, etc., cease to be reflexive when they emphasize only the pronoun; as, I do this myself; there he is himself, you hear it yourself; the defendant appeared himself, not by proxy. The German translation of these sentences is: ich thue dies felb k (or felber, this being an indeclinable adverb); du iff er felber (Sch.); ibself es felb k gebört (G.); der Betlagte erfchen felbk, nicht duch einen Bevollmächtigten. Only when the emphasis and the reflexive use are combined, may

myself, thyself, himself, herself, ourselves, yourselves, themselces be translated by mich felbft, bich felbft, fich felbft; as, er toter fich felbft, nicht Andere, he kills himself, not others; er totet fich felbft, nicht ein Anderer totet ibn, he kills himself, no one else does.

Note 2. The reflexive pronouns of the plural number are used also to express a reciprocal action between two or more subjects; as, his Anden subjects; as, bis Anden subjects significantly the boys are beating each other, are fighting with one another; wir werden uns wiederstehen, we shall see one another again. Ginander is added, however, wherever the object might be mistaken; as, sie lieben side einander, they love each other, where sie lieben side might be mistaken for 'they love each one himsels.'

NOTE 8. The English 'he is goodness itself' may be imitated: et iff die Gate selbs. The English use of 'yoursels,' etc. with the Imperative, may be imitated: say yoursels, sage du selbs, sagt ibr selbs, sagen Sie selbs.

Compounds are formed with selbs, as in English; as Selbstliebe, self-love; Selbstraushung, self-delusion; Selbstmerd, suicide; selbst sid, independent; selfstratig, selbstratig, self-delusion; Selbstmerd, self-acting; sich selbst erhaltend, self-preserving; das Selst der Selbstratiung, the law of self-preservation; Selbstwertheibiann, self-desence; das geschich (geht) von selbst, that goes of itself; das ift in sich selbst that is evident in itself, self-evident.

The Euphonic es (English there).

§ 206. The English there is, there are, is translated es giebt; there was, there were, es gab; there has been, there have been, ce hat gegeben. In both languages, the subject is made predicate of the sentence, in cases like the following: there was once upon a time a fairy, es war einmal cine hee. The subject here, properly speaking, is the fairy; the predicate, was. But this predicate, mentioning only the existence without any quality, is considered too insignificant, and thus almost every language has a particular method of avoiding it; the English and German by turning the subject into a predicate, and making it (cc) the subject, which in English is supplied mentally, in German expressly stated. But in German in most cases co giebt, co gab, etc. (the subject following in the Accusative, because geben is a transitive verb), are preferred to co ift, co war; as, co giebt vicle Scute, there are many people, co giebt cinen Plats, there is a place.

NOTE. - Sentences like the following, however, are translated by es ift, es toat; as, there is a son of the deceased living, es if ein Sohn des Berflorbenen

bethanden; there has been found a corpse in the street, es if ein seignam auf der Greafe gefunden worden; there will be a festival, es wird ein Jest sein. In sentences like these: es fed len drei Schler, three pupils are missing; es waren seine Bücher da, there were no books there, — the plural of the predicate shows that the language is conscious that, not es, but the following plural is the real subject. See § 292. 2.

This euphonic use of the superfluous es obtains to a greater extent in German, particularly in poetry, than in English, and almost every sentence may thus be grammatically inverted; as, es singen die Bögel, birds are singing es raus spen die Quellen, the springs are murmuring; es tommt der Tag, der Alles tösen wird (Sch.), the day is coming which will solve all things; es erbt der Cietren Segen, nicht ibr Jind (G.) the parents' blessing is inherited, not their curse; es wedt die Klage den Lodten nicht auf (G.), lamentation does not awaken the dead. In all these sentences es is only seemingly the subject, the real subject being what seems to be the predicate, die Bögel, die Quellen, der Tag, der Segen, etc.

II. Possessive Pronouns.

§ 207. The possessive pronouns represent the person or thing spoken of as being in the possession of, or in some way connected intimately with, one of the three persons,—the person speaking, spoken to, or spoken of. They are formed from the Genitive of these persons, the latter assuming the form of adjectives, and therefore agreeing with their substantive in gender, number, and case.

§ 208. The possessive pronouns are declined according to the ancient declension of adjectives, or rather according to that form of it after which the indefinite article, ein, eine; ein, is inflected (§ 118), viz:—

	Singular.		PLURAL.		
Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.	M. F. N.		
N. mein	mein-e	mein	mein-e		
G. mein-es	mein-er	mein-es	mein-er		
D. mein-em	mein-er	mein-em	mein-en		
A. mein-en.	mein-e.	mein.	mein-e.		

Thus are inflected bein, thy, sein, his, ihr, her, unser, our, euer, your, ihr, their (3hr, your). Unser and euer, however, omit the e of the Auslaut in all cases that assume a third syllable, for the sake of euphony, and to avoid the dactyl; as,

Sing. Nom. unser, unsre (not unsere), unser; euer, eure (not euere), euer; Gen. unsers (less acceptable unsres, on account of the liquid after the mute), unsere (seldom unserer), unsers; eures, eurer, eures; Dat. unserm, unsrer (unserer), unsern; eurem, eurer, eurem; Acc. unsern, unsre (unsere), unser; euren, eure, euer; Plur. Nom. unsre (unsere), eure; Gen. unser (unserer), eurer; Dat. unsern, euren; Acc. unser (unsere), eure.

Note. — The caution contained in § 200, not to refer back to masculine and feminine names of things the pronoun es, holds good, likewise, of the possessive pronouns of the third person. The sentence, 'this watch is broken, its machinery is in disorder,' must be translated biefe libr iff jetbrochen, i he e Majchinerie iff in Unordaung. Der Lod iff undermeiblich, fe in e Getoalt unwidersteich ich, death is unavoidable, its power irresistible; Die Natur fordert ihre Nechte (G.), nature demands her rights; das Dorf mit feinen Bewohnern, the village with its inhabitants; das Coulf mit feiner gangen Mannschaft, the ship with its whole crew. But the rule given in § 200, note, also holds good here.

- § 209. When the possessive pronoun is not attributively connected with a substantive, but is itself substantively used, referring back to a substantive named or understood, the pronoun takes a somewhat different form, viz.:—
- 1. When not preceded by the definite article, it takes the full ancient declension of the adjective; as, Nom. Sing. meiner, meine, meines (mine); beiner, beine, beines (thine); unfrer, unfre, unfers (ours); eurer, eure, eures (euers), (yours), etc.; Acc. Sing. meinen, meine, meines, unfern, unfre, unfres, and so on; and the other cases as in § 208; as, bein Bater ist tobt, meiner ist am Leben; seine Ruh war grau, ihre war weiß; unser Haus steht hoch, eures tief.
- 2. When preceded by the definite article, it adds the affix ig, with the modern declension of the adjective, as follows:—

ber, bie, bas meinige, mine ber, bie, bas beinige, thine ber, bie, bas seinige, his ber, bie, bas ihrige, hers; ber, bie, das unsrige, ours ber, die, das eurige, yours ber, die, das ihrige, theirs ber, die, das Ihrige, yours.

EXAMPLES. - Dier find gwei Bate - Diefes ift meiner, Das ift beiner, or biefes ift ber meinige, bas ift ber beinige, here there are two hats, - this one

is mine, that one is yours; Gein Ram' ift Friedland, auch der meinige (or meiner) (Sch.), his name is Friedland, mine also; thu deine Pflicht, ich werde meine thun (or die meinige) (G.), do your duty, I shall do mine; die Sonne gebt der euren Augen ihren ffolgen Gang, und um den eurigen (or euren) ift Finsternif (Gleim), the sun traverses defore your eyes its proud course, but around yours there's darkness; das ist mein Weg, geb du deinen (or den deinigen), this is my way, go you yours; sie alle gehen ihres Weges fort an ihr Geschäft, und meines ist der Nord (Sch.), they all go their way to their business, and mine is murder.

Both forms are, as the above examples show, identical in meaning, except that the longer is more prossic.

In poetry a shortened form of der meinige, der deinige, etc. is frequent, namely, der meine, der deine, declined throughout after the modern declension, this form being the older one; as, sein Unrecht war grof, das unser micht minder.

3. Another form of the first way of expressing the possessive pronoun, much in use in poetry and common conversation when the pronoun is a predicate, is that without inflection in all numbers and genders in the nominative and accusative cases, the pronouns mein, bein, sein, unser, etc. assuming the nature of adverbs; as, mein Freund ist mein und ich bin sein (Luth.), my friend is mine, and I am his; Gesabr und Ruhm und auch der Preis sei mein (G.), danger and glory and the prize de mine; was er sein neunt, ist oft gestohlen, what he calls his own is often stolen; diese Straße ist mein, this street is mine; alle guten Menschen sind unser, all good men are ours; sein ist, was da sleucht und freucht (Jacobs), whatever slies or creeps is his.

Note. — The latter form of expression is always preferred when a substantive or a pronoun precedes or follows with full inflection, indicative of the case, number, and gender implied, as, diefer Jut iff mein (because here the expression of gender, number, and case through the possessive pronoun is superfluous and anti-euphonic); or when substantives of different genders have the possessive pronoun for their common predicate; as, unfer find die Jelder und die Triften, euer die Hereben und das Haus, ours are the fields and pastures, yours the flocks and the house. But this holds good only of the Accusative and Nominative, — the other cases are taken from meiner or der meinige. After a neuter pronoun in the place of the subject, however, meiner or der meinige with full inflection is expected; as, dies ift nicht euer Haus, es ift das unfre; wem gebört diefer Hut] es ift meiner; jenes ift feine Biefe, diefes ift meine (bie meinige).

§ 210. The definite article is substituted for the possessive

pronoun in German wherever no mistake can be made as to which is the possessing person; as, ich stedte das Geld in die Tasche (instead of meine Tasche, because everybody presumes that it is my pocket as long as no other is mentioned); ste septe den hut auf und stedte Blumen in's Haar, she put her hat on and adorned her hair with flowers; haven Sie den linken Arm gebrochen? have you broken your lest arm? surchtbar ist die himmelostast (das Feuer), wenn sie einhertritt auf der eignen Spur (Sch.), searful is this power when it chooses its own path. But not so when a mistake would be possible, or when the pronoun has a greater stress laid upon it; as, sie drücke den Lorder auf seine Stirn, nicht auf ihre eigene, she bound the laurels on his drow, not on her own; ich gab ihm sein Geld (to which he was entitled, not mine).

Even where the Pronoun seems to be indispensable to indicate the possessing person, the German finds a way to do without it by placing the corresponding personal pronoun in the Dative (in some cases the Accusative) before the object possessed; as, ein Strin fiel i ha auf ben Ropf, a stone fell upon his head; ber Rauber flief i hr einen Dold in's Berg, the robber thrust a dagger through her heart; fest wie der Erde Grund sieht mir bes Bauses Pract (Sch.), sirm as the foundation of earth stands the splendor of my house; ich derivunder mich in his Band, and ich derivunder mir bis Band, I wounded my hand, are equally good.

NOTE 1. - Expressions like 'a friend of mine,' 'a relation of yours,' are translated einer meiner Freunde (one of my friends), einer Herre Berteaubten.

Note 2. The plurals die Meinigen, die Deinigen, die Seinigen. etc., denote 'those belonging to me, to thee, my (thy) samily, relatious, or followers'; and the neuter singular das Meinige, das Deinige, das Unftige, signifies my, thy, our property, duty; ich gebe mit den Meinig en (or den Meinen) nach Frankfurt, I am going with my samily to Frankfort; ein Machtiger, der die Seinen nicht zu versogen weiß, wird von dem Bolte selbst getadelt (G.), one in power that does not know how to care for his followers is blamed by the people themselves; das ist meine Hatte, ich stebe wieder auf dem Meinig en (Sch.), that 's my hut, I stand once more upon my own property; ich habe das Meinige gethan, thut I de se ur e (Sch.), I have done my duty, do yours; Jedem das Seine (Proverb), to every one his own!

III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 211. Demonstrative pronouns point out the particular or individual thing or person meant by the speaker; the first class,

ber and bieser, individualizing a person or thing near to the speaker; the second, jener, those more distant from the speaker; and the third, soldser, berjenige, berselbe, a person or thing without any reference to its distance from the speaker, but one meant by him.

§ 212. Der, die, das is the definite article, the latter having originally no existence in ancient German, and this pronoun having taken its place. The declension of the pronoun is, therefore, that of the article; but when it is substantively employed, the Genitive singular has deffen in the masculine and neuter, deren in the feminine; the Genitive plural has derer or deren, the Dative plural denen. Des instead of deffen is poetical; as, des rühme der blutge Tyrann sich nicht (Sch.), the bloodthirsty tyrant may not boast of this. Derer refers to persons not previously expressed, but to be mentioned later, deren to persons before mentioned.

See § 213 for examples. Der und ber, die und die, answers to the English 'such and such.'

Dieser, dieses, and jener, jenes, are declined according to the ancient declension of adjectives. Solcher, such, has a twofold declension; the ancient one, when not preceded by the indefinite article, and the mixed one, when preceded by it. Instead of ein solcher, eine solche, ein solches, the declension may also run thus: solch' ein, solch' eine, solch' ein, plural solche, etc., through all cases and genders, solch' being then an adverb and indeclinable.

Derjenige and berfelbe are declined like adjectives with the definite article, as follows:—

	Singular.			PLURAL.
	Masculine.	Feminine.	Nouter.	M. F. N.
N.	berjenige	biejenige	basjenige	biejenigen
	besjenigen	berjenigen	besjenigen	berjenigen
D.	bemjenigen	berjenigen	bemjenigen	benjenigen
A .	benjenigen.	biejenige. 21	basjenige.	biejenigen.

	Singular.			PLUBAL
	Masculins.	Feminine.	Neuter.	M. F. N.
N.	berfelbe	biefelbe	baffelbe	biefelben
G.	beffelben	berfelben	beffelben	berfelben
D.	bemfelben	berfelben	bemfelben	benfelben
A .	benfelben.	dieselbe.	baffelbe.	Diefelben.

NOTE. — Diefes, foldes, the neuter of diefer, folder, drop in the nominative and accusative the termination es, and are written dies, foldy, the former both when substantively and when adjectively used, the latter only when used adjectively; as, dies if der Zag das Derm (UM.), this is the Lord's day; dies arme Bott hat feinen Troft, these poor people have no relief; foldy Unglike ward noch night erhört, such a misfortune was never heard of.

§ 213. Der, bie, bas, has of all demonstrative pronouns the most general signification, as it may stand for bicier, jeuer, or berienige. Examples. Da ift ber Tell, ber führt bas Ruter auch (Sch.), there is that man Tell, he (that one) also manages the helm : ber beste Raufmann ift ber Rrieg, ber macht aus Gifen Gold (Sch.), the best merchant is war, he makes gold of iron; bes Weges tam er (Sch.), he came this (or that) way: bort broben ift bein Bater, ben ruf' an (Sch.), thy Father is above, call on him; bas ift bes Raifer's Sand und Siegel (Sch.). that is the emperor's hand and seal; gemeine Raturen bezahlen mit bem mas fie fint, eble mit bem, mas fie thun (Sch.), vulgar characters pay with what they are, nobler ones with what they do; nimm bas Beld, ich bebarf beffen nicht, take the money, I need it not; bie Irofesen schmarzen bas Beficht beffen, ber lugend einen Selben beficat (J. P.), the Iroquois blacken the face of him who, though lying, conquers a hero; taufe feine Blumen, ich babe beren genug, do not buy any flowers, I have enough of them; bas Anseben berer, bie feine Derson umgaben (Sch.), the ligh rank of those who surrounded his person; ber herr ift mit benen, fo (welche) ibn suchen (Luther), the Lord is with them who seek him; tas Glud hilft benen, bie fich felbft belfen (J. P.).

Norm 1. The genitive of this demonstrative pronoun, in its lengthened form, fee, been, is sometimes employed for the possessive pronoun of the third

person, in order to avoid ambiguity. For example: Moland ritt hinter's Bater her mit dessen Speer und Schilde (Uhl.), Roland rode behind his father with his (not Roland's) spear and shield; wer betrath, et betrachte ein Scheimnis, der dus spear dessen Half of it. He.), he who detrays that he keeps a secret, has already betrayed half of it; se bescherte ihre Schwester und der sister's) Locher, ihre Richten und Ressen und deren Betwandte (ihr would be ambiguous, both her and their being in German ibt.), she gave presents to her sister and her daughter, to her nieces and nephews, and their relations.

Norm 2. The demonstrative bas or biefes or jenes cannot be used after prepositions (see § 202), but combines with them, forming adverbs; as, barin, hierin, bassit, hierins, hie

But the demonstrative cannot be thus contracted with a preposition,—

1. When das, diefes, jenes reser to persons and animato objects in general (animals and children included); as, das ift das Kind, weiches ich meinte, mit diesem sprich! (not damit); hier kommt ein Maden, tange mit ihm (diesem, not damit).

2. When the demonstrative precedes the relative referring to it; as, mein Bater sagte mir wenig von dem, was er mit ihm geredet hatte (G.), my sather told me little of that about which he had spoken to him; Bergebens erinnerte der Ebgerothete den Eroberer an das (not daran) was die Gerechtsgeit von ihm sorberer (Schiller), in vain did the delegate remind the conqueror of what justice demanded of him.

§ 214. Dieser, e, es, individualizes such persons or things as are near to the person or mind of the speaker; jener, e, es, more distant ones; as, dieses haus ist schorer als jenes; in dieser Welt und in jener, in this world and in the world to come. For this reason, the English the former, the latter, are often translated by dieser, e, es, jener, e, es; as, Der Frühling und der herbst hat seine Freuden; dieser giebt Früchte, jener Blumen, Both spring and autumn have their delights; this (the latter) gives fruits, that (the former) flowers. For the same reason the English the one, the other, may be thus translated; as, Sie theiste Jedem eine Gabe; dem (diesem) Blumen, jenem Früchte aus (Sch.), She distributed to every one a gift; to the one flowers, fruits to the other.

And for the same reason, when contemptible or insignificant or ridiculous objects are to be compared with their contraries, sometimes diefer, e, es is employed to denote the latter, jener, e, es to denote the former; as, jener Clente that mid ungliddid gemacht, aber biefer eble Renich hat mid geretter, that wretch has rendered me unhappy, while this generous man has saved me; fann et jene (armfeligen) Beleibigungen nach immer nicht bergeffen? can he not yet forget those pittful insults?

Norm 1. The neuter bies or bas is, like the neuter es, often employed in the Nominative and Accusative, to indicate the most general and indefinite notion of a person or thing, without any regard to its gender or number, when that person or thing follows immediately in the predicate; as, biefes (bies) iff ein Renfd, jenes iff eine Gade, bas war ein Jubel! that was a triumph! dies tann frin Deutscher fein, this man cannot be a German; bles mögen widtige Papiere fein; dies hier ift mein Schwesterfohn (Sch.), this is my sister's son; das ift bes Rönigs Bille nicht (Sch.), that is not the king's will; das find des himmels furchtbure Gerichte (Sch.), those are the fearful judgments of heaven; jenes sellen Buchschen sein Borzag der menschtscher Statum schielen die Idiere nicht? dies ift anch ein Borzag der menschtschen Ratur (Lchl.), why don't animals squint? this is also a prerogative of human nature.

Note 2. The use of the Genitive singular and plural of biefer, e, es, and jener, e, es, when substantively employed, is carefully avoided, because it is easily confounded with other cases, and fein, beffen, or beren is used in its stead; as, ich bin fein Gehn, or beffen Gehn, not biefes Sehn. But in a few phrases the Genitive of biefer, substantively employed, occurs; as, ber Ueberbringer biefes, the bearer of this (letter); ben strangigsen biefes, the twentieth of this month.

§ 215. Solcher, e, es, points out an individual quality of a person or thing, such as the speaker means, or describes in a relative sentence; for instance, solchen Wein lob' ich mir! in ganz Europia, ist solch' ein Wein nicht mehr (Claud.), in all Europe there is no such wine; solch' ein Wetter ist selten zu solcher Ernte gekommen (G.), such weather has not osten waited upon such a harvest; ist das ein solches Buch wie du es münschest? is this such a book as you desire? Rein Thier hat solchen Blid als Zeus dem Luchs verlich (Pf.), no animal has such a sight as Zeus granted to the Lynx.

The use of seicher instead of the personal pronoun of the third person, or the demonstrative bas, is antiquated; as, Bu gleien auf des eignen Kindes Sauptt solches ward keinem Bater noch geboten (Sch.), to aim at his own child's head, this was never commanded to any sather; saffer die Kindlein in mir kommen,

here folder (tirer) if has himmelsein (Luther), suffer little children to come unto me, for of such is the kingdom of heaven.

Norn 1. Instead of folder, e, es, in common conversation and comic poetry fo ein, fo eine, fo ein is used, or, when substantively used, fo einer, e, es; as, fo einen Menschen habe ich noch nicht geseben, such a man I 've never yet seen; Aber das ift ja auch so einer (Sch.), but he is likewise such another.

NOTE 2. Sold' is never used as a predicate, like the English such, in sentences like the following: 'such was his conduct that he soon became despised'; 'his talents were such as must have forced him into distinction.' The correct translation will here be fein Betragen war fo (or, her Ent, of that kind, or, leas acceptable, ein foldes) has er halb betractet murbe; feine Enlagen waren her Ent (fo groft, fo bebeutend, betrgefalt, of that kind) has fit ihm Enleich erzwingen mußeten. The English no such thing is nichts bet Ent, nichts betrgleichen !

NOTE 8. The English such as, in sentences like 'such as the fact was,' such as he is said to be,' when it means of that description, of that kind, is translated to this die Sache tour, to this er getvelen fein foll.

NOTE 4. The English such before an adjective with a substantive is translated by softer or sold' or so; as, ladies of such high breeding in such a vulgar crowd! Damen von solder boten Bitbung (sold' boter, sold' einer boten, einer so boten, so boten) Bitbung in soldem gemeinen Gewähle (in sold' gemeinem, sold' einem, einem so gemeinen Gewähle).

§ 216. Derfelbe, biefelbe, baffelbe, the same, is adjectively and substantively used, and points to a person or thing as being identical with another before mentioned or yet to be mentioned or understood by the speaker; as, wir effen von bemfelben Brote und trinken von demfelben Beine, we are eating of the same bread and drinking of the same wine; es find diefelben, die wir gestern sasen, they are the same that we saw yesterday.

NOTE 1. This pronoun is frequently used instead of the personal pronoun of the third person, and instead of the possessive pronouns fets, his, and it, her, their, (in the latter case in the Genitive,) especially when a preposition is joined to it, or when a mistake in the person or thing spoken of is to be avoided. In this case this pronoun refers generally to the last mentioned person or thing. For example: bit Techter (chrieb ihrer Mutter dass bit eselbe in tondon errortest werde, the daughter wrote to her mother that she (the mother) was expected in London; ber Bater sprach bon seinem Schne und rühmte die Zalente de sselbe a (or dessen eine Zalente), the sather spoke of his son and praised his (the son's) talents; nitgends suche der Grieche in der Seichaldtigteit gegen das teiden sein en Ruhm, sondern in der Ertragung desselbe n dei allem Seschift är dasset skelbe schn, the Greek never sought his glory in indisserne to sussering, but in endurance of it with the sull consciousness of the same; the Deutsche ertenness

bei aller Bereirung ihrer großen Rauner dennsch auch die Schmächen ber selben (Kr.), the Germans, in all homage to their great men, nevertheless acknowledge their (the great men's) weaknesses. Der Wein ift gut, ich taun Ihnen ben selben empfehlen (instead of ihn), and als die Mutter ihre Tochter sah, sub sie bieseibe (instead of sie) ein, are two examples where euphony requires this use.

Note 2. Instead of derfeibe, diefeibe, daffeibe, the poets sometimes make use of feiber, e, es, inflected after the modern declension, when the article preceding is contracted with a preposition; as, und er verließ sie jur feiben Stunde (or jur seibigen) (Sch.), and he forsook her the selfsame hour; am seiben Orte; im seiben Geiste, in the same spirit.

NOTE 3. Derfelbige, diefelbige, daffelbige, instead of derfelbe, etc., is antiquated. Der, die, das namliche, the selfsame, and ebenderfelbe, ebendiefelbe, ebendaffelbe, and einundderfelbe, einunddiefelbe, einunddaffelbe (sometimes ein is inflected, einer und derfelbe, eine und diefelbe, eines und daffelbe), the very same, just the same, are still in use, and have a greater emphasis than derfelbe.

§ 217. Derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige, he (that, who), are employed only with a subsequent relative pronoun (welcher, e, es), the latter particularizing the person or thing of which the speaker is speaking; as, derjenige größte Kreis, welchen man sich um die Mitte der Erde überall gleichweit von den Polen gezogen denkt, heißt der Gleicher oder Acquator, that greatest circle which we imagine to ourselves as drawn around the middle portion of the earth, always at the same distance from either pole, is called the equator; and der robeste Mensch hintergeht den senigen ungern, den er für einen rechtschaffenen Mann hält (Jo. Miller), even the rudest person does not willingly deceive him whom he considers a righteous man; man soll dasjenige am meisten lieben, was man am meisten pslegt (Kr.), we are said to love most what (that which) we nurse most. But see § 222.

Derjenige without a subsequent relative pronoun is, therefore, comical; as, ja, ich bin berjenige! ay, I am that man. But there is no comical force in sentences like the following: here is my garden and that of my cousin, hier ist mein Garten und berjenige (or ber) meines Betters; the battle of Austerlitz was called "the battle of the three emperors," because the Emperor Napoleon engaged in it those of Austria and Prussia, die Schlacht von Austerlitz wurde Dreitaiserschlacht genannt, weil der

Raifer Rapoleon fie benen (or benjenigen) von Deftreich und Rugland lieferte.

IV. Interrogative Pronouns.

§ 218. Interrogative Pronouns inquire for a person or a thing, or their qualities, in a general way. There are four of them:—

Mer? who? was? what? — These two are only substantively used.

Belcher, e, es? which? was für ein, eine, ein? what? what kind of? — These two are only adjectively used.

The declension of wer? and was? is as follows: -

N. wer? who? was? what?
G. weffen? whose? weffen? of what?
D. wem? to whom? (Dative wanting.)
A. men? whom? was? what?

Neither wer? nor was? can have a plural.

In poetry, the Genitive both of wer? and was? is sometimes weß; as, weß ist die unsichtbare hand die Blumentran; um Thäler wand? (Wessenberg,) whose is the invisible hand which wound wreaths of flowers round valleys?

Note. — Bus? cannot be connected with prepositions, but is always contracted with them into adverbs; as, weben, we to two but, websi, we fire? of what, with, through (by), at (by), for what? wherefrom, whereof, wherevit, whereat, wherefore; and when the preposition begins with a vowel, worth, woran, worans, worans, worans, wherefor, wherefor, whereon, wherefor, wherefor.

But instead of worum is used warum, when it means why? and toegen and halb, on account of, because of, are contracted with well into wellvegen? well-halb? wherefore? for what purpose?

But wer is never contracted with propositions; as, fur wen schuf beine Bute, Gott, Diese Beit so foon ? (Gellert.)

Bescher, e, es, is declined like an adjective of the ancient declension. In was für ein, only the indefinite article ein is declined. Before names of materials, and in the plural, ein is dropped; as, was für Bein? what kind of wine? was für Büscher? what (kind of) books?

\$ 219. Wer and was are only substantively employed; as in wer mißt dem Binde seinen Lauss wer heißt die himmel regnen wer schoß den Schoß der Erde aus, mit Borrath uns zu segnen? (Gellert.) who metes out to the winds their courses? who dids the heavens to rain? who opens the lap of the earth, to bless us with stores? was ist der Mensch, daß du sein gedentst? what is man, that thou art mindful of him? weß ist mehr in der Natur, der Freude oder des Elends? (E.), of which is there most in nature, joy or misery? wen meinen Sie? wem vertrauen Sie? whom do you mean? in whom do you conside?

NOTE 1. Bas occurs in a very few cases with a substantive; as, to a s Gofb, to a s Ebeffeins! what (a quantity of) gold, what (a number of) precious stones! and in the common popular exclamation to as Zaufend! (what a wonder!) to as ber Blift! bas if is hie Guffei ben Blafetoit! (Sch.) by Jove! (by the lightning!) this is, etc.

NOTE 2. Bas is, in postry and common conversation, often used instead of marum? was ladf bu? why dost thou laugh? was jauderf bu? (Sch.), why dost thou hesitate? was jagt mein Der;? (Gellers,) why does my heart fear?

§ 220. Belder, e, es, and was für ein, eine, ein, are adjectively used, and seemingly as substantives only when referring to a preceding substantive, the former inquiring after a particular person or thing, the latter after a particular kind of persons or things. For example: welches Buch soll ich zuerst lesen, Schiller's Bilhelm Tell ober Ballenstein? which book am I to read first, Schiller's William Tell or Wallenstein? Bas für ein Buch soll ich lesen, eine Novelle ober ein Geschichtswerf? what kind of a book am I to read, a novel or an historical work? Belches Pserd wollen Sie reiten? den Braunen; which horse are you going to ride? the bay horse. Bas für ein Pserd ist dies? ein Araber; what kind of horse is this? an Arabian. Der braune und der rothe Tisch sind hier — welchen meinst du? which do you mean?

NOTE 1. The same mode of expression as the German trac fix rin? is to be met with also in old English; as in, 'What art thou for an animal to suck thy livelihood out of my carcass?' 'What is he for a fool that betroths himself to unquietness?' (Shakespeare.) It is worthy of notice, that, as in these examples,

so also in German, the pronoun was is sometimes separated from für ein; as in Was foll ich für ein Buch lefen? Was ift das für ein Rann, daß ihm Wind und Meer gehorsam ift? (B.), what manner of man is this, that even the winds and sea obey him? Was but das licht für Gemeinschaft mit der Finsternis? (Luther,) what fellowship has light with darkness?

Note 2. Beich' or weich' sin (weich' being indeclinable) is sometimes used in the signification of was für ein, especially in expressions of wonder; as, scht, weich' cin Jest (Sch.), see, what a seast! weich' Schifal aber wird das eure sein? (Sch.), but what a sate will yours be? But weich' is insected with substantives of the seminine gender, and sometimes also with masculine and neuter substantives; as, in dieser Ermuth, weich Jälle, in diesem kerter, weiche Celigicit! (G.), in this poverty what abundance! in this dungeon what bliss! weicher linesins! what nonsense! weiches Sidd! what luck!

Norz 3. Beiches and was für ein may seem to be substantively employed when referring to substantives of every gender and number; as in weiches ift ener Garten? weiches ift seine Rutter? weiches war der gehfte Jeldert des Aftertum?? When was für ein is thus employed, ein is insected; as in was ift das für einer, für eine, für eines (das being here subject, was für ein predicate), which of one is this? Agamemnon war ein held, aber was war Thersites für einer? Agamemnon was a hero, dut what sort of a one was Thersites? Es giedt mehrere Pitt, — was für einen meinst du? there are several Pitts, — which one do you mean?

V. RELATIVE AND CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS.

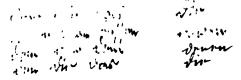
§ 221. A relative pronoun introduces an explanatory sentence to show what particular or individual person or thing the speaker is speaking of; as in 'a man who steals is called a thief.' The German has, like most languages, no peculiar word for the relative pronoun, but uses for this purpose, like the English, interrogative and demonstrative pronouns, viz.:—

Wer, who, and mas, what, - which are used substantively.

Welcher, welches, who, which, and ber, bie, bas, that,—which are used adjectively.

The declension is in all cases the same as when these pronouns are interrogatively and demonstratively used (ber, bie, bas having in the Sing. Gen. bessen, bessen, bessen, bat. benen).

NOTE 1. The form beg for beffen is met with only in poetry; as in we bift du, Jauft, des Stimme mir ertlang? (G.), where art thou, Faust, whose voice resounded to me? Dort liegt der Sanger auf der Babre, des bleicher Rund



frin the beginn (Uhl), there lies the minstrel on the bier, whose pale month begins no song.

NOTE 2. Instead of the other relative pronouns, in the Nominative and Accusative in ancient German, and sometimes in poetry, fo (indeclinable) is found; as, Rinber, fo inten Eftern generate, children who obey their parents. In some parts of Southern Germany the vulgar dialect employs in the same way two instead of twee, twelder; as in ber Rana, two mid befuder, the man who came to see me.

_ § 222. When the relative pronoun to be introduced is preceded by a demonstrative, both together are called *Correlative Pronouns*. The following combinations of this nature may occur:—

```
Derjenige, welcher, } he who, that which. Der, welcher, (ber),
```

Mer — (ber), who — (he), never ber, wer, except when some words intervene.

```
Dasjenige, welches, }
(that which) what.
Das, was,
Derfelbe, welcher, the same who (which).
```

Examples.—1. Derjenige, der, welcher: — Derjenige Kreis, welcher im Absande von 284 Graden um jeden der beiden Pole gedacht wird, heist der Polartreis, that eirele which we imagine to ourselves to surround either pole at a distance of 284 degrees, is called the polar circle. Ich in mit einem Drittel besjenigen Geldes justieden, welches ich verdiene (Engel), I am content with one third of such money as I am accustomed to earn. Seine Frennde waren gerade Diejenigen, welche ihn juerst verließen, his friends were preciely those who abandoued him first. But Franklin micht Derienige, der den Blishabeiter ersand? was it not Franklin who invented the lightning-rod? Das ift gerade dasjenige, was (das, welches) ich so lange vermisse dabe, this is what I have missed so long.

This form of correlation is not in use in poetry, on account of the antieuphonic rhythm and sound of berjenige, and it is avoided in common life; it is confined properly to the scientific style. As the above examples show, berjenige as a correlative pronoun is used substantively as well as adjectively.

2. Der, welcher, der: — Dein Beg ift ein anderer, es ift der, welcher ben Jinf entlang führt, your rond is another one, yours is that which lends along the river. Rur der ift frei, dem Adrung für die Pflicht im reinen herzen woodnt (Demmel. Der ift ein Schurte, ber (welcher) mehr giedt als er hat (Proverd), he is a rascal who gives more than be has (boyond what he owns). Das ift das hens, das du meinst.

Ejumang der l'aire

In poetry and in ancient style der — (der) is used so that the demonstrative correlative is omitted; as in die (diejenige, welche; ihr such, ift des Himmels Braut (Sch.), she whom you seek is the bride of heaven. Die (diejenigen, die) aber gegessen hatten, deren waren det 5000 Mann (Luther), but they that had eaten were about 5000 men.

3. Ber, der; das, was: — Der ift ein Mann, wer nur einen herrn anertennt — das Recht, he is a man who acknowledges no master but Right. Ber nicht bören will, der muß fühlen (Proverd), who does not wish to hear (obey), must feel (punishment). Ber tägt, der fliehlt, und wer fliehlt, der tommt an den Galgen (Proverd), a liar is likely to steal, and a thief is likely to be hanged. Bas du nicht wills, das man dir thu, das füg' auch teinem Andern zu (Proverd).

The Demonstrative may as well be omitted; as, wer nicht horen will, muß filelen; was du beute thun tannft, verfchiebe nicht auf morgen, what you may do

to-day, do not delay until to-morrow.

4. Derfelbe, welcher, der: - 3ch habe daffelbe Buch gelesen, welches (das) du gestern lasest, I have read the same book (which) you read yesterday; dieses Bort bedeutet dasselbe, was (welches) im Englischen the same bedeutet, this word denotes the same as in English the same denotes.

This correlative may as well be omitted; as, ich bin (derfelbe) ber ich twar und fein tverde, I am whom I was and shall be; bas ift ber Rann (derfelbe Rann) tvelchen bu suchft, that is the man whom you seek.

- 5. In expressing a wish, sometimes the whole demonstrative clause is omitted; as in Ja, wer bus tonne! yea, (he) who could do that (would be clever)! Eletabe Bolten, Segler ber tafte! wer mit euch manderre, mit euch schiffe! (Sch.), hurrying clouds, sailers of the air, who could roam, who could sail with you! (he would be happy).
- § 223. 1. Was and welches may be used interchangeably when referring to a whole sentence; as in er ging ohne einen Führer fort, was (welches) sehr unvorsichtig war, he lest without a guide, which was very imprudent. Schorsam ist teine Lugend—was (welches) nur Wenige zu wissen schorsam ist teine Lugend virtue, which seems to be known only by a sew. Still, was is preserable in such cases.
- 2. Was and das are used interchangeably when referring to one of the words nichts, nothing; Alles, everything, all; allerlei, all kinds of; etwas, something; Bieles, vielerlei, much, many things; Einiges, something, and Dasjenige, and other pronouna and indefinite numerals; or to an adjective in the neuter; as, Berichiedenes, various things. Still das is less elegant in such cases than was. Examples:—

Alles, was du da sagk, ist wahr. Es ist nichts groß, was nicht gut ist, und es ist nichts wahr, was nicht besteht. (Claudius.) Er sagte Berschiedenes, das (was) mir nicht gesiel. Es geschah mancherlei, das (was) man nicht erwartet hatte. Das Beste, was (ras) man von ihm lernt, ist nicht mitzutheilen (G.), the best things one can learn of him allow of no communication.

- § 224. Relcher, e, es, agrees, as an adjective pronoun, with its substantive in gender, number, and case, and is, unlike the English which, also used in reference to persons; as, ein Mann, welcher, eine Frau, welche, a man who, a woman who (we cannot say ein Mann wer, eine Frau wer). But it is always replaced by ber, die, das in the three following cases:—
- 1. When the relative pronoun stands in the Genitive, singular or plural; as, der Mond, desse Scheibe fast voll war, beleuchtete die runden Gipsel des Gebirges, in desse Thale Caracas liegt (Humboldt), the moon, whose disk was nearly full, illuminated the round tops of the mountains in whose valley Caracas lies; die Zeugen, deren ich bedars, sind angesommen, the witnesses whom I want have arrived; die Geschichte, deren Kenntniß so wichtig ist, history, the knowledge of which is so important.

Norn. — In such sentences as fage mir boch, welches großen Philosophen Schriften du gelesen haft I please to tell me which great philosopher's writings you have read? welches is an interrogative, not a relative pronoun; and such sentences as Cicero, welches großen Redners Werte ich gelesen habe, Cicero, the writings of which great orator I have perused, — must be avoided as awkward and un-German.

2. When the relative pronoun refers to ich, du. wir, ihr, Sie; as, Erkennst du mich, die ich in manche Wunde des Lebens dir den reinsten Balsam goß? (G.), dost thou recognize me (the Goddess of truth), who poured the purest dalm into many a wound of thy life? Das wissen wir, die wir die Gemsen sagen (Sch.), we know that who hunt the chamois. Du, die du alle Bunden heilest, der Freundschaft leise, zarte Hand (Sch.), thou which healest all wounds, the soft, tender hand of friendship.

Berachtest bu so beinen Kaiser, Tell, und mich, ber hier an seiner Statt gebietet? (Sch.), dost thou thus despise thy emperor, Tell, and me who rule here in his stead? Euch, bie ihr so sanst in euren Gräbern ruht, to you, who so tranquilly repose in your graves. Sie alter Sünder, der Sie so leichtsertig reden, you old sinner, who are so lasciviously talking.

§ 225. The relative pronoun must always take the first place in the sentence introduced by it, and can only be preceded by prepositions. Expressions, therefore, like by means of which, in connection with whom, all of whom, and similar ones, ought to be avoided in German, and translated in a different way; as, the meeting, one of whose members (or one of the members of which) I addressed, das Meeting, von welchem ich eines seiner Glieber anredete; he had three children, all of whom died in their infancy, er hatte drei Kinder, welche alle früh starben; there were several battles, in one of which he was disabled, es gab mehrere Schlachten, in deren einer er tampfunfähig gemacht wurde (in einer von welchen occurs in good authors); country life, the praise of which fills up his poesy, das Landleben, dessen, dessen Gedichte füllt.

§ 226. The relative pronoun is never omitted in German, as it so often is in English; as, das Buch, welches er schrieb, the book he wrote; die Stunden, die wir zusammen zubrachten, the hours we spent together. There is, however, one exceptional case, where the relative pronoun is, as a rule, omitted, and where it is not always done in English, namely, after the particles than, as, als; for instance, ich fann mir teinen größeren Reichthum vorstellen, als (welchen) Rothschilds besispen, I cannot imagine a greater wealth than that which the Rothschilds own; er ist noch ein eben so guter Mensch, als (welcher) er vorber war, he is still just as good a man as he was formerly. Ein Schurle giebt mehr als er hat (than what he owns).

NOTE 1. But the demonstrative pronoun is omitted as often as in English, when followed or preceded by a relative, as some of the examples in § 222.

2, 8, 4 show. When in such cases berjenige is omitted, the article is substi-

Dann Johnson to hell, John & muse be d d.

254 GERMAN GRAN

tuted where this pronoun was adjectively, and es where it was substantively used; as, ich bin mit einem Drittel bes (besjenigen) Gelbes juftieben, tvelches ich verbiene; feine Freunde waren es gerade (gerade diejenigen), welche ibn jurif verblieben.

NOTE 2. In German, however, the demonstrative pronoun must not be omitted when governed by a preposition; as, mit dem, was it hate, with what I had; die Salfte von demjenigen, was et befaß, one half of what he owned.

Note 3. Derjenige, welcher is often the correct translation of such as, when equivalent to those who; as, he would address with a sermon such people as he could find in the streets, er predigte ju benjenigen (ben) leuten welche er auf der Strafe fund. But when the accessory sentence is expressive of an effect, it takes the conjunction daß; as, he enjoys such a reputation as to feel embarrassed by it, er genießt einen selchen Ruf, daß er sich dadurch in Beriegenheit aeset fiebt.

NOTE 4. The correlatives (either — weither were more in use in ancient German than they are in modern, where they are avoided, either by using tote instead of weither, or by using sin [e großer (firiner, or any other adjective expressing the particular quality in question) with a subsequent wie or als. For instance, felde leute, wie bu bif; Niemand if [e ein großer Berbrecher wie er ift; seldom, es giebt felde leute weithe.

After this tole in poetry a personal pronoun of the third person is often employed, referring to the substantive connected with solder or so grosser (steiner, or whatever adjective it may be); for instance, bas sind solde Jehler, wie sie noch Riemand für möglich gehaten hat, these are such faults as nobody has thought possible; er madre einen so bergweiselten Ritt, wie ihn noch Benige gemacht haben werden, he took so desperate a ride as sew persons will have taken. But tiesen Rub, wie er sie auch gesunden (Sch.), to the deep tranquillity which he has sound at last.

§ 227. The adverbs womit, wovon, wozu, wobet, woburch, worin, woran, worauf, etc., are also in use as relative adverbs, in place of the corresponding prepositions with the relative pronoun. They must not be employed, however, relatively to persons, mit welchen, mit bem, mit wem, or von welchem, von welchen, von bem, von ber, etc., being always used for this purpose. (See § 218, note, § 213, note 2, and § 202.)

To the English pronouns whosaever, whoever, whatsoever, whatsoever, whichsoever, whichever, correspond the German pronouns wer auch immer, wer immer, wer auch; was auch immer, was immer, was auch; welcher auch immer, welcher auch, welcher immer; was nur, wer nur; was nur immer, wer nur immer.

THEORETICAL PART.

The words auth and immer may be separated from the relative by one or more intervening words. By this means the notion of the relative pronoun is expressed in a more general and indefinite manner.

Examples. — Und welchen Preis nun auch mein Wert ethalt, euch dant' ich ihn (G.). and whatever praise my work receives, it is to you that I owe it. Sie brachte, was sie nur hatte (G.), she brought whatever she had. Bas Ihr auch Schweres mögt zu leiden haben tragt's in Geduld (Sch.), whatever hardships you may have to suffer, bear them with patience.

§ 228. There is in German a particular use of the relative pronoun welcher, e, es in the meaning of some; as, hast bu Obst? Ja, ich have welches, yes, I have some fruit. Er hatte keinen Bein, aber ich hatte welchen, he had no wine, but I had some. Billst du Butter? ich have welche, Do you want butter? I have some. As the examples show, the substantive to which the pronoun refers must always precede; and we cannot connect welcher, e, es adjectively with the substantive to which it refers; as, I have some cherries, ich have (einige, not welche) Kirschen.

Examples. — Alles Quedfilber, das ich noch über das Jeuer brachte, das berrauchte wirtlich. Rennst du welches, das nicht verraucht, so bringe es (Less.), All quicksilver that I hitherto exposed to the action of fire, dissolved into smoke; if you know some that does not, bring it. Wer Berse und Reime richtig sprechen will, der thut am besten, er abt sich darin, selbst welche zu machen (Müllner).

VI. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

§ 229. The indefinite pronouns speak of persons or things in a general way. All of them are substantives, and can be used only in the singular number. There are seven of them, viz.:

- 1. Jebermann, everybody,
- 2. Jemand, somebody, anybody,
- 3. Niemand, nobody, not anybody,
- 4. Man, one, they, people,
- 5. Etwas, something, anything,
- 6. Nichts, nothing, not anything,
- 7. Mics, everything.

The adjectives aller, e, es; jeder, e, es; irgend ein; eine, ein; fein, feine, fein; einige, mehrere, viele, wenige, etliche, siemlicher, e, es, are, properly speaking, numerals, and are treated of under that head in §§ 248 – 257.

§ 230. Jebermann, Jemand, and Niemand are declined as follows: —

N.	Jebermann	Jemand	Niemand
G.	Jebermanne	Jemanbes	Niemanbes
D.	Jebermann	Jemand(em or en)	Riemand (em or en)
A.	Jebermann.	Remand(en).	Riemanb(en).

The terminations em and en of Jemand and Niemand in the Dative and Accusative may be added or omitted, in every case, as euphony requires.

Man is indeclinable, and occurs only in the Nominative; for the Dative and Accusative sid; is in use when man is reflexively used, and Cines, Cinem, Cinen in the Genitive, Dative, and Accusative when the sentence is not reflexive.

Instead of Jedermann may be used Jeder, e, es, declined after the ancient form.

Instead of Jemand and Niemand are in use Einer, e, es, and Reiner, e, es, both declined after the ancient form.

Etwas and Nichts are not declinable, but can be joined to prepositions. Junichte exhibits an old dative of Nichts, and means into nothing; as, zu nichte werden, to dissolve into nothing, to naught.

Alles is the neuter of aller, and is declined as such.

§ 231. Jedermann answers precisely to the English everybody, but the English anybody, any one, in affirmative sentences, when they mean the same as everybody, every one, are also translated by Jedermann, Jeder; as, ask anybody here whether I am not a printer, fragen Sie Jeden (Jedermann) hier ob ich nicht ein Druder bin; any one will answer in his place, Jedermann (Jeder or der Erste, der Beste) kunn seine Stelle vertreten. Likewise anything, in such affirmative sentences, is translated

THEORETICAL PART.

by Alles, and any by jeber, e, es; as, Gebulb und Ausbauer richten saft Alles aus, patience and endurance can perform almost anything; jede Keder ist dazu gut, any pen will do.

§ 232. Jemand and etwas correspond to somebody and something. But anybody and anything may also be thus translated, when occurring in conditional or interrogative sentences; as, wenn Jemand (irgend Jemand) ein Mann ist, so ist er's, if anybody is a man, he is; wenn etwas (irgend etwas) wahr ist, so ist dies, if anything is true, this is; ich möchte wohl wisen, ob Jemand (irgend Jemand) einen Geist gesehen hat, I should like to know whether anybody has seen a ghost; ist etwas (irgend etwas) nach Boston mitzunehmen? is there anything to be taken to Boston?

§ 233. Niemand and nichts correspond not only to nobody, no one, and nothing, but also to (not) anybody, (not) any one, and (not) anything in negative sentences; as, I do not know anybody here, ich tenne hier Riemanden; he could not agree with her in anything, er tonnte in Nichts mit ihr übereinsitmmen. But where there are two or more negations within the same sentence, they can be so translated the first time only; when again occurring they are translated by Scmand, etwas, einer; as, Cafar hat niemals eine Schlacht gegen irgend Jemanten verloren, Cæsar has never lost any battle against any one; Riemand hat je ben Sofrates irgend etwas Bofes thun feben, nobody ever saw Socrates doing any bad thing. And the same rule obtains after verbs of a negative meaning governing an accessory sentence; as, I deny that any man can point to any crime as committed by me, ich laugne, bag Jemand (irgend Giner, irgend Jemand) irgend ein Berbrechen nennen fonnte ale von mir begangen.

§ 234. Man is translated by one, they, people; as, Man sagt es gebe Menschen mit Schwänzen, aber man bat es noch nicht bewiesen, they say there are men with tails, but they have not proved it yet (but it has not yet been proved); wenn man wüßte wer er wäre, so könnte man, etc., if one (we) knew who he is, one (we) could, etc.; man weiß nicht, wer ber nächste Prästent

sein wird, they do not know who is to be our next President (it is uncertain, people do not know who is to be, etc.); bem Nächsten muß man helsen (Sch.), we must help along our fellow-men; Gemeinlich benkt man an die Seinen nur, wenn ste einem besonderes Bergnügen oder Berdruß machen (G.), as a rule, men are accustomed to think of their relations only when they cause their particular pleasure or grief; Benn man Einem Gutes thun will, muß man es ihm nach seiner eigenen Beise thun (Wd.), whoever likes to do good to any one must do it in his way (as that one desires it); was einem wirslich zuwider ist, hält man sich sicher auch vom Leibe (Rochlitz), whatever annoys a man he is sure to keep aloof from; Beiß man, wer diese blutge That verübte? (Sch.), is it known who committed this bloody deed? Man ist verzweiselt wenig, wenn man nichts als ehrlich ist (Less.), one is very, very little who is only honest.

Note. — From the above examples the pupil will perceive that man, with its complements Gines, Ginem, Ginen, and its reflexive form fich and the corresponding possessive pronoun fein, expresses only persons, and these in the most general way, without pointing out gender or number. The German makes nearly as frequent use of it as the Frenchman of his on (on dit, on sait); still uses as readily, in its place, different forms of expression, as toir, whenever the speaker sees fit to include himself in the subject or object, or fit (third person plural) in common conversation, as fit sprechen immer (bit tente sprechen immer), people always say; or es, as in es beifft immer, es geht nicht, aber es muß gehen! (Varnh. v. E.), (man sagt, dass man es nicht tönne, aber man muß es tönnen, or ihr sagt, dass ihr nicht tönne, aber ihr müßt tönnen); or the sentence is expressed in the passive voice, as ein Concert wird gegeben (man giebt ein Concert). The latter manner is, perhaps, the most frequent. Or the reslexive form is used; as, her Chüssel hat sich gefunden, the key has been sound (man hat den Chüssel).

§ 235. Etwas and nichts can be connected with adjectives and substantives; with the latter, of whatever gender, with the former only when employed in the neuter gender substantively; as, ctwas Schönes, something beautiful; etwas Neues, some news; etwas Unerhörtes, something unheard of; etwas Ncin, etwas Milch, etwas Brot, some wine, some milk, some bread. But when the substantive is a plural, etwas and nichts are omitted, or their place supplied by einige, etliche; as, Fische,

einige Laibe Brot, etliche Personen, some fishes, some loaves of bread, some persons. E. g. Der Reichthum hat durch sich selbst nie etwas Großes erzeugt (Jacobs), wealth by itself never produced anything great; die Liebe thut dem Rächsten nichts Böses (Luth.), love worketh no ill to his neighbor.

Note. — Instead of etwas, the abbreviated form 'was is sometimes used; as, ich will bir 'was fagen, I'll tell you what; weift du 'was Renes, I'll tell you some news; zu was Bessern sind wir geboren (Sch.), we are born for some better end; ist von ungefähr wohl jemals 'was geschehen' (Wd.), has there at any time happened anything fortuitons? Benn ganz 'was Unervarretes begegner, wenn unser Blid 'was Ungebeures sieht, sieht unser Geist auf eine Beile siel siel (G.), when something quite unexpected happens, when our eye rests upon some monatrosity, our mind stands still for a while.

Thus also 'teer, abbreviated from the ancient efter (now antiquated), is sometimes used for irgend Jemand, but the pupil should not imitate it; as, ich glaube so set as irgend wer ein Beind des Manierirten ju sein (A. W. Schl.), I believe I am as much as anybody averse to affectation; es ift wer hier gewesen, somebody has been here.

§ 236. Einer and Reiner, substantively used in all three genders, are of the same signification as Jemand, irgend Jemand (masc. and fem.), and etwas, irgend etwas (in the neuter); Riemand (masc. and fem.) and nichts (neuter). But they have a greater emphasis, whether for serious or comical purposes, and are therefore sometimes preferred; as, wenn Einer eine Reise thut, so tann er was ergablen (Claudius), if one has made a journey, he is able to tell something; will Einer in per Welt was magen, mag er fich muben und mag fich plagen (Sch.), he who is willing to risk something in the world must be active and energetic; es weiß Niemand, wo Ginen ber Schub brudt. als wer ihn anhat (Prov.), no one knows where one's shoe pinches but he who has it on ; noch Reinen fab' ich froblich enben. auf ben, etc. (Sch.), I saw no one happily reach his aim on whom (the gods conferred too many favors); Reine ift somenig Beib, baß sie ben Dut verschmähte, no woman is so little like her sex as to shun finery; Eines ift Noth, Marie bat bas beste Theil ermählt (Luth.), one thing is needful, Mary has, etc.; im Dörfchen mar Eine, fo icon gab's noch Reine, there was one girl in the village, and never so fine a one before.

§ 237. Alles means not only everything, but sometimes also all persons; as, Alles ift vergnügt, everybody is amused; sein Gesang reist Alles mit sich sort, his singing throws every one into raptures; bu liebs, we Alles liebs (Sch.), thou lovest where everybody is loving. But in this case it must not be joined to any substantive or preposition.

Note. — One placed before proper names of persons, as in 'one James Buchanan,' 'one Jenny Lind,' is translated in these examples ein gewiffer James Buchanan, eine gewiffe Jenny Lind, and has always a comical force when the person is a well-known or celebrated one; as, one Fred. Schiller is said to have written this stuff (trash), ein gewiffer Friedrich Schiller foll biefes Beug geschrieben haben.

CHAPTER VII.

NUMERALS.

§ 238. Numerals are either definite (as two, three, the second, the third), or indefinite (as some, a few, all).

I. DEFINITE NUMERALS.

§ 239. Definite numerals are either Cardinal, indicating the number in which the class or species of persons or things spoken of exists, as one, two, three, etc.; or Ordinal, indicating the particular place which, in a number of things or persons spoken of, one of them takes, as the first, second, third, etc.; or Distributive, indicating 'how many at a time' of such persons or things are meant by the speaker, as two at a time, etc.; or distinctive or classifying, enumerating each person or thing in its turn, as first, secondly, etc.; or variative, answering to the question 'how many kinds?' as of two kinds, of three kinds; or multiplicative, answering to the question 'how many times each?' as simply, doubly, trebly, etc.; or reiterative, answering to the question 'how many times does the action take place?' as once, twice, thrice, etc.; or fractional, answering to the question 'what portion of a whole?' as one half, one third, one quarter.

§ 240. 1. Cardinal Numerals.

1.	ein, eine, ein, or eines, or	ie 29.	neunundzwanzig,
2.	zwei, two	30.	breißig,
3.	brei, three	31.	ein und breißig,
4.	vier, four	40.	vierzig,
	fünf, five	50.	filnfaig.
	seche, six	60.	fedgig, fiebgig, fieb
7.	fieben, seven	70.	flebaig, / re //222
8.	acht, eight	80.	achtzig,
9.	neun, nine		neunzig,
10.	zehn, ten		hundert,
11.	gehn, ten elf, eleven mölf, twelve		hundert (und) eine,
12.	awölf, twelve		hundert (und) fünfunb-
13.	hreizehn, thirteen		zwanzig,
14.	vierzehn, fourteen	∖∴150.	hundert (und) fünfzig,
	fünfzehn, fisteen	200.	zweihundert,
	sechzehn, sixteen		breihundert,
	stebzehn, seventeen		vierhundert,
18.	actzehn, eighteen		fünfhundert,
	neunzehn, nineteen		fechehundert,
	zwanzig, twenty	700.	flebenhunbert,
	ein und zwanzig, twenty-o	ne, 800.	achthunbert,
22.	zwei und zwanzig, [etc.,	etc. 900.	neunhunbert,
	breiundzwanzig,		tausend,
	vierundzwanzig,	1,100.	taufend einhundert,
	fünfundzwanzig,	2,000.	zweitaufenb,
	fecheundzwanzig,		zehntaufend,
	flebenundzwanzig,		hunderttausenb,
			eine Million.

The number 1,210,407 is pronounced eine Million (unb) juvishuntert (unb) jehn Zausend, (unb) vierbundert (unb) sieben. The words in parentheses may be, and always in rapid utterance are, omitted. The unb before 7, which shows that the teens are missing, is less often omitted. In the number 110, (sin) bundert unb jehn, and similar ones, the sin may also be omitted where no mistake is possible.

NOTE 1. Cardinal numbers are not declined, except six, which is declined like the indefinite article. Swei and brei have a Nominative, sweie, breie, and a Genitive and Dative, storier, storier, breier, breier, when not accompanied by a substantive; in the same way the numbers from four up to a million may have a Nominative, piere, funfe, etc., and a Dative in en, when used substantively; 20, ich bab' es funfen gesagt, er bat mit mehr als groangigen gesprochen. I have said it to five persons, he has spoken to more than twenty persons; it fprat der Rofentrange viere fur euer Beil und fur bas ihre (Sch.), I said four paternosters in behalf of your and her salvation; wenn 20,000 Thaler 6,000 heirathen wollen, fo werben ja bie fechfe nicht thoricht fein und ben zwanzigen einen Rorb geben (Less.), if twenty thousand dollars will marry six thousand, these six won't, I hope, be foolish enough to refuse the twenty; Er fabrt mit Secfen, he goes in a coach and six; Es find three acte ober neune, there are eight or nine of them. Still this is better avoided by the pupil, when a substantive may just as well be added. In ancient German swei had three genders; masc. sween, fem. swe, neut. awei.

NOTE 2. Sechsehn and siebsehn may also be pronounced and written sechsehn and siebensehn, and sunseen, sinssign, also sunsiehn, funsie, which is more common, as, for instance, in sunseense written eits.

NOTE 8. The numbers funders and taufend, when used substantively, are of the neuter gender, and then declined according to § 148. Million, Million, Trillion, etc. are feminines, and always employed with the indefinite article; as, some hundreds, thousands, millions, eine Million, einige Sunderse, Zaufende, Millionen.

NOTE 4. In simply counting one, two, three, sine is used for sin, when there is no substantive joined to it. There is a plural of sin, namely, bis Ginen, which has also a singular ber Gine, bis Gine, bas Gine (see § 286). The one—the other corresponds to ber Gine—ber Kabere, for which may also be substituted Giner, e, es—ber, bis, bas Kabere. (The word ber Kabere was, in ancient German, in use for ter Siveite, the second.) These words are substantively used, and only exceptionally as adjectives. Gin without any article is also sometimes, as in English, used instead of the same.

Examples. — Das Eine schl' ich und ertenn' es tlar (Sch.), one thing I seel and understand clearly; es waren swei Brüder — Einer war ein Arst, der Andere ein Apotheter, there were two brothers, the one was a physician, the other a druggist; stirbt dann auch Einer von uns, und bleibt nur Einer noch übrig, din der Eine dann ich (Klopet), then, when one of us dies, one only is lest, and I am the one; sehn Berge, dich von Lorderen voll, gitt einer mir voll Reben (Bürger), one mountain covered with grape-vines is worth to me ten mountains covered with laurels. Die Glode, sie donnert ein mächtiges Eins (Chamleso), the church-bell thundered a powerful one! Sind wir nicht Bürger und Schne von Einem Lande? (Sch.), are we not citizens and sons of the same country? Last mich so, it si sill one thing (the same). Die Leine weber (blachen alle Jahr' stori Schwein; das eine ist gestohen, das andre ist nicht sein (Popular Song), the linen-weavers kill each year two awine, the one is

stolen, the other is not theirs. Ein Bater hintersief stoeen (Gel.), a father left two heirs; stoe Schwalben sangen um die Wette (Gel.), two swallows contended in song; swei Bander geb ich dir (Gel.), two ribbons I give to thes. Und der Seraph stand feiernd am Eingang sweet umdustender Bedern (Klopel.), and the seraph stood leisurely at the entrance of two fragrant cedars.

NOTE 5. Die Eins, die Bwei, die Drei, etc., (plural die Einsen, die Bweien, etc.), denote the numbers one, two, etc., as a unity; as, die heil gen Babien liegen in der Bwolfe (Sch.), the holy numbers are contained in the number twelve; warum nennt ihr die Junfe eine heilige Bahi? (Sch.), why do you call the number five a holy number? Die Sieb nen und die Bebnen in der Karte.

Norm 6. By means of the suffixes et and ling, masculine substantives and adjectives are formed from cardinal numbers, indicative of age or number; as, ein Sechilger, eine Sechilgerin, a man, a woman of sixty (years of age); effer Bein, wine of 1811; die decifiger Jadre, the years from 30 to 40; er fieht in den Dreisigen, he is between thirty and forty (years of age). Ein Sechser, Dreier, a six, a three-penny-piece; ein Bebilling, Drilling, a twin, one of a triplet. Ein Einer, a one; ein Jehner, a ten; eine Jahl in den Einern, Bednern, Dundertern, Tuusendern, a number within the ones, tens, hundreds, thousands.

NOTE 7. Beibe, both, means two well-known persons or things together; as, beibe Sabe, both feet; beibe Sabe; Beibe Bruber (die beiben Bruber), both the brothers. Beibes tann geschehen, both things may happen. See § 255.

Note 8. Compound adjectives and substantives are formed with numerals; as, ein sweipfindiges Brot, a two-pound loaf; eine sechsfülge Annone, a six-inch gun; eine dreifstige Ruges, a three-ounce ball; ein vierediges Dreied ift unmöglich, a four-cornered triangle is impossible; ein Sweithalerschein, a two-dollar note.

NOTE 9. The English 'eleven hundred,' 'eighteen hundred,' 'twenty five hundred,' may be imitated; as, elfhundert, achtiehnhundert, funfundiwaniighundert. But not the English 'two seventy-five (275),' iweihundertfunfundiedig.

2. Distributive Numerals.

§ 241. Distributive Numerals are formed by the adverb je (each) and the cardinal numbers; as, je ein, e, ein, je zwei, je zwanzig, one, two, twenty at a time;—or the cardinal number is put twice with und between; as, zwei und zwei, brei und brei, by two, by three, two and two, three and three;—or zu with the dative of the cardinal number is used; as, zu zweien, zu breien, zu Hunderten;—or by compounds with weise; as, hundertweise, tausendweise, dugendweise.

Examples. - Je drei Rann bon ben Gefangenen wurden jufammengebunden,

the prisoners were tied together by threes. In den fanf Thoren steben je stank Mana Bache, at each of the sive gates are sive men on guard; wir geben zwei und zwei, und nicht im Gansemarsch, we are going two and two, and not in Indian slie (geese-march); die Zwiebeln werden zu Dreien (auf einmal) vertauft, the onions are sold by threes; die Menschen starben zu Dunderten, men died by hundreds. Zu Dusenden, dy dozens, zu Schoefen, im Schoef, im Andel, nach dem Mandel (by three-scores, by fisteens). Or, with standard numbers: dusendweise, schoefie, mandelweise, hundertweise, by dozens, three-scores, etc. Distributive relation is also expressed by the indefinite numeral jeder; as, jeder dritte Tag war ein Feberrag, every third day was a holiday; and by both the articles, as in English; as in der Zuser tostet einen Schilling das (less acceptable ein) Pfund, the sugar costs one shilling a pound (the pound), which is identical with 'a shilling each pound.'

8. Variative Numerals.

§ 242. Variative numerals, indicating how many different descriptions of persons or things are spoken of, are formed by adding the suffix let to the ancient genitive plural of the cardinal numbers; as.—

einerlei, of one kind, ameierlei, of two kinds, breierlei, of three kinds,

They are not declined.

viererlei, of four kinds, etc., vielerlei, of many different kinds, mancherlei, of several sorts.

4. Multiplicative Numerals.

§ 243. These are formed by adding fact (from the verb fügen) to the cardinal numbers; as, —

einfach, simple, einzeln, single, zweifach, double, twofold. boppelt, breisach, treble, threefold, viersach, soursold, etc., vielsach, mannigsach,

They are declined like, and are, adjectives; as, ein einfacher, zweisacher, breisacher Schild, a simple, double, treble shield; eine viersache, fünssache Haut, a four- or sive-sold skin; vielsaches Unrecht, manifold wrong; mannigsacher Betrug, various deception. Doppelt means twice the same, zweisach, of two different kinds; as, ein zweisaches Berbrechen, a twosold crime (for instance,

THEORETICAL PART.

arson and murder connected); der doppelte Betrag, the double amount (twice the simple). Einzeln, single, means one, in contradistinction to a number or collective notion; einfach, simple, means one, in contradistinction to double, twofold, or manifold, and therefore not luxurious, pretentious, grand; as, die einzelnen Staaten (or Einzelstaaten) sind unabhängig von der Union in Bezug auf ihre eigenen Angelegenheiten, the single states are independent of the Union with regard to their own affairs; einfache, anspruchslose Menschen, Häuser, Kleider, Sitten, simple, unassuming men, houses, clothes, manners.

Instead of einfach, swei-, drei-, biel-, mannigfach, may be also used the adjectives einfültig, sweifaltig, dreifaltig, vierfaltig, etc., biel-, mannigfaltig; as, hunderte faltige Frucht tragen (B.), to bear a hundred-fold fruit; vielfaltige Untersuchungen, various disquisitions, examinatious. But einfaltig has assumed exclusively the meaning of stupid, dull. Die Dreifaltigteit or Dreienigkeit is the Trinity.

Note 1. These numerals are also adverbially used in their predicative form; as, et hat mith inveifuc, ju hundertfaltig beleibigt, he has done me a twofold, nay, a hundred-fold wrong; — and predicatively; as, des Acilles Schild war neunflich.

Note 2. Instead of swelface, the older form swelface is more in use, and instead of swelfactig, the older form swelfactig almost exclusively. Whether fairing or fairing is to be used, depends in each particular case on the custom obtaining; hence the learner ought to abstain from the use of these forms, using the compounds with fact instead.

5. Reiterative Numerals.

§ 244. How many times an action takes place is indicated by the reiterative numeral adverbs. These are formed by adding mal to the cardinal numbers, and are not declined; as,—

einmal, once, once upon a time, zweimal, twice, two times, breimal, thrice, three times. viermal, four times, vielmal, many times, manchmal, sometimes. 265

NOTE 1. Einmal may have the accent on the first or on the second syllable. In the former case it is a numeral, in the latter an adverb of time (once upon a time), the former being, in contradictinction to several times, metrere Male, often written in two words: ein Mal, one time. All the rest of the able, often written may be thus written, and Male declined in the plural, to lay a greater stress upon the numeral; as, just, bret, pier Male (but seldom manche Male, vielle Male); ju juvien (or just) Malen; über feche Male, over (upwards of) six

23

times. 'So many times,' 'how many times,' is translated by (chiclmal, micvielmal, or fo viele Male, wie viele Mule. The German mand' liebes Rul is many a time. Fewer times, weniger Male. Once for all, ein fitr alle Rale (allemai). Over and over again, not putimal. Once more, not sinual, notmals.

NOTE 2. Adjectives may be formed from each of these adverbs by the suffix ig; as, ein einmaliger Befud, a single visit; ein breimaliges Pochen an ber Thure, a thrice-repeated knocking at the door.

NOTE 8. Multiplication is expressed thus: sweimal swei ift (find) vier, breimal brei ift (find) neun; twice two are four, three times three are nine; eine Babl gehnmal nehmen, or mit Rebn multipliziren (vervielfaltigen), to multiply a number by ten.

Division is expressed thus: steel in vier geht steelmal, two in four is contained twice; eine Babl mit vier dividiren (theilen), to divide a number by four.

Subtraction is expressed thus: swei ben bier bleibt swei, two from four leaves two; eine Bahl abziehen bon, etc.

Addition is expressed thus: strei und strei macht vier (giebt vier); brei ju (und) brei ift feche; eine Bahl ju einer andern addiren (bajurechnen).

6. Ordinal Numerals.

§ 245. These are, all of them, adjectives, and declined as such; as, ber, bie, bas erste, the first; ber, bie, bas siebzehnte, the seventeenth: -

	on committee		
1.	erfte, the first,	17.	flebzehnte,
2.	sweite, the second,		achtzehnte,
8.	britte, the third,		neunzehnte,
4.	vierte, the fourth,		zwanzigste,
5.	fünfte, the fifth,		einundzwanzigste, etc.
6.	sechste, etc.		breißigste,
7.	flebente,	40.	vierzigste,
8.	achte,		funfzigfte,
9.	neunte,		sechzigste,
10.	gehnte,		flebzigfte,
11.	elfte,		hundertste,
12.	zwölfte,	101.	hundertunberfte,
13.	breigehnte,	200.	zweihunbertfte,
14.	vierzehnte,	1,000.	taufenbfte,
15.	funfzehnte,		zweitaufenbfte,
16.	fechezehnte,		millionfte.

Note 1. An antiquated form for her sweite is her anhere, a relic of which is preserved in anherefull, one and a last (see § 240). When in English another is used in the meaning of one more, it is expressed in German by nederin; as, gehen Sie mix noch ein Slas Bein, give me another glass of wine. 'The other day' is expressed by neutidy (lately, newly), 'the other morning' by neutidy Morgens, 'the other evening' by neutidy Abends.

NOTE 2. In stating the day of the month, the ordinal number is employed adjectively; as, bas ift der erfie, jehnte Januar; der zweiundzwanzigste Jebruar ift Bashington's Geburtstag, the 22d of February is Washington's birthday; toir baben beute ben einunddreifigsten und lesten Dezember, we have to-day the 31st or last of December. Bas für ein Datum (Monatstag) ift beute? Der wievielste ift beute? der neunte dieses Monats, what day of the month is this? the ninth of this month.

But the number of the year is expressed, as in English, by the cardinal numerals; as, eintausend achtundert acht und funfis, or achtiehnhundert achtundfunfis, 1858. Only in solemn style we find: im eintausendachtundert und sweiten Juhre unseres herrn, in the 1802d year of our Lord.

NOTE 3. Names of princes and popes, as Rarl V., Joseph H., Sirtus V., are pronounced, as in English, Charles the Fifth, etc., Karl ber Junfte, Joseph ber Bweite, Sirtus ber Junfte.

NOTE 4. Dus erfte Mal, for the first time, the first time (das allererste Mal, the very first time); das jweite Mal, the second time; and so on; das lette Mal, the last time; das allerlette Mal, the very last time; ein erstes, zweites Mal, a first, a second time, and so on.

NOTE 5. Sometimes sentences occur like the following: totr singen selbeters (selbenter, selbender) ben &. nach B., I went with three (two, one) persons besides from A. to B. (I being the fourth, third, second). Selbender has sometimes, in ancient poetry, only the meaning of together, without regard to how many persons there are.

NOTE 6. The English the last but one (but two, three) is rendered thus: ber porteste (ber brittleste, ber viertleste).

7. Distinctive Numerals.

§ 246. These are adverbs, formed from the ordinals by adding ene; as, —

erstens (or erstlict), first, or in the first place, aweitens, secondly, or in the second place, brittens, thirdly, or in the third place, viertens, fourthly, or in the fourth place.

These numerals enumerate each person or thing of several,

in its proper place; still they constitute only an imaginary series, in the order which the speaker imparts to them; when there is a question of a real series or order, the adverbs zureft, zuzwiett, zuviett, zulest, are in use, corresponding to the English first, second, etc., when used in an adverbial or predicative meaning; as, Charles came first, second was Ernest, Lewis spoke third, Rarl tam zuerst, Ernst zu zweit (not als ber zweite), Ludwig zudritt.

8. Fractional Numerals.

§ 247. These are substantives, formed from the ordinal or cardinal numbers by adding the suffix tel or theil with the following slight changes in the stem; as,

> ein Drittel, Drittheil, a third (part), ein Biertel, Biertheil, a fourth, ein Fünstel, Fünstheil, a fisth, ein Sechstel, Sechstheil, a sixth, ein Zehntel, Zehntheil, a tenth, ein Zwanzigstel, Zwanzigtheil, a twentieth, ein hundertstel, Hunderttheil, a hundredth, ein Tausendstel, Tausendtheil, a thousandth.

They are declined according to the eighth paradigm (§ 148).

NOTE 1. Instead of ein Sweitel, the neuter adjective ein Julies is used (the adjective halber, e, es being declined, like all adjectives). But in calculations ein halb is used to form the following compound numerals, which are adverbs, but may be adjectively inflected:—

ein halb, one half, anderthalb (or ein und ein halb), 1½, britt(e)halb (or zivei und ein halb), 2½, viert(e)halb (or drei und ein halb), 3½, and so on.

And before the proper names of towns and countries balb is always used in the place of halbes; as, halb Beffon, half Boston; halb Raffahufetts, half Massachusetts. And so in the planes, halb Pferb, halb Effigator, half horse, half alligator; halb Drade twar's, halb Schlange (Sch.), it (the monster) was half dragon, half snake; halb gog fie ibn, halb fant er hin (G.), half she drew him, half he sank himself.

NOTE 2. The mathematical formula } is translated ein Gintel.

Nore 8. The adjective inflection anderthalber Scheffel, britthalbes Raf, 14 bushels, 24 measures (pecks), is proper to common life and comic poetry.

Examples. - Rivei Drittel, two thirds; funf Sedfel, five sixths; anderthalb Boll, one inch and a half; britthatb Meilen (brittehalbe Meile in popular speech), 21 miles; funf und ein Achtel Pfund, 51 pounds; vier Pfund und brei Behntel, 44 pounds; neun Ellen und ein(e) balb(e), 94 yards (ells).

NOTE 4. The hours of the day are indicated in the following manner: -

Beide Beit ift es ? wieviel Ubr ift es ? what o'clock is it?

Es ift fanf libr, it is five o'clock.

Es ift ein Biertel auf feche, it is a quarter past five.

Es ift halb feche, it is half past five. Es ift brei Biertel auf feche, it is a quarter to six.

Es ift ein Biercel vor feche, it is a quarter to six.

Es ift in gehn Minuten feche, it is ten minutes to six.

Es ift funf Minuten nad (aber) fede, it is five minutes past six.

Es ichlagt Eine, Brei, Drei, etc., the clock strikes 1, 2, 8, etc.

Instead of the above expressions the following may also be found: finf the und ein balb, ba; funf Uhr und ein Biertel, 51; funf Uhr, jehn Minuten, 5: 10; es ift jehn Minuten ber (to) feche. 'It is noontime' is translated es ift Mittag, es ift awolf (Ubr); 'it is midnight,' es ift Mitternacht, gwolf Uhr (Rachts). 3ch tam um diefe (ju biefer) Beit - um jwolf, balb ein Uhr, ju Rittag, um Ritternacht, bes Morgens, etc.

II. INDEFINITE NUMERALS.

§ 248. The following are comprised under the class of indefinite Numerals: ---

fein, feine, fein, no, not any, jeber, e, es, every, each, jeglicher, e, es, every, each, jedweder, e, es, every, each, aller, e, es, all, the whole,

mancher, e, es, many a, some. einiger, e, es, some, several, etlicher, e, es, some, several, vieler, e, es, much. meniger, e, es, little, few.

They are declined as adjectives, with the few limitations mentioned below.

§ 249. Rein, keine, kein, no, none, no one, not a, not any (see §§ 233, 236), is declined exactly like the article tin (see § 171). But when predicatively or substantively used, it assumes the ancient declension, feiner, feine, feines.

Examples. - Dich forest tein Sturm (Sch.), no storm terrifies thee; ich tenne 28*

hier teinen (Sch.), I do not know anybody here; so hat et denn deschlossen, was tein Jürst beschließen sollte (Sch.), thus he has then resolved, as no prince ought to resolve; da ward es tlar, sie begte teinen Neith (Uhl.), so it appeared that she entertained no envy; es ist teine tleine Arbeit, it is no small work; tein Negen hilfe, tein Ibau, tein Dust, tein Trunt will mehr gedeihn (Kerner), no rain avails, no dew, no mist, no drink will any more avail; Gottes Freund und teines Renschen Iseinh (Prov.), God's friend and no man's enemy; tein Wunder, no wonder; es til tein Böhm (Sch.), he is not a Bohemian.

For the use of Reiner, e, es as a substantive, see § 286. This use does not obtain in the plural; but when feiner, e, es is used predicatively, or adjectively with the substantive omitted, it may have a plural; as, Gefpenster, fagt the later es giebt feine, spectres, say you? but there are none; nad Patrenen fragst but es sinb (beren) feine im ganjen lager, you ask for cartridges,—there are none in the whole camp.

For teiner von beiben, see § 256.

The English not a single is nicht ein einziger, or tein einziger. I have not a single cent, ich habe teinen einzigen (nicht einen einzigen) Cent.

§ 250. Sever, jeglicher, and jedweder, each, every, any, anybody, are used both adjectively, but in this case never with the indefinite article, and substantively, and in this case with or without the indefinite article. They can only be employed in the singular number. Seglicher and jedweder are rather antiquated, and occur only in poetry.

EXAMPLES. — Seinen lauf hat jeder Bach, jeder Strom hat seine Sphäre (Rückert), every brook has its course, every stream its sphere; Ein Jeder ik seines Giûts und Unglads Schmied (Prov.), everybody is the artistoer of his own so-time or misfortune: Jeder braucht seine Seden, und Jeder ift doch nur auf eigne Beise glatich (C.), every one uses his gists, and still every one is happy only in his own manner; Ein Jeder bört's, doch Jeder jagt (Bärger), every one hears it, but every one is afraid; ein Jeglicher dentr nur sich selbs zu dertiedigen (G.), everybody thinks only of satissying himself; jedvede Tugend, Königin, dast du auf deinem Ibron verherrlicht (Sch.), queen, thou hast on thy throne ennobled every virtue; jedes Ral, every time.

NOTE 1. The English 'he has lost his every cent,' cannot be imitated, except in this way: er hat jeden Cent versoren.

NOTE 2. Jedes is sometimes used of persons meaning everybody, but only in the popular tongue; as, Jedes von den beiden Cheleuten, von den Geschwistern, each of the consorts, brothers and sisters.

Einen ben Anderen or der Gine ben Anderen.

§ 251. Aller, e, es expresses both number - as in willfommen

Stirry 10 1 mt.

waren alle Gäste (Sch.), all guest were welcome (and is in this case used only as a plural) — and quantity; as in aller Bein, alle Belt, alles Basser, all the wine, all the world, all the water (and is in this case used only as a singular); and, when sollowed by a pronoun, is not declined; as, all mein Geld, all my money, all dieser Bein, all this wine; the seminine gender only excepted, which may have alle; as in alle eure Güte, all your kindness.

The definite article is never placed after all, as is done in English; as, all the world, alle Beit; all the money, alles Geld; aller Bein, all the wine. But when alle is placed after the substantive, the article may be employed; as, die Binde, die Begen, alle lagen in tiefer Ruh (Uhl), the winds and waves lay all in a deep spell; erft werden die Beiten alle vergeben (Klopst.), first all the worlds will decay; die Glieder alle gerathen in einen Stand der Ruhe (Less.), all the limbs settle down in a state of repose.

Note 1. If is never employed in the signification of the whole, but the English all used in this sense is translated by han; as in, all the year round, bas gange Jahr; all the day, den gangen Lag; in all Venice, in gang Benedig; gang England håtet meines Retters Thore (Sch.), all England watches my prison gates;—the saying alle Bett (die gange Bett) alone excepted. In ancient German, the English use obtained; thus, in the Bible: alle Schrift von Gott eingegeben, etc. Sayings like 'he is all energy,' 'the house was all one blaze,' 'the city was all a cometery,' are translated: er ift gang Energie, das Haus war gang (Ales) eine Flamme, die Stadt war gang ein Kirchhof.

Note 2. The English every is expressed by alle in the following and similar phrases: every year, every day, every month, every three hours, every twenty paces, every second year, alle Jahre, alle Tage, alle Monate, alle brei Stunden, alle judanjig Schritte, alle jude! Jahre (or aller jude; Jahre, brei Stunden, judanjig Schritte): as, et weiß Allee und jantt mit Allee, he knows everything and quarrels with everybody. Aller Anfang ift schwer, every beginning is difficult (Prov.). Ginen Lag um ben andern, jeden juditen Lag, every second day.

NOTE 3. All of us, all of them, etc., is in German wir alle, sie alle, etc.

Note 4. Alle and gan; agree in expressing a unity, but the former looking more to the individuals composing it, the latter to their belonging together. The English does not make this difference as prominent as the German. Ammtider, e, es is a stronger expression for alle, and gesammt a stronger one for gan;, both declinable with the definite article and the former also without any article, — the former only in the plural, the latter only in the singular; as, bit sammtiden Freunde, Enwelenden (sammtide Freunde, etc.), all his friends, all (persons) present; der gesammte Radias, das gesammte Deer, die gesammte Familie, the entire bequest, army, samily. The adverbe belonging to them are

147

fammtlid, in a body, without exception, and ganglid, gang unb gar, entirely, wholly.

NOTE 5. Elle is in the popular tongue used to express at an end, finished; as, das Concert ift alle, the concert is finished; das Bier ift alle, there is no more been.

NOTE 6. Elles das, all this, all these things, has an old Dative alle, which appears in bei alledem, after all; mit alle dem, with all this; in alle dem, in all this; troft alledem, in spite of all.

§ 252. Mancher, e, es, many a, some, not a few, signifies an indefinite plurality, while vieler, e, es (much, many, not few) is only stronger, but has the same meaning. Mancher is used in the singular (with the meaning many a), and in the plural (with the meaning many), never with the definite article, but sometimes in the singular with the indefinite article; as, manch' ein Mann, manch' eine Frau, manch' ein Haus. Mancher and Manches are also employed substantively.

EXAMPLES. — Da hauft manch' fühner Aur (Uhl.), there dwells many a bold eagle; the werder manchen alten Freund (manch' einen Freund) begrüßen (Sch.), you will meet many an old acquaintance; wie manche Racht ich den Rond schot etwartet (babe), und wie manchen Rorgen die Sonne (G.), how many a night I expected there the moon's rising, and how many a morning the sun's; Ramcher will Allen gefüllen, many a one tries to please everybody; Ranches diether ungesagt, many things better remain untold; Ranche behaupten, some people assert.

§ 253. Einiger, e, es, some, signifies a small number or quantity of persons or things; as, Sie machte einige scherzhaste Anmertungen (G.), she made some facetious remarks; einiges Geld, einigen Muth haben, einige Liebe beweisen, to possess some money, to be possessed of some courage, to show some kindness; Einige sind trant, some (of them) are sick.

Instead of siniger, e, es, sometimes estimet, e, es occurs, which is rather antiquated; as, estimes aber fiel auf den Beg (Luth.), some (of the seed) fell by the wayside. Estvelder, e, es, with the same meaning, is obsolete.

Giniges and etsiques occur substantively, but neither the masculine nor the feminine in the singular.

Etwas is frequently used for einiger, e, es; etlicher, e, es; it is indeclinable, but suffers prepositions to be connected with it; as, mit etwas Gebuld, with some patience. It is never joined to a

y worsh in fout

THEORETICAL PART.

plural substantive. The plural, einige and etside, is frequently omitted, the plural of the substantive, without any article, expressing sufficiently the notion of some; as, er as Kirschen, he ate some cherries; geben Sie mir Bücher, give me some books; hast du Aepsel, have you some apples?

Einige — Andere, substantively used, corresponds to the English some (persons) — others (other ones); as, Einige sagen Ja, Andere Nein, Niemand giebt seine Gründe, some say ay, others no, nobody utters his reasons.

Einiger, e, es never occurs in the signification of the English any (§§ 231–233), although many Germans in America use it thus. This use, in the modern language obsolete, obtained in ancient German; as, Rarl V. hatte versprochen, ben landgrafen von Hessen, nicht in ein i ger Gefangenschaft zu halten, lief aber dann in der Urtunde das Bort ein i ger in ewiger verändern, um ihn trochem gefangen zu batten, Charles V. had pledged himself not to keep the Landgrave of Hesse "in any captivity," but asterwards had in the document the word any altered into eternal, in order to keep him as a prisoner. Laum einige, scarcely any.

NOTE 1. When the English some means an individual person or thing, not an indefinite small number or quantity, it must be translated by ein or ityend ein; as, some friend has told me, ein Freund hat mir gesagt; I have read it in some book, ich habe es in irgend einem Buche gesesen.

NOTE 2. The English any is not translated in sayings like these: Is there any news? find Nachrichten bu? if any money should have been lost, wenn Gelb (wenn ja Gelb) berloren gegangen fein follte.

§ 254. Biel, much, many, and wenig, little, plural few, are sometimes used without inflection (and so is their comparative mehr and weniger always used), with substantives in the singular and plural numbers. This is always the case when they are expressive of quantity; as, viel Bein, viel Liebe; Maria hat not viel verborgene Freunde (Sch.), Mary has still plenty of secret friends; in wenig Stunden tann die Nachricht da sein (Sch.), in the space of a few hours the news can be here; wenig Beisheit, wenig Schulden, no great amount of wisdom, of debts; mehr Licht, mehr Leute, weniger Rohlen, more light, a greater crowd, less coal; ich habe beren mehr (weniger). I have more (less) of them. But when denoting a number, pointing more to the

individuals composing it, or the many portions of a whole, viele, wenige, mehre (meorece), are declined in the plural, and viel menia, even in the singular, - in the latter case often without any remarkable difference from the predicative form (viel, etc.); as, viele Manner, Frauen, Rinder maren verfammelt; vieles Trinfen (much-repeated drinking) schwächt ben Magen; er hatte vielen Berbruß, he had many vexations (Berbruff and most abstract nouns having no plural form, the declined form of vici is the only means of expressing a repeated action in the same direction). Biele waren eingelaben, aber Benige waren gefommen, many had been invited, but few had come; menige Sabre tonnen Bieles anbern, a few years can change many things; es broucht nicht viel Borte (or vieler Borte) (Sch.), there is no need of many words. Biel occurs in the modern declension in phrases like biefes viele Schreien bilft nichts, all this crying is useless; er hat bes vielen Welbes sich bemächtigt, he has forcibly taken possession of that great sum of money.

Note 1. Mehrere is in use with the meaning several; still with many writers and in common life it occurs also as plural of mehr. Beniger has no plural. The superlative der meiste and der trenigste, unlike the English custom with most and fences (least), is never used without the definite article; as, die meisten Böster Europas, most nations of Europe; die wenigsten keute wusten davon, sew people had heard of it. These two superlatives dister from all others in that they cannot be predicatively employed with am (see § 194); as, die guten Bäder in der Bibliothet waren die meisten, die schecken die wenigsten (by no means am meisten, am wenigsten).

Three adverbs are formed from der meiste, namely, meist, most, for the most part, am meisten, to the greatest extent, and meistens, most, mostly, most times; and two of der wenigste, namely, am wenigsten and wenigstens, the former meaning least, the latter at least. Minder and mindest denote a lesser degree or internative, not a smaller number; the adverb mindest, least, occurring only in compound words, and mindestens being equivalent to wenigstens. At most is höchstens; to the utmost, and s' Leusterste; not in the least, nicht im Mindesten; no less, nicht minder, eben so seine sieden, nicht min Mindesten; no less, nicht minder, eben se seine seinen.

Note 2. There is the same difference between trenig and ein trenig, as between little and a little, few and a few; the former being the opposite of viet, the latter of nichts, and about equal in quantity or number to ettras and singer. The plural of ein trenig is sings trenige, or einige. Examples: sin trenig Bein,

om I not or voll,

THEORETICAL PART.

Sals, Sebuld, a little wine, some salt, patience; einige (wenige) Thalet, a few dollars.

NOTE 3. More, when it means besides, is translated by noth; as, Give me three more dollars (three dollars more), giet mir noth brei Thaler.

As much more, as many again, is noth einmal foriel; once more, noth einmal. Much in expressions like much as he was angry, is translated by fehr; as, so sehr er and argerlich war, etc. As an adverb increasing the quality, viel is connected with comparatives only; not with the positive degree of adjectives. Examples: very valuable, sehr twenthooli; much more valuable, viel twenthoolier; very negligent, sehr nachlässig; much better, viel besser. But with participle, particularly the Past participle, viet occurs; as, viel besser, much occupied.

So much the better is um so besser, more seldom um so viel besser. Um Bieles besser means far better. Much the best (by far the best) is beitveitem (weitaus) bet beste.

§ 255. Beibe, both, is a plural, and used in the singular only in the neuter; as, Beibes, both things. It admits the definite article, but never after itself when connected with substantives; there being no remarkable difference between bit beiben and beibe. See § 240, note 7.

Examples. — 3ch tenne beide Bruder, and die beiden Bruder; diese beiden Thurme, both these towers, steeples; die beiden Sande, Jugen, Ohren, Seiren, and beide Sande, Jugen, Ohren, Seiren, and beide Sande, Jugen, Ohren, Seiren; Beide ift möglich, both things are possible; Beide tumen schweigend herunter (G.), both came down in silence.

NOTE 1. Beide never takes a partitive genitive after it, like both of us, wir beide, but the genitive must in German be made to agree with beide in case; as fie find heute beide in der Kirche gewesen, both of them were in church to-day; diese Bilder beide, both these books.

NOTE 2. Expressions like 'both silver and gold,' 'both the harbor and the river were frozen over,' are to be translated: fowohl Silber ale Gold; ber Safen fowohl ale auch ber Blug waren (ber Safen und ber Blug waren beibe) jugefroren.

§ 256. Either and neither — the numerals, not the conjunctions (see § 283. 1) — correspond to Einer von Beiden, Jeder von Beiden, and Keiner von Beiden. The words von Beiden, however, are only added when the sentence would otherwise be unintelligible.

Examples. - Bir wollen beibe in die Stadt gehen, jeder (bon Beiden) auf einem anderen Bege, we will go to the city, both of us, either his way. Einer bon euch beiden muß weichen, one of you must yield; Dos und Efel firitten fich,

wer am meisten Welsheit hatte, teiner (von beiden) siegte, teiner wich (Pfesel), ox and ass were quarrelling which of the two was the wiser, — neither conquered, neither yielded; welchen bon beiden Wegen soll ich wählen? teinen von beiden, which road shall I take? neither; auf jeder von beiden Seigen, auf jeder Seite, on either side; einer (jeder) von beiden Wegen, either way; teiner von beiden Wegen, beide Wege nicht, neither way. Welchen von beiden wus Begen, wichten wus ich nehmen? Beide sind gut, whom (which) of both must I take? either is good.

§ 257. If a number or quantity is approximatively stated, the following prepositions and adverbs are used: etwa, ungefult, an, gegen, about; beinahe, fast, ziemlich, nahezu, nearly, next to; taum, scarcely, not nearly; nicht ganz, not quite; über, above, upwards of, over; unter, under, downwards of; bis, to. 'Thirty and odd,' forty and odd,' etc., are expressed by breisig und einige, einige und vierzig, einige vierzig.

Examples. — Etwa ein Jundert, about one hundred; ungefahr hundert, about a hundred; an tausend, gegen zweitausend, in the vicinity of one thousand, two thousand; beinahe halb, sast ein Drittel, ziemlich alle, nabezu der ganze, sust to nothing; haum einige, scarcely any; taum ebensoviele ale, scarcely as many as; nicht ganz eis Uhr, not quite eleven o'clock; über ein Dubend, upwards of a dozen; über tausend, above one thousand; unter funfzig, under sitty; sedzig bie siedzig, strom sixty to seventy; bor etwa fünf Jahren, about sive years ago; nicht einmal zwanzig, not even as much as twenty; bie zu hundert Jus boch, as high as one hundred set; eine volle Nilion, sul one million.

CHAPTER VIII.

ADVERBS.

§ 258. Adverbs are inflexible words, which qualify a predicate (a verb, wherefrom they derive their name, or an adjective, or other adverb) by expressing the place, or the time, or the manner, or the intensity, frequency, or mood, of the action; as, er fommt hierher, he comes hither; es ift jest Zeit, it is now time; se single for it for er ertrantt, Charles has fallen very sick; wir sind häufig zugegen, we are frequently present; ihr werdet wohl unterliegen, you will probably succumb.

§ 259. Adverbs are therefore to be classed with the objects, and have the same value as a substantive with a preposition; as, he acts prudently (with prudence), he lives here (in this town), he will soon come (in some days). This is the reason why, for want of a corresponding adverb, the German expresses many English adverbs by substantives preceded by prepositions, and vice versa; as, happily, jum Glüd; abroad, in ber Frembe; home, nach hause; indeed, in her That;—jugleich, at the same time; diesselfeits, on this side; senseits, on that (the other) side; he Damen threrseits, the ladies on the other side (hand); allmälig, by degrees; nächstens, by and by; gegenwärtig, at present; unterwegs, on the way.

§ 260. Beside the primitive adverbs, which are either roots or inflected stems, or compounds of two or more of them, and the substantives with prepositions (adverbial objects), there is another class, constituting the majority of adverbs, formed from adjectives (see §§ 195, 196), each adjective in its predicative form being capable of serving as an adverb. Some adjectives, however, and also a few substantives, are changed into adverbs by means of the suffix lid or lings, of which a complete list is given below; each of them having, besides, the simple form of an adverb, with a somewhat different meaning.

1. Such as are formed from adjectives:-

```
#årmlic,
              poorly, miserably,
                                       (arm, poor,)
*bitterlid,
              bitterly.
                                       bitter, bitter, disagreeably, of a bitter taste,
                                       erft, first, before that,
 erfilid.
              firstly,
              eternally,
                                       etoig, eternally, for ever,
 eroialid.
              indeed, it is true.
                                       frei, freely, outspoken, openly,
 freilid.
              entirely, wholly,
*alnılid,
                                       gans, entire, quite,
 actriflid, †
              certainly.
                                        getpif, for certain, certainly,
              morosely.
#gramlic,
                                       (gram, averse,)
 gutlich,
              amicably,
                                        gut, well.
 hedlid,
              highly.
                                       bod, high, highly, to a great height,
 tlåglid,
              cleverly, smartly,
                                        tiug, prudently.
#tarilid,
              newly, lately,
                                       fury, shortly, briefly, small,
#långlich,
              oblongly,
                                       lang, long, lange, a long time,
```

```
#lieblich.
              lovely.
                                        fieb. dearly.
 ledialid.
              merely,
                                        (ledia, rid of, singly,)
#leidlich,
              tolerably.
                                        (leid, sorry, sad),
              newly, lately,
 neulid.
                                        neu, new.
                                       offen, openly, frankly,
#åffenelid.
              publicly.
                                        reich, richly.
*reidlid.
              sufficiently.
                                        rein, clean, purely, merely.
#reinlic.
              cleanly.
                                        former, heavily.
 fotverlid,
              hardly,
 ficerlic.
              surely.
                                        ficter, securely,
 treulid,
               faithfully,
                                        treu, faithfully, truly,
                                        (wahr, truly, in a veritable manner,)
 mabrlich.
               verily, indeed,
 weislich.
               shrewdiv.
                            smartly, weife, wisely, prudently,
                  sagely.
```

williglish,† willingly, lief, gladly, willingly, voluntarily, submissively.

Those marked thus * have now become adjectives, and are inflected as such.

Erm, gram, (sbig, lsb, wahr, do not occur adverbially used.

2. Such as are formed from substantives by the suffix lich:—

```
*augenblidlich, instantaneously.
                                          *måndlich, orally.
#ausbradlich, expressly,
                                          *naturally, of course, naturally,
*abfictlich, intentionally,
                                          *foriftlio, in writing,
*begüglich, relatively,
                                          #ffundlich, hourly,
                                          *taglich, daily,
#eidlich, upon oath,
 folglid, consequently.
                                          *wochtlich, weekly.
*iåbrlich, yearly, every year,
                                          *poradalid,
                                                          chiefly, principally,
                                          *hauptfachlich,
#fånfilid, artificially.
*monaclid, monthly.
                                           binfictlich, as regards, as to.
```

Zugenblidlich and the others with an asterisk (*) are also adjectives.

3. Such as are formed from participles by the suffix lin :-

```
fiehentlich, suppliantly,
freventlich, frivolously,
gestiffentlich, deliberately,
gelegentlich, by and by,

Only hossentlich is not, at the same time, adjectively used.
```

4. With the suffix lings:—

blindlings, blindly, menthlings, assassin-like, jählings, precipitously, tittlings, in a riding position, astride, thefings, headlong, fhrittlings, step by step.

NOTE. — The following adverbs are derived from substantives, adjectives, and participles by means of the termination s: (des) Morgens, in the morning; (des) Abends, in the evening; (des) Lags, in the day; (des) Raches, in the night;

THEORETICAL PAR

(bes) Bermittags, in the forenoon, A.M.; (bes) Rachmittags, in the afternoon, P.M.; rings, round (about); anfangs, in the beginning; lints, on the left; rechts, on the right; bereits, already; flets, continually; befonders, separately, particularly, especially; anders, otherwise, else; cilends, in haste; suferends, visibly; âbrigens, for the rest; erstens, in the first place; sweitens, etc., böchstens, chones, meistens, etc., on which see § 261, note 2; flugs, in a hurry; seitlebens, all one's lifetime. augenblids, in a moment.

I. ADVERBS OF MANNER.

§ 261. All adjectives, with a few exceptions, and all participles, past and present, which have, by usage, adopted an adjective meaning, are employed as adverbs of manner in their predicative form, in the positive as well as in the comparative and superlative (see §§ 195, 196, and 191, note 1). Examples: ber Bogel fingt schön, schöner als andere, am schönsten unter allen (or, when the absolute superlative is made use of, auss Schönste), the bird sings beautifully, more beautifully than others, most beautifully of all (most beautifully). Traurig tönt das Glödlein nieder, schauerlich der Leichenschor (Uhl.), sadly sounds the bell downwards, awfully the choir of the funeral.

NOTE 1. In a few phrases the adverb of the absolute superlative may be formed analogously to the adverb of the positive; as, er taft Gie freundlichft grufen (auf's Freundlichfte), he greets you moet kindly; ich bante berglichft, I thank you with all my heart; er war innigst gerührt, he was most deeply touched; die Zeier war auferft erhebend, the celebration was most rousing; ich bin bochft gufrieden, I am highly contented; er ift meift ju Saufe, he is moetly at home; ber ergebenft Unterzeichnete, your humble subscriber; ber rubmlichft befannte Berr R., the much renowned Mr. N.; er ift långst jurudgetehrt, he is long ago back; der nachftbefte, nachftichlechtefte, the next best, next worst. The same form obtains in compound words ; as, ber befigelaunte Menich, the best-humored man; ber ichlechteftsahlende Runde, the worst-paving customer; bas ichnellftlaufende Pferd, the quickest race-horse; ber wildeft aussehende Theil Des Lundes, the wildest-looking portion of the country; die armlichft wohnenden Theile ber Bevolterung, the portions of the population most poorly lodged; ber iconfigebaute Rorper, the finest-built body ; bas reinlichft gefegte Bimmer, the room swept cleanest; ber leichtefigehende Wogen, the carriage running easiest; die bestgesinnten leute, the most loyal people, etc., etc.

NOTE 2. A few adverbs form their absolute superlative by the affix ens, all of them reserved for peculiar significations:—

bådfiens, at the most, meifiens, for the most part, to the greatest extent, toenigfiens, at least, mindefiens, at the very least, etcfiens, at the soonest, früheftens, not before, fpåteftens, at the latest,

tanglens, at the longest,
naddlens, shortly, very soon, one of
these days,
erfens, in the first place,
tegens, in the last place,
befiens, in the best manner,
(dentens, in the finest manner.

The last two are used only in some complimentary phrases; as, ich empfehle mich bestens, I greet you (in taking leave) most humbly; ich bante schönstens, I thank you most kindly. All of the above words may assume an increased sorce by prefixing after; as, afterböckens, at the very best; aftermindestens, at the very, very least.

NOTE 8. The following form their comparatives and superlatives from other stems:—

Positive. Comparative. Superlative.
twohl or gut, well, besser, twohler, better, am besten, best, balb, soon.

eber, balber, sooner, am ehesten, balbesten, soonest.

both, soon, eper, bulber, sooner, am epere, bulber, soonest.

gern, gladly, willingly, there, more willingly, am tiebfen, most willingly.

Bohl is only used of health and luck; as, es geht mir toohl, I am doing well; er fiblt fich toohl, he feels well; — and in a few compound adverbs and participles; as, toohltbatig, beneficent, toohltballend, benevolent, toohlgefinnt, toohlmennend, well-meaning, toohlbabend, well to do, toohlgefiftet, well prepared, etc.

Gern is in English often expressed by the verb to like; lieber, um liebsten, by to prefer, to like best. (See § 268.)

NOTE 4. In some particular cases the relative superlative is formed by the prefix ju; as, juerff, (at the) first; juieff, (at the) last; jundoff, next, in the next place; jundoferff, first of all; junderff, uppermost; junnerff, lowest, juneiff, mostly.

Note 5. No other adverbs have the comparative and superlative degree, with the exception of oft, often, ofter, oftest, am Deftesten; selten, seldom, seltener, seltens, am Geitensten; sebr, mehr, hochs. Of local adverbs a kind of comparative and superlative may be formed by joining to them mehr or weiter, am meisten or am weitesten; as, oben, weiter oben, am weitesten oben; unten, weiter unten, am weitesten unten (hinten, born, seitebarts); am meisten rechts, lints, rate weitest weiter, vorwärts, vorwärts,

§ 262. Beside the adverbs of manner formed from adjectives, among which only a small number belong to the other classes of adverbs, and the adverbs among the numerals (§ 241, etc.), and the pronouns (§ 213, Note 2), the following are exclusively employed as such:—

) minh

THEORETICAL PART.

fo, thus, so eigentlich, properly speaking, as it were toie, how, as fo ju fagen, ebenfo, in the same way, just as (so) aleichfam. gerudefo, exactly so, just so gewiffermafen, in some measure anders, otherwise, else un'aerechnet (with accus.), not countfonft, otherwise, else ing, excepting ausichlieflich (with gen.), exclusive of mebi. well etted', perhaps, somehow, anyhow alles mitgegablt, all told irgend, perhaps, somehow, anyhow alles gerechnet. bergebene, in vain alles eingerechnet, umfonft', in vain, gratis Alles in Allem, blindlings, blindly; and others in lings. einschließlich, inclusive of eilende, in huste in diefer Begiehung, in this relation; allein', alone and similar ones. sufebende, visibly in diefer Berbindung, in this connection; folgendermafen, in the following way and similar ones. gern, willingly in diefer Rudficht, as regards, as to fourentveife, in hordes in dieser hinsicht, in this respect gladliderweife, fortunately ausdrud'lich, expressly ungladlicherweife, unfortunatelv, etc. bon felbft, of itself meinerfeite, feinerfeite, unfrerfeite, etc .. abiidtlid, on purpose, intentionally on my, on his, on our part mit Bleif, ebenfalls, likewise mit gutem Borbebacht, allerfeits, at all hands, on all sides bem Inscheine nach, to all appearance allenfulls, perhaps, if much jum Scheine, seemingly andernfulle, im Gegentheil, contrariwise fcheinbar, jedenfulls, anyhow, at any rate im Ernft(e), in earnest in Unsebung (with genit.), as regards im Scherg, in jest.

II. ADVERBS OF PLACE.

§ 263. 1. Direction of motion in general is expressed by her (from elsewhere into the vicinity of the speaker), and hin (from the speaker to another place).

These adverbs cannot be translated in English, except in a few phrases; such as fomm her, come here (hither, hitherwards); geh hin, go there (thither, thitherwards); her mit dem Becher! hither with (bring hither) the cup! hin ist alle meine Krast (Schwab.), all my force is gone;—and in cases where the compound adverbs wohin? woher? are separated; as, wo ist er her? where does he hail from? wo gehst du hin? where do you go to? der Bote geht läglich zwischen meinem und seinem

bauft hin und her, the messenger goes every day to and fro between his house and mine.

2. The adverbs compounded with hin and her combine the notion of the other component with their own. A man in a room will bid another one standing outside, fomm herein, walk in! and another one within, whom he orders out, get hinaus, go out! while, when himself outside, he will bid another one to enter a room thus: get hinein, go in! and order him to come out thus: fomm heraus, come out from there! The most frequent compound adverbs of this kind with a local signification are:—

herab, down(ward) here heran, up to here, on herauf, up here, up hither heraus, out (from) here, hence herbei, near (up to the speaker)

herein, in here (in hither)
heraber, over here (over hither)
herum, round, about (ending here)
herunter, down here (down hither)
herber, forward (out hither)
hersu, near (up to the speaker)

hinab, down(ward) there hinan, up to there, on, onwards hinauf, up there (up thither) hinaus, out there (out thither)

hindurch, through (through there) hindin, in there (in thither) hindber, over there (over thither) hinum, round, about (ending there) hinumer, down there (down thither)

hingu, near (away from the speaker).

Note. — The above adverbs can as a rule be joined only to verbs expressing movement, direction from one place to another, or transition from one state to another; not to verbs expressing repose, or a remaining in the same condition or place. There are other prepositions, and also adverbs and nouns, that are combined with her and hin into adverbs; they will be found among the following adverbs of place, time, causality, intensity, and mood. The German language is richer than almost any other in adverbs, particularly adverbs of place, and it requires constant attention to employ them aright.

- 3. The following is as complete a list as possible of all the remaining adverbs of place, classified according to their peculiar character:—
- a) Such as convey the idea of repose, or of a remaining in the same condition or place, and can therefore be joined only to verbs expressive of locality; as, stehen, sein, liegen, sign, etc. (But, on the other hand, some of these verbs may be joined to adverbs of direction; as, es steht bothin, hindurchsein, etc.)

The onen

THEORETICAL PART.

hisz, here	babin'ren, there behind					
bort, there	hierhin'ten, here behind					
ba, "	juo'berft, farthest up					
sten, above, up stairs, up hill	munters, farthest down					
ba chen, up there	suinnerft, farthest inside					
bort oben, "	auluferff, farthest outside					
broben, 44	auvorderft, farthest forward					
hier oben, up here	aubinterff, farthest backward					
boben, "	weiter brinnen, farther inside					
weiter oben, farther up (§ 261, note 5)	weiter draufen, farther out there					
obenan', uppermost (in a series, or of	weiter born, farther forward					
rank)	weiter hinten, farther backward					
obenauf, uppermost (on the surface)	rings, all around					
unten, down below	hiera'ben, haben, over here					
ba unten, down there	brilben, over there, yonder					
bort unten, "	Dieffeits, on this side					
brunten, "	jenfeits, on that side					
bierun'ten, down here	allerfeite, on all sides, hands					
bunten, "	afferivarts, everywhere					
weiter unten, farther down	allerorten, "					
untenan', lowermost (in a series, or of	allenthalben, "					
rank)	fiberall, "					
untentrun'ter, lowermost (below, be-	too (relative), where					
neath)	two? (interrogat.), where?					
o'berhalb, up (an inclined plane)	irgendino, somewhere, anywhere					
un'terhalb, down (an inclined plane)	nirgend, nirgends, nowhere					
innerhalb, within, inside	nirgendivo, "					
innen, " "	anderstoo, eisewhere, anywhere eise					
in'wendig, " "	fonftive, " " "					
barin'nen, in there	irgendwo anders, " " "					
brinnen, "	irgendwo fonft, " " "					
hierin'nen, in here	too anders, " " "					
hinnen, "	too - aud nur, too aud immer, wherever					
auferhalb, without, outside	tvo immer, tvo nur, tvo aud, "					
aufen, " "	unterivegs', on the way					
auswendig, " , "	jutvi'der, adverse					
draufen, out there	hierne'ben, near by					
haufen, out here	dane'ben, "					
born, borne, before, at the head of	nebenan', "					
boran', bornan', at the head of, foremost	fern, far, at a distance					
borauf, bornauf, " " "	ferner, farther					
hierborn', baborn', here, there, at the	am fernften, farthest					
head	gegenu'ber, opposite					
hinten, behind	im Gegenüber ju, in contraposition to					
hintan, behind, backward, behind others						
hintendran', on behind	(and some others compounded with sin-					
bintenbrauf', "	ander.)					

b) Such as convey the idea of movement, direction, transition from one place to another or from one condition into another. and which can therefore, be joined only to verbs of the same character; as, geben, fich feben, fich ftellen, fich legen, feben, legen, stellen, bewegen, etc. (But, on the other hand, these verbs may be joined to adverbs of rest; as, etwas irgendws niederlegen, ringe umbergeben, etc.)

bierbin, this way . rundherum, roundabout borthin, that way bahin. obenhin', superficially, along on a surface ba o'bentin, here, along there, that way bier obenbin. obenhinan', toward the top obenbinauf, nach oben bin, nuc unten bin, toward the lower end be unten bin, down along there bort unten bin. untentinan', down there close up untendarunter, down there below nad innen bin, toward the interior nach innen, nad aufen hin, toward the exterior nach außen, born'hin, along there before bin'tenbin, along there behind babin'ter, there behind babinterber', bierbin'ter, here behind bierbor', out and up here bavorbin', there before nad binten bin, toward the hind part nath born bin, toward the fore part hinterbrein', closing up a series, hindbornbran', etc., toward the fore part, hinterdran', toward the hind part, hind- bergauf', bergab', up hill, down hill ringsum', roundabout rundum',

berum', umber', around, to and fro bierher', hither bis hierher, thus far einher', along emper', up, upwards metin', whither, in what direction irgendwebin', some way d'berallbin, in every direction nir'gendhin, in no direction, nowhere " nir gendwobin. an'dersuchin, some other way too anders bin. fonft wobin, wohin auch, wohin nur, wehin immer, whithersoever wohin auch nur, wohin auch (nur) immer, whithersoever hinweg', away beraus'toarts, on the way out here binaus'warts, on the way out there berein'warts, on the way in here hincintairts, on the way in there bet'marts, on the way hither binwarts, on the way thither hinab'warts, on the way down there berabiolitts, on the way down here hinauftparts, on the way up there beraufwarts, on the way up here nieberioarts, on the way downward in diefer Richtung, in this direction (and many similar ones) ftromauf, ftromab', up stream, down in die Bobe, upwards (and similar ones).

om int

THEORETICAL PART.

Norz. — The verb fein may, sometimes with great elegance, be connected also with the above adverbs; as in er ift bin, he is gone; er ift ein biechen oben-bin, he is a little superficial; ber Garten ift nach ba unten bin; bas war (auf bem Bege) beimwarte; ber Gaft war zu ber Beit icon hierber (gefommen); bie Nabel ift irgendwohin (gefallen); ber Frühling ift bald binweg (geflogen), etc.

c) Such as convey the idea of proceeding, starting, originating from some place or cause or condition, and can only be joined to verbs of the same character; as, tommen, abstammen, anslangen (to arrive), etc.

bu'her, von daher, hither
dorther, von dorther, thither
von oben her, from the upper part
von oben an, """
von unten her, from the lower part
von unten an, """
von Grund aus, from the foundation
von innen her, from within
von aufen her, from without
von von (her), from the fore part
von hinten (her), from the hind part
von binten (her), all along over it
darunter ber, all along beneath it

woher', whence, wherefrom irgentiwoher', from somewhere, anywhere i'brailher, from all sides int'gentiwoher, from nowhere int'gentiwoher, " " an'bersiwoher, from elsewhere fonfi tooher, " " tooher nur, twoher aud, twoher immer, from wherever twoher nur (auch) immer, from wherever bon hinnen (poetical), away.

NOTE. — The verb fein, to be, is connected with the above adverbs also, with an elegant brevity; as, er if anderswoher (abstammend); er ift barüber her, he is bent upon it; ich bin baher (bort geberen).

d) Such as convey both the idea of repose and of direction, and may therefore be joined to either class of verbs.

bintan', behind others
jurnd', back, backwards
jujum'men, together
aus'ivarts, outward
einvoltts, inward
rechts, to the right
lints, to the left
auf'warts, upward
abwarts, downward
niebervoltts, "
borward, to the rear
binterivoltts, "
feitvoltts, sideways

abfeite, aside aufrecht, upright off'marts, to the East fibrarts, to the South westivaries, to the West nordwarts, to the North fort, forth, away, along toeg, away weit, far, far off weiter, farther, further ringsum', around, all around, round about berum, " 66 umber. beiber', by the way

nebenber', by the way berber', by, foreby bord'ber, " binterher', in the rear, behind barûberbin', along on a surface barunterhin', along below a surface entgegen, against, to meet somebody mitten, mitten inne, mitten in (unter, burch, aber), in the midst of.

§ 264. III. ADVERBS OF TIME.

bu, bunn, then, at that time ba'mals, at that time einft, once bereinft, at some future day einmal', once upon a time mann? when? eh'emals, formerly bor'male, fonft, aubor', previously borher', jungft, lately, newly neulid, the other day, of late por Aurjem, not long ago taralid, 4 un'långft, hintanf tig, for the future 44 Minfår'. 44 .. tanfria. tunftighin', binfort'. långft, long ago pergei'ten, of old rotal'ters, lange, long, a long time furs, turse Beit, shortly, a short time beuer, this year bente, to-day geftern, vesterday per'seftern, day before vesterday bor'vorgestern, three days ngo mergen, to-morrow abermoraen, the day after to-morrow ü'berübermorgen, in three days fruh, faithritig, early, early in the morning fråher, earlier, before am frühften, earliest

frubeffene, at the earliest morgen fruh, to-morrow in the morning gestern fruh, yesterday in the morning bon geftern ber, from vesterday nåchtens, in a few davs demnåchik. eheftens, at an early day jeat, nun, now, at present heutjuta'ge, now-a-days jet'tigergeit, as times now are je, je'mals, ever, at any time ponje'her, ever, hitherto oft, oft'mals, often, oftentimes bielmale, many times feiten, seldom (see § 261, note 5) bereits, already fdon, morgens, in the morning ver/mittags, in the forenoon mittags, at noon nad/mittage, in the afternoon abends, in the evening nachts, in the night nachter, in a while, later bernach, afterwards hinterher, in the end jungsthin, of late um Mit'ternacht, at midnight bald, soon hald - bald, now - then ther, somer, before eben, just, just now nie, nie'male, never nimmer, never nim'mermebr, never, nevermore immer, ever, always, at all times alljeit, at all times

Imull

THEORETICAL PART.

suerft', first auporderft, before all bor Allem. julegt', last, lastly bisjest, hitherto bisher', feither'. feitdem', ever since mandmal', sometimes mitun'ter. biemei'len. auwei'len. bann und wann, now and then bin und wieder, inteffen, meanwhile, by this time inavi'fden. unterdef fen, mittlerwei'le, dagtoi'fcen, in the intervals awifdenbin', awifdenein, beigei'ten, betimes, at the right time ingei'ten, 44 zeitia. recht'seitia. jur Ungeit, out of time un'zeitia, sugleich', at the same time fegleich, forthwith, on the spot un'mittelbar, immediately fpåt, late fråter, later am fpåreften, latest fpareftens, at the latest all'anmal, at the same time jumal', insgesamme', altogether ben davenlich her, from the other day ben früher her, from other times bon fonft her, mieber, again a'bermals, once more nod'mals. hernadimals, once at a later period

imei'mal, twice (§ 244) am Ende, at last, in the end endlich, finally, lastly auf ein'mal, at once, suddenly, at one time, at the same time einmal des Lages, once a day sweimal bes Tages, twice a day einen Lag um ben andern, every other day aller mei Tage, heute über acht Tage, a week hence beute über vierzehn Tage, a fortnight beute bor acht Tagen, this day week eine Beitlang, for some (a) time bon Beit ju Beit, from time to time hin und wieder, now and then je'derzeit, at any time! in Butunft, for the time to come auf einige Beit, for some time (to come) eine Beile, for a while ein Beilden, im Bor'aus, in advance boraus' bejablen, to prepay nad und nad, by degrees, by and by. by little and little, gradually folieflich, finally es ift einige Tage ber baff, it is a fow days since that auf viele Jahre bin, for many years ju einer Beit, ba (ale), at a time when nun und nimmermehr, never and on no account ber Reihe nad, one at a time, by turns alle nach einander, " immerju', ever on immerfort', continually borhin', a while ago (before the time of which the speaker speaks) bis bahin', up to that time an Beiten, at times wer weiß wie lange, ever so long (as in ich habe Sie tver tveiß wie lange nicht gesehen, I have not seen you for ever so long).

IV. ADVERBS OF CAUSALITY.

§ 265. The following adverbs express causality: —

, consequently				
, conseduenti				
46				
u				
4				
44				
44				
44				
den'noth, in spite of all.				

V. ADVERBS OF INTENSITY.

§ 266. The following adverbs express intensity of action: ---

-		•		-					
fo — ale, as — as				beitvei'tem, far, by far					
being'be, nearly, almost				weit,	44	44			
fue, " "				weitaus', " "					
tuum, scarcely			wenigftens, at least						
fowerlid, hardly			am wenigften, least						
slemlid, rather				nicht im minbeften, not in the least					
gang und gar, qu	ite, en	tirely, v	rholly	gang und gar nicht, " "					
ganj,	4	"	"	gar nicht, :					
gar,	"	u	4	(bar)überh	in, sup	erficia	ll y		
fogat', even, nay				binlånglich			•		
fehr, very, very		much		meiftenthei	le', for	the m	ost pa	rt	
nur, only				meiftene,		66	"		
lautet, mere, me	rely			meift, mos	t, most	:ly			
bleff, only, solely				groftentheils', for the greatest part					
nicht einmal, not even				einigermaff'en, to some degree					
infofern', thus f	ar	•		au, too			-		
fofern', "				au febr, to	o muc	h			
fotoeit', "				au viel,	4				
hochfiens, at the most				beitveitem ju, by far too					
booff, extremely		ly		alljufebr,	u	44			
auferft, "	ü	_		allju,	44	4			
åberaus', exceedingly				burdaus', thoroughly.					
•	J.			,					

VI. ADVERBS OF MODALITY.

§ 267. The following adverbs express mood, or greater or less positiveness of assertion:—

ja, yes wirkich, really ja wehl, why not? fikwahr', truly, indeed



THEORETICAL PART.

wanthaf'tig, truly, verily
wantich, "
both, yet, however, though
fivelith, it is true, though
freilith, it is true, indeed
mein, no
gewif, certainly
etwa', perhaps, in some way or other
burchaus', by all means
mich, not
mich etwa', by no means
in teiner Beife, not at all, by no means
teineswegs', not at all, by no means
burchaus mich. "
"

wool, perhaps, probably
bielleicht', perhaps
bielmeht', rather
in der That, indeed
teinesfalls', in no event,
jedenfalls', at all events
hingegen, on the other hand, side
ohnehin', moreover, besides
[chiechthin', simply
[chiechterbings', absolutely
immerbin', I care not, never mind
boll'ends, quite, entirely, absolutely
allerbings', indeed, it is true.

NOTE. — The accents marked out above, and in those adverbs accented analogously, are the regular accents. In cases when these adverbs are to be emphasized, the accent is, as a rule, inverted from the second to the first, or from the first to the second component; as nithtoeficite/niger, emphasized nithtoeficite/selfoweringer; foweit/, fofern', emph. fo'weit, fo'fern; gröftentheits', emph. gröf's tentheits'; je'mais, emph. jemais'; bor'mittags', emph. bormittags'. But in this respect the language is not everywhere consistent.

§ 268. The peculiar use of some of these adverbs is shown in the following examples:—

1. fo - wie; als; ebenfo; anbers; ju; wohl.

So fleht es geschrieben (Sch.), thus it is written; ber Affe ift beinabe fo wie ber Menich geftultet, the ape is shaped almost like a man; wie herrlich leuchtet mir die Ratur, wie glangt die Sonne, wie lacht die glur! (G.), how lordly shines Nature before me, how brilliant is the sun, how smiles the vale! Und find Sie fo befdeiben, oder haben fo wenig Reugier, baf Sie mich nicht auch um mein Gebeimnif fragen? (Sch.), and are you so very modest, or have you so little curiosity, as not to inquire after my secret? wenn er fallen muß, fo tonnen wir ben Preis fo gut perdienen als ein Underer (Sch.), if he must perish, we can earn the price as well as another: wie die Alten fungen, fo awitidern auch die Jungen (Prov.), as crows the old cock, so crows the young; ich tunn nicht anders (Sch.), I cannot do otherwise, I cannot help it; in einem Freiftaat ift Giner ebenfo frei ale ber Undere; ich bante mich geradeso gut ale du, I think myself as good as you; du bift wohl trant, you are perhaps sick; es giebt wohl teinen Bott ? es giebt wohl einen, how is it, is there no God? certainly there is one: foweige, fouft werde ich dich ffrafen! be silent, or (else) I shall punish you! das Schwert ift nicht ju forver not leicht, ju forvach ift euer Arm (Uhl.), the sword is not too heavy nor too light, it is your arm that is too weak; ju lange haben wir's ertragen (Sch.), too long have we suffered it; wie haben es wohl gehort, aber nicht verftanden, we have heard it indeed, but we have not understood it; et iff wohl trunt, I presume he is sick.

Remarkable is the use of fo, when it expresses as it is, as things (matters) are (stand), as in their mich nicht, ich bin so (so chon or ohnehin) gereigt genug, provoke me not, I am irritated enough as it is; et tonnte bie tast nicht tragen; et toar so (so chon or ohnehin) made genug, he could not carry the burden, being tired enough as it was.

Als introduces the appositive, as in du, als ein Gelehrter, must es wissen, thou, as a learned man, must know it; als Rensch groß, war Alexander I. von Rusland als Jürst (als ein Jürst) klein, Alexander I. of Russia was great as a man, but weak as a prince.

2. eben, jest, nun, nunmehr; gerabe.

Eben ber (gerade ber) ben bu meinft (Sch.), just he, whom you mean (the same man you mean); eben bas (gerade bas) ift man gewohnt, bon mir borauszuseiten (Sch.), this is just what people are wont to expect of me; even biefe Radride betraftgen alle Bachen (Sch.), all the sentinels confirm the same report; wir toellten es eben (fo eben, gerade) verfuchen, we were just about trying it; fo eben (eben fest) babe ich biefe Radricht empfangen, I have just now received this news; er if eben fo alt als ich, he is exactly as old as I am; bas ift es eben (gerade) was wir fürchten, that is just what we fear; eben (gerade) die Befuhr ift's, die ben Alpenjager reigt (Jac.), it is the very danger that charms the Alpine hunter; but tunn ich eben nicht (gerade nicht) fagen (Sch.), I cannot exactly say that. Ich thue bies iest, um es nicht später thun zu muffen. I do it now that I may not have to do A later; erft jest (nun erft) begraß ich Euch als Ronig (Sch.), only now I greet you as king; wir haben es gefeben, nun (jett, nunmehr) find wir abergeugt, we have seen it, now (in consequence of that, under these circumstances) we are convinced; et fann nunmehr geben, he may now go; nun, ich habe nichte dawider, well, I have no objection; nun, bas if febr naturals, why, that is very natural; wir gehen eben nicht mit (Sch.), we do (simply) not go with you (that's all); ber alte Respect war even fort (Sch.), the former veneration had simply gone (no help for that, it was so, that there was no more veneration); bas heer if being jest fit ben 'Angenblid' ift's bein (Sch.), the army is yours, only for this moment it is yours; geradesu, outright.

3. gern, lieber, am liebsten.

Ich thue es gern, I do it with pleasure; ich werbe es recht gern thun, I shall do it with much pleasure; ich habe es nicht gern gethan, I have not done it intentionally (not on purpose); ich sebe es gern, daß Sie sparen, I am pleased with your laying up; ich möchte gern toissen, I should like to know; ich batte ihn gern gestragt, I would fain have asked him; se sprice gern, she is sond of talking; ich trinte rothen Wein lieber als toeisen, I like red wine better than white; toeise Sprace mögen Sie am siebsten ! which language do you like best?

4. erft, fcon, bann.

Erff handeln und bann reden! (Sch.), first act and then talk (action before words)! Erst muß bein Degen diese Bruft durchbobren (Sch.), thy award must



first pierce this breast. Das Dampfichiff wird erft morgen anlangen, the steamer will not arrive till to-morrow; ich werde ihn erft morgen feben, I shall not see him before to-morrow; bas Bertrauen wird tommen, bat nur jeder erft feine Sicherheit. (Sch.), confidence will come, provided that every one first feels safe. Bir find erk am Juse bee Berges, we are only (not farther than) at the foot of the hill: er ift erft gebn Jahre alt, he is only (not more than) ten years old. Der tobeliche Streich war icon geicheben (Sch.), the deadly blow had already (not later) fallen: foon in ben fechften Mond liegt er im Thurm (Sch.), it is already (not less than) the sixth month that he has lain in the dungeon; wir wollen the foon triegen (G.), never doubt that we shall get him; find Gie icon in Deutschland gewesen ? have you ever been in Germany? ich bin icon awei Ronate bier, I have been here for two months past; die Briefe find icon geftern Abend angetommen, the letters arrived as early as last night; Sie werben mich icon verfieben, I dare say, you will understand me; wir werben une icon vergleichen, I doubt not but that we shall come to an agreement; es wird foon genen, it will go! (let it go!) ne matter. Du tommft erft ? - ich tomme schon, willft du sagen, you are not come till now? -am I here so soon, you mean to say.

5. noch.

Sie stoeisten noch und sind noch zu getwinnen (Sch.), they are still doubtful and may yet be gained over; vielleicht vor wenig Lagen noch stand es bei euch (Sch.), perhaps only a sew days ago it depended on you; er ist noch sier (Sch.), he is still here; er geht noch heute, he goes away (even) to day (not later than); ich sabe das Buch noch nicht gelesen, I have not yet read the book; es dauerte nicht lange, so gad man mir noch einen besonderen Ausstellen (G.), shortly after they gave me another overseer besides; sagen Sie es noch einmal (nochmals), say it once more; wellen Sie aoch ein Glas Bein annehmen? will you take another glass of wine? sei es auch noch se wenig, be it ever so little. Und deute der Bisser er noch se sein (Gesbel), and how much soever winter may threaten. Sie sind schnell, noch schnellen wir sein (Sch.), they are sast, still saster we shall be; 3a, ich tennte hossen, jenen noch mehr als mir nässie zu sein. Roch ist es Beit, there is still time.

6. bod.

Auf leisen Sohlen über Racht tommt doch der Lenz gegangen (Geidel), nevertholess with silent step in the night the spring comes. Die Treue ist doch tein leerer Bahn (Sch.), sidelity is certainly no vain illusion (still, sidelity is no vain illusion). Sie glauben doch nicht im Ernste, daß ich dem Borte Freundschaft gram sei? (Sch.), dut (I hope) you do not seriously believe that I dislike the word friendship? Ich möchte doch wissen, de, etc., after all, I should like to know whether, etc. Sie tönnen doch lesen? you can read, I suppose? Beigen Sie mir, doch Ibre Gemälde, pray, show me your pictures; ist aus dem Innern doch Seind verjagt, dem Feind von aussen wollen wir begegnen (Sch.), now that the enemy within is driven out, we will (not sear to) meet the enemy without; wat?

th felbs bod sed berseibe! would I were only myself still the same! bas bod bie Einsalt immer Recht behålt! (Less.), wonder that simplicity is always right!

7. aud.

Banten and die Berge felbs? (Sch.), do even the mountains quake? Es schent der Arieg and (sethst) nicht das Aindein in der Biege (Sch.), war does not spare even the insant in the cradle. Daß du auch wohl dedach, was du mir ratchs? (Sch.), are you sure you have considered well what you advise me? Drum ob's und oft auch bangt und graut, nur undergagt aus Gott vertraut! (Geibel), therefore, even though we de assaid and shuddering, only conside insexibly in God. Zuch ich die und Ertadien geboren (G.), I, too, myself was dorn in Arcadia (I was myself no less); was die seute auch (immer, auch immer) sagen mögen, whatever people may say, etc. Zuch giede es seine Gespenster, moreover, there are no spectres. Lust war nicht jugegen, ich auch nicht, Charles was not present, neither was L. Zuch der Beiseste fan can err.

8. ja.

Rommen Sie ja! be sure to come; vergessen Sie es ja nicht! be sure not to sorget it! wenn sie es ja täugnen sollte, if she should indeed deny it; er hat ja (ja boch) seine Einvilligung gegeben (Sch.), he has given his consent, you know. Du bist ja noch ein Aind und wilst heitathen? you are only a child, are you not? and you are going to marry? ja, wenn bas wahr ware, wer ware glacticher als wir, sye, if that were true, who, etc.; er ist unglactich, ja er ist in Berzweislung, he is unsortunate, nay, he is in despair.

9. benn.

Seid Ihr benn gang von Sinnen? (G.), are you then (pray) entirely out of your mind? have the benn (hon vergessen, welche Beit es ist! pray, have you already sorgotten what time it is! es set benn, das flins Gerechte darin sind (Luther), except there be sive just men (in the town); das Fleisch tann nicht aussertschen, es werde denn zuvor begraben (Luth.), the slesh may not rise again, except it be first duried. So gebt euch denn alle Rühe, etwas zu sernen, so take, then (accordingly), every pains to learn something.

10. fonft.

Rennst du sonsten noch Jemand meines Blutes? (Sch.), do you know anybody else of my blood? Ermordet nicht mein ganges Glüd; ihr tödtet senst daneben auch meines Kindes leben (B.), don't destroy all my happiness; else you will destroy besisles the life of my child. Bit war die Zusnahme senst? (Sch.), how was the reception in the other particulars? Schad' um die leute, sind sonst worder Brüder (Sch.), what a pity! these solks are in other respects brave sellows; sonst war in Adnig, jest bin ich Bettler, once I was a king, now I am a beggar. Es ist nicht alles mehr wie sonst sons, everything is no longer what it once was. Sist du sonstwo bertoundet? are you wounded elsewhere?



THEORETICAL PART.

11. etwa, irgend.

Biff du etwa (irgend) frant? are you, perhaps, sick? er muß sich irgend einmal (in irgend etwas) geirrt haben, he must have made a mistake somewhere (in some way, ir something); mein Geheimniß ift ir gendwie verrathen worden, my seeret has somehow been betrayed; ir gendwo und ir gendwann muß sich doch der Schlissel sind in some way or other carry it through; wenn irgend eine Beise es durchselen, we must in some way or other carry it through; wenn irgend dien es weiß, Karl weiß es gewiß, if anybody knows it, Charles knows; wosse Sie's etwa läugnen? will you perhaps (I hope not, you will) deny it? wenn es etwa an Getbe sehit, sagen Sie es, is, perchance, money should be wanting, say it; wenn etwa ein Schissel einsauft, so ist es nur ein Schoener, if accidentally a vessel comes into the harbor, it is only a schooner; er is etwa neun Jahre, he is about nine years; und ist etwa ein isb und ist etwa eine Kugend — dem strebet mach! (Luck.), and if there de any good, or any virtue, strive for it!

12. ba : bann.

De fil' ich, armes, armes Rind im talten Abendhauch (Holby), here I am sitting in the cold evening breeze; be flicht einer nach bem Balbe (G.), there one is fleeing toward the wood; be ward es fler, fie begten teinen Reib (Uhl.), then it appeared clearly, that they entertained no envy; be made man mid erff found der, bann entbebrild, for this reason they weaken me first, afterwards to dispense with my services; da diffret fic bebend ein speites Thor, now a second gate is opening quickly. Die Dinge, die ba tommen follen (Luch.), the things, that (then) are to ba. Ber ba immer Soldes behauptet, follte es beweifen, who(so)ever maintains such things should demonstrate them; then Mes untergete. tanns Du ba wehl tuhig sein? when everything is perishing, can you (in such a case) be calm? Benn bas Eisen völlig von Roble gereinigt iff, bann tann es erft gefomiseet werden, when the iron is wholly separated from the coal, then (and not till then) it can be forged. Und was alebann ? bann ware an bem Inden fordersams die Strafe pu vollziehn (Lese.), and what then (next)? then (next) the punishment were to be inflicted upon the Jew in all haste. 216 mit bem goldnen Alter ber Reufcheit Glad entwich, ba fandten bie Erhalter gegualter Menscheit bich (B.), when together with the golden age, the happiness of mankind disappeared, (at that time) the preservers of tormented mankind sent thee (hope). 2Ber ba? who goes there?

Da is expressive of contemporary events, and therefore indicates reason or cause; bank expresses only time, and only events posterior to others.

18. ziemlich; eber; vielmehr, rather; beinabe, fast, nearly, almost.

Unsere Erde ift ziemlich tiein im Berbaltnis zur Sonne, our earth is rather small in comparison to the sun; Sind Sie wiederhergestellt von Ihrer Arantheit?
— se ziemlich, are you recovered from your sickness? — well, pretty well (nearly) das ist ziemlich baffelbe lied, welches ich in Deutschland hörte, this is

nearly the same song I heard in Germany; eher (steber) stein als groß muß ein guter Reiter sein, a good rider should rather be amall than large; in diesem Rampse werdet ihr eher unterliegen als siegen, you are more likely to succumb than to conquer in this struggle; er ging nicht eher als bis der Lag anbrach, he did not go (start) besore (until) daybreak; Rart langte eher an, Francis later; ber Ballssch ist tein Fischer ein Eaugethier, the whale is not a fish, it is (much more) on the contrary a mammal; er ist soudsining—eder vielnehr—er ist verräck, he is weakminded, or rather he is crazy; Rart ist beinahe (sast) o ale als Francis; ich härte beinahe (sei einem Haare) Alles verloren, I came near losing everything; beinahe hätte ich meine eignen Kinder getödere, I was like to have killed my own children.

14. gar; fogar; recht.

Diese Resen sind gar schön, these roses are very (indeed) beautiful; der Schaden ist gar nicht beträchtlich, the damage is not at all considerable; er treibt es gar zu arg, he is much too reckless; das Berdrechen war gar nicht so schime, the crime was de nicht so means so dad; das Ungläd ist gar nicht zu beschreiben, the missertune dasses all description. Ei, warum nicht gar ?! you do not mean to say! sogar die istger fangen an die Badrecht zu reden, even the liars degin to tell the truth; ich glaubte ihm nicht, ich mußte segar in sein Gescht lachen, I did not delieve him, nay, I could not help laughing in die sace; das ist recht gethan, mein Kind, that 's well done, my child; ich din recht traurig, I am very sad; der recht Ebrenverthe Pr. R., the Right Honorable Mr. N. Go ist's recht, das ist nicht recht, that 's right, that is wrong; man bann es nicht allen leuten recht machen, one cannot pleese everydody; Recht so! ganz techt! very well, exactly so, just so! sie war nicht recht dei Ginnen, ade was not quite in her right mind (senses).

15. nur, only; blog, solely; lauter, merely, nothing but.

Nur sweihundert Thaser? das ift wenig, only two hundred dollars, that is little; ich möchte nur wissen, two er bleibt, I should only like to know where he stays. Wer das nur gethan haben mag?! an ellipsis, instead of: 'I should only like to know who has done it.' Nacht nur nicht soviet karmen um nichts, only make not so much noise about nothing; sagen Sie mix nur (boch) wer diefer Mensch is, pray, tell me who this man is; nur sachte im Ansange! nur den Rutch nicht vertoren! only not too fast at first! only do not lose heart! Ach, give mit's nur (boch)! do, give it me! Wir fangen bloß tleibe Jische, we catch nothing but small fry (only small fry); das sind bloß terre Worte, these are but meaningless words; er ist bloß ein Bettler, he is a mere beggar; nicht nur (bloß) Gold, auch Chre bringt die Auns, art brings not only gold, but honor also. Wer nur immer, was nur, wie nur immer, wo auch nur, etc., whosoever, whatever, howsoever, wherever. Das sind lauter lägen, these are nothing but lies. Er gest mit lauter Aunseuen mu, he has only merchants for companions.

THEORETICAL PART.

16. als, as, than; wie; gleich, like.

Ariebrich II. was groß als Ronig und Menich, Frederick II. was great as a king and a man; Gotrates lebte und farb wie ein Beifer (als ein Beifer, - als meaning that he really was, wie only that he resembled, a wise man); als ein Gelehtter must bu das felber wissen, as a learned man (scholar), you must know that yourself (wie here would be entirely out of place); ich laffe den Freund dir ale Bargen (Sch.), I leave to you my friend as a hoetage; ich betracht' ibn ale meinen araften Beind (G.), I consider him my worst enemy; nichts ift beffer als (wie) frische luft für einen Genesenben, for a convalescent, nothing is better than fresh air; wer ift fo gut als (wie) bu ? who is as kind as you? Bie homer fingt, iff nichts ber Belmath ju vergleichen, as Homer sings, there is nothing like home (als homer fingt would be out of the question); Rarl und Mar find gleich groß, Charles and Max are equally large; fie fingt gleich einer Nachtigall, she sings like a nightingalo (wie eine Rachtigall); ob meine Butunftige Beld bat ober nicht, bas gilt mir gleich, it is all one thing to me whether my intended has a fortune or not. Ift mir Alles (gleich) eins, ob ich Gelb bab' ober teins (Prov.), it is all one to me, etc. 36 tomme gleich (fogleich), warte nur ein wenig! I am coming immediately, wait a moment! ber Gultan ging gleich bem Zone nach (Wd.), the Sultan went forthwith in the direction of the sound.

17. einmal, once upon a time.

Das geht einmal nicht, this does not go at all (we cannot help it). Wir waren einmal naß, so konnte uns der Regen nicht schaen, wet as we were (once wet), the rain could not hurt us. Das if einmal nicht anders, ich kann es nicht ändern. Er dat nicht einmal die Hässe kann es nicht ändern. Er dat nicht einmal die Hässe Das sieht verrichtet, de has persormed not so much as one half of his task. Das sieht nun einmal nicht in unseren Nacht (G.), but that 's not in our power. Rommen Sie einmal her, just come here! laufe einmal zum Nachder, just run over to the neighbor!

18. immer, ever; immerhin, never mind; meinetwegen, on my account; fort, forth, onwards, on.

Einmal ift nicht immer (allemal) (Prov.), once is not always; du magst es immer (immerhin, meinetwegen, meinethalben) thun, ich habe nichts dawider, you may do it (for all me), I have no objection; lassen Ste mich immer (immerhin) ein Wort gebrauchen, weiches Sie nicht verstehen (Gellert), do dut allow me to use a word which you do not understand. Es mag immerhin schon zehn Jahre sein, daß er todt ist, sor aught I know, it may de ten years since he is dead; wenn Sie aus teinem andern Grunde sich seiner erbarmen wollen, thun Sie es meinetwegen, if you will not have pity on him sor other reasons, do on my account. Reinetwegen (immerhin) kann Alles drunter und brüder geben, ich mache mir nichts daraus, I do not care is everything is turned upside down. Er gebt sort, he goes away; das gebt nun schon vollen, to continue; er schrt fort zu lesen, schreibt, scheite, speeibt, speets

fort, he continues to read, to write, to play. Fort and fort, on and on, continually; and so fort (weiter), and so on (forth). Sort mit Euch! begone! take yourself away! away with you!

19. mit, with; lang, long; hin und wieder, now and then, here and there.

Nimm bas mit, take this with you; ettess mittringen, to bring a thing along with one's self; ettess mitmachen, mit babeifein, to be a party to an undertaking; mitgefaugen, mitgebangen (Prov.), who is caught with thieves is hung with thieves. Das Paus if 50 Jus lang, the house is fifty feet long; eine Beitlang, for a while; Stunbenlang, Tagelang, Monatelang, Jahrelang, for hours, days, months, years. Man finder thu und voieder ein Bild, aber feiten, game may be found now and then (here and there), but rarely.

20. Je, ever ; jemals ; je nachbem.

If et je (jemals) hier gewesen? has he ever been here? Wenn du jemals (je) gelegen hast, so hast du es jest, if you have ever (at any time) lied, you do it now. Die Sachen gestaten sich je und je solecter, things take continually a worse turn. Be vier und vier gingen in einer Reihe, they went by sour and sour. Wiss to noch tinger hier bleiben? Be nun! Be nachdem, Will you stay here any longer? Well! As it may be. Wen jeher hat man das besweiselse, this has been doubted ever and anon.

Je is used as a conjunction with comparative sentences (see § 184, Note 4), and in the form je nachdem; as in er wird gehen over bleiben, je nachdem die Umfände find, he will go or stay, according to circumstances.

CHAPTER IX.

PREPOSITIONS.

§ 269. Prepositions serve to connect an object with its predicate, or an attribute with its substantive, and show the relation between them. Most of the prepositions were originally expressive of relations of locality, but have since become also expressive of time, manner, causality, and other relations of objects.

Prepositions govern different cases, but never the Nominative, this case being reserved exclusively for the subject and predicate. They usually precede the cases governed by them; such as follow them being originally not prepositions, but adverbs.

Prepositions are either genuine or derived from substantives and adjectives.

Note. — Prepositions form with verbal roots and derivative verbs compound verbs. In this function they have the nature of adverbs, and are therefore, in certain well-defined cases, always separated from the verb. (See § 115.)

§ 270. The eleven following always govern the Dative:—aus, out of, from (motion out of the midst or interior of a thing).

außer, out of (rest), outside of, without, except, beside. It never enters into compound verbs.

bei, at, by, near, with (nearness).

mit, with (company and instrumentality).

nach, to (motion to a place), after, according to.

von, of, from (possession, and motion from a place).

au, to (motion towards a person), at, in, for (purpose).

binnen, within, sammt, nebst, with, together with, sest, since.

Nor. — Zufer occurs with the genitive in the phrase anger tanbes, out of the country. The preposition ob in its primary signification, over, governs the Dative; in its secondary signification, on account of, the Genitive; but it is now obsolete in either. In compound verbs at is used instead of ton.

Examples .- 1. aus; von; außer.

Er tam aus bem Saufe, he came out of the house; er tam bon bem Saufe ber, he came from the house; aus des Labprinthes Pfaben leitet fie mit fichrem Jaden (Sch.), she leads the way out of the labyrinth; fo cilt' ich bon Behofte au Behofte (Sch.), thus I hastened from house to house; es ift der Tell aus (von) Burgien, (Sch.), it is Tell from Bürglen (just coming out of Bürglen); die Einwohner von Paris; die Konigin von England; die Baffer find ausgetreten von dem großen Regen (Sch.), the waters have overflowed their beds in consequence of the heavy rain; es ift aus Unbebacht geschen, it was done from thoughtlessness; mein Freund tommt bon Edinburg; bon ben Banden langten fie bie rofigen Schwerter (Sch.), they took the rusty swords from the walls; fie rebeten bon ben alten Dichtern, they spoke of the ancient poets; dieses lieb ift von Uhland, und von Rreuger ift es in Musit gesethe, this song is by Uhland, and set to music by Kreuzer. Bift du bon Ginnen ? are you out of your mind? er ift bon bober Beftalt, he is of a tall frame; ber Tifch ift von Bolg, ber Dfen von Gifen, the table is of wood, the stove of iron; Aus (von) Holz einen Tisch, aus (von) Eisen ein Meffer machen, to make a table of wood, a knife of iron; aus ber Noth eine Lugend machen, to make a virtue of necessity; bas Theater ift aus, bas Concert wird bald and fein, the play is over, the concert will soon be over; fich ausweinen to weep to the heart's content; and der Armuth, and der Noth, and der Gefahr

retten, to save from want, poverty, danger. Auser dem Sause sein (G.), to be out of the house; das Riemand mit ihm rede, auser Eurer Gegenwart (G.), be careful lest anybody speak to him out of your presence; dein Bruder ist auser Gesahr (G.), thy brother is out of danger; auser der Reiterei sollte ausen noch Jusvolt ausenommen werden (Sch.), besides the cavalry also some infantry was to be taken into service. Aus Jurcht, aus Berzweisung, aus Liebe etwas thun, to do something from (sor) sear, despair, love.

2. nach; ju; bei.

Ich reife nad Deutschland, nad Dreeben, Bien, Rom, und nach bem Befer und Metna, I am leaving for Germany, and going to Dresden, Vienna, Rome, and to the Vesuvius and Etna mountains; er fdiffte fid nad frantreid ein, um ben ba nad Sause zu geben, he embarked for France, to go thence home; id gebe zu meinem Dheim, jum Concert, ju Bette, ju Tifche, jur Soule (in's Concert, in's Bett, in die Goule); er bat viel gereift, jur Gee und ju lande, ju guf, ju Bagen und ju Pferbe ; wir werben ju Saufe bleiben; er finbirt ju (in) Beibelberg. Benm bu ju mir jum Befuche tommft, wirft bu bei mir wochenlang bleiben maffen, whom you come to me on a visit, you must stay with me for weeks; ich reife au meinem Bergnugen und ju meiner Belehrung, I am travelling for my pleasure and instruction: ich bin nach ibm ber ffårtste. I am the strongest next to him: nach bem Offen, after dinner; Giner nach bem Underen gingen binans, one after the other went out; nad Jemandem hauen, folagen, fleden, greifen, to strike, etc. at somebody; nad Ruhm freben, to strive (after) for fame. Sie geht nach einem Glase Baffer, she goes for a glass of water; nad meiner Reinung (meiner Reinung nach) if bies fulfd, in my opinion (according to) this is false; bet mir su Steinen balt' ich the verborgen (Sch.), I keep him concealed with me (in my house) at Steinen; er bat eine Stelle beim Bericht, he has a place in the (law) court; ich habe fein Geld bei mir. I have no money about me: beim Eintritt in's Saus. on entering the house; bei diefer Belegenheit, on this occasion; bei allebem if er uneliditich, with all this (after all) he is unfortunate; bei Gelbe fein, to have money: bei Sinnen fein, to be in one's own mind; bei meiner Ebre, on my honor; bei Gott, by God; wir lefen beim (im) Derobot, we read in Herodotus; lege diefes ju den abrigen, bay it along with the others; Jemandem ju etwas rathen, to advise one to a thing; Talent sum Bridnen, talent for drawing; et if jum Golbaten geboren, be is born for a soldier: wen willft bu jum Begleiter nebmen und was willft du jum Frabftad haben ? whom will you take for companion, and what for breakfast? ju meinen Bufen, at my feet; ju Bufen fallen, to throw one's self at one's feet.

3. mit; nebft.

3ch ging mit einem Freunde spagiren, I took a walk with a friend; Schreiben Gie mit Stabisebern, do you write with steel pens? er wurde mit Berachtung bebanbeit, he was treated with contempt; auf einer Stange tragt fie einen hut nebft einer Jahne (Sch.), on a pole she carries a hat, and a flag besides; der Bater flutd nebft allen feinen Rindern, the father died with all his children; mit nichten,

by no means; mit der Post reisen, to travel by the diligence; mit Setvalt, by force; mit Sturm, by storm; verwandt mit Jemandem, related to a person; mit der Beit wird es besser, in time it grows better; mit einem Botte, in a word.

4. binnen ; feit.

Binnen drei Tagen muß die Arbeit gethan sein, the work must be done within three days; er ift trant seit vier Boden, he has been sick these sour weeks; seit meines Bruders Tode bin ich rathios, ever since my brother's death I am helpless.

5. fammt ; nebft.

Sammt expresses a company of things naturally belonging together; nebfi, a simple addition, which may as well be expressed by und; as, die Jeffung fammt allen Regimentern (Sch.), the fortress together with all the regiments; must bu mu einen Schuldigen ju treffen, das Schiff mit samm dem Steuermann verderden? (Sch.), must thou, in order to reach one guilty person, ruin the ship and pilot? Dech hiervon morgen, nebfi Andersem, was den Staat betrifft (Sch.), but more of this to-morrow, besides other things which concern the government; das Pferd mit sammt seinem Reiter (Less.).

§ 271. The six following genuine prepositions govern the Accusative: —

burd, through, by.

für, for (for the benefit of a person, or in the place of). In compound verbs it is replaced by vor.

gegen, against (in a hostile as well as in an amicable sense), towards, for.

white, without (never entering into compound verbs).
um, around, about, for (in exchange for).
witer, against (only in a hostile sense).

Examples. - 1. burd.

Bir ritten burd ben Bald, we rode through the forest; burd ibn find alle Dinge, through him are all things; er sender mir Geld burd einen Beten, be sends me money by a messenger; durch Eile wird Alles berdorben, everything is spoiled by haste (haste makes waste).

2. für.

34 will für did bejahlen may mean 'I will pay in your place,' or 'for you';

^{*} Gen is used in poetry and in the common phrase gen himmel, towards heaven. The orthographical difference between the preposition witer and the adverb wieder, again, was introduced only in modern times; originally both were the same word.

bieses Buch ift für die Jugend geschrieben, this book is written for the young; ich halte ibn für einen ehrlichen Mann, I take him sor an honest man; für diesen Bweck (ju biesem Bweck) habe ich tein Geld, I have no money for this purpose. Für alle Beit, sor all times; für und für (antiquated), for ever; Wett für Wert, word sor word; Lug für Lag, day by day; Schritt für Schritt, step by step; Seite für eine, page by page; wer nicht für mich ift, der ist wider mich (Luth.), he that is not with me is against me; er ist todt für mich, he is dead to me; das ist sub von teinem Rusen, that is of no use to you.

8. gegen; wiber.

Das Haus liegt gegen Morgen, the house lies towards (faces) the east; ich werde Sie gegen Abend desucen, I shall visit you towards evening; ich sam nicht keuren gegen Sturm und Wellen (Sch.), I cannot steer against storm and waves; dad' ich Phichten gegen England? have I duties to England? (auft Sturm wider die Kingmauer (Sch.), storm the walls; wider wider Billen muß ich ihn lesen, in spite of my aversion; ich erbrach den Brief wider Willen, wider Willen muß ich ihn lesen, (Less.), I broke the seal of the letter against my will, and so I must read it; es waren iver gegen hundert (an hundret), there were about a hundred of them; Was if mir Alles gegen dich? I what is everything else worth to me in comparison with thee? Gegen eine Quistung Geld empfungen, to receive money in consideration of a receipt.

NOTE. — Gegen in compound verbs assumes the form entgegen, as entgegenfeben, to look for. Gegen in ancient German was also employed instead of gegenüber, opposite.

4. um.

Bir wollen um die Stadt geben, we will go round the town; es fafen um ibn die Grofen der Krone (Sch.), round about him were sitting the grandees of the kingdom; in einem Salbtreis ftanden um ihn ber feche ober fieben grofe Ronigebifter (Sch.), in a half-circle round him stood six or seven large pictures of kings; einer um den Anderen, one after the other; alles ift euch feil um (für) Belb (Sch.), you will sell everything for money; ich fpiele jum Beitvertreib (I play for amusement), nicht für Geld (not for money, as an actor does), niemals um Geld (never to gain money, for money, as gamblers do); ich spiele Piane und Rarren, I play on the piano and at cards; Auge um Auge, Babn um Bahn (Luth.), an eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth; es geschan um Offern, it happened about Easter; bas Theater wird um fieben libr geoffnet, the theatre is opened at seven o'clock; einen Tag um ben anderen, every other (second) day; ein Bettlet bittet um ein Mmofen, a beggar asks for an alms; um etwas fragen, to inquire for; um jehn Thaler theurer als, etc., dearer by ten dollars than, &c.; wie fieht's um Ihre Gefundheit I how is (it with) vour health? fich verbient machen um Iemanten, to deserve well of: Giner um den Anderen, by turns, alternately; um erivas tommen, to lose something.

§ 272. The nine following genuine prepositions govern the

THEORETICAL PART.

Dative and the Accusative, the former when they denote locality, rest, or an action which causes no change of place; the latter, when denoting direction toward, motion, change of place:—

an, on, at (near the surface of a thing).
auf, upon, on (on the upper surface of a thing).
hinter, behind, after.
in, in, into (in compound verbs replaced by tin).
über, over, above, beyond, about, concerning.
unter, under, below, beneath, among.
nor, before, ago.

amischen, between, betwixt, among (in compound verbs it assumes the form basmischen).

neben, at the side of, by (in compound verbs it assumes the form baneben).

Examples. - 1. an.

Das Bild hängt an der Wand, the picture hangs on the wall; ich hänge das Bild an die Band, I hang the picture upon the wall; er ist am Gerichte, am Iheater, an der Schule angestellt, he holds an appointment in the courts of law, at the theatre, at the school; am ersten Januar, am sweiten Jedruar, am dritten March; die Reibe ist an mir, it is my turn; der Jedler liegt an dir, it is thy fault; soviel an mir ist, werde ich thun, as sar as depends on me, I shall do it; du must an ihn schreiben, thou must write to him; an die Thüre tlopfen, to knock at the door; hat sie an mich gedacht? has she thought of me? Frankfurt am Maine; an der Strafe, an der Gränze, an der Kisse siegen, to de situated by the wayside, on the frontier, on the coast; sie sind mir sichen dich an den Frsen (Sch.), they are already close upon my heels; an die schehundert Bagen sind unterwege (Sch.), nearly six hundred wagons are on the way; es liegt mir wenig eder nichts an diesem Umt, I care little or nothing sor this office; an etwas arbeiten, to be engaged in (on), etc.; es ist nicht an dem, it is not true; am Wege, by the wayside.

2. auf; unter; über.

Das Buch liegt auf dem Tische, lege es auf den Stuhl, the dook lies on the table, put it upon the chair; wir wohnen auf dem Lande, wir geden auf das Land, we live in the country, we go to the country; ich din auf dem Nartte, auf der Strafe, auf der Bare, auf der Bare, auf dem Balle, auf dem Jelde und auf meiner Stude gewesen; ich begede mich auf den Nartt, auf die Strafe, auf die Bore, auf die Norte, auf des Nesse, auf den Nartt, auf des Nesse, auf den Ball, auf das Jeld und auf meine Stude, I 'vo deen at (in) the market, in the stroet, at the exchange, at the sair, at the dall, in the field, and in my room;

I go to the market, into the street, to the exchange, to the ball, into the field, to my room. Er tam auf die Minure, he came on the minute; er toeiß es auf ein Haar, he knows it to a hair; auf ein Ding toarren, beffen, rechnen, to hope for, wait for, reckon upon something; aufs Befte, Schänke, in the best, finest manner; fünf Cents auf den Mann, five cents to each man; auf mein Bort, on my word; auf Jemandes Beftel, at the command of.

Der hund liegt nicht auf, sondern unter dem Tische, the dog lies not on the table, but under it; der hund triecht unter den Tisch, the dog creeps under the table. Ein König ift unter den Gaften, a king is among the guests; wenn man unter die Wölfe tomme, muß man mit heuten, falling among wolves, one must howl with them; nicht unter zweihundert Thalern, not less than two hundred dollars; meter vielen Berbengungen ging er hinaus, he stepped out with many compliments; unter vielen Schmerzen sterben, to die in violent pain.

Die Bolte schwebt aber dem Berge, the cloud hovers over the hill; die Bolte gieht über den Berg, the cloud moves over the hill; der Beg führt nicht bloe auf den Berg, sendern über den Berg hinveg nach R., the road leads not only up the hill, dut over it down to N. Die Gewitterwolfte schein auf dem Berge zu liegen, aber sie hängt über demselben in ziemlicher Höhe, the cloud desems to rest on the mountain, dut it hangs over it at a considerable height. Reber zwanzig Thaler, upwards of twenty dollars; es geht über alle Erwartungen, it surpasses all expectation; wir werden über die Gradt Ostende nach Brüssels; ich habe mit ihm über die Sache gesprechen, I have spoken with him about this matter; über eine Sache sache gesprechen, sich der die Gradt dem, weinen, sich freuen, sich der weinen, sich der die Gradt dem vernen, sich der die Gradt dem vernen, sich der die Gradt dem vernen. Sich der die Gradt dem vernen, sich der dem sinn (Sch.), his mind was grave beyond his age; über einen Flussels einen kon to croas a river; über dem Reere leben auch gläckliche Renschen, beyond the sea there are also happy men.

3. vor; hinter.

3\$\phi\$ fiand vor der Thure, stelle dish vor die Thure, I stood desore the door, place yourself before the door; vor diesem Tage, nicht nach demselben, before that day, not after it; vor drei Jahren, three years ago; ein Manrel schäft vor dem Megen ac cloak protects from the rain; et springt vor Freude, und du tnirschest were med by the leaps for joy, and you gnash your teeth with rage. Wer teem sollte ich mich starten? Whom should I sear? Wer Jemand sliehen, to siec from somebody.

Der Garten liegt nicht vor, sondern hinter dem Saufe, the garden lies behind the house, not besore it; ich gebe nicht vor, sondern hinter das Jaus, I go behind the house, not besore it. Roland ritt hinter'm Bater her (Uhl.), Roland rode behind his sather; hinter die Wahrheit einer Sache tommen, to get at the truth of something.

4. in; neben; zwischen.

3ch bin in diefem Saufe gewefen, und ich gebe nicht wieder in baffelbe, I have boen in this house, and I shall not enter it again; er befindet fich in großer Ge-

fabr, he is in great danger; er ffdrit fic in die größten Gefabren, he rnabes into the greatest dangers. In bier Bochen reifen wir nach Europa, in four weeks (four weeks hence) we (shall) go to Europe; es geht icon in die britte Boche, bas er frant ift, his sickness has entered on its third week. Bas im Menfchen nicht ift, tommt auch nicht aus ihm (G.), what is not in a man cannot come out of him. In Schulden, in Glend, in Gabrung, in Bergweiflung, in Breifel fein, to be in debt, in misery, in a ferment, in despair, in doubt; in die Southen, in's Elend, etc., gerathen, to fall into debt, misery. In Jemandes Ramen, in somebody's name. 3m Frieden, im Rriege mit, at peace, at war with; in Breibeit fegen, to set at liberty; in 20 Juff Lieft, at a depth of 20 feet.

Seine fiolgen Debme ffanden neben ibm (Sch.), his proud uncles stood at his side; bleib, fege bich neben mich auf biefes Copha (Sch.), stay and sit down on this sofa by me.

Es iff Krieg swiften mir und ibm, there is war between me and him: ffelle dich nicht swifden ihn und meine Rache, do not place yourself between him aud my revenge.

(Swiften, from swei, denotes the place in the midst of two objects: unter in the midst of a crowd, or within a quantity).

Note. — The following prepositions are often contracted with the article: —

am = an bem, auf & = auf bas beim - bei bem burd's = burd bas an's - an bas für's = für bas im - in bem in's = in bas um's = um bas bom = bon bem bor's - bor bas binter'm - binter bem binter's = binter bas aufer'm = aufer bem bor'm = bor bem fber'm = fber bem åber's = åber bas unter'm = unter bem unter'd = unter bad aum = an bem aur - au ber.

Such forms as auf'm, burch'n, in'n, unter'n, binter'n, über'n, aus'm, far'n, are proper only to the popular tongue, and ought not to be imitated.

Prepositions with the Genitive Case.

§ 273. The following not genuine prepositions are formed from substantives (unweit, unfern, and mahrent excepted), and govern, on account of this, the genitive case: -

flatt (or anflatt), instead of. (It is the torgen, because of, on account of, by only one of this list that forms compound verbs.)

auferhalb, without, on the outside of, innerhalb, within, on the inside of, oberhalb, above, on the upper side of, unterhalb, below.

dieffeit or dieffeite, on this side of. jenseit or jenseits, on that side of, - halber or halben, on account of (must

follow the substantive),

reason of (may follow or precede the substantive),

traft, by virtue of, bermoge, by virtue of, by means of, laut, according to, conformably to, langs, along,

tres, in spite of. ungrachtet, notwithstanding (may precede or follow the case),

untreit or unfern, not far from,

um — wiffen, for the sake of, uffelge or infelge, in consequence of, sermitteif or mittels, by means of, according to (may precede or follow through, the case).

Examples.

An fatt. — Anflatt (flatt) breier Dollars hatte er bloß zwei, instead of three dollars, he had only two. An meiner Statt, an beiner, seiner, unster, eurer, ihrer Statt, in my stead, in thy, his, our, your, their, her stead; anstatt dessen, flatt bessen, in its stead (of things only). An meines Bruders Statt, instead of my brother. The same meaning is expressed by an meiner Stelle, an des Königs Stelle, in my stead or place, in the king's place.

Muserhalb. Innerhalb.—Der Jeind verthelbigte sich außerhalb und imnerhalb der Stadt mit gleichem Erfolge, the enemy desended themselves without and within the city with equal success.

Dberhalb. Unterhalb. - Dreeden liegt oberhalb und Samburg unterhalb ber Jeftung Magdeburg an der Elbe, Dresden lies above, and Hamburg below, the fortress of Magdeburg on the Elbe.

Die sseit. Jenseits. — Diesseits und jenseit des Grades giedt es keinen Frieden für mich, there is no peace for me on this or on that side of the grave. Diesseit des Acquators wie jenseit desseit enfrect sich die heise Bone 284 Grad weit, the torrid zone extends on this side the equator, as on the other side, for 234 degrees.

Salber, Salben, are always preceded by their case; as, Elters halber ward er aus dem Dienste entlassen, on account of his old age he was dismissed from service; meinethalben, deinete, seinete, unserte, eurete, ihrethalben, for my, thy, his, our, your, their, her sake, on my, etc., account; deshalb (used for things and whole sentences), for its sake, on this account.

Begen. — Er wird wegen seiner Berdienste geachtet, he is esteemed for his merits; ware es nicht des larms wegen, man warde ihn jachtigen, but sor the noise, he would be chastised; ich thue es nicht des Geides wegen, I do not do it for the sake of money. Reinetwegen, deinet, seinet, unsert, euret, ihret, deswegen, on my, thy, his, our, your, their, her account, on this account.

tim—willen.—Der Mörder töbtete ihn um seiner Kleiber wissen, the murderer killed him for (the sake of) his clothes. Itm Gottes wissen, um himmels wissen, for God's sake, for heaven's sake; um meinetwissen or meinetwissen, for my sake, um beinete, seinete, unserte, eurete, ihretwissen, (um may as well be omitted), um beswissen (um not omitted), on, my, thy, his, etc. account, for my, etc. sake.

Rraft. Bermöge. Bermitrelft.—Ich verhafte Sie traft meines Amees, I arrest you by virtue of my office; vermöge seiner Runte wuster er den Berdacht von sich abzulenten, by dint of dis artisses de managed to divert suspicion from himself; sie tunn viele Boblithaten erweisen vermöge ihres Reichthums, she can conser many denestes dy reason of her riches; die Uhr wird vermitrels (mitrels) eines Schäffels aufgezogen, the watch is wound up by means of a key; die tast wird leicht mittels eines Klobens bewegt, the weight is easily moved by means of a pulley.

Laut. Bufolge. — Laut der Worte des Bertrage ift er zu nichte berechtige, according to the words of the contract, he is not entitled to anything; die Stadt ift Laut der neuesten Rachrichten (zufolge der neuesten Rachrichten) in Gescht, according to the latest news, the city is in danger. Der Jeind zieht mit Ariegestern ab zufolge der Bedingungen der Uedergade, the enemy marches off with the honors of war, consormably to the capitulation. Insige seiner Berbrechen ift er im Geschanguis, he is in prison in consequence of his crimes.

Tro &. Ungeachtet.—Er muß flerben tros aller Aerite, he must die in spite of all physicians; er ift noch im Amte ungeachtet seines Alters, he is still in office, notwithstanding his age. Der Lod tommt alles Blebens ungeachtet, death comes in spite of all supplications.

Ur weit. Un fern. - Die Rirche sieht unweit (unfern) ber Pfarrei, the church stands not far from the parsonage.

& å ng s. — Die Stadt reicht drei Reilen weit långs des Fluffes, the city extends three miles along the river.

2B ahrend. - Deutschland verlor mahrend bee breißigiabrigen Rrieges zwei Drittel seiner Einwohner, Germany lost during the Thirty Years' War two thirds of her inhabitants.

Nore 1. The following of the above prepositions may, with good writers, be found connected with the Dative: tree (treedem, in spite of this), lange (lange dem Huffel), underen (wahrend twährend dem, meanwhile), unterit, unfren (unterit dem Sause), sufolge (when placed after its case, as den neueseu Nachrichten sufolge), sum Iroe (which is always placed after a Dative, as meinen Bitten sum Iroe, in desiance of all my entreaties), wegen, auserhald, innerhald, oberhald, unterhald, diesseit, jenseit.

Examples: — Tros allen Erdensbeln (Tiedge), in spite of all the evils of the earth; den Schranken der bildenden Känste zusolge sind alle ihre Figuren underveglich (Less.), in accordance with the limits of the plastic arts, all their figures are immovable; Gustav Adolph hatte sein Lager dei Berden, unsern dem Einstusse der Pavel in die Elde bezogen (Sch.), Austavus Adolphus had encamped near Werden, not far from the confluence of the Havel and Elde rivers; Perzog Alba landete innerhalb acht Lagen in Genua (Sch.); ausserhalb ihrem Bezirte (Forster), outside of their district; das große Gehirn siegt nicht oderhalb dem kleinen (Hel.); während dem Sagen mertre ich, daß, etc. (Lchl.), while saying so, I remarked that, etc.

NOTE 2. Wegen was formerly used as a substantive with the proposition bon; as, bon Ames wegen, by virtue of authority; bon Reches wegen, according to law. Gebt Reches(chaft bon wegen bes vergosnen Blutes (Sch.), give account of the blood spilt!

NOTE 8. The following adverbs govern also the Genitive: hinfichts, hinfichtlich, ridfichtlich, with regard to; angefichts, in the face of, in presence of; bebufs, for the purpose of, by way of; angunfien, in behalf of, for the benefit of; inmitten or immitten, in the midst of; unbeficabet, without prejudice to; and some others, that are now obsolete.

§ 274. The following spurious prepositions, having still the character of adverbs, govern the Dative and Accusative:—

With the Dative.

nachft, next to, grander, opposite to, grandft, according to, in accordance with, subder, against, in opposition to.

With the Accusative.

abuants, downwards, aufwarts, upwards, bintearts, thitherwards, berwarts, hitherwards, entlang, along, binauf, berauf, up, binab, berab, down, binunter, berunter, down, bis, till, up to, fonder, without.

NOTE 1. Gemäß, gegenüber, juwiber, abwärts, aufwärts, hindarts, berwärts, entlang, binauf, hinab, hinunter, are as a rule placed after their cases; hinauf, hinab, hinunter, less often before them.

NOTE 2. Entlang occurs, with good writers, governing a Dative or Genitive; as, wir hatten ben gangen Lag gejagt entlang des Baldgebirges (Sch.), we had been hunting the whole day along the woody mountains; die Höhen entlang dem Recressitande von Reuholland dect ein leichtes, sandiges Erdreich (Forster), the heights along the coast of New Holland are covered by a light, sandy soil.

Note 3. Bis occurs only with proper names of places, and adverbs and numerals; as, bis Blen, up to Vienna; von Stolpe bis Danzig, from Stolpe to Danzig; drei bis vier, from three to four. In all other cases another preposition is joined to it; as, bis nad bem Dügel, on to the hill; bis nad Liste, till after dinner; bis jur Bernichtung, almost to extinction; bis jur Itranen gerährt, moved even to tears; bis jum Reere, to the sea-side; bis jum zenten bieses Ronars, till (up to) the tenth of this month; bis vor sinigen Rinuten, till a sew minutes ago; bis vor die Stadt, up to the city walls; bis in den Lod treu sein, to be true till death; ven nun an bis in Evolgfeit, henceforth into all eternity; bis in de Ritte, up to the very midst; bis binter das Paus, to the rear of the house; bis and bie Brust im Basser, up to the breast in water; bis gegen Reumart (Sch.), till near Neumark; alle bis sur Einen, all but one.

NOTE 4. Hinauf, binab, and hinunter always imply motion, change of place; as, er geht die Treppe hinauf, he goes up stairs (away from the speaker); sie dringen den Berg herauf, they press up hill (approaching the speaker); binad die feiter stieg er, he climbed down the ladder; der Feind ward die Böschung himmergeworfen, the enemy was thrown down the slope. This is also true of abwards, austrakes, and their compounds (hinabwarts, herauswarts, etc.), and similar compounds with warts; as, niederwarts, downwards; binterwarts, towards the rear; himbarts and perwarts; as, den Berg niederwarts subrem, to ride down hill; den Beg herwarts tommen, to come the way hitherwards.

NOTE 5. Sonder is almost entirely obsolete, and onne is used in its stead; as, fender Streifel (G.), without doubt; fender Gleichen (G.), unparalleled, without poer.

§ 275. Adverbs are joined to prepositions to individualize more specially the place or direction; as, ein Schiff, es fommt von Aluelen ber (Sch.), a ship! it comes from Fluelen: von Augend auf, from youth up; von Anfana an, since the beginning; pon Grund aus, from the foundation ; er tam binter bem Berge por, he came from behind the mountain : binter bem Balbe bin, along behind the forest; neben bem Pferbe ber geben, to walk beside the horse; por bem Auge ber, (along) before the procession; vom Dache berab, down from the roof; jum himmel binouf, up to (heaven) the sky; vom Lager sprang er auf (Uhl), up from his couch he sprang; auf einen Baum ju geben, to go towards a tree; an bas Feuer beran treten, to step up to the fire; über bie Berge berauf fteigt bie Sonne, jum Meere fintt fie wieber bingb, over the mountains rises the sun, down to the sea it sinks again; jum Tenster hinaus seben, to look out of the window; jur Thure bingus geben, to go out at the (of the) door; nach bem Aluffe au geben, to go towards the river; aur Thure bereintommen, to come in by the door; ber Weg führt am Abgrunde bin (ber), the road leads along a precipice; von England aus nach Dublin, from England to Dublin; hinter ben Ereigniffen ber binfen, ift die Art bes alten Schlenbrians, to hobble in the wake of events, is the fashion of old fogyism.

§ 276. Some prepositions may be joined to adverbs of time and place, as in English, to convert rest into movement and direction; as, non oven her fommen, to come from above; non fern brohen, to threaten from afar; weit non hier, far from here; auf heute find wir verfagt, we are engaged for to-day; für morgen wird dies genug sein, this will be enough for to-morrow; für jeht, for the present; seit gestern, since yesterday.

CHAPTER X.

CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 277. Conjunctions connect sentences with one another, and indicate at the same time the relation which they have between themselves according to the idea of the speaker.

NOTE. — When two connected sentences have either the same subject, or the same predicate, or another essential part common to both or all of the sentences (as, he eats and he drinks; my brother sleeps and my sister sleeps; the night ingale sings beautifully, and the nightingale sings charmingly), the two or more sentences are for the most part contracted into one (as, he eats and drinks; my brother and my sister sleep; the nightingale sings beautifully and charmingly). Hence the conjunctions may be said to connect also single words or parts of a sentence.

§ 278. All conjunctions are indeclinable, and, with a few exceptions, were originally adverbs, or derived from adverbs.

When two or more sentences are connected into one, this may be done either so that one is dependent on the other, or so that they are independent of one another. In the former case the sentence is called dependent or subordinate, and the conjunction introducing it subordinating; in the latter, they are called co-ordinate. See § 351.

SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS.

- § 279. The subordination of a sentence (accessory sentence) to another (principal sentence) may be threefold: either,—
- 1. The accessory sentence stands in the place of a substantive (substantive accessory sentence); or
- 2. It stands in the place of an adjective (adjective accessory sentence); or
- 3. It stands in the place of an adverb (adverbial accessory sentence).
- I. Substantive accessory sentences are introduced by the conjunctions daß, that, and vb, if, whether; as, ich weiß, daß wit

fterben mussen, I know that we must die (I know the necessity of our death); ich weiß nicht, ob er noch lebt, I know not if he still lives (I know not the fact of his life).

- II. Adjective accessory sentences are introduced, not by conjunctions, but by relative pronouns; as, ein Richter, welcher gerecht richtet, a judge who judges righteously (a just judge).
- § 280. III. Adverbial accessory sentences are introduced by different conjunctions, according as they express relation of place, time, manner, cause, purpose, condition, or concession.
- a) Locality is expressed by wo, where, wohin, whither, woher, whence, and their compounds (as, wo auch immer, wo immer, wo auch, wherever; wohin auch immer, wohin auch, wohin immer, wherever—to; woher auch immer, woher auch, woher immer, wherever—from); as, Tunis liegt, wo Rarthago stand, Tunis lies where Carthage stood; es giebt seine Hüsse, wohin ich auch immer blide, there is no help whichever way I look; die Sonne sommt daher und geht dahin, woher sie stets gesommen und wohin sie stets gegangen ist, the sun comes and goes where it has come from and gone to ever before.
- b) Time is expressed by the conjunctions als, ba, when, as; wenn and its compounds (wenn auch immer, wenn immer); wäherend, indes, indessen, indem, whilst; so large als, as long as, while; nachdem, after; ehe, bevor, before, ere; seit, seitdem, since; bis, till, until; sobald (als), sowie, as soon as.
- Norm.—Als introduces only past tenses, and actions that took place only once at a time, while wenn denotes with past tenses repeated action; as, wenn et bungrig war, as et gewöhnlich Brot; abet als et reich gewerden war, begann et Chsigietien zu essen, when he was hungry, he used to eat bread; but when he had become rich, he began to eat sweetmeats. Als and da occur only with past tenses; wenn and wann (the latter being in common use only to distinguish it from wenn, if, when mistakes are to be avoided) occur as well with the present and future tenses; as, ich gehe fort, wenn (wann) et commt, I shall go away when he comes; ich verbe fortgehen, wenn (toann) et getommen sein wird, I shall be gone when he will have come. Bett in the signification of while is confined to the vulgar tongue and ancient usage.
- c) Manner is expressed by wie, as; als, as; als ob, als wenn, as if, as though; (so) baß, (so) that; as, er ift so groß, als ich

bin, or wie ich bin; er schreit als ob (als wenn) er im Sterben läge, he cries as if he were dying; wir sind so sroh, daß wir tanzen könnten, we are so glad that we were able to dance.

NOTE 1. Els and tote are promiscuously used after comparatives proper and improper; as, so groß tote (als), größer tote (als). But tote is exclusively in use when the predicate is a verb without an adverb of intensity; as, sie fingt tote eine Strene fingt (not als), she sings like a Siren; er flatt tote nur Gerecte ster ben thunen, he died as only the righteous can die. Bit is likewise exclusively in use after solcher, e, es, or where solcher may be implied; as, bie Sonne hat einen solchen Glans, tote tein anderes Gestirn, the sun has such a splendor as has no other star; er hat ein (solches) Raul, tote ein Scheunthor, he has a mouth like a barn-door.

NOTE 2. Go daß is never used like the English so that, in the signification provided that, if only; as in, Marcellus allowed that Syracuse should be sacked, so that Archimedes should be spared, Rarcellus erlaubte Spratus ju plandern, vorausgeseit daß (wenn nut) Archimedes verschent bliebe.

d) Cause is expressed by weil, because, ba, as, since, nun, now that, jumal and jumal ba, the more so as, and tropbem (bah), notwithstanding; as, ba der Berg nicht zu Mohamed kam, ging Mohamed zum Berge, since the mountain did not come to Mohammed, Mohammed went to the mountain; er ist arm weil er chrlich ist, he is poor because he is honest; nun er gestorben ist, werden seine Erben sich freuen, now that he is dead, his heirs will rejoice; Carl verachtet une, zumal (da) wir unser Brot mit Arbeit verdienen müssen, Charles despises us, the more so since we, etc.; tropbem (dah) er gewarnt worden war, ging er ause Eis, notwithstanding he had been warned, he ventured upon the ice.

NOTE. — Da gives rather the reason, well rather the cause; nun (nun ba, well nun, ba nun) points out the existing circumstances.

- e) Purpose is expressed by baß, that, bamit, in order that (auf baß, in order that, is rather antiquated); as, er starb, baß (bamit, auf baß) wir leben möchten, he died that we might live.
- f) Condition is expressed by wenn, if, falls, wo, wofern (bafern is antiquated), in case (that); wenn anders, wenn trgend, provided that, wenn nur, provided that, so that (see n. 2, above);

wenn nicht, wo nicht, unless, if not. The use of so instead of wenn is obsolete; as, wenn bu Recht hast, muß ich Unrecht haben, if you are right, I must be wrong; falls (wosern, im Falle daß) er jest nicht stirbt, kann er noch lange leben, in case he does not die now, he may yet live for a long time; kommt, wenn es andere (irgend) möglich ist, come if it be in any way possible; wenn (so) ihr euch nicht ergebt, tödten wir euch, if you do not surrender, we shall kill you.

g) Concession is expressed by obgleich, obschon, obwohl, ob auch, wenn gleich, wenn schon, wenn auch, wiewohl, although, though, even though, wie—auch, so—auch, however, ungeachtet, notwithstanding; as, es ist talt, obgleich (obschon, obwohl, wenngleich, wennschon, wiewohl) es nicht schneit, the weather is cold, although it does not snow; er sleit Manches, ob er gleich blind ist (wenn er gleich, wenn er auch, obschon er, obwohl er, ob er auch, wiewohl er blind ist), he sees many things, although he is blind; so schr (wie schr) er sich auch sträubt, er muß es thun, he must do it, however he struggles against it; sie war trant, ungeachtet sie gesund aussah, she was ill, notwithstanding she looked healthy.

NOTE 1. From the above examples it appears that the compounds obgicity, softwar, wenn girity, wenn and, may be separated by one or more intervening words, provided the predicate be not among them; ob — and, wife — and, for— and, wenn — and, are always thus separated; object, obweth, witwoot, never are.

NOTE 2. All subordinate conjunctions have the effect of throwing the verb to the end of the sentence (see § 289).

§ 281. The English particles before, after, and since are each of them used in the character of a preposition, of an adverb, and of a subordinating conjunction, but are in German rendered differently in each of these characters, viz.:—

	Preposition.	Adverb.	Conjunction.
Before	bor	borher, jubor	ehe or bebor.
After	nach	nachter, hernach	nachdem'.
Bince	feit	feitdem'	feit or feitbem.

Examples. - Sie ffart bor ihrem Sohne, namilich einen Tag borber (qubor), und bebor (ebe) fie ibn gefeben hatte, she died before her son, that is to say, one day

before, and before she had seen him. In bin glacticher feit einem Monat; ich bin feitdem immer vergnägt gewesen, nämlich seit (seitdem) ich bei Ihnen war, I have been happier sor a month past; since that time I have always been cheerful to wit, since I was with you. Das Gewitter tam-nach Mittag, lange nachber, und nachbem es vorher lange geregnet batte, the thunder-storm came after our dinner, some time after, and after it had rained for a long time.

The following conjunctions are both subordinating conjunctions and adverbs, and as such capable of being used as coordinate conjunctions.

Subordinative import.

je,
ba, as, since,
bamit, in order that,
indem, as, while,
indeffen, while,
nun, now that,
folunge (ale), fobalb (

folunge (als), fobalb (als), and similar compounds with fo.

Adverbial and co-ordinative import.

jt (befte), see § 184, Note 4.
then, there.
with that, therewith.
meanwhile (only in the popular tongue).
meanwhile.
now, at this time, under these circumstances.

Examples. — Solange (als) bu gludlich bift, folange wirft bu viele Freunde haben; sobald bu aber vom Glud verlaffen wirft, sobald (alfobald, alsbald) wirft du auch von beinen Freunden verlaffen sein. Goweit bas Auge reicht, soweit auch die Schopfung, so sar as the eye reaches, so sar reaches creation. Da du teinen Muth haft, so (ba) wirft du auch teinen Erfolg baben; eben da wir noch rathschageren, da tam die Gefahr; Gott will und damit soden, daf (damit) wir glauben sollen, baf er unser rechter himmlischer Bater ift (Luther). Indeffen ihr im Ueberfluffe schweigt, indeffen hungern eure Brüder; nun es teine Könige mehr im lande giebt, nun giebt es Demagogen.

Co-ordinative Conjunctions.

§ 282. Of the co-ordinative conjunctions by far the greater number are still legitimate adverbs, and almost any adverb may be used as a conjunction (see § 288. 6), when placed at the head of the sentence. The German language points this out in every case by a particular construction of the sentence (§ 298, note), while the few co-ordinative conjunctions proper require no such construction, but that of the simple sentence. These few genuine co-ordinative conjunctions are unb, and; aber, but; benn, for; sonbern, but (after negative sentences); allein, but; entweber, either; over, or; namlid, namely.

Norn. — Elfo, therefore, mar, it is true, and both, nevertheless, are sometimes employed like adverbs, and sometimes like conjunctions proper.

- § 283. The co-ordinative conjunctions cannot be completely enumerated here, because almost any adverb may be used as such. Still, the following are those most in use as conjunctions improper.
- 1. Copulative Conjunctions put co-ordinate sentences in the relation of equality to one another, by placing them side by side; as, und, and; and the following adverbs: aud, also; zudem, außerdem, überdies, ohnehin, besides, moreover; fowehl—als (aud), as well as, both—and; weder—noch, neither—nor; nicht nur (nicht allein, nicht bloß)—fondern (aud), not only—but (also); theils—theils, partly—partly; balb—bald, now—then, sometimes—sometimes; dann, then; da, then, there; ferner, farther; endlich, finally; and the explanatory particle nämlich, namely, to wit.
- 2. Adversative Conjunctions express thoughts in opposition to each other, and either in part or entirely denying each other; as, aber, but; allein, but, however, nevertheless; over, or; and the following adverbs: both, still, jedoth, bennoth, yet, still, nevertheless; indeffen, however; gleichwohl, bestenungeachtet (bemungeachtet), notwithstanding; nichtsbestoweniger, nevertheless; hingegen, bagegen, on the contrary. The above conjunctions express limitation only, the following negation: entweber—over, either—or; nicht—sondern, not—but; and the adverbs nicht—vielmehr, not—but rather; weder—noch, neither—nor; soust (in ancient German so ne ist, if it is not), else, otherwise.
- 3. Concessive Conjunctions introduce a fact which is in a correlative sentence limited by both or aber; such are zwar (from es ift wahr, it is true) and the adverbs freilith, wohl, indeed.
- 4. Causative Conjunctions introduce a cause or reason. Such are benn, for (introducing a reason for a fact or opinion mentioned in a preceding sentence); nämlich, to wit, namely; and the adverbs baher, behwegen, behhalb, barum, therefore, on that account, for that reason; bafür, therefor; also, folglich, mithin, bemnach, somit, sonach, consequently, accordingly; all of

these drawing a conclusion or inference from a preceding sentence.

Note. — The conjunctions proper after, entirefer, naming, also, and great may be placed after the first words, instead of at the head of the sentence, — even after the auxiliary verb, but not later; both never can be thus used, but in its place jeboth may be employed.

CHAPTER XI.

INTERJECTIONS.

§ 284. Interjections are words or sounds expressing momentary feelings of joy, pain, wonder, abhorience, encouragement, etc., and are so called because they are *thrown* in between the parts of a sentence, without being essential to its meaning, and without exerting the least influence upon the construction.

Joy is expressed by ah! ha! heifa! juchhei! hurrah!

Pain or sorrow, by ach! oh! webe!

Wonder by ei! ah! ach! he! hoho! oh! lieber gar!

Abhorrence by pfui! fi!

Doubt by hem! hm!

The following are used in calling to a person: he! heba! hella! pft! to command silence, fth! ft! pft! in agreeing to a proposal, topp! To these may be added the imitations of various sounds; as, bau;! parbau;! hufth! fnads! puff! plumps!

The following are, properly speaking, adverbs, or elliptical sentences, but used as interjections: weh! o'weh! woe is me! leiber! alas! heil! hail! gottlob! Gott fet Dant! God be praised! Herr Jesus! Christ! bet Gott! by God! beim Satan! by Satan! wohlan! well! wohlaus! cheer up! getrest! be of good cheer! frisch! frischaus! away! on! halt! halt an! stop! hold on! her bamit! hither with it! weg (fort, hinaus) mit dir! away with you!

PART III.

SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I.

CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES.

- § 285. The construction of sentences, or, in other words, the arrangement of words within the sentence, and of single sentences within compound sentences, according to the laws of the language, is somewhat different in German from what it is in English. There being only three essential members in a sentence, the Subject (1), the Predicate (2), and the Object (3), only six different ways of arranging them are possible,—
 1, 2, 3; 2, 1, 3; 1, 3, 2; 3, 2, 1 3, 1, 2; 2, 3, 1; whereof the German has adopted only the first three,—1, 2, 3; 2, 1, 3; 1, 3, 2.
- § 286.—1. In simple sentences, or, what is the same, in independent sentences (to which also the co-ordinate sentences belong), the Subject comes first, the Predicate second, the Object or Objects third (1, 2, 3).
- 2. In some cases this order is inverted, and the sentence is called an inverted sentence; the arrangement is then, first the *Predicate*, next the *Subject*, and lastly the *Object* or *Objects* (2, 1, 3).
- 3. In dependent sentences of every kind a third arrangement obtains; to wit, the *Subject* is first, the *Object* or *Objects* second, and the *Predicate* last (1, 3, 2).

Examples. — 1. Der Bater liebt ben Sohn, the father loves his son (1, 2, 3).

- 2. Liebt der Bater seinen Sobn? does the father love his son? (2, 1, 3.)
- 3. Weil der Bater seinen Sohn liebt, because the father loves his son (1, 3, 2).
- § 287. Now the predicate, which in the above sentences consists of one word, or is, in other words, a simple tense of a verb, may as well consist of several words, as in der Bater hat seinen Sohn geliebt, or der Bater wird seinen Sohn lieben (geliebt haben), or die Sonne geht des Morgens auf, or der Lehrer ist wirklich ein guter Mann, or Napoleon ist schon lange todt, or ich werde ein Schullehrer werden, or du wirst wohl müde geworden sein. Where this is the case, the Grammar calls the first of these words (hat, wird, geht, ist, werde, wirst) which is always a person of one of the auxiliary verbs, the Copula, and the rest of these words the Predicate, whether there be one or two, or even three of them.

In such cases the above arrangement is widened as follows:—

- L Simple sentences: 1. Subject; 2. Copula; 3. Objects; 4. Predicate. (1, 2, 3, 4.)
- II. Inverted sentences: 1. Copula; 2. Subject; 3. Objects;
 4. Predicate. (2, 1, 3, 4.)
- III. Dependent sentences: 1. Subject; 2. Objects; 3. Predicate; 4. Copula. (1, 3, 4, 2.)

Examples .- 1. Der Bater hat feinen Sohn geliebt (1, 2, 8, 4).

- 2. hat ber Bater feinen Gohn geliebt ? (2, 1, 3, 4).
- 3. Wenn ber Bater feinen Gohn geliebt bat (1, 3, 4, 2).
- § 288. Inversion takes place, —
- 1. In direct questions; as, bist bu trant? ift Rarl im Ronzerte gewesen?
- 2. In direct optative sentences (expressing a wish or desire); as, ware Rarl both im Ronzerte gewesen, O, had Charles been at the concert! warest bu both nie geboren worden, O, hadst thou never been born! o, regnete es both! would that it rained!

NOTE. - But wishes may as well be expressed in the form of a simple unin-

317

verted sentence; as, ich möchte ihn sehen, I should like to see him. This is less expressive than möchte ich ihn dech sehen, which expresses at the same time that the suffilment of the wish does not depend on the speaker.

- 8. In conditional sentences, when wenn, if, is omitted; as in hatte ich ein Schwert, so wollte ich, etc., had I a sword, I would, etc.; fiele der himmel ein, so würden wir, etc., if the sky were falling in, we should, etc.
- 4. In imperative sentences; as, Lefen Sie biefen Brief! nimm (bu) bir's ju Bergen, mind it! gebt (ibr) mir alle eure Bucher!
- 5. In principal sentences connected with dependent (accessory) ones, when the latter are placed first, the former second; as, wenn ich ihn gefunden hätte (accessory sentence) würde ich froh sein (principal sentence); obgleich ich frank bin, so will ich doch ausgehen.
- NOTE 1. Still, in sentences like the following: wenn mein Bater mir lehrer gehalten håtte wie ich bir ich ware was Inderes als Birth jum gelbenen löwen (Goethe), if my father had kept for me teachers, as I for you I should have been something other, etc.; an interruption of the quiet flow of the compound sentence, pointed out by the dash (—), prevents the inversion from taking place.

NOTE 2. In quotations, the quoting sentence is inverted, when placed in the midst of the quoted words, as ich babe nicht gewußt, sprach er, baff er noch lebte.

- 6. In inversions proper, viz. when an object or predicate is placed at the head of a sentence, for the sake of emphasis; as, seinen Sohn liebt der Vater nicht; mein Rind habe ich nicht gefunden; gestorben ist er noch nicht; zu sehen ist nichts hier; ganz gut ist Niemand; ein wahrer Freund wird dieser Selbstsüchtling niemals sein können, this egotist will never be able to be a true friend; heute kann ich nicht kommen; viel konnte er nicht essen; nicht nur hat er Geld gestohlen, sondern er rühmt sich dessen auch; freilich weiß Niemand etwas davon; immerhin mag ein Verläumder das sagen, I care not, a slanderer may say so; abermals war eine Viertelstunde vergangen, another quarter of an hour was past.
- NOTE 1. After co-ordinative conjunctions proper (namely, those given in § 282), inversion need not take place; but the German language being fond of well-connected sentences, it is considered elegant to place adverbs, like other

objects, at the head of the sentence, whenever there is the least excuse for emphasizing them, and to impart to them by this means the force of a conjunction (improper).

NOTE 2. There is a kind of direct question that does not allow of an inversion; as, tole? ich tear teahnfinnig? und das if dein Ernft? und ich follre did nicht für diese Beleibigung bestrafen? what? I am insane (you say)? and you are in earnest? and I should not punish you for this insult? itr Derg sage of them nicht? (Sch.) This kind of question is nothing but an assertion in form accented like a question. (See § 318. 8.) Indirect questions are construed according to § 289.

Note 8. The English manner of emphasizing an object or adverb, as shown in the sentences, 'it is to-morrow that he intends to leave,' 'it was only yesterday that he denied it,' 'it is to this part of the building that my story refers,' ought not to be imitated in German, where the inversion offers the best means of an emphasis. So that the above sentences must be translated, morgen with er fortgeben, gestern erst lauguere er's, and biesen Theil bes Gebaubes begieht sich meine Geschücker.

NOTE 4. Only one object at a time can be emphasized by inversion; as, testen Binter war es in England set talt, not, as in English, 'last winter, in England, there was severe cold.

- § 289. By the particular arrangement of the dependent or accessory sentence, the language impresses the mind of the hearer with the fact that he has a dependent sentence before him, and must not mistake it for a simple or principal sentence;—the latter being always arranged like simple sentences, except when taken out of their legitimate place within the compound sentence, namely, the first place, and arranged after the dependent sentence (see § 288. 5). Therefore, all dependent sentences assume the subordinate construction, the two following cases only excepted:—
- 1. When wenn, if, is omitted in conditional, sentences. (See § 288. 3.)
- 2. When daß, that, is omitted in oratio obliqua and asserting sentences; as, er sagte, ich wäre sein Bohlthäter, he said I was his benefactor; ich glaube, die Republit ist die beste Staatssorm, I believe the republic is the best form of government.

These examples show that in this latter case the simple sentence is resorted to, to mark the omission of wenn or bas.

§ 290. Among the different attributes of a subject or object,

the natural or simple arrangement is the following: 1. the article, when there is any, or in its stead the adjective pronoun; 2. the adjective; 3. the substantive; 4. the genitive or the other cases, or adverbs, joined to the subject, and individualizing it; 5. the appositive.

Examples. — Der gute Bater dieses ungläcklichen Sohnes, ein wahrer Ehrenmann, verdient teinen Borwurf, the good father of this unsortunate son, a true man of honor, deserves no reproach; diese Strasse hier fahrt nach T.; der Mann im Monde, der wohlbekannte, ist gar tein Mann; unser armseliges leben wird verine Belohnung ausgeglichen, our wretched life is not compensated by any reward; alle großen Ranner haben lächerliche Schwächen, all great men have ridiculous weaknesses.

Note 1. For the sake of emphasis, the adjective, with or without the article repeated, may be placed after the substantive; as, Es soll mir der Freund, der liebende, sterben (Sch.). For other examples, see § 194, note. For the sake of euphony, this inversion takes place in poetry, as a rule, when the adjective is accompanied by objects dependent on it; as, Aud manden Deld, im Frieden gut und flart im Feld, gebar das Schwabenland (Sch.); Ein toniglides Stirnband, reich an Steinen (Sch.). In ancient German, the adjective frequently followed the substantive, even without emphasis; as, mein Bater seig, my late sather; sehn Gulden theinisch, ten Rhenish storins.

Note 2. For the sake of emphasis, the Genitive may precede the substantive on which it depends, when the article of the latter is omitted; as, des Baters Segen baut den Kindern Huger, aber der Mutter Judy reifit sie nieder; Fleiß ift des Guttes Bater (Prov.) diligence is the father of good luck; beraubt er nicht des eignen Bruders Kind? (Sch.); nicht ahnet sie, daß er Messina's Jurst ift (Sch.); das teben ist der Bater größtes nicht, der Uebel größtes aber ist die Schuld (Sch.).

Note 3. The appositive may, for the sake of emphasis, precede the governing substantive; as, der Schöpfung Meisterstück, der Mensch, etc. (Kiz.), man, the masterpiece of creation; der berühmte Berfusser des versorenen Paradieses, Milton.

§ 291. Among the different objects of a predicate, the following order obtains:—1. Personal Pronouns, in the following order: a) Accusative, b) Dative, c) Genitive;—2. Adverbs of time and place;—3. Oblique cases of substantives;—4. Other adverbs or adverbial expressions. Of the cases of substantives (among the substantive objects) that of the person precedes that of the thing, and of several persons or things the Dative precedes the Accusative, the latter the Genitive.

Examples. — Ich habe heute mich ihm gezeigt; er war geffern bem Gouverneure vorgestellt worden; die Matter von Sparta gaben ihren Schnen bas Schwert und Schib, wenn fie auszogen; ich entfinne mich beschulbtg die Amerikaner nicht mehr, I for mere grief cannot recollect it; man beschulbtg die Amerikaner der Dollarfucht, they charge the Americans with dollarmania; der Adersmann geht immer mit einem Stode hinter bem Pfluge her (einher); er kann niemals sich seiner Aufgabe jur rechten Beit erinnern; du haft dich in mit verrechner.

NOTE 1. Still, adverbs of time and place may just as well interchange their place with the oblique cases of personal pronouns; as, ich habe mich heute ihm geseigt; or, ich habe mich ihm heute geseigt; ich tann nie es ihr vergeffen, I can never forgive it her.

NOTE 2. Es may follow a personal pronoun in the Dative; as, 3th babe mir's gebacht, I expected this; er nahm fich's por, he proposed it to himself. With poets the Genitive of a personal pronoun may precede the Dative and Accusative; as, er erinnerte feiner fich; the forms thm's and thuen's, und es, euch es, are considered incorrect.

Norn 8. The cases of substantive objects may interchange their places for the sake of euphony (the shorter word, for instance, preceding a longer object), or on account of rhythm in poetry; as, er übergab seinen Sohn einem vielersaterenen ichter; man klagt des Mordes den besten aller Menschen an; der ichter spriche von Karl'n nur Gures und liebes. Karl V. hatte in Italien einen geschrichen Resbenduster an dem Könige von Frankreich. The objects sollow each other here, so that not only the shorter ones precede the longer ones, but also the less important ones precede the more important. The same is the case in the sollowing sentence: die Morgensterne priesen in hohem Jubeston den Schöfer grüner Wiesen viel tausend Jahre Chon (J. G. Jac.).

Note 4. The adverb nicht, when simply negativing a whole sentence (or, which amounts to the same, the predicate), takes the place of all other adverbs, or in other words has the last place in a sentence with a simple tense, and immediately precedes the predicate, where there is a copula in the sentence; as, Er liebt feine Etrern nicht: August versteht das Franzsische nicht; ich habe das nicht behaupter; ich werde das nicht behaupter; er ward für seine Berbrechen nicht bestraft. But when negativing only one part of the sentence, it is placed before that part; as. ich ehre nicht die Ehrtosen, sondern die Bürdigen; wir gehen nicht immer nach Tische aus, nur mandmal; nicht Regen hilft, niche Ihau noch Duft (Uhl.); du weißt, das nicht Eles Gold ist, was glängt.

NOTE 5. The adverb selbst follows the part of the sentence which it identifies or emphasizes; as, den Konig selbst will ich sehen; er redete mit sich selbst; wir des schaftigen und selbst damit, und Niemanden anders. But when the subject is to be identified or emphasized, selbst is the first word in the sentence; as, selber will ich geben; or the last word in sentences with simple tenses, and the last before the predicate in sentences with a copula; as, das thue ich schon selbst; das neede ich schon zur rechten Beit mit meinen flarten Armen selber thun; er sieht selbst aus.

When selbst is equivalent to sogar, even, it immediately precedes the word emphasized. And thus all other emphasizing adverbe; as, selbst Gaben, die seiner Stelle gebührten, sehnte er ab (Sch.), he declined even presents which became his rank; der Schler hat selbst die einfachsten Sachen nicht begriffen; wir würden julest sogar unsere Muttersprache vergessen; vorzäglich die schwachen Menschen mußt du schonen; wir wollen erst arbeiten, dann spielen. Still, it is not incorrect, and may even de elegant, to place all these emphasizing adverds immediately after the word emphasized; as, sernen erst und spielen dann, set unsere tosung; den towen vorzüglich habe ich im Auge; er trantte die Wittveen und Waisen sogar.

- NOTE 6. With poets occurs sometimes a personal pronoun in an oblique case after all other objects; as, wit haben fiets die Freiheit uns bewahrt (Sch.).
- NOTE 7. The adverb ju, belonging to the infinitive, always immediately precedes the latter; as, um die Bahrheit ju fagen; um mich eine halbe Stunde allein ju sehen. The adverbs schon, noch, and genug may also either precede or follow the words which they individualize.
- NOTE 8. The conjunctional adverbs auch, taum, weber, noch, entweder, nur, fogar, icon, and some others when referring to and emphasizing the subject, not the predicate, do not cause an inversion; as, nur der Spiegel gerbrach, nicht jugleich bas Jenster; taum ein kleiner Theil davon ging verloren; weder das Gift noch der Dolch find ehrenwerthe Baffen, etc.
- §.292. Poetical license and the laws of eurythmy and euphony, even in prose, may invert the established order of subject, copula, objects, and predicate in the following cases:—
- 1. The objects follow the predicate, instead of preceding it, when a greater stress is placed on them, though not great enough to invert the whole sentence according to § 288. 6; or when the object is too long: as.—

Daf fich herz und Auge weibe an bem wohlgelungnen Bild (Sch.), in order that heart and eye may rejoice over the well-finished picture; bas Alter foleicht bem Renfchen nach auf dem Jufe (on his heels), (Prov.); ich habe allerlei nachgebacht über die Begierde im Menfchen, fich auszubreiten, neue Entdedungen zu machen, etc. (G.). Der Knabe schlief ein am grunen Gestade (Sch.).

2. In simple sentences with a copula, when inverted, the subject follows one or all of the objects, for the sake of emphasis or eurythmy; as, dieses Jahr wird wahrscheinlich ein Romet am himmel (or am himmel ein Romet) erscheinen; beute sind mit der Post gewiß wieder viele Briefe angekommen; einen Blid nach dem Grabe seiner Habe sendet noch der Mensch zurud (Sch.).

The same transposition of the subject and object obtains in accessory sentences also, the latter having a kind of inverted order; as, weil gestern plohlich ein Gewirter tam, etc. Wenn in diesem Jahre vielleicht am himmel ein Komet erscheinen sollte, etc.

The same transposition, being so very poetical, is effected by employing the meaningless pronoun Es in the place of the subject (see § 206. 2); as, Es if jett Friede; es if eine foone Mondacht (Sch.).

3. When an accessory sentence takes the place of the subject, the same inversion obtains, both in English and in German; as, es ist schwer, bas zu thun (es ist eine schwere Sache), it is difficult to do that; es ist gesund, spazieren zu gehen. The sollowing idiomatic expressions may be mentioned in this connection:—

Es freut mich (es macht mir Freude) Sie ju sehn, it gives me pleasure to see you. Es thut mir seid, das sagen ju massen, I am sorry to say that. Es mache mir Schmerz, zu gehen (gehn zu sollen), it gives me pain to take leave. Es reut mich, das gerhau zu haben, or das ich's gerhau habe, I repent having done this (or, that I should have done this). Es wundert mich, das zu doren, I am astonished to hear this. Es besiebt mir, es gesälle mir, es ist mir gesällig, das zu thun, I have pleasure in doing so. Es betrabt (schmerzt) mich, das zu doren, I am grieved that I should, etc. Es drgert mich, das es soil, la m vexed that this should be so. Es heist, das, etc., it is said that, etc. Es schmer, das, etc., it seems that, etc. Es ziemt (geziemt), es gehört, es schütt sich, das, etc., it seems that, etc. Es siemt (geziemt), es gehört, es schütt sich, das, etc., it is due (becoming) that he should thank. Es versieht sich von selbs, das, it is sels-evident that, etc. Es hist, es nügt wenig oder nichts, es zu sagen, it is of little or no use to say it. Es schoter nichts (es tann nichts schoen), das (or wenn) man es thut, it does no harm to do it.

4. Poetical license goes even further, and places an emphasized subject last, or wherever else logic does not forbid it, and an object before the copula, or an adverb of time; as,—

Bon der Seirne heiß einnen muß der Schweiß (Sch.). Anf des Roders halle feiert Frablingsfeste die Ratur (Salis.). Munter fördert seine Schritte in dem wilden Forft der Wandrer (Sch.). Nachdrangt das Bolt, mit wilden Rufen, erfällend des Geländers Stufen (Sch.). Auf fpringt der König und fordert den Stabl (I'M.). Bald nahte der Mitte der Umsturg sich (B.). Ihm tonnte den mutdigen Glauben der Hohn des Twrannen nicht rauben (Sch.). Best schnell, eh' die Brandung wiedertebrt, der Jungling sich Gott empfiehlt (Sch.). Drauf der König greift nach dem Becher schnell, in den Strudel ihn schlevert hinein (Sch.).

Still, even in prose, some of these arrangements may be imitated, and a subject placed last, when it is a longer expression, or a relative sentence is annexed to it; as, dem rechticaffenen Manne bleibt im Unglade der Troft eines guten Ge-

wiffens; das Einimpfen der natürlichen Blattern bat in Europa guerft ein griechischer Arzt aus Konfiancinopel, Ramens Limanus, empfohlen, welcher, etc.

The Genitive and the Appositive are, with poets, separated by intervening parts of the sentence; as, drei Borte nenn' ich euch, inbalteschwer (Sch.). Daß ber Berrug nicht eines Raubers mich vom fichren Schugert reife (G.).

5. In accessory sentences the copula may precede, instead of following, the predicate, when the latter consists of two or more words; as, Niemand läugnet, daß die Uebelthäter hier auf Erben nicht immer find bestraft worden (or bestraft worden sind); wenn ich erst meine Arbeit werde beendigt haben (or beenbigt haben werde).

But the copula must precede when the predicate consists of two infinitives; as, ich weiß, baß ich's werde vollbringen können; wenn ich's hätte gestehn muffen (or sollen, wollen, mögen, burfen, können, hören, sehen, helfen), ware ich verzweifelt.

The copula werben or werbet must, likewise, precede the infinitive werben; as, ich weiß, baß ihr werbet reich werben, und baß sie werben arm werben; wenn wir aus unfrer Lage werben erlöst werben. But es ist möglich baß er reich werben wirb.

- 6. Relative sentences are accessory ones, and arranged exactly like these. But as the relative pronouns and adverbs are, at the same time, interrogatives, the pupil must carefully discriminate whether the sentence is a direct interrogation headed by an interrogative pronoun, when the inverted order is to be employed. Compare the following sentences: er wußte nicht, wen er unglüdlich gemacht hatte Ben hat er unglüdlich gemacht? Der Lehrer fragte, wo Karl gewesen wäre; wo war Karl gewesen? It is the same with was, wie, wenn, wohin, woher, womit, wodurch, etc., and their compounds.
- 7. A few rules on the arrangement of single words are scattered through §§ 119. 5, 12, 158, 162, 164, 174, 177, 186, 187, note, 191, note 1, 203, 206, 209, 220, note, 221, 224-227, 240, note 7, 251, note 1, 257, 273, 274, note 1, 275, 279, 280-282, 283, note, 284; and § 349 treats this subject still further in connection with the rhetorical accent.

§ 293. Dependent sentences ought always to take the place of the substantive, or adjective, or adverb, which they replace. The relative or adjective accessory sentence, however, follows the substantive to which it refers, instead of preceding it, like the adjective; as, ich kenne ben Mann, von welchem du sprichst (ten befannten, diesen Mann) seit lange; or ich kenne den Mann seit lange, von welchem du sprichst. The latter arrangement is preserable when the relative sentence is not separated by too many words from its substantive, because this prevents the principal sentence from being cut into two parts, often widely separated from each other, and the latter part ending perhaps in one or a few words. The sentence, er zeg scincu Rod, welder über und über mit Blut bestedt war, aus, and similar ones, are decidedly cumbrous; it is better to say, er zeg seinen Rod aus, welcher, etc.

On the other hand, the relative sentence should not be separated from its substantive by too many intervening words, and never so, when a misunderstanding may be apprehended. We should not say, er zog seinen Rocke vom Leibe, welcher ganz mit Blut besteckt war, where welcher refers to Rock, but can as well be referred to Leibe. Neither should we say, ber Vater bes Berbrechers war bes Morgens in's Gesängniß gesommen, welcher hingerichtet werden sollte; but rather, der Bater des Berbrechers, welcher, etc., war, etc.

The same rule holds good of all accessory sentences that may be inserted within the principal one; as, die Berzweislung Aller darüber, daß jede hülfe unmöglich schien, kann man sich benken. But not die Berzweislung aller kann man sich benken daß keine hülfe möglich schien. Neither, man kann sich die Berzweislung Aller darüber, daß keine hülfe möglich schien, benken.

§ 294. But the best means of avoiding misconstruction is the inversion of sentences. By placing a troublesome accessory sentence at the head of the compound sentence (§ 288), the latter gains clearness and stress at the same time; as, bay frine buffe möglich schen, (bas) brachte Alle zur Berzweiflung. (In the

principal sentence there is here no inversion, because the accessory sentence itself stands here in the place of subject to the principal sentence.) Beil viele Menschen schlecht sind, deswegen müssen nicht alle schlecht sein. (The inversion in the principal sentence, and in all principal sentences connected with adverbial accessory sentences, is accounted for by the intention of the language to point out by the inversion of the principal sentence, that the order of the sentences is also inverted.)

The following tables show the complete arrangement of words according to the three different kinds of sentence:—

L. Simple and Co-ordinate Sentences.

Und ber arme Bater bes berfornen Rindes, ber Ungladliche, hatte geftern ibn tros alles Suchens noch nicht gefunden.

Aber die glangende Sonne des Maimonds ging Diesmal über einem fraben Grabe auf.

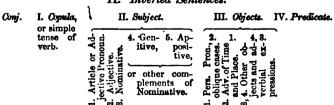
Er pflegt fic regelmaffig alle Tage ju betrinten.

Sie hat heute bem lehrer ihren Gohn jur Erziehung übergeben.

3ch babe mich ihm baju angeboten.

Bir geben ihm den Gtod nicht.

II. Inverted Sentences.



Aber hatte (benn) ber arme Dater bee berfornen Rindes, der Ungladliche, es geftern tros alles Suchens noch nicht gefunden ?

Bann (wo) will er (benn) mir fein Bebeimnif anvertrant haben ?

Madre bas Meer une bald von ihm befreien !

Barre fie mir bas Untenten nicht gegeben, fo murbe ich, etc.

Lefen Gie jest Diefen Brief mit Rachbenten burd.

(Benn bas wuhr mare, fo) barten wir endlich in ihm unfer Glud wiebergefunden.

Sier will ich nun mich bon meinen Leiben erholen.

Dadurd wird der Jungling nad und nad jum großen Manne.

III. Dependent or Subordinate Sentences.

Coni.

I. Subject.	II. Objects.	III. Predicate.	IV. Copula.
4. Gen- 5. Ap- itive, posi- tive, posi- po	1. Personal Pro- nouns. 2. Adverts of Time, etc. 3.4. Other ob- jects and ad- yerlial ex- processions		

Benn ber arme Bater bes verlornen Rindes, ber Ungludliche, daffelbe geftern nach vielem Suchen enblich aufgefunden batte.

2Bo tein Sonnenftrabl ibn bei feinen Berbrechen fierer, etc.

(Eine That) welcher alle Betheiligten fich bernachmals mit Recht fcamen warben.

Da (weil) wir bem Burfchen teine Erlaubnif baju gaben, fo, otc.

(3ch iveif) daß die glangende Maifonne diesmal über einem Grabe aufgebt.



ELEMENTS OF THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

§ 295. The elements of a simple sentence form three groups:
—1. the *Predicative group*, comprising Subject, Predicate, and Copula (where there is any); —2. the *Attributive group*, comprising the complements of the Subject or Substantive; — and, 3. the *Objective group*, comprising the complements of the Predicate. See the tables in § 294.

§ 296. The *Predicative group* is the most important of the three, constituting the skeleton of the sentence, while the other two groups form only complements of subject and predicate,

and tend either to generalize a particular or individual, or to individualize and particularize a general subject and predicate.

The logical coherence of the predicative group is grammatically expressed by the agreement of subject and predicate in gender, number, and case; as, beine Tochter ift eine Jägerin; wir werben effen; ich werde bein Schüler sein.

To this rule there is only one exception in German; namely, in sentences with es giebt, which governs the logical subject always in the accusative, es being the grammatical subject; as in es giebt einen König, there is a king.

The subject may be a substantive or a substantive pronoun. In the latter case the pronoun refers always to some substantive either preceding or supplied in thought, and must be of the same gender, number, and case with it; as, es gingen brei Jäger wohl auf die Birsch, sie wollten erjagen den weißen Hirch (Uhl.); Ohne Heimath muß der Soldat — schwärmen; er muß vorbet an der Städte Glanz (Sch.); Nicht nach gewohnter Sitte erzog man dieses Kind; und als es kam zu Jahren, ward es die schönste Fran (Uhl.).

NOTE 1. When the substantive is a diminutive in hen or lein (neuters), the pronoun generally refers back to it in the natural gender; as, we ist Frischen i ift er im Garten?— Was macht Lortchen i ift sie trant?— Als mich das Mädchen erblickte, so trat sie den Pferden naber (G.). Das Fraulein— sie will sterben (Sch.).

Note 2. That a neuter pronoun, es, bas, bies, when subject, or only grammatical (not at the same time logical) subject, may be followed by a predicate in any gender or number, we have explained in §§ 203 and 206.

§ 297. The predicate is either (1) a simple tense of a verb (Present, Imperfect, or Imperative), or (2) an auxiliary verb connected with a participle, or (3) an infinitive, or (4) an adverb, or (5) preposition, or (6) noun substantive, or (7) adjective, or (8) pronoun, or (9) numeral, or (10) a preposition governing a case; as,—

1. Der Lehrer lehrt. 2. Das Kind hat geweint. 3. Sie soll effen. 4. Ich gehe zurud. 5. Wir stellen auf. 6. Er ist ein Jäger. 7. Die Welt ist schön. 8. Die Beute ist unser. 9. Die heilige Zahl ist brei. 10. Er war von Sinnen.

Norm 1. After one of the auxiliary verbs follen, wollen, mogen, burfen, townen, muffen, the complementary infinitive is often omitted and supplied in thought; as, was bu (thun) folls, has tannst bu auch (thun); was ich nicht (haben) mag, will er vollends gar nicht (annehmen); was der Mensch nicht (sich erlausben) darf, das muß er auch nicht (thun).

Note 2. In § 115, note 1, is explained what adverbs and prefixes and nouns must not be separated from verbs with which they are compounded; and in § 203 what pronouns must not be used predicatively. Cardinal and indefinite numerals do not allow of a predicative use, and the English we were three (there are four of them), the brothers are many, they are few (a few), are to be translated, es waren unfer brei (es find ihrer vier), es find der Brüder viele, es find ihrer venige, etc.

NOTE 8. A substantive in the genitive case, as a predicate, is considered poetical; as, Ihr wart fo garten Altere (Sch.). Der groffer Theil ber Farflen ift unserer Gefinnung (G.). Mein Bater war aberhaupt lehrbafter Natur (G.).

In common prose, only the following phrases of this kind are adopted: — Ich bin der Meinung (Insicht), daß, etc. (anderer Meinung), I am of opinion that, etc. (of a different opinion). Ich die Willens, das ju thun, I have a mind to do that. Das ift meines Intest that is my official duty. Ich die gutes Muthes, I am in good spirits, cheerful. Ich die guter Dinge, Ich die guter Laune, I am in a good humor. Ich die Kodes, I am a dead man. Ich die geichen Itters mit ihm, I am of the same age with him. Bift du des Leufels? are you run mad? Wit sind eines Einnes, eines Bergens, we are of one heart and one mind.

Instead of the predicative Genitive, the prepositions von, um, in, bei, ju, ohne, gegen, etc. are in use; as, Er ift von Abel; das ift von (grofer) Bedeutung; er ift von hohem Geschlecht; es kann nicht von Dauer sein (Sch.). Sie tvar nicht von Stande (Sch.). In Bertegenbeit, Angk, Buth, Sorge, gorn, Noth, Berzweiflung sein; ohne Berskand, Jurcht, Bildung, Scham, Leben, Nuchen sein; bei Sinnen, bei Betvuffsein, dei guere kaune sein; das heer voar jum Erdarmen (Sch.); jum Berzweifeln, ju Ende, jum Ruden, gegen die Aberde, gegen Pflicht und Gewtissen, aus der Jaffung sein. See the examples in §§ 270-272.

In the following and similar expressions, the verb fichen is employed instead of to be: — Seine Schriften stehen über benen Tenephon's, his writings are superior to Kenophon's. Er steht in meinen Diensten, unter meinem Befehl, he is in my service, under my orders. Das steht bei Ihnen, in Ihrer Macht, etc., that 's in your power (depends on you). Im Briefwechfel, im Berbattnis, in Berbindung, in Beziehung mit Jemand stehen, to be in correspondence, in proportion, connection, relation with, to, etc. Er steht in gurem Ruse, in Gnaben bei, he is of good reputation. in savor with. In Bettes Dand stehen, to be in God's hand. Auf dem Spiele stehen, to be at stake. Alles steht mit zu Gebore, everything is at my disposal. Im Berdacht stehen, to be suspected. Gebatter stehen bet einem Taussing, to be godsather to a child. (Aus) Schildwacht stehen, to stand sentry.

Thus is used also fich befinden; as, ich befinde mich wohl, I am well; an einem Orte fich befinden.

Note 4. 1. All adverbs of time and locality (but see for those expressing direction § 268. 2, 8, notes) may be used as predicates; 2. of the remainder only bergebens, umsons, so, anders, wohl, unwohl are so used; as, das ist Alles bergebens or umsons; ide Sache ist nicht so; sie was anders; ich bin wohl, unwohl (of health). But so is thus used only in common style; in higher style we must replace it by der Urt, soigendermaßen, wie folgt; as, sein Benehmen war (so — so beschaffen) der Urt, dass es Berdacht erregte; der Bergang verhält sich soigendermaßen (wie folgt).

Note 5. In the following phrases prepositions occur as predicates with sein: 3ch bin auf, I am up. Die Thur' (das Jenster) ist auf, the door is open. Die Thur' (das Jenster) ist au, the door is shut. Er ist aus (gegangen), he is out (of the house). Das Eis ist auf, the ice is broken. Die Bunde ist auf, the wound is open. Die Beit ist um, the time is over. Es ist eine schoe Gade um ein gut Gewissen, it is a time thing to have a good conscience (Gewissen is here, properly speaking, subject). Der Krieg ist aus, the war is over. Das Jeuer (Licht) ist aus, the sire (candle) is out. Die Kirche ist aus, church is over. Die Schwerzen sind vorüber (vorbei), the pain is over. 3ch bin durch (die Thur, Gesahr), I am through.

- § 298. After two or more subjects, one of which is in the first, the other in the second or third person, the verb is in the first person; and after two or more subjects, one of which is in the second, the others in the third person, the verb has the termination of the second person plural; as, ith, bu und er (wir) wollen zusammen gehen; wir und ihr müssen theisen; bu und der Bater (ihr) mögt es wissen; ihr und die Kinder solltet ein Fest haben; Prinz Carlos und ich (wir beibe) begegnen diesen Mittag uns im Borgemach der Königin (Sch.).
- § 299. When there are several subjects in the third person, the verb is put in the third person plural, as in English; as, ba hängen helm und Schild (Sch.). Gesundheit, Ehre, Glüd und Pracht sind nicht has Glüd der Seelen (Gell.). But in German the predicate may be a singular whenever the several subjects can be considered as an undivided unit, provided each single subject is a singular; as, Auf blutge Schlachten solgt Gesang und Tanz (Sch.). An ihm ist hopsen und Malz verloren (Prov.). Geld und Gut macht nicht glüdlich (Prov.). Dein ist das Reich, und die Kraft und die herrsichseit (Bible). Zweimal zwei ist vier.

NOTE 1. When two subjects are connected by oder, entweder - oder, weder - ned, nicht nur - sondern auch, wie, nicht, the predicate agrees with the subject nearest to it; as, ich oder du must weichen; ich must weichen oder du, I must

yield, or thou; ich will bich fibren laffen, wo weber Mond noch Conne bich befcheint (Sch.). Weber meine Schwefter, noch ihre Freundin war du; es erbe ber Eirern Segen, nicht ihr Jiuch (G.). Entweder du ober er muß fterben (Sch.). Der Eine wie der Andere ift ein Schurte.

Note 2. When the subject is a collective noun in the singular, the predicate agrees with it; as, das Bolt hat fich versammelt, people have assembled; der Rath war in seiner Meinung getheilt, the council were divided in their opinions. But ein Paar, a pair, a couple, a sew, eine Menge, a number, and all standard numbers, as ein Dutend, a dozen, are connected with the predicate in the plural, as in English; as, ein paar Freunde tamen; eine Menge Schiffe laufen ein, a number of vessels arrive.

NOTE 3. The English substantive in the plural, qualified by different adjectives into two or more species, is to be rendered by the singular in German; as, ber englishe und französische König waren beide jugegen, the English and French kings were both present; die deutsche, englishe und danische Sprache, the German, English, and Danish languages.

NOTE 4. The English 'the United States is a fine country,' die Bereinigten Staaten find ein fchenes Land, cannot be imitated, as the above example shows.

CHAPTER III.

OF ACTIVE, PASSIVE, REFLEXIVE, AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 300. The active voice represents a person or thing (the subject of the sentence) as being in a state, or as performing an action; as, die Sonne scheint; der Kischer fängt Kische. The passive voice makes the logical object of an action the grammatical subject, by representing it as suffering that action; as, die Kische werden von dem Kischer gesangen.

The English language has, properly speaking, no passive voice; 'the fishes are caught by the fisherman,' is almost identical with 'the fishes are prisoners (booty) of the fisherman.' An action which the fishes are suffering, or a process which they are undergoing, is not expressed; but they are represented as being in a state; the mere result of fishing is mentioned. The German, however, represents the fishes as becoming a booty, as developing into prisoners; it mentions, together with the result, the process which brought it about, and the fishes are conceived as suffering thereby.

Hence it is that 'the fishes are caught' (Present tense) answers more properly to bie Jische find gefungen (worden), or the German Persect, and 'the fishes

were caught' (Imperfect tense) to ble Bifche waren gefangen (worden), or the German Pluperfect. And comparatively the best translation of die Bifche were ben (wurden) gefangen would therefore be, 'the fishes are being caught, were being caught,' or 'become caught,' if the lutter were not bad English, and the former too cumbrous.

Ł

§ 301. Only transitive verbs—that is, such as have their objects in the accusative—admit of a complete passive inflection. Every active sentence with a transitive verb for its predicate can be turned into a passive sentence by changing the Accusative into the Nominative (object into subject) and the Nominative into a Dative with von, as in the above example.

Note. — The English phrases, 'I was thanked by the meeting for having presided,' 'my vanity was flattered by this success,' 'the dinner was followed by a ball,' 'a man not to be trusted with money,' 'he was promised assistance,' 'I was shown a room,' 'he was offered his liberty,' 'I was permited to visit her,' 'we were told so,' and similar ones, cannot be imitated in German, where banten, schmelteln, folgen, betrauen, ambieren, erlauben, are connected with the Dative; this case cannot be turned into the subject of a passive sentence. We translate: bas Reeting dantte mir; dieser Erfolg schmeichete meiner Eitelsteit; auf das Essen folgte ein Ball; ein Rann, dem man tein Beld andertrauen muß; es war ihm Hilfe bersprochen worden; man zeigte mit ein Zimmer; man hat uns dies gesugt. But the German may say ein Zimmer wurde mir gezeigt, and ich wurde auf mein Zimmer gewiesen, because zeigen governs, besides the Dative of a person, the Accusative of a thing; and weisen may assume an Accusative of person.

The English goes so far in this use of the passive, as to allow expressions like 'he was banished the country,' er toute aus tem tante perbannt, when it is not possible to say 'to banish one the country' (where one could be conceived as a Dative, and country as object). This cannot be imitated in German.

§ 302. Intransitive verbs—that is, verbs denoting a state or an action, the object of which is not expressed by the Accusative, but by the Dative and Genitive, or in some other way—have, properly speaking, no passive voice. Such are, for instance: nach ctwas sweifeln, to send for; von etwas hören; an etwas sweifeln, to doubt of; über etwas sachen; to laugh at something; in etwas einwilligen, to agree to something; einem vertrauen, to confide in a person; Semandes gebenken.

NOTE. — The English phrases, 'the physician was sent for,' 'he was never afterwards heard of,' 'his recovery is doubted of,' 'she was laughed at,' 'the match was agreed on,' 'we were confided in,' 'a means was thought of,' must be translated in the active voice; as, man fendere nad einem Etyte, etc.

Or the German may choose an impersonal expression, as, es wurde nach einem Argie geschieft; es wurde nie mehr von ihm gehört; es wird an seiner Genesung gesweistet; es wurde über sie gelacht; in die Berbindung wurde eingewilligt; es wurde uns vertraut; es wurde an ein Mittel gedacht. But the latter kind of phrase is used only when no active subject (grammatical object here) is to be mentioned.

- § 303. Even transitive verbs are not so much used in the passive voice in German as in English, because the German passive is more expressive of a passivity or suffering of the logical subject than the English. The passive construction is usual in the following cases only:—
- 1. When the person or thing performing the action is to be made more prominent than the person or thing suffering the action; e. g., er ist vom Blip crichlagen worden, he was killed by lightning; der Straßburger Münster ist von Erwin von Steinbach erbaut worden, the Cathedral of Strasburg was built by Erwin of Steinbach.
- 2. When the person or thing performing the action is not expressed; as in die Berbrechen werden nicht immer bestraft; er ist irgendwo erschlagen worden; das Straßburger Münster ist im 14 Jahrhundert erbaut worden; die Jugend muß erzogen wers den; where the passive is also used in English.

NOTE 1. The phrases, 'it is said that,' 'it is believed,' 'it must be conceded (owned) that,' 'he is said to be concerned in the matter,' he is believed to be a foreigner,' 'a greater crime is not to be imagined,' 'a finer picture cannot be seen,' etc., are to be translated: man [agt, man glaubt, man muß nugesteben, daß; man fagt, daß er bei der Suche betheiligt ist (er soll dabei betheiligt sein); man halt ihn fur einen Fremben; ein größeres Berbrechen tann man nicht denten; ein schoeners Bilb tann man nicht seben.

But the phrases, 'it is to be hoped,' 'it remains to be seen,' 'it is to be conceded,' 'this is to be translated,' etc., can be translated only in the active voice; as, es iff ju hoffen; es bleibt übrig ju sehen; es ift jujugestehen; dies ift ju übersehen, etc.

NOTE 2. On the other hand, some English phrases in the active, — like 'a work does not pay,' eine Arbeit wird nicht bezahlt; 'a house is building,' es wird ein Saus gebaut; 'a storm (mischief) is brewing,' es wird ein Sturm gebraut, — are to be rendered in the passive.

NOTE 3. Participles past have a passive signification in both languages; such of them, however, as have by usage become like adjectives (see the long list in § 191), and also the few following, may be joined to the verb fets, as in English.

ich bin gefinnt or gefonnen, I am dis- ich bin bertoundert, I am astonished, posed, ich bin bestürgt, I am disturbed,

ich bin gewohnt, I am accustomed, ich bin beunruhigt, I am alarmed, unich bin erfreut, I am rejoiced, easy.

Also several others expressive of a state of mind.

ĸ.

ŕ

Note 4. This use obtains also, when the state or condition in which an action results is to be expressed, as in descriptions like these: die Tische find gedeckt, die Speisen find bereitet, die Gaste sind geladen — das Gastmahl tunn beginnen.

- § 304. Verbs, originally transitive, are made intransitive by assuming the reflexive form; as, ich wehre mich, I defend myself; bu übtest bich, thou exercisedst thyself; er rettet sich, he saves himself; wir verpsichten und, we engage ourselves, etc. For these expressions denote the same as 'I withstand,' 'thou practisest,' 'he escapes,' 'we promise.' The reflexive form is used in German to a far greater extent than in English. A majority of German verbs are capable of being used reflexively in some way or other, and the pupil must rely on a good vocabulary to become familiar with this class of verbs. There are six classes of reflexive verbs:—
- 1. The reflexives proper, such as the above examples show. The action of the subject returns on the subject, and is confined to it; subject and object are the same person or thing, and the action is, logically, not an action proper, but a state or condition. Some languages, like the English, prefer here in most cases the intransitive verb, while others, like the German, prefer the transitive; as, die Sonne bewegt sich, the sun moves; Er besteht sich, he repents (himself); der Kranke erholt sich, the patient recovers; die Anstedung verbreitet sich, the contagion spreads.
- 2. The active reflexives; such as er ermuntert sich zur Arbeit durch Gesang, he encourages himself to the work by singing; im Daguerreotop (Lichtbild) bildet der Gegenstand sich selbst ab, in the daguerreotope the object depicts itself; er ergiebt sich dem Studium, he devotes himself to study. The action is logically transitive, and an action, not a state or condition, and perhaps all languages use here the transitive-reservive form.
 - 3. The idiomatic reflexives; as, ich freue mich, I rejoice; ich

fchame mich, I am ashamed; ich verirre mich, I lose my way. They belong to the reflexives proper (class 1), expressing, like these, condition, not action, and differ from them only in that there is no logical necessity to conceive this condition or state as an action of the subject, — rather the contrary, — and that these verbs are otherwise not in a transitive use. It is strange, that, even in conflict with logic, verbs may be found otherwise not in transitive use, but employed as reflexives proper. (We cannot say, ich schäme einen Anderen, but only ich schäme mich.) The German conceives the suffering subject-object as influenced, not from elsewhere, but by itself.

- 4. Passive reflexives; as, bas Holz bearbeitet sich leicht, the wood is easily worked (carved, cut, etc.); bas Rorn brischt sich rasch, the grains are fast threshed; ein Rirchthurm stiehlt sich schlicht, a church-steeple is not easily stolen. This use is confined to these and a sew similar phrases. An object that can only be conceived as worked upon, suffering,—raw material under the action of a subject,—is represented as working upon itself; this being an expansion of the idiomatic use mentioned under the last class, extended from animate to inanimate beings. All the above phrases may, of course, with precisely equal force, be expressed in the passive; as, bas Holz wird leicht bearbeitet.
- 5. Reciprocal verbs; as, die beiden Parteien schlagen sich, the parties fight (each other); die Geschwister lieben sich einander (or lieben sich, or lieben einander, see § 205, note). The action is only seemingly reflexive, but rather a mutual action of different subjects on each other, each becoming in its turn the object of the other's action.
- 6. Reflexives improper; as, ich toche mir ein Gericht, I cook (for) myself a meal; wir taufen une etwas, we buy ourselves something (for ourselves); er nahm sich vor, he proposed to himself; sich etwas angewöhnen, abgewöhnen, to accustom to, to disaccustom, wean from. The reflexive object is in the Dative, the Nominative and Dative are the same person or thing, and the verb, being a transitive, assumes, besides, a direct object in the Accusative.

Note 1. The following verbs of the first class are the most usual: -

fich aufhalten wo, to sojourn

" uber, to find fault with

" anfirengen, to make an effort

" befehren, to repent

" betheiligen an etwas, to partake of

" bestimmen ju etwas, to resolve

" befchweren über etwas bei, fich beflugen fiber etwas, to complain of something to somebody

" bescheiben bei etwas, to abide by

" berufen auf etivas, to appeal to

" bereiten ju etwas, to prepare for

" bereden mit Jemanden über etwas, to consult with somebody on

" berathen über, to deliberate on

" bemilben um, to take pains about

" betämmern wegen, to be afflicted

" betummern um ettvas, to mind a

" betennen au etipas, to profess (a.

" befreunden mit Jemand., to make friends with

" befragen aber etwas bei Jemandem, to consult somebody about some-

" bedienen (Gen.), to make use of

" beeilen, to make haste

" befinden too, to be somewhere

" bedenten wegen etwas, to consider a

" betrüben über ettvas, to be afflicted

" beträhren, to prove true

" bewegen, to move.

" bewolten, to become overcast with clouds

" bezeigen ale, fich betveifen ale, to prove (to be)

" begiehen auf etivas, to refer to something

" biegen, to curve

" breden, to break, to be reflected, to

" behnen, ausdehnen, to stretch, to extend, spread

fich breben, to turn

" dunten etwas, to be conceited

eignen ju (fur) empas, to be fit for

" einbürgern, to become naturalized einfinden we, to appear

" eingewöhnen wo, to habituate one's self to a place

" einmengen in, fich einmifchen in, to meddle in

" einmiethen too, to hire a dwelling

" einrichten we, to accommodate one's self to a place

" einschiffen auf, to embark in

ausschiffen aus, to disembark from

einschleichen wo, to creep in, steal in " einschliefen we, to shut one's self up (in a room)

" einschränten, to be economical

". einstellen, to make one's appearance

" empfehlen bei, to ingratiate one's self with, to take leave of

" emporen (über), to revolt at

" enden, endigen, to end, cease

" entfalten, to unfold (itself)

entfernen, to withdraw, retire

" enthalten (Gen.), to abstain from " entruften über, to become angry at

" entscheiden wegen, to form a resolution, to resolve,

" entichliefen wegen, to decide

" entseten aber, to be frightened, to be aghast at

" entwidein, to develop, to thrive

" entivohnen (Gen.), to wean from

" entgiehen (Dat.), to withdraw from

" entjunden, to catch fire " entitoeien, to quarrel

" erbauen, to be edified

" erbieten, to offer

" erbofen, to become angry

" erfreuen (Gen.), to rejoice in

" ergeben (Dat.), to surrender, submit to, to be resulting

" ergößen an, to delight in

" ergeben, to promenade

sid ergiefen, to flow forth

- " erheben, to rise
- " erfeitern, to clear, cheer up
- " erbellen, to clear up
- " erhiften, to grow hot
- " erholen bon, to recover from
- " crinnern, to remember
- " ertiåren, to explain
- " ertundigen nach, to inquire for
- " ermiden, to grow tired
- " erstreden wohin, to extend to
- " erwehren (Gen.), to ward off
- " eripeifen als wabr, to prove true
- " erweitern, to be enlarged
- finden in etwas, to put up with a thing
- " flåchten, to flee, escape
- " formen, to assume form
- " fortpaden, to clear out, retire
- " fortfegen, to continue
- " fugen, to submit to
- " fullen mit, to grow full of
- " fürchten vor, to be afraid of " gatten mit, to pair, couple
- " geben, to stop, cease
- es gebubrt fich, es gebort fich, es ge- bas paft fich fur, that is becoming sieme sich, it is proper, due, becoming

fich gefellen ju, to associate with

- gewöhnen an, to accustom to
- balten an etwas, to keep (stick) to
- " ambaiten an etwas, to hold on to
- " fefthalten an etwas,

es handelt fich um, the question is about, there is at stake

fic baufen, fic an or aufhaufen, to accumulate

- " heften an, to cling to, attach to
- " herabiaffen, to condescend
- " herumtreiben, to roam
- " bauten, to cast the skin, to slough
- " hûten, to be on one's guard
- " irren, to err, be mistaken
- " tebren an ettvas, to heed (a warn-
- " fiåren, to clear (up)

fich frammen, to stoop

- " tubien (abtubien), to cool off
- " lagern, to encamp
- " lehnen auf, to lean (repose) on
- es loont fich es ju thun, it is worth the while (to do it)

fich lofen (auflofen), to be dissolved

- machen (an etwas), to set about a thing
- mehren (bermehren), to multiply
- meffen mit Jemand, to measure one's self with (in a fight)
- " mindern (vermindern), to diminish
- " mittheilen (Dat.), to communicate one's own feelings, to spread OVEL
- " mudfen, to show resistance
- nabren bon (mir), to feed on (to gain a livelihood by)
- " nieberbaden (baden), to bow down
- " nieberlaffen too, to settle down
- " niederlegen (legen), to lay down (to sleep)

bie Thur offnet fich, the door flies open fic paden, to be off

- fic plagen, qualen mit, to drudge in
- " regen, to be stirring
 - " råbren, "
 - reimen, to rhyme, to fit
- " richten nach etwas, to follow a given direction
- " ringein, to be curling
- " rollen, to roll
- röthen, to redden, become red
- " schwärzen, to grow black
- " ruhmen (Gen.), to boast of
- " runden, to grow round
- " ruften ju, to prepare for
- fammeln (berfammeln), to assemble
- " fcaren (jufammenfc).),
- " foorfen, to grow sharper
- " foidten, to become arranged in lavers
- es foidt fic, it is decent (to do it)

6th Schiden in etwas, to adapt one's self to

- " folgen mit Jem., to fight a man " schlingeln, to meander, to wind
- one's way " folieffen, to be concluded, shut
- " fomiegen, to cringe
- " foneiden (in ben Finger), to out (one's own finger)
- " fconen, to take care of one's self
- " fcantein, to rock, to be swung
- fcwingen (auffcto.), to rise, climb uρ
- " fenten, to sink
- " fesen, to sit down, take a seat,
- to settle down
- " fonnen, to bask
- " fperren, to resist
- " (puten, to speed, make haste
- " flauen, to be stowed (of water)
- " fleigern, to increa : (in degree)
- " ftemen in (bie Sand), to ... own hand
- " fiellen, to feign, pretend
- ftoffen (an ben Ropf), to strike (one's own head)
- " fir luben argen, to bristle up, resist
- " fireiten mit, to dispute, quarrel with
- " ftiden auf, to lean, recline upon
- " taufchen (in), to be mistaken (in)
- fle theilen fich in etwas, they distribute a thing among themselves (to divide into)

fich thurmen, to tower (to heaven), loom er aberbieret fich (es ju hiften), he does

his utmost to (effect a thing)

fich abereilen, to be too rash, over hasty

- aberbeben, to be assuming
- umfchauen, to look around
- umfeben,
- ummenden (wenden), to turn round
- unterhalten mit Jem., to have a talk with
- unterreben mit Jem., to converse, confer with
- unterscheiben bon, to differ from

fid unterschreiben, to subscribe, sign

- unterzieben (Gen.), to undertake verabreden mit Jem. aber etwas, to
 - settle a thing by conference
- perandern, to change (one's self)
- er verbrennt fich die Sand, be burns hie hand
- fic berbargen, to go security
 - perboppein, to double
 - perebeln, to improve in
- perfurben, to change color
- berfangen, to get entangled
- bergeben, to commit a fault
- pergeffen, to be rash
- bergleichen mit, to settle a difference
- bergreifen in, to make a wrong (gripe)
- choice
- bergrößern, to increase
- perhalten, to behave, to bear
- berbeirathen mit, to med amablen mit.
 - A. young
- bertehren in, to be perverted into
- verlängern, to grow longer
- " berlaffen auf, to bely upon
- " berlaufen, to go astray
- " berlieben, to fall in love with
- " perioden, to be betrothed to es verlohnt fich, it is worth the while
- fich bermebren, to increase
- bermeffen, to be frivolous, foolhardy
- bermiethen an, to go to service with
- bermindern, to decrease
- bermischen (mischen) mit, to mingle, be mixed up with
- perneigen, to bow down
- berrechnen, to miscalculate
- berreben, to make a slip of the tongue
- verfprechen,
- perschiafen, to sleep too long
- berschlimmern, to become worse.
- berichlechtern.
 - perschinden, to choke
- " bericonern, to become finer

60 bergartein, to become passpered. permundern, to be astonished

porbereiten, to prepare (one's self) for

mabren por, to be on the guard from

wegfesten aber, not to regard a thing

berginfen, to bear interest

bergegern, to be retarded

wallen, to revolve, wallow

(as too slight) toegfebien, to sneak away

Ed perideriben, to make a mistake in " perschweren, to conspire " perfeben, to make a mistake nicht verfeben einer Sache, to be unaware of " perfohnen mit, to be reconciled to " perspåten, to come late " perfleben au etwas, to accode to (a condition) " perfeigen, to mount (fly) too high " perfiellen, to dissemble ich bersuche mich an, I try my forces in (a task) fic berfändigen an, to sin against bertagen, to adjourn perciefen in, to be absorbed (mentally) in " pertragen mit, to become reconciled to, make an agreement with " (an)bertrauen Jemandem, to trust a man, confide to " vervielfältigen, to be multiplied

wegfdleiden. toegwenden bon, to turn the back on abmenben ben. " metren, to resist, show fight weiben an, to delight in meigern (Gen.), to hesitate shout a thing, to refuse " menben, to be turned wenden an, to address one wiederholen, to be repeated " minden, to wind cases way senten to quarrel with to be warped, extenuated serftreuen, to disperse, be dispersed " perivandeln in, to assume " es siemt fich, it is becoming, due " permenden für, to intercede for fic juriditeben, to retire, withdraw " permidein in, to get involved in sufammengieben, to be contracted, to shrink, " berwirtlichen, to be realized es tragt fic in, it happens " berwischen, to be wiped out es trifft fic, " permonnen, to become pampered

Norz 2. Of the second class of reflexive verbs no examples are required, almost all verbs used reflexively in English being also so used in German.

NOTE 8. The following are the most important reflexive verbs of the third class; all but those marked with an asterisk (*) occurring exclusively as reflexives: ---

≠ich årgere mich über, I am vexed

sid anschieten au, to make arrangements for

" aufidwingen, to rise

" bertoirren,

- " bedanten bei, to render thanks to
- " beeifern, to exert one's self
- " besteiffen (Gen.), to apply one's self to

fich begeben nach, to betake one's self to

begeben (Gen.), to renounce

- befuffen mit, to attend to, to meddle with
- begnügen mit, to be contented with
- bebelfen mit, to make shift with
- belaufen auf, to amount to
- " bemachtigen (Gen.), to get possession of

SYNTAX.

fich bequemen ju, to accommodate one's self to

- " befinnen auf, to try to recollect
- " beftreben, to endeavor
- " befaufen, to get drunk
- " betrinten, "
- " betragen, to behave
- " bewerben um, to sue, apply for
- " bruften mit, to look big
- " einschmeicheln bei, to insinuate ope's self with
- " entfinnen (Gen.), to recall to one's

ith ette mith bor, I am disgusted at fith entfurben, to become pale, bleak

- " entschiegen (Gen.), to divest one's self of
- " erbarmen (Gen.), to take pity on
- 4 erreisten (Gen.), erfrechen (Gen.), erfitmen (Gen.), to dare to, to make bold
- " ereifern, to fly into a passion es ereignet sich, it comes to pass ich ertalte mich, I catch a cold
- fich ermannen, to take courage ich freue mich aber, I am glad of

- ich freue mich auf, I anticipate an event with joy
- *fic gut aufführen, to behave well
 - " glactic fablen, to feel happy
 - gedulden, to have patience
 - " gramen über, to grieve, to mourn
 - " harmen über, " "

 demean one's self. to
 - behave
 - " filmmern um, to be concerned about
- m " neigen tooju, to be inclined to
- *ich nehme mich in Acht vor, I take care not to
 - fich ichamen aber, to be ashamed of
 - " fehnen nach, to long for
 - " unterfteben, to dare
 - " unterfangen, "
 - " berirren, to lose one's way
 - " bergehen gegen, to sin against, to do wrong
 - " perlieben in, to fall in love with
 - " berivandern äber, fich toundern über, to wonder, to be amazed at
- # " perfeben, to be cautious
 - " widerfegen (Dat.), to oppose-

NOTE 4. The sixth class of reflexive verbs is also very numerous. The following indicate the general tendency of this class:—

ich bente mir bas fo, I think of this as follows ich erbente mir etwas, I invent (imagine)

tich etwas einbilden, to imagine something

fich erwas borfiellen, " "

fich etwas einprägen, to impress upon one's own mind

fic erwas merten, "

fic erwas erfinnen, to contrive

ich helfe mir mit etwas, I help myself on with (a means)

ich luffe mir erwas gefallen, I am satisfied with

ich gefalle mir in dem Gedanten, I am rejoiced to think ich lange mir etwas ju, I help myself to something

machen Sie sich nichts baraus, never mind!

id behalte mir etwas ver, I reserve something for myself

fich die Sande reiben, to rub one's own hands

fich toomit schaden, to do harm to one's self with

fich tromit schaben, to do harm to one's seit will fich ben Ropf waschen, to wash one's own head

fich erwas maden, to do a work for one's self

```
sich etwas taufen, to buy something for one's self
sich etwas anschaffen, " " " "
sich etwas beien, to setch something for one's self
sich etwas erlauben, to indulge in
sich etwas anmassen, to arrogate something to one's self
sich etwas ausbitten, to request something for one's self
sich etwas aneignen, to appropriate something for one's self
sich etwas jueignen, " " " "
sich etwas gertauen, to dare to undertake, to trust one's self
sich etwas gertauen, " " "
sich etwas gertauen, to dare to undertake, to trust one's self
sich etwas gusteringen, to stipulate.
```

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 305. Such verbs as es regnet, it rains, es scincit, it snows, es hagelt, it hails, es friert, it freezes, es thaut, it thaws, es blist, it lightens, es bonnert, it thunders, es tagt, it dawns, es buntelt. it grows dark, are *Impersonal Verbs proper*, because they have instead of three persons in both plural and singular, only one of each tense, the third person singular, and no subject can even be supplied in thought to which the predicate is joined.

The following: estift talt, warm, hell, it is cold, warm, light; es wird bundet, it grows dark; es ift spat, fruh, vier Uhr, it is late, early, four o'clock,—are different from the above only in that a subject may at least be supplied, namely, 'the weather,' or 'the time.' Similar are es slopft, somebody knocks at the door; es schlägt, the clock strikes; es läutet, slingelt, the bell rings; es trommelt, the drum is beating; es wird Abend (Morgen), evening (morning) draws near; es ift mir heiß, I am hot; es ift mir gut (schlecht) zu Muthe, I am in good (bad) spirits; es ift mir übel, I feel unwell; es ift mir wohl, I feel well.

More like the first class are the following: -

```
es hungert mich, I am hungry, or mich es jammert mich (Gen.), I pity hungert, and so on es burstet mich, I am thirsty es graut mir ver, I am afraid of es effect mich, I am chilly es set set mich nach, I shudder es vertangt mich nach, I long for es gelästet mich nach, I hust after es behagt mir hier, I am comfortable here
```

es if mir bange, I am uneasy about
es mangelt an Gelb, money is wanting
es feble " " " " " " bapends on whether
es gebricht " " " " " " but hat
es bebarf (es braucht) nicht vieler Wortes
(Gen.), there 's no need of many words
stands so, etc.

NOTE 1. Here belong also some idiomatic phrases noticed already in §§ 206, 203, note 2, and in the list of § 204, note 1. Finally, all the verbe of emotion ander § 304, note 3, occur impersonally; as, es freut mid, es betrübt mid, ès pamt, jammert, somett, adject mid, etc., and es traumt mit, I dream; mid aucht, methinks; es solutions, I feel sleepy; es abut mit, I forebode.

Note 2. The following verbs are impersonal in both plural and singular:—

Es geschieht, es ereignet fich, es trifft fich, it happens.

getanit.

Dinge gescheben, ereignen fich, treffen fich, things happen. Es gelingt mir, gerath mir, glact mir (die Sache glact), I succeed in a thing.

Diese Sachen gelingen, gerathen, gluden (mir), I succeed in these things.

Note 8. A sew impersonal phrases occur in the passive voice; as, es wird fart daran gearbeitet; es ift fireng verboten worden; es ift durchaus nicht gestattet; es wurde verausgeseit; es wird viel davon gesprochen; es wurde viel gesungen und

NOTE 4. Here belong also the phrases, es geht mir gut, foficht, I get along very well, badly; wie geht's Ihnen? how are you? es geht den Bachern oft wie den Renschen, it is often with books as with men.

CHAPTER IV.

THE MOODS.

§ 306. Modality is expressed by adverbs of mood, auxiliary verbs, and the moods of the verb. An action is either real, or possible only, or necessary.

Reality is expressed by the Indicative Mood, and affirmation by one of the adverbs ja, yes, both, yet, wahrlich, truly, wirklich, really, etc. added to it, without inversion of the sentence. Sarah hat ihren Bater geliebt, und gewiß, ste liebt ihn noch (Less.). Ja, dem ist wirklich so (Sch.). Hürmahr das Glüd war Eurer Kühnheit hold (Sch.).

The contrary of affirmation is expressed by negation; that

is, by one of the adverbs nicht, not, leineswegs, not at all, etc. (see §§ 266, 267). But indefinite articles and positive indefinite pronouns are, in negative sentences, contracted with the negation into lein, Niemand, nichts; namely, lein instead of not a, not any; Niemand instead of not anybody; nichts instead of not anything. E. g. ich habe leine Blige geschen, I have not seen any lightnings. But see § 233.

Norm.—In the Germanisms, Wie groß muß nicht dein Aerger sein, daß du Gelches sags, how great must your vexation (not) de since you say that! Wie herrich is nicht die Schöpfung! how magniscent is creation!— nicht is superfluous, may equally well de omitted, and need not de translated. We have here a combination of an exclamation, wie groß muß dein Aerger sein! with a question, muß nicht dein Aerger groß sein?

§ 307. A direct question is asked, without the English use of the auxiliary verb to do, merely by inverting the sentence, according to § 288. 1, note 2; as, we bist bu gewesen? Bist bu mein Freund? Hast du das Buch gesunden? Glaubst du mir?

An indirect question—that is, a question not asked in the words of the questioning person, but related by the speaker in his own words; as it fragte mid, ob id mid wohl fühlte, he asked me if I felt well; id wußte nicht, was id bavon halten sollte, I did not know how I should consider that; er fragte, warum id nicht gesommen ware—is a dependent sentence, and treated as such (see § 288, note 2).

NOTE 1. In answering a direct question, ja and nein, or other adverbs of mood, are employed. The English way of answering, —as, 'Do you know it? I do'; 'Have you seen it? I have not'; 'Will you go to see him? I will,'—is never imitated; the correct translation is: Wilfen Sie es? Ba; hast bu es gefehen? Rein; wolk In the huden? Ba (or gewis, ja bod, e ja, warum nicht); or after a negative question: 'was there no concert? there was one,' was ten Romart? jawoh! (bod, ja bod)! The above English phrases may be imitated, but only by repeating the complete sentence of the question; as, haben Sie es gese hen? ich babe es geseben; wolk In besuden? wir wolken ich besuden.

NOTE 2. The English phrases, 'I have given you the money — have I not?' 'you are tired — are you not?' 'he was not present — was he?' 'I have not told you so — have I?' must be translated: habe ith Jhnen nicht das Geld gegeben? Sind Sie nicht mide? war er erwa gegenwartig? ich habe dir's doch nicht (erwa) gesagt? or sollte ich das dir wirtlich gesagt doch is (ware) er in der That gegen-

wartig gewesen? The English 'is it not?' and similar questions, may also be translated by nicht wahr? or gelt? as, er ist ju Sause, nicht wahr? or gelt (nicht wahr), er ist ju Sause, he is at home, is he not? Das Quecksiber ist ein flusjes Metall, nicht wahr? or gelt (nicht wahr) das Quecksiber ist ein flusjess Metall, quicksilver is a liquid metal, is it not?

- § 308. Possibility or necessity in a predicate is expressed by the auxiliary verbs of modality, fönnen, bürfen, mögen, müffen, follen, mollen, as follows:—
- 1. Possibility by nature is expressed by können, I am able to, I can, may; as, der Bogel kann fliegen, der Fisch kann schwimmen; man kann nicht Alles wissen; ich hatte, was ihm Freiheit schaffen konnte (Sch.); der Wond kann bewohnt sein, soviel wir wissen, for aught we know, the moon may be inhabited; er konnte mittlerweile gestorben sein, it might be that he had died meanwhile.

The Germanism ich tann nicht umbin zu gestehen is rendered by 'I cannot help confessing,' 'I cannot but confess,' 'I must confess.' The same force is in 3ch tann mich nur wundern, I cannot but wonder (I must wonder).

2. Possibility by law, allowance, and permission, is expressed by bürfen and mögen, less usually and distinctly by tönnen; as, Jedermann barf in Amerika Waffen tragen; ich barf nicht ausgehen; bu magst es thun, wenn bu kannst. Er mag ein braver Mann sein, (I grant, I won't gainsay) that he is a good man.

NOTE 1. With negations mogen answers to not to like; as, ich mag nicht effen, I do not like to eat; Niemand mochte tangen, no one liked to dance.

Note 2. In the Subjunctive Imperfect of the above three verbs (ich tonner, ich barfte, ich möchte), there is little difference of signification. All three forms are employed to express a modest assertion; as, ich tonner das Gegentheil behaupten, I might assert the contrary; ich möchte mich geirrt haben, it is not impossible that I may have been mistaken; es dürfte morgen zu spat fein, it might be too late to morrow.

Noux 8. Ich möchte is the favorite expression for wishing or apprehension: Ich möchte wissen, wer das ift, I should like to know who this man is; ich möchte in Rew Jork nicht einmal begraben siegen (Prov.), I should not even like to be buried in New York. Möchte der himmel geben, daß es wahr ware, heaven grant that it be true. Still (ich fürchte) er möchte aufwachen und Alles hören, silence! (I sear) he might awake and hear everything! Die Regierung besorgte, daß ein Ausstala ausbrechen möchte, the government apprehended a revolution might break out.

- 3. Necessity enforced by law or nature is expressed by muffen; as, alle Menschen muffen sterben; Rinder muffen ihren Eltern gehorchen; wer durch die Belt (kommen) will, muß sich buden (Prov.); beständiger Leichtsinn muß mit Dummheit enden, perpetual levity must end in stupidity.
- 4. Necessity to be enforced by the will of another person is expressed by sollen; as, er soll sie fallen sehn und nach ihr streben, he shall see her fall, and die after her; wer nicht arbeiten will, soll auch nicht essen (Prov.); while necessity enforced by the will of the subject is expressed by wollen; as, ber Mensch sann was er will, wenn er will, was er sann (Rückert), man can do what he wills to do, if he is only willing to do what he can.
- NOTE 1. Maffen with a negation answers sometimes to the English 'I must not,' when identical with 'I had rather not,' 'I should rather not'; as in 3th maffe nicht Alles angreifen, was 3th febt, you must not touch whatever you see.
- NOTE 2. Mafte, in the sentences, ich mafter nicht in Europa getvefen fein, wenn ich bas nicht gesehen haben wollte; er maßte nicht Konig fein, um gerecht ju handeln; answers to 'I should,' etc.
- NOTE 8. The Subjunctive Imperfect ich follte (eigentlich may be added or not) in the phrases, ich follte morgen nach Chelsea geben, aber ich werde es lieber nicht thun, is the English ' I ought to.'
- NOTE 4. Mollen in negative sentences is little different from, and rather more expressive than, nicht mögen; as in wenn ich nicht effen will (mag), wer tunn mich dazu zwingen ?
- NOTE 5. The Germanism, et will ber Ersinder des Luftschiffes gewesen sein, he claims to be the inventor of the balloon; die Rachbarn wollen Sie dabei gerroffen haben, the neighbors assert that they have caught you at it, is an elliptical saying for wollen behaupten, make bold to assert.
- Note 6. Sollen occurs sometimes idiomatically used for "it is said," when it is of course not an auxiliary verb of mood; as, die alten Griechen follen die Einrichtung der Bielweiberei gefannt haben, the ancient Greeks are said to have known the institution of polygamy. Du follst fein Mitschuldiger sein, thou art said to be his accomplice. Bus soll das (bedeuten)? what means that?
- NOTE 7. The English idiomatic use of 'should' in sentences like 'it is impossible that he should have done it, 'it is proper that I should do it,' I wonder that he should have said so,' I regret that this should be so,' and similar phrases, where 'should' expresses possibility or a modest doubt, cannot be imitated, but is to be rendered either in the indicative or subjunctive as the case may require; as, & if unmoglid, buf er es getton but; es if meine Pflict.



baf iche thue (Subj.); ich wundere mich, daß er baß gefagt bat; ich bedauere, bag bies fo ift.

§ 309. Permission, as well as command or causation, is expressed by lassen, to let; as, last thin geher, let him go ('let him alone'), permit him to go; er läst mich wissen daß er bereit ist, he lets me know (sends me word) that he is ready; wir ließen ein haus bauen, we had a house duit; se lassen von London Uhren tommen, they get watches brought from London; er läst den Hund tanzen, he makes the dog dance; der Richter läst den Berbrecher hinrichten, the judge causes the criminal to be executed (the active here, instead of the English passive voice, is accounted for by an ellipsis, der Richter läst seine Leute den Berbrechen hinrichten, he allows his solks (servants) to execute the criminal); das läst sich beweisen, this can be proved; es läst sich nicht läugnen.

Care must be taken to avoid the ambiguity that may occur in the use of laffen. For instance, it lief itn [chiagen may mean 'I made him beat' (namely, somebody else), and 'I had him beaten' (himself); in the former case [chiagen is actively employed; in the latter, passively. The ambiguity is easily avoided by taking, instead of laffen, another verb, as ertauten, or befetten, as the case may demand.

§ 310. Instead of fönnen and müffen, the infinitive with zu is sometimes employed, both in a passive and active sense; as,—

Dies bleibt noch zu thun, this remains to be done; ich habe eine Arbeit zu machen, I have a work to do; dus menschliche leben ist ein Zustand, in welchem viel zu errragen und wenig zu genießen ist, human lise is a state in which much is to be endured and little to be enjoyed; dieses Ungläd if noch zu ertragen stanner merben); ich babe Gest zu berzehren, I have to spend money (I can spend meney); dieser Brief ist nicht zu lesen stann nicht gelesen werden). Das ist zu tadeln, this is to be blamed (dus tann or muß getadelt werden). The passive construction of the above English sentences cannot be imitated in German, where the infinitive may be taken either passively or actively.

The English 'he is to go to France,' I was to offer a prayer,' cannot be imitated in German, but must be translated er hat nach Franceich ju gehen; to follte vorbeten.

§ 311. From the above infinitive with zu (or supine, as Becker calls it) comes an adjective, occurring only in an attributive connection, with a passive meaning, expressive of a moral or physi-

cal necessity or possibility (gerundium); as, ein zu ertragenbes Uebel, an evil that may be endured; bas nächstens zu begehende Gest, the approaching celebration (that is to be celebrated in a few days); ber zu erwartende Bote, the (expected) messenger to be expected. But all these adjectives have a passive meaning, occur seldom, and are not formed of neuter or intransitive verbs (it is incorrect to say eine zu bleibende Einrichtung, an arrangement that is to remain), and only of those transitive verbs of which there exists no adjective in lich and bar with the same meaning. It is better to express the first of the above phrases thus: ein erträgliches Uebel.

§ 312. The Indicative Mood asserts a fact, or what is considered by the person speaking as such, either affirmatively or negatively; as, Er hat das Berbrechen begangen, denn er läugnet es nicht; ich will mit Ihnen nicht reden. In direct questions it asks if the assertion is really founded in fact; as, ist das deits Ernst? ich kann es kaum glauben, are you in earnest? I cannot believe it.

Note.—The Indicative is sometimes used instead of the Imperative, and that too very energetically; as in bu trittle per (Sch.), step thou forward! The specific bis man such aufruft (Sch.), be silent until you are called upon!

- § 313. The Subjunctive Mood represents an action as not founded in reality, at least in the speaker's mind, and is applicable, therefore, in the following cases:—
- 1. When the action is to be represented as merely possible, in accessory sentences; as, mir sagt eine trauxige Ahnung, daß bu die Brüde sein werdest, über welche die Spanier in das Land sepen werden (Sch.); Er äußert daß er sich um eine Stelle beworden habe. This is always the case in quotations of the words of other persons, when related by the speaker (oratio indirecta), except when the speaker expressly represents the quoted words as containing his own conviction; as, Er selbst hat gesagt, daß er geschlt hat; while habe here would indicate that the speaker does not intend to express his own conviction of this guilt. But, Er weiß daß sein Leben in Gesahr ist (not sei), because

knowing implies the existence of the fact. Hence the verbs wissen, sehen, sich überzeugen, erkennen, and their synonymes, as a rule introduce accessory sentences in the Indicative. On the other hand, verbs like glauben, annehmen, bekennen, gestehen, vermuthen, meinen, imply by their signification that the fact believed, presumed, etc. may either be a reality or only a possibility, and occur, therefore, about as often with the subjunctive as with the indicative; as, ich glaubte daß du es wärest (not always warst); ich glaube, daß du es bist (or seis).

2. In clauses expressive of a wish, request, hope, apprehension, permission, admission, advice, when the realization of the wish, etc. is to be represented as merely possible, not to be relied on; as, willst bu, daß es gleich vollzogen werde? (Sch.) Ich seine gewährt mir die Bitte, in eurem Bunde der dritte! (Sch.) Gott rette seine Seele vor Berzweissung! Gebe er uns einen Beweis seiner Ausrichtigkeit! Friedrich hosste, das werde nicht mein letzter Besuch sein. Nehme sich ein Zeder ein Beispiel daran! Nehmen wir für einen Augenblid an, das sei das beste Mittel, let us assume for a moment this to de the dest way; er fürchtete, daß die Ssaven sich gegen ihn verbänden, or verdinden würden, he feared lest the slaves should conspire against him.

For this reason the intention or purpose is expressed by the subjunctive; as, Ziele gut, daß du den Apfel treffest (Sch.), take a good aim that you may hit the apple. Mein Glüdsstern wollte nicht, daß ich seinen Worten traute, my lucky star would not have me trust his words.

Norz. — But in every one of the above accessory sentences the Indicative also will be found, whenever the certainty of the fact hoped for, etc. is to be expressed, in preference to the possibility.

- 8. In *indirect questions* the subjunctive is indispensable. Likewise in such *direct* questions as are mentioned in § 288, note 2.
- 4. In accessory sentences referring to general negatives, as Miemand ist so bumm, daß er das nicht wüßte, no one is so stupid as not to know that; wer ist so weise (nobody is) daß er. Alles

erklären könnte; er that es, ohne daß ich es hätte hindern können; ich habe kein Land gefunden, wo es keine Geisklichen gegeben hätte. But in all these cases the indicative occurs likewise, when reality is to be expressed in preference to possibility, and the popular language prefers here the indicative.

§ 314. The Conditional and the Subjunctive Imperfect and Pluperfect are used interchangeably in conditional sentences, when a supposition contrary to reality is made, and exclusively in such : as. Wenn ich fo fprache, fo murbe ich lugen (loge ich). but he neither says it, nor lies; Benn ber himmel einfiele, fo müßten wir Alle fterben (or wurden wir Alle fterben muffen). But both the one and the other are, in the speaker's opinion, contrary to reality. Benn er bamit aufrieben gewesen mare, so murbe er ein Marr gemesen sein (or mare er ein Marr gemesen). Here the Subi. Pluperf. is even preferred, on account of the cumbersome form of the compound Conditional. This holds good only of the principal sentence of the two; the accessory one, or, in a word, that which is introduced by menn, is, with good writers, scarcely found in the Conditional. For instance, wenn ich Welb für beine Freundschaft gabe (not geben murbe) fo murbe fie fur une beibe feine Ehre fein (or mare fie, etc.).

NOTE 1. It is evident, that conditional clauses representing the actions as real can neither be expressed in the Conditional nor in the Subjunctive Imperfect or Pluperfect. Benn es, fagte Robespierre, teinen Gott gåbe, so måste man ihn ersinden. In Robespierre's opinion, the contrary of his assumption is true; therefore the Subjunctive (or the Conditional in the second sentence) is legitimate. But wenn ein Gott is, so giebt es auch eine geoffenbarte (revealed) Religion, has in both sentences Indicatives, because the speaker represents the contents of both as facts.

NOTE 2. It may occur with good writers that only one of the two sentences combined into a conditional clause is expressed in the Indicative, the other in the Subjunctive or Conditional. But this is to be accounted for from other facts beyond the conditional connection; as in term des teats toats, for num, fo if alles unfinning glaubich, if this be true — well, every piece of nonsense is, then, a gospel. Here the speaker interrupts the conditional connection, and continues as though he now believed that to be true which he had considered contrary to reality in the first half of his clause; and in the sentence, wenn Rammon heutiutage Gett if, — [et et's denn — et ift's nicht filt mich! if Mammon

is God now-a-days — be it so, he is not my God! — the interruption is equally observable, and the subjunctive in the second sentence to be accounted for according to § 313. 2.

NOTE 3. When the Conditional is made use of in other than conditional sentences, it cannot be interchanged with the Subjunctive Present or Past. For instance: er fragte mith, ob ith bas thun white (not thate; the Conditional is to be accounted for as an elliptical expression: ob ith bas thun white, wenn ith thints, or some similar sentence). Ith glaubte nith, bas er genesen white (not genasse; the Conditional is used here instead of the Subjunctive Future bas er genesen werde, because the principal sentence is in the Past tense, and so should the accessory one be also.

Nore 4. The Subjunctive Imperfect is used in indignant questions, or in such as express a strong doubt; as, wie ? ich hatte bas gethan? (ich habe es nicht gethan). Gastrennblich batte England die Rönigin von Schottland empfangen? (but she did not). Und bas Alles ware erlogen?

§ 315. The Imperative Mood is used similarly in German and in English. The first and third persons, singular and plural, are in both languages taken from the Subjunctive Present, there being no other forms appropriated to this mood than the second person sing. and plur. For instance, fei still! set still! set se silent! er sei still, see silent still, seen wir still, he may be silent, they may be silent, let us be silent; or wir wollen still sein! er möge (set mögen) still sein!

Note. — The German phrases, ausgettunten! empty your glasses! aufgestanben! rise! die Schwerter gezogen! or deraus mit den Schwertern! let the swords de unsheathed! woblaus, Kameraden, auf's Pferd, auf's Pferd! in's Jeld, in die Freiheit gezogen! (Körner), up then, comrades, let us mount the horses, let us march to the battle-field and on to freedom! — constitute a very efficient and energetic form of command, to be accounted for by an ellipsis; as, last die Giaser ausgettunten sein!

CHAPTER V.

THE TENSES.

§ 316. The Present Tense expresses that which is going on at the time we are speaking; as, ich schreibe, und mährend ich schreibe, wird ein Haus gebaut. The German language has but this

one form for the present, which expresses also the English 'I am writing' and 'I do write.' In the same manner the Imperfect ich schrieb answers to 'I was writing' and 'I did write,' as well as to 'I wrote'; and the Perfect ich habe geschrieben means not only 'I have written,' but likewise 'I have been writing'; and so on, in all tenses.

Norn 1. The English 'I am writing' may be correctly translated in German by ich bin im Schreiben begriffen, or ich bin fiber bem (beim) Schreiben, or ich schreibe eben (eben jege); and the English 'I do write' may be translated by ich schreibe ja, ich schreibe wirklich; and so on through all tenses.

NOTE 2. The Present is, therefore, the proper tense, in most languages, to express that which is always going on; as, bas keben ift tury, die Runft ift lang (G.); alle Renichen muffen fierben.

NOTE 3. The Present is also sometimes used instead of the Future tense, when the future action is to be represented as sure to take place; as, ich gete morgen mach kenden; er fingt beute Abend im Konjert; in just Jahren gete ich nach Italien; bitte ihn nur, so giebt er die Allen, was den nur willst, request him oach nach he will give you everything you wish. Berlas die drauf, ich lasse schen, oder sühre sie aus Dilsen (Sch.). Die Böglein deweigen im Balde, watte nur, date rubest du auch (G.). Es tommt die Beit (Bible), the hour cometh.

NOTE 4. The so-called historical Present is used in narratives and descriptions of past facts for the sake of greater liveliness; as,—

Das Baffer raufde', das Baffer fowoll, Ein Jifder faß daran, Sah nach der Angel rubeboll Ribt bis ans Berg binan. Und wie er laufdt, The ilt fid die Jiur empor; Aus dem bewegten Baffer raufdt, Ein feuches Beib berbor. — (Goeche).

NOTE 5. The Present is idiomatically used instead of the Perfect when a state of things, past before, is to be expressed as still continuing; as, ich bin schon sehn Jahre in Emerica, I have already been in America ten years. Diese Rirche sich schon hundert Jahre, this church has stood one hundred years.

§ 317. The *Perfect Tense* represents past time absolutely, or, in other words, as completed at the time when the speaker is speaking; as, ich have geschrieben, I have written (I have done writing); ein have ist gebaut worden, a house has been built (is built). It is therefore the proper tense to express that which cannot be undone, because irrevocably past; as, die Richter

haben ihr Schuldig ausgesprochen über euch (Sch.), the judges have pronounced their sentence of Guilty upon you; um neun Uhr ift er gestorben (Sch.), he died at nine o'clock.

NOTE 1. The Perfect is never used in historical narration, except in the vulgar tongue, or in poetry, when a single fact of the narrative is to be represented as irretrievably, hopelessly fixed, or when the reality of a completed fact, rather than the time as past, is to be expressed; as, wir baben diesen Boden und erschaffen durch unster Sand Jiels, den alten Badd ju einem Sig der Renschen umgewandelt, etc. (Sch. in Wilh. Tell).

NOTE 2. The Perfect is used in German where the English has the Imperfect; as, ich habe beinen Bruder diesen Rorgen gesehen, I saw your brother this morning; haben Sie je einen Esphanten gesehen I did you ever see an elephant? ich bin gestern zu Sause gebieben, I stayed at home yesterday; sind Sie schon in der neuen Riche gewesen! Sauset ist neutich gegeben worden, Hamlet was lately performed. Die Welt hat nie einen gekeren Jeldberrn getannt als Rapoleon, the world never knew (has never known) a greater general than Napoleon.

In a word, in all cases where a past action may just as well be conceived of either as a perfect or an imperfect past, the German language prefers the Perfect (and so does the French); the English, the Imperfect. All past actions,—1. that are not either historically related or described;—2. coinciding wholly or in part with others;—3. filling out a longer space of time,—the German places in the Perfect; the English places all past actions that are not to be considered as completed at the time when the speaker is speaking, and continuing only in their result, in the Imperfect tense.

NOTE 3. When, in an action expressed in the Perfect of the passive voice, not so much the past time as the reality of the past action is to be pointed out, the participle worden of the auxiliary verb is omitted; as, die Schlacht ift gewomen (worden would here be less energetical), the battle is won; der Betbrecher ift aberfährt, the criminal is convicted; Rapeleon ift in Confita geboren.

Note 4. In accessory sentences the auxiliary verb is often, in the Perfect and Plupersect, omitted in poetical language; as, Richt du, der siete sich selber treu geblieben (Sch.), (ift is omitted). Biele sind bei une, die seiner Siren Freundlichkeit erfahren (haben) (Sch.). Ich bab' bein Bort, du wirst nicht eber handeln, bevor du mich selber siderzugt (bak) (Sch.). Doch will er mir gönnen drei Tage geit, die ich die Schwester dem Gatten gefreit (habe) (Sch.). Des rähme der blut'ge Iprann sich nicht, daß der Freund dem Freunde gebrochen (habe) die Psiche (Sch.). Er sich nachdem seine Ihat missungen (war). Wir wurden berdannt, weil wir unsere Psicht gethan (hatten). Ich lebte wieder auf, nachdem ich fast tode gemartert (worden war).

§ 318. The Future Tense and the Past Future are employed as in English to express future actions; as, er wird morgen abretien, he will set out to-morrow; wann die Bäume wieder

blüben werben, wird er langst in's Grab gefunten sein, when the trees will bloom again, he will long have been in his grave.

Hence the Future is the proper tense to express that which happens in present time, but at whose reality the speaker can only guess; as, es flopft—es wird mein Freund sein, somebody knocks at the door,—it is probably (it will be) my friend. Meine Söhne werden in diesem Augenblide in Paris angelommen sein, my sons will, in this moment (by this time), have arrived in Paris. In werdet (bod) nicht verlangen, daß ich meinen Eid brechen soll (G.), you will not desire me to break my oath.

NOTE 1. The English auxiliary verb 'I will,' 'I would,' is sometimes used to express repeated action, present and past; as, 'children will spoil their toys, will tear their clothes, because they are children'; 'Socrates would (was accustomed) at times stand still for hours in the same place and meditate.' This cannot be imitated in German, but must be translated, Ainber pflegen it Spielgeng gu berberben; Sofrates pfleger gu Beiten auf einem Islade gu fleben, etc.

NOTE 2. The English 'I am going to do,' etc., is expressed by the German Future.

§ 319. The Imperfect Tense represents an action as past in the opinion of the speaker, but not completed in reference to another contemporary action; as, ich war noch beim Essen, als bie Freunde eintraten, I was still at dinner, when my friends entered; bas haus wurde gebaut, als ein Feuer ausbrach, the house was building, when a fire broke out. The Imperfect is, therefore, the historical tense, because in historical narration events are placed on a common background of time.

Note 1. The Imperfect has its legitimate place, — 1. when two past facts, related in two connected sentences, are coincident in time; as, wherend er splies, arbeitette ity; — 2. when they coincide only partially, the accessory sentence is in the Imperfect; as, ith habe den Rock vertauft, well er mir nicht paste, I have sold that coat, decause it did not fit me; — 8. when of two connected sentences one expresses a past action of a longer duration, it is put in the Imperfect, whatever time may be expressed by the other; as, ith gesteh's, dass ich die Hossmung nährte, swei edle Rationen zu vereinigen (Sch.); er sonne viel geden, weil er ein reicher Mann war; er wärde viel gegeben haben, weil er ein reicher Mann war;— 4. in general, when a longer duration of past time is to be expressed; as, die Griechen waren ein begabtes Bolt.

NOTE 2. The Imperfect is also the proper tense in descriptions of past facts, when the description represents them as of a longer duration; as, in ber freien Ratur lebten die Griechen des Jahres größten Theil müheles dahin (Jacobs), the Greeks passed the greatest part of the year without trouble out of doors.

NOTE 8. The Imperfect Indicative and Subjunctive in both German and English is used to express the contrary of reality, because that which is past, is past hope of a change, particularly in conditional sentences; as in menn er bas that, so war er perforen, if he did it (would have done it), he was lost. The Indicative in both cases expresses that the result is unavoidable. 2Benn es teinen Binter gabe, fo batten wir auch teinen Frabling, if there were no winter. we should also have no spring (but there is a winter and a spring). 2Benn er ffürbe, fo maren wir verloren, should he die, we should be lost (but he does not die, and we are not lost, - is the speaker's opinion). Bar's moglio ? batteff bu's mit Borbebacht babin treiben wollen ? (Sch.) (But it is impossible, he has not intended to go so far.) Du warest Don Manuel ? (Sch.) (It is impossible, vou are not Don Manuel.) Es wird nichte ichaden - wurde ich fonft Dir es rathen ? (G.) (See & 314.) Batt' ich nur erwas fur fie gethan! (G.), would I had done something in her behalf! D ging's bon bier gerad' in's Relb bee Todes und alle Schwerter burchtrangen meinen Bufen ! (Sch.). Baft mare ich in ben Strom gefunten (G.). I was nearly submerged in the river. Mir ift, als ob ich aus der Belt follte - mir auch, und noch baju, ale tollft' ich nicht wohin (G.), it seems to me as though I were to quit the world; and so it seems to me, and yet more, as though I knew not for what place. 30 bin in meinem leben so gladid nicht gewesen, baf ich bas Bergnagen oft empfunden batte (Less.), I have not been so happy in my life as to have often experienced this pleasure.

Note 4. The English 'he can' or 'he could not have done it,' (and similar phrases with the auxiliary verbs of mood,) is sometimes identical with 'he has' or 'had not not been able to do it,' and must so be translated in German: et that (batte) es nicht thun tonnen. Here the English language, being unable to form a perfect or pluperfect of 'I can,' 'I must,' etc., expresses these tenses in the predicate instead of the copula. But this rather illogical practice has spread over cases where no such excuse exists; for instance, in sayings like these: 'we hoped to have; seen you,' to't hatten getofft Sie ju (eten; 'I wanted to have spoken with him,' ich hatte gewänsch, mit ihm ju sprechen, — a practice that cannot be imitated in German.

Different from this use is that where the predicate is really conceived in the Perfect or Pluperfect tense, and the copula in the Present or Imperfect, when both languages agree; as, 'at this hour to-morrow we must have finished the work,' morgen um blefe Stunde måssen bit Extett bellender haben; he must have died (which means, it must be that he has died), er muß gestetben sein; would he not have told it you? (which means, can it be that he has not told it you?), sollte er es Ihnen nicht gesagt haben? In will bie Sache abgethan haben (or wissen), I want to have the affair settled. In will be Thater gewesen sein, I will allow (or grant), I have done it. Dieser Prahlhans will mit dem Sultan Brå-

berichaft gemacht haben, this braggart says he (will have it he) has fraternized with the Sultan.

§ 320. The Pluperfect expresses, as in English, an action past in the eyes of the speaker before another action is past; as, als ber Bater gestorben war, erbten seine Söhne sein Bermögen, when the father was dead, his sons inherited his fortune. After he had said it, he departed, nachdem er es gesagt hatte, etc.

Norm. — What is said of both moods of the Imperfect in § 319, note 3, holds good also of the Pluperfect.

§ 321. In compound sentences the principal one is authoritative for the dependent ones; if it is in the Present, these should be in the Present; if it is in the Past, these should be so; if it is in the Future, these should be likewise so. For instance: ich wünsche, daß du gehest; er wünschte, daß ich ginge; bu wirst hossen, daß ich gehen werde.

But when the actions expressed in the principal and in the accessory sentences are performed in different times, or, in other words, either after the other, one is in the Perfect, when the other is in the Present; one is in the Pluperfect, when the other is in the Imperfect; and one is in the Perfect (compound) Future, when the other is in the simple Future; as, naddem meine Bitte abgeschlagen worden ist, habe ich nichts weiter zu bitten; nachdem meine Bitte mir abgeschlagen worden war, hatte ich nichts weiter zu bitten; wenn diese Bitte mir abgeschlagen worden seine worden seine worden seine worden war, hatte ich nichts weiter zu bitten; wenn diese Bitte mir abgeschlagen worden sein wird, werde ich um nichts weiter zu bitten baben.

Or one may be in the Perfect or Present, and the other in the Future; as, er behauptet, morgen werde eine große Sonnen-finsterniß statischen; sie hat geweissagt, daß heute der Welt Ende eintreten werde. These sentences turned into past time will run thus: er behauptete (hatte behauptet), daß morgen eine große Sonnensinsterniß statischen würde; sie hatte geweissagt, daß heute der Welt Ende eintreten würde. The Conditional answers to the relative tenses just as the Future answers to the absolute tenses. (See § 85.)

Hence it appears that, as a rule, absolute tenses (viz. Present, Perfect, and simple and compound Future) should be referred only to absolute tenses, and that relative tenses (Imperfect, Pluperfect, Conditional, and past or compound Conditional) should only be referred to relative tenses.

NOTE 1. The Perfect, however, forms an exception to this rule; being sometimes used for past actions not strictly completed, such as are translated by an English Imperfect, it may, even with good writers, be followed by a dependent sentence in the Imperfect; as, ith hab' gethan, was ith nicht (affen tonnte (Sch.), I did that which I could not help doing. Darum eben bin ith vorangeritt, bamit ith Euch in Jaffung (egen und ermahnen möchte (Sch.), it was for this reason that I outran the others, in order to, etc.

NOTE 2. Poets use sometimes the Impersect for the Persect on account of the rhythm; as, wie tamt ihr durch das Basser, da doch der Strom die Brüden fortgefährt (hat)? (Sch.) Das Kkliti beist sie (die Matte) weil die Baldung ausgereuret ward (worden is). (Sch.) Jir war't den Beiden nie gewogen, weil ich sie liebe (Sch.). Jalle wärdig, wie du flands (Sch.). Auch für mich ward jener korbeerstrans, der deine Todrenbahre schmadt, gewunden (Sch.).

Note 8. The Subjunctives of the Imperfect, tonnte, möchte, dürste, etc., have lost in part their force of a relative tense, and may occur dependent on or governing absolute tenses; as, ebendarum ist er uns ähnlich geworden, weit wir sonst teinen Theil an ihm haben tonnten (G.). In müste die That vollbringen, weil ich sie gedacht (habe) I (Sch.) Es müste geschehen wo möglich, eh' sie dir zus vortommen (Sch.). Ariosten's sob hat mich mehr ergest, als daß es mich beseibigt hätte (G.).

Note 4. The Impersect, when expressing longer duration or coincidence of time, may occur among absolute tenses; as, den du hier siehst, das ist der Karl nicht mehr, der in Alkala von dir Abschied nahm (Sch.). Wie weit ist diese Königin gebracht, die mit so stolgen Hossinungen begann (Sch.). Da kommt der Paladin, der uns deschäftet (Sch.). Gläckel'ge Beiten, ihr seid vorbei, da noch der alte Berlichingen hier am Kamin saf, da wir um ihn durcheinander spielten (G.). Ich will nicht eher meine Sterne loben, dis ich das Ende dieser Thaten sah (gesehn haben werde) (Sch.).

NOTE 5. In doubly dependent sentences, (i. e. when a compound sentence is itself dependent on another principal sentence, as in its weiß, haß er Alles gehaleten hat, was er die versprochen hat,) the chief sentence (here ich weiß), when in the Present or Future, may sometimes be followed by a compound sentence partly or wholly in relative tenses, on account of euphony, eurythmy, or paramount logical reasons; as, ich weiß, haß er jugegen war, als der Merd geschab (while it should be, according to the rule, daß er jugegen gewesen iß, als der Mord geschen iß); es wird eine Beit tommen, daß du Alles darum gåbest, wenn du es ungeschehen machen tönntest. The contrary case, that a chief sentence in a relative tense is followed by a compound or simple sentence in absolute tenses,

GERMAN GRAMMAR.

f anywhere with good writers. It is simply barbarous to say, es baf ich gebe; ich mufte, daf ich tonne, mas ich molle.

In oratio obliqua principal sentences in relative tenses may be folaccessory sentences in absolute tenses; as, er fagte, er fei beffen nicht Eugen batte berfprochen, er werde tommen.

The learned German grammarian, Morits Haupt, is of opinion that this use is the only legitimate one, or, in other words, that oratio oblique is in all cases to be expressed by the Subjunctive of the Present, or Perfect, or Future, be the principal sentence in a relative or an absolute tense; that it should never be introduced by the conjunction bag, and that the whole theory of the 'Onsecution Temporum' is un-German, and has crept in from the Latin. But the matter is far from being settled; and this theory has been adopted by our classical writers, and is constantly in practice.

CHAPTER VI

THE ATTRIBUTIVE COMBINATION.

- § 322. The general meaning of a substantive (subject or object) is individualized or particularized by attributes; the attributes may be expressed,—
- 1. By an adjective or adjective pronoun or numeral; as, ber grune Baum, mein haus, jenes Mabchen, funf Stragen, alle Leute.
- 2. By a substantive, or adjective, or ordinal number, in apposition; as, John van Buren, ber Prinz; Genua die Stolze; Karl ber Große; Pius ber Neunte.
- 3. By a substantive in the genitive, or by a preposition with its case; as, bas Leben ber Menichen; ber Governor von New Nort.
 - 4. By an adjective clause; as, ein Schuler, ber mirflich fleifig ift.
- 5. By one of the adverbs of intensity (§ 266); as, Gott allein; fast ein Bushel; beinahe ein Jahr; taum bie Salfte; ziemlich bas ganze Bolt.
- § 323. The attributive adjective agrees with its substantive in gender, number, and case, and is, with its complements, generally placed before it (see for exceptions § 290, note

1); as, ein entichloffener Mann; ein zu Allem entichloffener Mann, eine vierzig Fuß lange Brude, ein in allen Berbrechen aufgewachsener Mensch.

NOTE. — The adjective boll, full of, is always placed after the substantive, as ein Garten boll von Baumen, or abbreviated, boll Baume; ein herz voll (von) Sorgen.

§ 324. The appositive, as a rule, agrees in gender, case, and number with the substantive to which it refers, and generally stands after it; as, haft du das Schloß gesehen, das hohe Schloß am Meer? (Uhl.) Auf der hochzeit meines gnädigen herrn, des Pfalzgrafen (G.). Und ich, die Aermste, stünde ganz allein, müßt' ich von ihm, den Einzigen, mich trennen (G.). Ihr kennt ihn; den Schöpfer fühner heere (Sch.). Der strengen Diana, der Freundin der Jagden, lasset uns solgen (Sch.). Erhabene Bernunft, lichthelle Tochter des göttlichen hauptes, weise Gründerin des Weltgebäudes, Führerin der Sterne! (Sch.)

Nork. — When the appositive precedes the substantive which it qualifies, the former only is inflected; as, die Grenzen des Königreichs Preufen; die Macht des Raifers Karl; die Jabrit des herrn Maller; in den erften Tagen des Monats April; die Professoren an der Universität Bonn. (See § 163, 164.)

§ 325. The Genitive is the correct translation of the English 'of' in all cases where this preposition stands attributively between two substantives (as, die Rinde des Baumes, the bark of the tree; der Garten des Fürsten, the garden of the prince; der Sohn des Arztes, the son of the physician; der Bürgermeister der Stadt, the mayor of the city; das Licht der Sonne, the light of the sun; der Schatten des Baumes; die Erziehung der Kinder, and die Erziehung der Eltern, the education 'of the children' and 'of the parents'), and when possession, relation, or affinity is expressed.

NOTE 1. Sometimes the English to is to be expressed by the German Genitive; as, he is a friend to my brother, physician to the king, confessor to the queen, a father to the afflicted, etc., er ift ein Freund meines Bruders, Erzt bes Königs (or beim Könige), Beichtbater der Königin (bei der Königin), ein Bater der Bedrangten (imitated: ein Bater den Bedrangten, or für die Bedrangten).

NOTE 2. The English the pleasure of seeing you,' the hope of killing a deer,' is to be translated das Bergnugen, Sie ju sehen; die hoffmung einen hirsch ju

erlegen : - or by a proposition; as, bas Bergnigen bei Ihrem Mublid, bie Soffnung auf Erlegung eines Sirfdes.

NOTE 8. The preposition bon is employed instead of the Genitive case: -

1. Wherever the Genitive cannot be pointed out in any way; as, ein Bater bon gehn Rindern, a father of ten children (the Genitive gehn Rinder would be like the Nominative); die Rabe von Baumen (the Gen. Baume like the Nom.). But wherever the definite article is to the purpose, we prefer it; as, die Rahe ber Baume); Die Lage von Paris. (See § 163.)

2. With attributive substantives expressing quality or material: as. ein Ofers bon weifer Barbe; ein Gefcaft bon Bichtigteit; ein Rann bon Bort, true to his word: von Ansehen, of authority; von Gewicht, of distinction, consequence: but ein Rann bes Bortes, nicht ber That, man of words, not of action : ein Rann bes Rrieges, a man of war, a warrior; ein Mann Ihres Schlage, and bon Ihrem Schlage, a man of your cast; eine Sache bon geringem Berthe, a matter of little value; ein Ring ben Gold; eine Zafel von Rarmor, a tablet of marble.

8. For a third case, see § 163, note.

The English 'an angel of a child,' 'a rogue of a servant,' and similar expressions, may be imitated; as, ein Engel von einem Rinde, ein Sourte von einem Bedienten.

NOTE 4. The Genitive depending on an indefinite pronoun, or numeral, or adjective in the superlative degree, is termed the Partitive Genitive; as, Reiner meiner Freunde; eine ber größten Schlachten; ber jungfte feiner Sohne. This form of expression is rather frequent in German, particularly when the pronoun, numeral, or adjective is to be pointed out emphatically; as, bu fendeft mir ber Schmerzen viel (Uhl.); wir haben fo ber guten Freunde wenig (Sch.); es fei genug ber Grauel (Sch.).

The preposition bon is frequently used instead of the partitive genitive: as a rule, in the phrases wer ben une? which of us (unfer Giner, meaning 'a man of our rank')? einer ben une, one of us (but for 'all of us,' 'all of them,' wir alle, fie alle, is the right translation); jeder pon eud, each of you. Bon ben Spaniern maren gegen achtunbert, bon ben Rieberlanbern etliche Laufend auf bem Blate geblieben, und auf beiben Seiten wurden viele von bem vornehmften Wel bermift (Sch.).

NOTE 5. The English of is not translated at all: --

1. In the phrases ber erfte Mai, the first of May; ber sweite April, the second of April; ber funfte August, the fifth of August.

2. After names of measure, weight, or number (see § 158); as, eine Blafche Bein; ein Pfund Rafe; ein Dugend Gier; ein Regiment Soldaten; ein Buch Papier, a quire of paper; ein Stat Buder, a lump of sugar; ein Bebif Babne, a set of teeth; es giebt viele Arten Thiere, there are many kinds of animals; mit einem Stude Sols ichlug er mich, with a piece of wood; ein Saufen Gelb, a great deal of money; eine Menge Menschen, a great many men; eine Prife Tabat, a pinch of snuff; mir brei Paar Schuhen (Paar being here a numeral, as is likewise Dugend in von givei Dugend Giern, instead of gwei Dugenden Gier). But with an adjective we find ein halbes Dugend guter Freunde (Sch.).

NOTE 6. The inversion in meines Bater's Saus, my father's house (instead of 'the house of my father,' \ 290, note 2), is much more frequent in German than in English, particularly in common parlance and poetry; as, bes Dolls Stimme ift Bottes Stimme (Prov.); D was ift Goldes, was Juwelen Schein (Juwelen is rather harsh, because this genitive has no characteristic inflection). womit ber Erbe Ronige fich fomuden! (Sch.)

NOTE 7. The English language may use two, three, or more Genitives successively, one depending on another; as, the bearer of the report of the death of the emperor, etc. This cannot be done in German, where the inversion (Note 6), or the preposition pen, or some other form of sentence, is employed to avoid accumulating genitives : as, ber lleberbringer ber Radvicht bon bee Raifers Tobe.

NOTE 8. The English Genitive of the emphatic (not reflexive) kimself, in savings like 'the life of himself and brothers depended on this issue,' cannot be imitated, but is rendered fein und feiner Bruber leben bing bon bem Musgange ab.

§ 326. When prepositions with depending cases form the attribute, as a rule, that preposition is chosen which the verb from which the substantive is derived requires; as,

ich bente an Gott, I think of God.

ich fürchte mich bor Gefahr, I am afraid of danger,

ich boffe auf Erfola. I hope for success.

ich klage über Leibschmergen, I complain of pain in the bowels.

es mangelt an Beld, there is want of der Mangel an Beld, want of money, money,

ich reise nach Paris, I go to Paris,

(care) of the table.

ber Gebante an Gott, thought of God.

ich durfte nach Rubm, I thirst after fame, der Durft nach Rubm, thirst after fame, die Burcht vor Befahr, the fear of dan-

> die hoffnung auf Erfolg, the hope of success.

> bie Rlage über leibichmergen, the complaint of pain in the bowels,

die Reise nad Paris, the journey to Paris. ich forge für die Roff, I take charge die Sorge für die Roff, the charge (care) of the table.

Thus we say die Shlacht bei leipzig, battle of Leipzig; ber Sieg bei Baterloo, the victory of Waterloo; ber Bund gegen Frankreich; die Unbanglichteit an den Ronig, the adherence to the king; ein Rampf auf leben und Tod, a combat for life and death. But Die Liebe ju Bott, ju bem Baterland, ber Saf gegen ben Brind; and this form is sometimes preferred, to avoid the ambiguity of the Genitive (ber has being capable of a passive and active interpretation).

Note. — Concrete substantives, too, are frequently followed by prepositions; as, ber Dom ju Roln; mein Better in Bremen; Frantfurt am Rain.

§ 327. A substantive connected with an attribute as a stand-

ing phrase is likely to run in German into one compound word with it; as,

matter of fact, Thatface man of honor, Ebrenmann order of battle, Schlachtordnung man of business, Geschleismann day of marriage, Hocheltstag love of truth, Babtheltsliebe wreath of flowers, Blumentrang

art of dancing, Langtunf drop of blood, Blutstropfen tax on dogs, Hundefieuer institution for the blind, Blindenansfalt dealer in glass, Glashander a fainting fit, eine Dhumacht public spirit, Gemeinsein.



CHAPTER VIL

OBJECTIVE COMBINATION.

§ 328. The general idea of an action, expressed by a verb or adjective, is individualized or particularized by its objects. These may either be completing objects, — such as are necessary to complete the notion of the predicate; thus, 'I have,' 'you make,' 'he gives,' are incomplete without an object; as, 'I have money,' 'you make cheese,' 'he gives a concert,' etc.; — and verbs that require such objects are termed objective verbs. Or they are adverbial objects, such as add only the particular circumstances of an action, as place, time, manner, degree, etc.; as, I make cheese 'every week,' he sleeps 'twice a day,' we live agreeably 'in Boston,' you tremble 'much'; — and verbs requiring such objects only are termed subjective verbs.

Norm.—The same verb may, according to its different significations, be an objective verb or a subjective verb. Compare with each other, for instance, the sentences, 'I move to the country,' 'he moves a house'; 'the house is burning,' 'they burned the house.'

§ 329. There are four kinds of completing objects, viz.:—

The Suffering Object, expressed by the Accusative.

The Personal Object, expressed by the Dative.

The Genitive Object, expressed by the Genitive.

The Factitive Object, expressed by the Nominative, or Accusative, or a preposition.

§ 330. All transitive verbs govern the Accusative case.

A verb is said to be transitive when its object is conceived to suffer or be affected by the action of the verb; as, 'he kills the dog,' 'he drinks wine,' etc. The German is different in the use of transitive verbs from the English, and hence it is necessary to classify them in German.

- 1. All causative verbs are transitive, that is, all those which express that a person or thing causes another to do something; as, lehren, to teach (to make somebody learn), führen, to lead (to make somebody go). There are two kinds: -
- a) Derivatives, formed from intransitives or adjectives, and employed exclusively as causatives; as,

```
erfaufen,
                 from figen, to sit,
                                                          from erfaufen, to be
fegen, to seat.
Rellen, to place.
                       ffeben, to stand
                                           drown,
                                                                  drowned
legen, to lay,
                       liegen, to lie
                                         flöffen, to float.
                                                                fliefen, to flow
fibren, to lead,
                       fabren, to move
                                        hangen, benten, to
                                                                bangen, to hang
fleden, to put,
                       fliden, to stick
                   "
                       fallen, to fall
                                         fåugen, to suckle.
                                                                faugen, to suck
fullen, to fell,
fenten, to sink,
                       finten, to sink
                                        Rauben, to raise
                                                                flieben, to fly like
fprengen, to burst. "
                       fpringen, to
                                           dust.
                                                                  dust
                                        fcwemmen, . to
  make spring.
                         burst, spring
                                                                fdwimmen.
                                           make swim,
tranten, to give to "
                       trinten, to drink
                                                                  swim
  drink.
                                        magen, wiegen, to
                                                                wiegen, to weigh
meden, to awaken. "
                                           weigh a thing.
                       maden, to wake
erfcreden (mod. "
                       erichteden (anc.
                                        marmen, to make
                                                                toarm, warm
                         form), to be
  form), to fright-
                                           warm,
                         frightened,
                                        freuen, to rejoice, " freb, glad
berichwenden, to
                      ber fdwinden, to
                                        fotråden, to weaken, from fotrad, weak
  spend, squan-
                         vanish
                                         farten, to strengthen, " flart, strong
                                                                " tobt, dead.
  der,
                                        tobten, to kill,
```

b) Primitive verbs, adopting the causative meaning without changing their form, and accordingly used both transitively and intransitively; as,

something (see § 106, note 8) bleichen, to be bleached, and to bleach something (see § 106, note 8) brechen, to be broken, and to break something

baden, to be baked, and to bake reifen, to be torn, and to tear something fabren, to move quickly, and to drive lieben, to move, and to draw, pull something

jagen, to run swiftly, and to chase melben, to he graning, and to pasture something

friefen, to rush, and to shoot some-

baiten, to stop, halt, and to stop, hold something

(v)erlofden, to be extinguished, and to brennen, to be burning (on fire), and to burn something

teden, fieben, to be boiling (hot), and forcellen, to be swollen, and to cause to to boil something

to meit, found

swell famelies, to be melting (molten), and perserves, to be spoiled, and to spoil.

beifen, to be called, and to call

and to measure something

braten, to be fried, and to fry

extinguish

abnehmen, to decrease, and to take off

meffen, to be of a certain length, etc.,

NOTE 1. The intransitive verb is always inflected according to the ancient form, where this is possible, and the transitive verb according to the modern

NOTE 2. This practice, however, is not so common in German as in English. and is never admitted with derivative verbs; as, 'to march troops,' Iranges marfchiren laffen; 'to return a visit,' einen Befud erwibern; and of primitive verbs not mentioned above no causative should be formed; thus, 'to run a home,' or 'to run a line,' 'to walk a home,' cannot be literally translated (eine Linie gieben, ein Pferd geben, rennen faffen).

2. Verbs with the prefix be are transitive; the following are such as were originally intransitive, and have been made transitive by the prefix be: --

thing.

ich biene Lemanbem, I serve somebody.

ich brobe Jemandem, I utter a threat against,

ich fabre auf bem Strome, I go on the

ich greife nach etwas, I gripe at, ich bandle mit Klucheit, I act prudent-

ly, ber Ronig berricht über ein Bolt,

er jammert aber fein Glenb, ich tlage über feinen Zob,

id tomme,

ich lange nach ettvad, I stretch out the hand for something.

id lebe.

id) låge,

ich bente an etwas, I think of some- ich bebente etwas, I consider something,

th bediene Jemanden, I am a servant to somebody.

th bedrobe Jemanden, I threaten somebody,

ich befahre ben Strom, I navigate the

id begreift, I conceived,

ich behandle Jemanden mit Mlugheit, I treat somebody prudently,

ber Ronig beberricht fein Bolt.

er bejammert fein Elend, ich betlage feinen Zob,

ich betomme Gelb,

ich belange Ginen, to concern, to sue, to accuse.

Menfden beleben ben Diat,

ich belåge bich,

det milde mountour.

RYNTAX.

ich nite Jemanbem, I am usoful,

ich wohne im Saufe,

ich folge dem Gabrer,

ich antworte meinem Freunde,

ich fleige auf ben Berg,

ich benute (benitte) bas Gelb, I use,

ich bewohne bas Baus,

ich befolge bas Befet,

ich beantworte feinen Brief,

ich befteige ben Berg.

NOTE 1. Some, originally transitive, when compounded with be, change the object; as, ich bede bas Auch über den Aisch, and ich bedede den Aisch mit einem Auche; ich erbe das Bermögen meines Baters, and ich beerbe meinen Bater; ich grabe ein Grab, and ich begrabe den Lodten; ich raube ichm das Geld, and ich bermabe ichn des Geldes; ich schente dir das Buch, and ich beschente dich mit dem Buche. Some alter the signification of the verb; as, scheiben, to write, beschreiben, to describe; suchen, to seek, besuchen, to visit; tennen, to know, betennen, to consess; halten, to hold, behalten, to keep. A great many verbs with the suffix be govern merely the Accusative of the reslexive pronoun, and, of course, do not admit of another Accusative. See the lists, § 304, notes 1 and 2.

Note 2. The following only are exceptions, and govern a Dative of the person:—

behagen, to please belieben, " begegnen, to meet beharren auf, to persevere in beruben auf, to be founded in bestehen auf, to insist upon besiehen aus, to consist of betommen, to do good, to be conducted to health.

- 3. All inseparable compound verbs with one of the prefixes burch, um, über, unter, hinter, are transitive, except unterbleiben, to remain undone; unterliegen, (with Dat.) to succumb to; unterhandeln mit, to negotiate with.
- 4. The following verbs govern two Accusative cases, one of the person and one of the thing, viz.:—

einen etwasi lehren, to teach somebody something,

einen etwas heißen, to call one a name ('he called me had einen etwas nennen, names'),

einen etwas schelten,) to call one a bad name ('he called einen etwas schimpsen,) him a liar'),

einen etwas fragen, to ask one about something, to question one about something,

einen eimas bitten, to ask one for something, to beg something of somebody. The last two take for the second object only etwas, nichts, Bieles, and similar words.

Note. — In a passive sentence this double Accusative is changed into a double nominative; as, man nennt die Ceder mit Recht den toniglichen Baum (Kr.), one justly calls the cedar the kingly tree; passively, die Ceder wird mit Recht der tonigliche Baum genannt, the cedar is justly called the kingly tree. Of the above verbs setten alone cannot be thus changed into the passive: instead of er wurde diese Sprache gesehrt, which is incorrect, we must say er wurde in dieser Sprache unterrichtet. Compare § 838.

- 5. Neuter and intransitive verbs, such as weinen, schlasen, sampsen, bliden, lächeln, etc., are of such a nature as to preclude their properly governing an Accusative. Still, we find neuter and intransitive verbs connected with an object in the Accusative, with great expressiveness, in phrases like the following: Thranen weinen, to weep tears; einen sanften Schlassen, to sleep a quiet sleep; einen guten Kamps sampsen, to fight a good sight; has bliden, to look hatred, to look daggers; Liebe lächeln, to smile love; Freude athmen, to breathe joy; einen Traum träumen, to dream a dream; ich stehe meinen Mann, I stand against my adversary (I brave every enemy); ich gehe meinen Weg, I go my way, this way.
- 6. The Accusative is the proper case to express measure (of time, see § 343), weight, age, distance; as, einen Fuß lang; bas haus erstredt sich vierzig Ellen auf beiben Seiten; einen Zentner schwer; ber Knabe ist einen Monat alt; er ist eine Meile mit mir gegangen; bas Buch ift keinen Cent werth; er wartete einen Augenblick.
- § 331. The Dative case is governed by those verbs and adjectives which require a completing object conceived as active.

When a verb requires two completing objects, one of which is a thing, the other a person, the former, as a rule, is put in the Accusative case, because it is really in a suffering state; the latter in the Dative, because it remains active under the action of the subject,—the action is done for his benefit or in his behalf; as, ith gete thm Geld, ith verspreche bit Bablung; and thus all the verbs conveying the notion of offering (bitten), giving, permitting, performing (leisten), advising, promising, saying, showing, sending, and similar ones, govern both cases

at the same time. The following verbs also belong here, which take in English a different construction:—

Bemandem etwas ginnen, mifginnen, not to grudge, to grudge somebody something

- sepmen or vanten, to rob, to take something from a person (but Sementen einer Gade berauten, to rob a person of a thing)
- " wehren, betwehren, to prevent somebody from doing
- " seriergen, bestehlen, to hide (conecal) something from seme
- " bergeben, berjeihen, to pardon a person for something
- " betteerfen, to reproach one with a thing
- " tiagen, to complain to somebody of something
- 4 broken, to threaten somebody with something
- " glauben, to believe somebody in a matter
- " tohnen, to reward somebody for something.

NOTE 1. The English language, having lost the terminations of declension, frequently expresses the Dative case by the preposition to; or, this preposition being omitted, no distinction is made between the Dative and Accusative cases. It is comparatively easy for the pupil to find out which is the Dative, which the Accusative, when one of the verbs of offering, giving, permitting, performing, advising, promising, saying, showing, sending, etc. governs two objects. Not only is one of the two, as a rule, a person, but this personal object is not suffering under the action, is rather active; in the sentence 'I offer you a book,' the person, you, is to be conceived as accepting the book; in the sentence 'he sent her a letter,' the person, she, is conceived as receiving the letter; and so on.

It is more difficult for the English learner of German to distinguish the case where to is to be translated by the German Dative, from the case where it must be translated by a preposition (see with persons, nath and in with places). The pupil must therefore, in doubtful cases, consider whether the preposition to is to express motion towards a place or person. In such instances a preposition is also used in German; as, I send a letter to Frankfort, ith fends einen Brief nath Grantfurt; I am going to my uncle, ith gets is meinem Dutel.

The verb fagen, like all conveying a similar idea (as Ginem ettess anticerten, to answer something to somebody, Ginem ettess mirrhellen, to communicate something to somebody, claem ettess servation, to betray a thing to a person, etc.), belongs to the class of verbs enumerated above. But instead of er fagte es mir, sometimes er fagte es mir is found. And the verbs duffern, to utter, aussprechen, to pronounce, take the personal object with the preposition gegen; as, er dufferte es gegen mid, and er frach feine Reinung gegen uns aus. Remarkable is the German expression, the must the freeden, I must speak to him; er hat ben Prafitenten gefprochen, he spoke to the president.

NOTE 2. The Dative cannot become subject when the sentence is turned into the passive voice. (See § 301.)

§ 882. 1. The following verbs, all of them intransitive, gov-

ern only one direct or completing object, and this in the Dative case.

Einem anbangen, to adhere to

- " anfieben, to suit, please
- " ausweichen, to evade, go out of the way
- begegnen, to meet a person (see § 880. 2, note 2)
- " beispringen, beistehen, to assist
 a person
- " beifommen, to get at
- d beitreten, beiffimmen, beipflichten, to assent to
- " banten, to thank a person
- " bienen (mit), to serve a person (to help a person to something)
- einfallen, to occur to somebody's mind
- " einleuchten, to be evident
- entfallen, to be forgotten
- " entgeben, entflieben, to escape from
- entfagen, to renounce to einer Sache entfprechen, to correspond to Einem febien, to be wanting
 - " flucten, to curse to
 - " folgen, to follow
- einer Sache frehnen, to be addicted to Einem gefallen, to please somebody
 - " miffallen, to displease somebody
 - gehören (angehören, jugehören), to belong to somebody

Ginem aeterden, to obey somebody

- " genugen, to suffice somebody
- " gleichen, to resemble somebody
- " grollen, to bear a grudge to some-
- " beifen (bei), to help a person in a thing
- " bulbigen, to do homage to
- " laufden, to listen to
- " mangein, to be missing
- u sates, to approach, to come near to
- " nifen, to be useful to
- einem Geschaft obliegen, to apply one's self to a business

Einem icaben, to injure a person

- " forinen, to seem to a person
- " erfceinen, to appear to a person
- " schmeicheln, to flatter a person einem lebel steuern, to put a stop to an abuse

Ginem trauen, to trust in a person

- " trogen, to bid defiance to a per-
- " unterliegen, to succumb to
- " weichen, to yield to
- widersprechen, widerstehen, to re-
- " toillfabren, to comply with
- " aubôren, to listen to.

Likewise the following impersonal verbs:-

- es begegnet mir (ein Unglad), I meet (with an accident)
- es fehlt mir an, es mangelt mir an, I am in want of
- es gefchieht mir Unrecht, I am wronged diefe Ehre gebuhrt dir, diefe Ehre gegiemt dir, diefe Ehre tommt dir ju,
- this honor belongs to you es gebt mir gut, I am well off
- es geht mir schlecht, I am badly off es gelingt (gluct) mir, I succeed in es schligt mir sehl, es mislingt, missiact mir, I fail in
- es gereicht mir jum Berbienfte, it is a merit of mine
- es gilt mir gleich, it is all the same to
- diefes Rleid fieht mir, this dress fits mo

Diefes fleht mir an, biefes behagt mir, es liegt mir ob, it is my duty this suits my views es fallt mir etwas au, it falls to my lot biefes fieht die zu, it is yours by good es beliebt mir, I choose. right, you have a right to it (See further, under 4.)

- 2. A great many verbs compounded with separable prepositions govern the Dative of person, especially such as are compounded with ab, an, auf, bei, entgegen, hinter, nach, vor, unter, voran, voraus, zu, zuvor, and those with the inseparable prefixes ent, er, ver, ge. The following examples may point out the direction in which this use prevails: --
- a) Jemandem Geld abgewinnen, to win money from a person
 - étivas andicten, to falsely impute some disgrace to somebody u
 - Steuern auflegen, to impose taxes on somebody
 - u eine Arbeit aufgeben, to charge one with a task
 - " entgegengehen, to go to meet somebody
 - u entgegensehen, to anticipate (wait for) somebody's arrival
 - " ettoas binterbringen, to give notice of a thing to somebody
 - " nathfieben, to be inferior to one

u

44

- 44 ettoas nachahmen, to imitate (to ape) one's doings
 - beimeffen, to ascribe something to somebody
- unterlegen, to underlay somebody or something with something
 - periodiagen, to propose a plan to somebody
 - portegen, to lay a matter before somebody
 - becantragen, to carry a thing before somebody
- becausiditen, to send a thing before somebody (in advance of somebody)
- sulaffen, to permit something to a person (to permit a person to do something)
 - sugesteben, to concede something to a person
- superformen in etwas, to be beforehand with regard to a person, to outdo a person in a thing

einer Sache eine andere vorziehen, to prefer something to some other thing.

- b) Jemandem entspringen, to escape from
 - die Quelle entspringt dem Belfen, the source springs from the rook

Remandem erwas entirenden, to purloin a thing from a person

- entbeden, to disclose a thing to a person
- .. 46 entgelten, to make amends, to atone for a thing to a person
- " 66 ertaffen, to relinquish a thing to a person, to exempt a person from a task
- erobern, erwerben, to conquer, to gain a thing for somebody
- erhalten, to preserve a thing for somebody's benefit

Jemandem extens erfauten, to permit an action to accessody

- " erfeichtern, to ease a person with regard to a thing
- " actieben, to confess a thing to
- " berbieten, to prohibit a person from doing a thing
- " berivehren, " " " " " "
- " " verbanten, to owe something to a person
- " serbenten, to find fault with somebody's doing a thing
 - " berderben, to spoil a thing for one.

Norn. — Einem eine Sache berfichern (assure) and Einen einer Sache berfichern, are used indiscriminately; and so it is with Ginem and Ginen erwas letten.

3. The Dative is further employed with many compound verbal expressions, requiring an active object and having the force of simple verbs; such as,

Jemandem webe thun, to hurt

- " tooki thun, to benefit
- " unredt thun, to do wrong
 - etteas fundition, to announce
- " tunbgeben,
- " Wort halten, to keep ome's
- word " 311 Hilfe tommen, to come
 - to one's assistance

Jemandem ju Theil werben, to fall to one's lot

- ben hof maden, to court somebody
- Debu foredea, to scall at somebody
- somebody

 bas Bort reben, to excuse
 somebody

Du thuft mir leid, I feel sorry for you.

4. The following impersonal expressions proper govern a Dative of person:—

- es abnt mir, I forebode
- es bangt mir, I feel anxious
- es bantt mir, methinks
- es dångt mir,

4

- es etelt mir bor, I am disgusted with
- es grant mir, I feel horror, I am afraid
- es schwindest mir, I feel giddy, dizzy es schwant mir, my heart misgives me es traumt mir, I dream
- es ift mir (wohl, feltfam, abel) ju Ruthe,
 - I feel (well, strangely, ill).

§ 333. A large number of adjectives govern the Dative of completing object; the following are the most usual: —

dhnlich, similar abgeneigt, averse from abtrännig, revolting from angemetfen, appropriate angerett, inherited angeberen, innate in angeberen, agreeable anfebfig, repulsive, offensive àrgettich, varatious

bange, fearful
bebenflich, doubtful, healtating
befannt, known
betwuft, conscions
bequem, conceions
bequeflich, conceivable
betbilflich, helpful
benachbart, neighboring
befchwerlich, troublesome, burdensome

bedauerlich, pitiable betråbend, afflicting beunruhigend, disquieting dantbar, grateful eigenthämlich, peculiar eigen, entbehrlich, unnecessary, dispensable erinnerlich, present to recollection erwanicht, wished for fremd, strange freundlich, friendly, kind, affable furchtear, formidable gemein, common gemeinfam. " gemus, according to geneigt, inclined gewogen, favorable actuation, equal to, a match for gebeiblich, prosperous geführlich, dangerous gefällig, complaisant argentvårtig, present gehörig, due, appertaining (but with a perbacking, suspected thing, geboria ju) gelegen, opportune genehm, opportune, agreeable gerathen, advantageous gefund, conducive gewiß, sure gleichgültig, indifferent gut, well-minded towards gnubia, gracious beilfam, salutary hinderlich, hindering

hold, favorable flar, intelligible, clear laffia, troublesome lieb, dear leid, grievous möglich, possible nachtheilig, prejudicial nothig, nothwendig, necessary nabe, near printid, painful rect, right, pleasing fdmerglich, painful foredlio, terrible schuldig, owing, indebted treu, faithful Aberlegen, superior unausftehlich, intolerable unerträglich, unerwartet, unexpected unpergeflich, not to be forgotten unverbefft, not looked for berbunden, obliged berberblich, destructive of berbaft, odious berfiandlich, intelligible bermanbt, related portheilhaft, advantageous tribria, adverse, loathsome willtommen, welcome well-minded autraglich, conducive juganglio, accessible sugethan, addicted to.

Also their compounds with une; as, untreu, unlieb, etc., and many others derived from verbs which govern the Dative; as, gehorfam, folgfam, gehorig, gestandig, nutlich, foudlich, dienlich (serviceable).

Examples. — Es iff mir lieb, bas du tomms, I am glad that, etc. Es tour thm leid um diefen Berluft, he was sorry for this loss; ich bin mir teines Schlers bewuft, I am not conscious of any fault; bus ift ihr verdachtig, she suspects it.

§ 334. The Dative is frequently joined to verbs and adjectives, the meaning of which does not require a completing personal object, merely to point out that the action of the verb redounds to the benefit or injury of a person, or excites his interest; as,

Frei ift dem Wanderer der Weg (Sch.), free is the road for the wanderer. Sell der Freund mir, der liebende, sterben ? (Sch.) shall my loving friend die? If sauch gewiß? dist du mir unverlett? (Sch.), is it really true? art thou unhurt (sor me)? In Darfner, wer weiß mir das schäfte Lied? (Ud.), you harpora, who knows the sinest tune (sor me)? Last mir berein den Alten (G.). Segriffe seid mir, edle Herrn (G.). Die Gegend deckte mir ein redder Ftor (G.). En surroundings were shrouded sor me dy a dark veil. Wohl thal happy he! Webe ihe? wo to her! Peil ihnen! In happy he! Webe wir den Rheintwein! I preser Hook.

Note. — It is from the frequent use of this Dative of benefit or interest in German, that sayings like the following have sprung: ein Grein fiet mit auf den Kopf, a stone fell upon my head; se schuitt sich in den Jinger, ahe out her singer; bei jedem Abschied zittert mit des Herz (Sch.), at every departure my heart trembles; se sienten thm su Jäsen (G.), they sank down at his sect; dem Beinde den Rädzug abschneiden, to out off the enemy's retreat; der Kopf thut mit web, my head aches; dies annen Kinder brachen mit das Herz; dem Krieger wurde das Bein weggeschossen; die Mutter state die schul.).

- § 335. The following prepositions are often employed to express the personal object of adjectives.
- 1. gegen, towards, (with the Accusative case,) after the adjectives freundich, feinblich, gâtig, aufrichtig, effen, frank, outspoken, gerecht, nachfichtig, indulgent, graufam, etc.
- 2. mit, with after such verbs and adjectives as convey the idea of being related to, connected with, satisfied with, intimate with, occupied with, smiled with, melted together, or blended with.

Different from the English are such as convey the idea of being charmed with, pleased with, etc. See § 337.

- 8. fit, for, after such as convey the idea of being interested in or for a person or thing; useful for; decided for or in favor of somebody; in a passion with; dangerous to; unavailing for.
- 4. von, of, is employed instead of the English by, after the passive voice of verbs, to express the active object; as, er wurde von (by) Raubern erschlagen; sie wird von Jedermann geliebt; die Derzen der Buschauer waren von den verschiedensten Empfindungen bewegt, the hearts of the spectators were moved by the most various feelings.
- NOTE. The completing Dative object, it is true, as a rule, is a person; but it may, in many cases, be a thing for whose benefit the action is done, or which is to be represented as remaining active under somebody's action or under a state of things; as, it ergets mith her Rung; er trant dem Better: it of one ben

Blumen ince Schmid. In all such cases there is more or less of personification of the inanimate being, which gives a poetic charm to such phrases.

- § 336. The Genitive Object was originally in the German, as in many other languages, that from which the impulse of an action proceeded, or that which gives to the subject the motive of action. The youthful language considered man as far more dependent on the powers of nature, law, and the will of others, than the modern does, and many actions were described as going on under an outside pressure which we of to-day express as actions of free will. The objective Genitive has, therefore, in modern German, lost much of its frequent use, and the tendency of the language is to supersede it entirely. The following verbs govern the Genitive of the thing.
- 1. Reflexive verbs.—In the list of these verbs given in § 804, notes 1 and 3, those governing a Genitive are marked thus: (Gen.).
- 2. Transitive verbs.—The following govern the Accusative of the person and the Genitive of the thing:—

antiagen, to accuse beiebren eines Weffern, to set right besauben, to deprive befoulbigen, to charge with bejidrigen, " " entitien, to exempt from

entiebigen, to free from aberführen, to convict of aberheben, to free from berweifen bes kanbes, to banish wärbigen, to deign geihen, to accuse.

With the following, either the Genitive or the preposition won is used: —

enticien, to depose from enticionen, to wear from losspreden, to acquit of fiberjeugen, to convince berfidern, to assure.

- 3. The few impersonal verbs with an object in the Genitive are given in § 305.
- 4. The following intransitive verbs govern the Genitive of a thing (those marked with a parenthesis allow also another construction, the high or poetical style excepted):—

acten, (or with Acc.) to heed 26t baben, (or with auf) to heed bedårfen, (or with Acc.) to be in want of ichenen, (or with Acc.) to spare begehren, (or with Acc.) to desire brauchen, (or with Acc.) to want entbehren, (or with Acc.) to do without bergeffen, (or with Acc.) to forget entrathen, to dispense with ermangeln, to be without mangein, (in the Bible) to be without ermannen, (or with Acc.) to mention benten, (or with an) to remember gebenten. u genieffen, (or with Acc.) to enjoy barren, (or with auf) to wait for laden, (or with uber) to laugh at

pfiegen, (or with Acc.) to nurse, take care of spetten, (or with aber) to mock at perfeblen, (or with Acc.) to miss wahrnehmen, (or with Acc.) to take care of marten, (or with Acc.) to attend to los werben, (or with Acc.) to get rid getoabr toerben, (or with Acc.) to become aware of ansichtig werben, (or with Acc.) to get sight of

Also leben, fierben, etc., in the phrases: er lebt ber hoffnung (bes Blaubene), daß dies wahr ift, he lives in the bolief, etc. Des blaffen Todes fterben, Todes berbleichen, to die.

5. The following adjectives govern the Genitive of completing object: --

bedårftig in want of benothiat, in need of bemuft, conscious of eingebent, mindful of gedent, fibig capable of freh, (or with fiber) glad of gendreig, in expectation of gewiff, certain of gewehnt, (or with Acc.) accustomed to verluftig, forfeiting habhaft, (or with Acc.) getting pos- bell, (or with ben) full of session of fundia, versed in ledia, (or with Acc.) free of

los, (or with Acc.) quit of

feet, (or with bon) empty of måditia, master of måde, (or with Acc.) tired of fatt, (or with Acc.) satisfed, sick of fouldig, (or with an and Dat.) guilty of theilbaft, partaking in ebeilbaftia. aberdraffig, (or with Acc.) weary of perbacking, suspected of merth, * (or with Acc.) worth, worthy of marbia, worthy of

NOTE. - The prepositions auf, an, and fiber are, in this connection, always employed with the Accusative. 2Berth, in the meaning worth, governs always the Accusative, as in English; as, einen Dollar werth, das Buch ift feinen Thater werth, the book is not worth a dollar. (The phrase 'give me a dollar's worth of sugar' is translated, geben Sie mir für einen Thaler Buder, or Buder

^{*} Rate, weful is now in use with the Accusative exclusively; as, nichts nate; or with ju, as ju Bielem nate.

eines Thalers Berth.) Bell Bein, ein Glas voll Bier, a tumbler full of beer; voll Unwillen sprang ich auf (Lessing). In this connection voll often takes the termination er; as, voller Freude, sull of joy. But with an attribute the Genitive is indispensable; as, des Vilgers Seele tout voll suber Hoffnung (Kr.).

- § 337. Instead of the Genitive case, the prepositions an, auf, nach, über, um, von, vor, für, are used to express the motive of an action:—
 - 1. In general, verbs conveying the idea of

Grief, sorrow, vexation, complaint, pleasure, astonishment, pride, require abor with the Accusative.

Victory, triumph, mocking at, dominion over, fiber with the Accusative.

Speaking or hearing, aber with the Accusative, or bon with the Dative.

Thinking of, remembering, accustoming to, holding to, an with the Accu-

Rejoicing, delight, doubt, dying of, an with the Dative.

Separation or privation, delivery, distance, recovery, freedom from, sen with the Dative.

Confidence, hope, envy, suspicion, answering, listening, paying attention to, auf with the Accusative.

Longing, looking out for, sending for, aspiring, striving, asking for, tasting, smelling of, nad with the Dative.

Begging or entreating, contending, mourning about, um with the Accu-

Fear, aversion, horror, flight, hiding, protection, security from, bor with the Dative.

Thanks, care for, provision for, punishment and reward for, für with the Dative.

Want and abounding, equality in, believing in, an with the Dative.

2. Adjectives take the same prepositions as the corresponding verbs; besides, the following prepositions occur, governed by adjectives (see § 335).

With those expressive of form, color, and dimensions, bon; as, foon, baflich, herrlich von Geftalt, Farbe; groß, klein, boch, niedrig, lang, breit von Geftalt, Jorm, Bau; gran, roth, fotoars bon Jarbe.

an with the Dative, with arm, reich (an Gelb, Gaben), groß, klein (an Geiff, Ge-ffalt), trant (an den Blattern); leer (an Zugenden), fart, fotoach (an Geiff, Billen), fruchtbar (an Gerraide).

in with the Dative, with geschick, erfahren, Mug, bewandert, etc. (in einer Runft), einfach, start, schwach (in Charafter), groß (im Leiden); with the Accusative, in verliebt in (in love with).

ver with the Dative, in sayings like formars ver Aerger; bleich vor Jurche; athemics vor Anstrengung, breathless from (with) exertion; tode ver Rabigetit.

auf with the Dative, in auf einem Muge blind, auf einem Dore tanb, auf einem Beine labm.

auf with the Accusative, in fiels auf, eingebildet auf, eiferfachtig auf, wathend, argeriich, ergarnt, bole auf.

and with the Dative, in bestehend, susammengesett and; was ift and thm genorben? what has become of him?

Note. — The following are constructions most at variance with the corresponding English: —

Rarte, Schach, Rlavier, Flote (pielen, to play at cards, on the piano ... auf Ginen losgeben, binweisen, zielen, to make at one point aim at ich beziebe mich auf Sie tvegen, I rofer to you for errous foaten auf, to value, to rate something at 64 44 66 erivas rechnen auf auf etivas rechnen, bertrauen, to reckon on, confide in auf Jemand jarnen, to be angry with mit empas banbeln, to deal in, traffic in etwas annehmen, julaffen, billigen, to accept of, allow of, approve of Ginen um erwas betragen, to cheat one out of a thing Einen um etwas bringen, to deprive one of um ettoas tommen, to lose something bon Jemandem abbangen, to depend on bon ettoad leben, to subsist on mit Jemandem Mitleid haben, to have pity (mercy) on Jemandem weju Glad wanfden, to congratulate one upon ich tann es nicht über's Berg bringen, I cannot find it in my beart borbereitet fein auf eine Sache, to be prepared for.

§ 338. The Factitive Object expresses the effect of an action, brought about by the predicate on the subject or object. The effect may be a real one; as, we grow older, the lieutenant is made a colonel, he changes stone into bread, he cries himself hoarse; — or an imaginary one; as, he is considered a gentleman, he thinks himself wise.

The factitive object is expressed, in active sentences, in the Accusative, in passive sentences in the Nominative, in both cases without the aid of any preposition, after the following verbs:—

1. When the factitive object is a substantive, after

werden, to become, grow, turn out, bleiben, to remain, heißen, to call, be called, nennen, to name.

Examplen. - 3ch werbe ein Renfc - mehr tann ich nicht toerben, I grow a man, -- moro I cannot bocome; er wird ein Bettler bleiben; feine Etern heißen

ion ihren Suffab, bier bei une wird er Suffab ber Jaule geheifen; bie Englander nennen une Germanen, wir felbft nennen une Deutsche, von den Franzosen werden wir Allemannen genannt. Johannes wurde der Taufer genannt (or bieß der Taufer).

2. When the factitive object is an adjective, after the following verbs: werben, bleiben, heißen, nennen; machen; sehen, aussehen, to appear; erscheinen, to appear; finden, to sind; saffen, to let; halten, to hold, keep; sich fühlen; preisen.

Examples. - 30 werbe größer; Gie werden wieder jung; er bleibt eraurie; er beift gludlich, ift es aber nicht; er nennt mich weife, baffir wird er bon mir the. richt genannt; ich sebe mich genothigt, bas ju thun, I find myself obliged to do so; er fieht jung aus, und ich febe alt; ihr macht bas Berg mir fchwer (Uhl.), you make my heart beavy; Ebrlichteit macht unbefonnen, auch wohl trotig (G.), honesty renders a man inconsiderate, even defiant; hier tunn nichts mehr gutgemacht werben; ich mache mich anbeischig, etwas zu thun, I pledge myself to do something (the adjective anheischig occurs only in this connection); im Binter ericheinen die Berge bober wegen bes Schnees; ich finde ibn entschloffen, I find him (to be) decided (on his course); bas last mich talt, that leaves me indifferent; ich verlies thn frant, I left him sick; die Bewegung batt une munter, the motion keeps us awake (alive); ich mag es nicht gebeim halten, I will not keep it a secret; ich fühle mid dir nabe, die Einsamteit belebt (Uhl.), I feel thy presence, the solitude en-· livened; wer wollte einen Stiaven gifdlich preifen ? bu muft bich nicht fo fiola jeje gen; Riemand follte fich weife banten. Likowise, tobtichlagen, liebhaben, freifpreden, beilig fprechen, gefangennehmen.

Here belong idioms like sich måde arbeiten; sich toge grämen; sich trant lachen; sich satt essen; sich datt essen; sich der essen; sich datt essen; sich datm geben, to walk one's self lame; sich arm essen; sich toahnsunig sansen, to drink one's self oraxy; sich dumik sichasen; sich beiser schrein; sich justieden geben, to be satissied; sich gesangen geben, to surrender; and many more, — the language being in this direction very pliable, and allowing even such adnormities as ich tomme mir hässich ver, I appear ugly to myself (hässich here being the Nominative).

§ 339. 1. The preposition at with the Dative case of a substantive expresses the factitive object after the following verbs:—

machen, wählen, to choose, bestimmen, to appoint, einsepen, to appoint, gereichen, to redound to, bienen, to serve for, ernennen, to nominate.

Also all verbs having the idea of forcing, like swingen; while werben occurs as often without as with su.

Examples. - Die Roth macht Manden jum Dieb, want makes many a man

a thief; wir wahlen dich jum Schiederichter, we appoint you umpire; der Muth gereicht (ift) dem Manne jur Ehre, courage redounds to the honor of a man; das Alter (ollte nie jum Spotte der Kinder dienen, old age should never de su object of childish mockery; Baffer wird ju Eis, and Baffer wird Eis, have the same meaning; nothige mich nicht jum Gebrauche meiner Baffen! compel mot to make use of my arms! er judang mir Kirschen aus, he forced cherries upon me; bestimmen kaun mich nichts jum Reuchelmord, nothing can entice me to assassination. Jemanden reizen, to instigate, überreden, to persuade, sich entschie, sen, ermannen, to exhort, verleiten, to (induce to), herausfordern, to challenge, sich bereiten ju einer Dandlung. Also the following idiomatic expressions:—

Einen ju Gufte bitten, to invite one Ginen jum Beffen haben, to make fun of something in reply
Ginen jum Rarren halten, to fool one etwas ju Stande bringen, to bring about Ginen jur Rebe ftellen, to call one to es tommt jum Rrieg, it comes to war account bas ift jum Berzweifeln, that is desperfic ju Lobe trinten, gramen, arbeiten, etc. atc.

2. The preposition in (with the Accusative of substantives) is used after the following and synonymous verbs:—

verwandeln, to change into, thetlen, to divide into, serfallen, to decay into, bringen, to bring into, gerathen, to fall into.

Examples. — Baffer in Bein verwandeln; die Beute in gleiche Theile theilen; in (ju) Staub jerfallen; Jemanden in Berlegenheit, in Roth, in (jur) Berzweiflung, in's tachen bringen, sehen, verfesen; in Berlegenheit, Roth, Berzweiflung, in's tachen, in Erstaunen, Berwunderung, in Leidenschaft gerathen; in Brund gerathen, to take fire; in Brund fleden, to set fire to; in's Bert sehen, to carry into effect (reality); in Ordnung bringen, to put in order.

 The preposition für is used after verbs expressing an act of intellect; as,

> halten, ansehen für, to hold, achten, anerkennen für, to consider, acknowledge, erklären, ausgeben für, to pronounce, gelten für, to be taken for.

Examples. — Man balt ihn far einen Spion, he is thought to be a spy; ich ertiare bich fur meinen lebensretter, I declare you the saver of my life; er gab sich fur einen Kunstler aus, he passed himself off for an artist; ich achte (balte, sebe es — an) fur eine Ehre, etc., I deem it an honor; fur beilig gelten.

4. The conjunction ale, as, assuming almost the character of a preposition, introduces a factitive object in phrases like the following:—

- th febr bich ale meinen Freund an, I consider you as my friend
- ich betrachte ihn ale unfchiblid, I hold him harmlens
- ich tannte sie als Rind, I knew her as a child
- ich tenne ibn als Berfuffer eines Buches, I know him as the author
- ich erscheine ihm als beschräntt, I appear to him as a blockhead
- Bacque wird oft als Bod bargefiellt, Bacchus is often represented as a ram.
- NOTE 1. The English phrases, 'I know him to be honest,' 'I consider you to be my friend,' cannot be imitated, except in this way.
- NOTE 2. The Anglicism in sayings like 'as much as he thought would be sufficient,' is to be rendered, feetel als er fix genug biele, or feetel als ich bachte, baf genug fein wärbe.
- § 340. The factitive object is the Infinitive of a verb without au in sayings like the following:—

3\$\phi\$ fab ihn sterben, I saw him die; er borre mich sachen, he heard me laugh; er fühlt sein Berz brechen; wir wollen sie singen machen, we will make her sing; ich bleibe sieen, liegen, stehen, I continue (remain) sitting, lying, standing; ich gebe betreln; heiß mich nicht reden, heiß mich schweigen (a.), bid me not to speak, but to be silent; bein gutünfriges loos macht mich sittern; ber Gänger läst sein lieb errönen (Bal.). 3ch habe in England mich an biel gewöhnen lernen (Bal.). Sit mir arbeiten: ich verbe ibn arbeiten lebren.

NOTE 1. The above verbs, and the auxiliary verbs magen, durfen, tonen, solen, wellen, maffen, are the only ones that govern the Infinitive without zu. All other verbs capable of governing an Infinitive take it with zu; as, er glaubt zu fletben; sie scheinen ihn zu verachten.

NOTE 2. Analogous is the use of the Participle Past in serioren green, so be lost.

CHAPTER VIII.

ADVERBIAL OBJECTS.

§ 341. The relation of Locality is threefold; namely, either, 1. Motion from a place; or, 2 Rest in a place (locality proper); or, 3. Motion towards a place (direction proper).

Locality may be expressed either by an adverb of locality, or by a preposition with a case of a noun or pronoun, or by an accessory sentence. (See 32 *

§ 856.) We have mentioned what is to be said under this head in § 263, as regards adverbs, and in §§ 270 – 272, as regards prepositions.

Norz. — The German, like every other language, makes extensive use of adverbs and prepositions of locality to express in a metaphorical way abstract notions and ideas. The following are some of the most remarkable of this kind: —

auf die Wiffenschaften (Känfe) fic legen, to apply one's salf to science auf erwas bedacht sein, to provide for ein heer auf die Beine bringen, to raise an army ben Jeind auf's haupt schlagen, to desent an enemy

auf etwas gefuft fein, to be prepared for

erwas auf die lange Bant foieben, to delay something

es tommt auf mich an, ob etwas geschehen soll, it depends on me whether it shall be done

auf etwas bestehen, to insist upon

an einer Rrantheit fterben, to die of a sickness

an's Wert geben, to go to work

an Beisbeit, Jahren, etc., junehmen, to grow in years, wisdom, etc.

an fich balten (mit feiner Leibenfchaft), to koop back, restrain one's self

ber Jehler (bie Schuld) liegt an mir, ich bin Schuld an, the fault is with me (mine) feine leibenschaft an Jemandem auslaffen, to vent one's passion on somebody

es liegt mir nichts am langen leben, I care not for a long life

an (auf) etwas Unfprud maden, to lay claim to something

ich bin an ber Reibe, it is my turn

an einem Buche, einem Bilbe, einem Gebaube arbeiten, to work on a book, pieture, building

an (auf) Jemandes Gewiffen fich berufen, to appeal to one's conscience

an erwas Theil (Untheil) nehmen, to take interest in

aus ber Rolle fallen, to act out of character

aus ber Saut fahren, to despond, to be bored to desperation

aus ber Schule fcmaben, to 'tell tales out of school'

in Dhnmacht fullen, to swoon

in Schlaf fallen, to fall asleep

ettvas im Gedachtnif behalten, to remember something

bei Jemandem in gurem Andenten bleiben, to continue in fasor with somebody Einen in den Bann thun, to excommunicate, to outlaw one

" in gurcht, Angft jagen (feten), to drive one to despair, despondency

" in's Bodsborn jagen, to frighten into poltroonery

in See fleden, to get under way (at sea)

in die Enge, in Berlegenheit gerathen, to get embarrassed, to be at a loss

im guten Glauben fein, to believe in full earnest

erwas im Zuge behalten, not to lose sight of

im pollen Ernfte fein, to be in earnest

beim Ramen nennen, to call one by name

bei Berftande, bei Ginnen fein, to be in one's mind

bod bei Jahren fein, to be aged Jemanden beim Worte nehmen (halten), to take one at his word bei der Sache bleiben, not to swerve from the matter in hand bei Todesstrafe etwas verbieren, to forbid on pain of death erwas bei Lichte besehen, to look close at bei allen Beiligen, bei Allem mas beilig ift fcmoren (befdmoren), to awear (to beseech) by everything that is sacred um etwas wiffen, to know about a thing per dem Riffe fleben, to be security, to warrant success eine Sache gebt bor fich, a thing goes on ju Grunde geben, ju Schaden tommen, to be ruined, to be damaged au Stande fommen, to be accomplished, come about ju Jahren, jur Bernunft tommen, to grow older, to hear reason ju Ende geben, ju Ende fein, to be near the end, at an end au Schande werben, to become damaged, ruined, spoiled Jemanden um's leben bringen, to take away one's life, to make him lose his life es ift um mid gefcheben, I am undone.

§ 342. The relation of time may either express a point of time or duration of time; and is expressed either by an adverb of time (see § 264), or by a preposition with a case, or simply by the Accusative or Genitive case of a noun, or by an accessory sentence (see § 357).

NOTE.—It matters not how long the time in which an action is performed may be, in order to express a point of time, or duration; it matters only how the language considers it, whether as a point of time or as duration. In the sentence, biefer Jahr bin ich fehr unglädlich, for instance, a point of time is expressed; while in the sentence, in einer Minute schreit er jehnmal über Schmerj, duration is expressed. In the former case, not the whole of the time mentioned is consumed in the action, but the action is somewhere within that space of time; while in the latter case the action entirely fills up and covers the space of time mentioned.

- § 343. A point of time is expressed by the Accusative in the most indefinite way, and in its stead, in particular standing expressions, by the Genitive; or by one of the prepositions an, auf, vor, nach, über, zu, unter, um, gegen, bei, binnen, innerhalb, or in.
- 1. By the Accusative in the phrase, Aug und Nacht, by day and night, and when a pronoun or a numeral is joined to the substantive; as, und so drei Nachte nach einander lies sich die Deilige sehen (Sch.), and thus in three successive nights the saint appeared; nech diese Nacht mus er Radrid verlussen (Sch.), this very night he must leave Madrid. Sie sprechen ihn diesen Abend (Sch.), you

will speak to him to-night; jeden Tag mus ich's erleben, I must witness it every day; alle Tage tann das geschehen, this may happen every day; gestern Abend, last night; dieses Ral, jedes Ral, allemal, das erste, procite, dritte, lette Ral, odele Rale; heute Rittag, this moon; diesen Rachmittag, this asternoon; morgen früh, to-morrow morning.

- 2. Un (with the Dative) is preserved, when an adjective is joined to the substantive; as, an einem sinstern Theoder; an bem andersumten Tage, on the appointed day. This form is used with the names of months; as, an 20sten Rebember, am dritten Uptil, etc., geschab dies, interchangeably with den 20sten Rebember, den dritten Uptil, geschab dies. Also with the names of days; as, am Sonntage (Sonntag), am bergangenen Mittivoch, dergangene Mittivoch war er da, Wednesday, Sunday last he was hese; and so interchangeably an jenem Tage, jenen Tag tras side, it happened that day; an jedem dieser Tage (jeden dieser Tage) sommt er ju mir, on each of these days he comes to me; am Theoder, in the evening; am Morgen, am Tage.
- 3. Still more indefinite are um and gegen; as, es toat um Beihnachten (herum), um Ofiern, um Pfingsten, um den 20sten Rodember (herum), um Ritternacht, um Mittag, um Tagesandruch, um Sonnenuntergang, um dieselbe Beit, das, etc., it was about Christmas, Easter, Pentecost, about the 20th of November, about midnight, daybreak, sundown, the same time that, etc.; and interchangeably, gegen Beihnachten, and so on; um 12 Uhr.
- 4. Nater and während denote synchronism in an indefinite way; as, so des während des schnständigen Kampses alle Regimenter sum Angriss kamen (Sch.), so that during the ten hours' battle all the regiments came into action; wir find geboren unter gleichen Sternen (Sch.), we are born unter the same stars; unter der Kirche (dem Gottesdiens), during the service; unter Karl dem Großen war Deutschland bildend, under Charlemagne, Germany was in a flourishing condition.
- Reber (with the Accusative, rarely the Dative) expresses synchronism in an indefinite way, like unter; as, über Nacht bleiben bei Jemandem, to pass the night with; über Aifce, at table. Den Lag über, die Rucht über, mean, on the other hand, all day, all the night; das gange Jahr über, all the year round. And with the Dative it expresses synchronism and causality simultaneously; as, Schade, daß über dem schonen Wahne des sedens beste Halfert dahingeht (Sch.), a pity that the deat half of life must pass under this deauting illusion. Sie dergesen mich gang über dem sessen, you forget me entirely over your book.
- 5. The Genitive is used in an indefinite way only in the following phrases: Abends, in the evening, (des) Mergens, Rachts (des Rachts), Lags juver, Lags datauf, (des) Mittags, (des) Mitternachts, Dormittags, Rachmittags; (des) Sonntags, Montags, Dienflags, Mittwochs, Donnerflags, Freirags, Sonnabends (or with the Accusative, Sonntag, etc.). The expressions am Sonntags, Conntags, Sonntags, are thus far different, that am Sonntags, etc., is used only of past time, as an einem Sonntags flarb er; den Sonntag, etc., is preferred with future time, as den Sonntags means on every Sunnay be used both with past and future time; Sonntags means on every Sunnay be used both with past and future time; Sonntags means

- day,' as (bes) Sonntags gehe ich gewöhnlich spaziren. Also (bes) Morgens, Raches, Abends, Ritternachts, Bermittags, Rachmittags, are used often to express 'every morning,' 'every night,' or in the night-time generally. For the expression of 'a certain morning,' etc., the Accusative is preserved; as, nichsten, jenen Morgen, manchen Lag. And to Nachts corresponds bei Lage, am Lage, in the daytime.
- 6. In with the Dative occure with nouns indicative of space of time. Sie haben in schwachen Stunden mich gesehen (Sch.); in welchem Jahre seid ihr geboren in wiedelt Beit kann man mit Dampf (with steam) nach New-Vork fommen? In acht Grunden und zehn Minuten. In einem Tage läft sich viel thun, in a day much may de done; in zwanzig Jahren werde ich ein Greis sein, in twenty years I shall de an old man; in deinen Jahren ist man noch dell Dessinung.
- 7. Sinnen and innerhalb express the same time as in, only pointing out simultaneously the final term or terms; as, bie Briefe lauten, baff binnen Mitternacht und Morgen Rarios Madrid berlaffen foll (Sch.), the letters run thus, that between midnight and morning Carlos is to leave Madrid. Untworte mir binnen (innerhalb) 1891 Tagen, within ten days.
- 8. Bet is used, when not so much the time as the circumstances and motives of action are to be pointed out; as, bet jedem Abfaied sittert mir das Derg (Sch.); bet diesem Andlide erstarre ich, at this sight, I was struck with horror; 's ist just wie's beim Einhauen geht (Sch.), it is as it is wont to be in charging; bet alledem ist er nicht dese withal that he is not bad; bet Lage schläft er, bei Nacht wacht er. The English 'by this time' is mittletweite.
- 9. Auf (with Accusative) occurs with verbs denoting a delay, or an appointed future time; as, berschiebe nichts auf mergen, was du beute thun tannst. Er hat mich auf heute bestellt, he has ordered my coming for to-day. Auf Biederschen, to see us again.
- 10. Auf (with Accusative) denotes time in the most definite way; as, er tam auf ben (mit bem) Schlag vier Uhr, he came as the clock struck four; er ift auf bie Minute (or biefelbe Minute) angetommen; fei auf bie Stunbe da! (G.); ich tann die Beit nicht auf den Lag (auf Lag und Stunde) genau bestimmen, I cannot appoint the very hour; auf den Sonntag spatestene tomm' ich bin, I shall come Bunday, at the very latest; auf alle Jalle sei da!
- 11. Bu in this connection is half antiquated, and occurs only in phrases like these: ju Anfang bes Aprile; ju Ende dieses Judres; jur rechten Beit; jur unrechten Beit or Unzeit; jur Beit, at present, now; jum ersten, jweiten, britten, lesten Male, sor the first, second, third, last time; ju videtrholten (öfteren) Mulen (Sch.), at many different times; ju verschiedener Beit, verschiedenen (ju Beiten) Beiten, at disserent time, times (at times); ju jeder Stunde; und er verlüßt sie zur selbigen Stunde (Sch.); ju Oftern, ju Weihnachten, jum neuen Jahre.
- 12. Antecedence in time is expressed by bor in a more general way; as, es tann vor Abend anders werben, als es am lichten Morgen war (Prov.); bor Rutgem, a short time ago; bor acht Jahren, eight years ago.
- 13. Also by bis (binnen), up to, when the extreme term is pointed out; as, bis moreen will int's wiffen.

14. A subsequent time is expressed by sad, in a general way; as, sad thenbert Jahren (in hundert Jahren) with es world teine Hirfen mehr geben, after one hundred years there will perhaps be no more princes.

By auf, implying at the same time causality; as, auf blut'ge Shlachten folge Gelang und Tang; und Belle auf Belle gerrinnet; auf mein Gebeiß entfernte fich bie Juriin (Sch.), at my command the princess retired; foon auf ben erften Bild bemertte iche, I perceived it at the very first glance; darauf ergriff er feinen Entochuf, thereupon he formed his plan.

15. Neber and in (both with the Accusative) express a future time in a general way; as, fiber acht Lage, in acht Lagen, in vierzehn Lagen, über vierzehn Lagen, a week hence, in eight days, in a fortnight; erwarten Sie mich, Pring, in einer Stunde (Sch.); über ein Reines so werder It mich sehen (Bible), a little while and ye shall see me.

§ 344. Duration of time is expressed, —

1. By the Accusative; aa, er bentt ben gangen Tag (G.); an bem Ufer fieb' ich lange Tage, bas land ber Griechen mit ben Augen fuchend (G.); die muntern Augen ber Pringeffin qualen mich icon ben gangen Morgen (Sch.).

Often the adverb (ang is affixed or follows to show that the whole of the time mentioned is consumed by the action; as, Lagelang, for whole days; Stunbenlang, for whole hours; Bochenlang, Monarelang, etc. Die Leeue vierzig Jahre lang bewahrt (Sch.). An zehen Jahr, an die zehn Jahre, is 'not quite ten years.' Den ganzen Sommer fiber (durch); die ganze Boche durch (über), the whole week round.

- 2. Get expresses the commencement of a space of time continuing up to the present, or time of the action spoken of; as, feit geftern find wir def gewif (Sch.). Et if todt feit drei Jahren, he has been dead these three years; feit Menschengebenten war es so gewesen, from time immemorial it had been thus.
- 8. Bis expresses time up to the present moment, or last moment mentioned; as, ich bin ihm treu geblieben bis jum Tob (Sch.); bis hierber bin ich ohne Schuld (Sch.); ich werde bis morgen bleiben. Instead of bis, auf with the Accusative is often used; as, auf acht Tage verreisen, to make a trip of eight days.
- § 345. The adverbial objects of manner are expressed either by adverbs of manner (§§ 261, 262), or by substantives with one of the prepositions mit, ohne, auf, nach, au, unter, or by a Genitive case.
- 1. Mit and ohne are used, like with and without, to express the presence or absence of a quality of an action, or subject, or object; as, er fpricht mit Gefcht aber ohne Gefchmad, he speaks with feeling, but without taste. Ich liebe ohne Doffnung, mit Lodesangft und mit Gefahr des lebens (Sch.). Ohne Bogern, ohne Borte schreiten fie jur raschen That (G.). Jemand mit or bei einem Namen nennen.

NOTE. — The Germans like this kind of expression so well, as to employ it superfluously; as, mit dem Doiche in der hand greift er ihn an (where either den Doich in der hand [see § 848], or mit dem Doiche griff er ihn an, would

havo sufficed); mit einer geber auf bem Dute ausreiten: er flebte mit Thranen in ben Augen um Gnabe (Sch.). Mit Krangen um die Schläfe fich schmuden, to adorn one's temples with wreaths. Du bift blind mit beinen feb'nden Augen (Sch.).

Auf with the Accusative is thus used, in auf diese Beise, in this way; auf selds over eine andere Art, in such a manner or a similar one, in one way or another; is will auf turerm Bess (here with the Dative, exceptionally, the Accusative not being used in this phrase) mir ticht bereiten (Sch.); auf alle Beise; auf jeden Jall, alle Jälle; auf meine Gesahr, at my own risk; auf deine Berantwortlichteit, at your peril (on your responsibility). Auss Genaueste (G.), in the most accurate manner.

Bei, unter, express 'under the existing circumstances'; as, soviel Geist bei einem weggeworfenen Charafter! (G.), so much talent joined to so abject a character! Bei aller Unachtsantelt babe ich boch nicht Alles bergessen (G.), in spite of all my carelessness I have not forgotten everything. Rur unter der Bedingung tann ich mich damit befassen (Sch.), I can engage in it only under this condition. Renne mich bei meinem wahren Rumen, call me by my true name.

Rach (according) denotes 'in conformity to '; as, nach ber Musit tangen; nach seiner eignen Beise (Reigung) leben; nach Jemandes Bunfche sein, to moet one's desires; leife nach bes Liebes Klange siget sich ber Stein jum Steine (Sch.).

In (with the Dative) in many phrases, is much like the English; as, im Crufte, in good earnest; in Gâte und Freunb(chaft, amicably; in Aaf, in haste.

- 2. The Genitive is somewhat antiquated in phrases like the following: frohen Muthes, in fine spirits; stehenden Huses (Latin, stante pede), immediately; keineswegs, keinessalls, by no means; vernünstiger Beise, with some show of reason; unglüdlicherweise, unluckily, as bad luck would have it; glüdlicherweise, happily; ruhigen Beistes, with a composed mind; unverrichteter Sache, unsuccessfully, without accomplishing one's purpose; nicht leichten Kampses siegt der Glaube (Körner); geradesweges, straightway; solgendermaßen, in the following way; einigermaßen, in some, measure; solchergestalt, der Art, in this way, of this kind; widrzenfalls, or else ...; und zu Ritter Delorges spottender Beis wendet sich Fräulein Kunigund. (Sch.).
- § 346. The adverbial objects of cause or motive are expressed either by accessory sentences of cause (see § 363. 4), or by one of the adverbs of causality (§ 265), or by one of the prepositions von, mit, mittels, burch, vor, wegen, halber, traft, laut, infolge, sufolge, um willen, aus, nach, an, zu, für.
 - 1. Cause, when acting in a positive way, producing the action

of the subject, is expressed by von; as, er ist von hoher Wonne trunten; die Flüsse schwellen von dem Regen. When the cause acts in a negative way, the subject striving against it, it is expressed by vor or aus; as, man tann vor Nebel nichts schen; vor (aus) Langeweile gähnen. (See § 272. 3.)

Wegen denotes in such cases an external obstacle to the action; as, wegen fremden Leichtsinnes zu leiden haben; wegen schlechten Wetters wegbleiben.

2. The means of action is expressed by mit and burch, the instrument by mit, mittels, vermittelst; as, mit (durch) Anstrengung etwas bewirken; ber Mensch ist frei durch Vernunft, start durch Gesehe, durch Sanstmuth groß und reich durch Schäpe (Seh.); durch (an) Gist sterben; untergehn durch Thorheit und die Fehler Anderer.

NOTE. — Durch, aus, ben, and wegen run sometimes so closely together, as to be capable of replacing each other; as, burd (wegen, bon) fremde Schuld leiben; etwas burd (bon) Jemandem maden laffen; fich felbft burd falfche Grofmuch (aus, wegen f. G.) fcaben. The difference is, however, quite discernible: burch denotes the passive means of an effect intended by the subject, and can, therefore, be exchanged with pon: - 1. In passive sentences, when the subject is suffering under the action of an object, which, though a person, is represented as a mere tool or means in the hands of another; as, Cafar wurde durch (or von) Brutus getootet. Ben Brutus represents Brutus as the real responsible cause, burth as the mere tool of somebody else, or in the hands of fate or providence. - 2. After the verbe etwas boren, erfuhren, lernen, erhalten von Jemandem or burd Jemanden. In ich terne das von Rari, the von represents Rari as a teacher, durch as a mere means of learning something. Durch can be exchanged with toegen after some neuter verbs, as leiben, flerben, untergehn, when the suffering subject can in some way be considered as not entirely passive, but remaining active in a measure; as, Rarl leidet beinetwegen, where Rarl is bearing up under his burden of suffering; but in Rarl leibet durch bich, he is so far borne down under it as to remain only passive. In ich erwachte burch ein Gefdrei we find a barbarism ; it must run thus: ich tourde burd ein Beforei erwedt, because erwachen expresses a remnant of solf-activity. 3ch erwachte wegen eines Geschreis is likewise a barbarism, because tregen shows a remnant of reason in the suffering subject, that is not possible in the action of awaking; but we can say, to errought bon einem Geschrei, because here the subject is incited to as much activity as is possible in awaking by a cause that is given by bon. And we can say it errorate aus alter Bewohnheit jur bestimmten Stunde, although aus expresses only an action of intellect or mind, because a habitude is contracted only by a co-working of the intellect or mind.



- 8. The means of knowing or distinguishing something is conveyed by an (by); as, man fieht's bir an ben Augen an, gewiß bu hast geweint (G.). Eine Glode am Rlang, einen Bogel am Gesang, einen Mann am Gang, einen Thoren an ben Worten tennt man an allen Orten (*Philander*). But the source of information, when inanimate, is aus; as, aus Ersahrung, Büchern, Mittheilungen Anderer etwas wissen, tennen.
- 4. The internal or so-called 'moral' motive is expressed by aus or vor; the external motive by wegen, halben, um willen; as, —

Er bat fich aus guten Granben juradgezogen, be has retired for (from) good reasons. Er wird vor Aerger (aus Aerger) braun und blau; er ift aus (vor) lauter Befcheibenheit ungladlich (here burd would be just as proper). Gutes thun rein auf liebe jum Guten (G.); - not bor liebe, because bor expresses the dangerous and troublesome, and the salutary and furthering motive. Er hat fich wegen Rabigfeit surfidgesogen, on account of weariness; - not and, because he is unwilling to retire; not por, because he is active in retiring; it is a resolution prompted by his own judgment, although for a troublesome reason; he is not prompted to de so by a cause; still por might be defended, on the ground that the motive is here something of a cause. Der Chre halben (wegen, um ber Chre willen) etwas thun; not aus Etre, because honor is not a motive, but an external distinction; but we can say aus Chrgefühl etwas thun (from ambition). Des Friedens wilten fille foweigen, to be silent for the sake of peace (or des Friedens wegen or balben); but not and Arieden, nor por Arieden, because that peace is first to come from outside; but we can say aus friedensliebe foweigen. The um in warum and barum has the force of um - willen.

- 5. The purpose is expressed by zu, but if the purpose is to redound to the benefit of another person or thing, by für; as, ich spiele zu meiner Erholung und zugleich zur Belehrung; ich sammle Geld süx die Armen. Mach mir ein köstlich Kränzchen für meine süße Braut (Uhl). Ich bin es, für den er gebürget (hat) (Sch.), I am him for whom he has vouched; here um dessentwillen might be tolerated, because he may have done so either from the motive of love for, or for the purpose of benefiting, his friend. Für die Freiheit lämpsen, sterben.
- 6. The effect of an action, even if not intended, is also expressed by zu; as, die Laute lieb' ich zur Raserei (Sch.). Diese Tone bringen mich zur Berzweislung, zum Nachdenken; sie sind sich

gum Berwechseln ahnlich, they are so like as to be taken for each other.

- 7. Conformity of an action or conclusion with laws of nature or the will of some person is expressed by nach; as, nach meinen besten Kräften; nach bem Geses, ber Natur, Jemandes Willen leben. More expressive in this respect is gemäß; as, ber Sitte gemäß.
- 8. Bufolge (infolge) and vermöge express mere consequence, without regard to whether it is the consequence of a motive or a cause, the former hinting rather at an external, the latter at an internal cause; as, sufolge seines großen Glüdes ward er leichtsinnig; und vermöge seines Leichtsinns ward er ein Berschwender. Busolge means also according to (what one says). See § 278.
- 9. An effect contrary to the cause or motive, the so-called adversative cause or reason, is expressed by witer, subster, against, contrary to, ungeachtet, notwithstanding, trop, in spite of, indiscriminately.
- 10. Actions redounding to the disadvantage of somebody or something are expressed by gegen and wider; as, strenge dich nicht gegen (wider) beine Reigung an; unternehmt nichts gegen (wider) eure Freunde!
- § \$47. When the subject is the same in both sentences, the purpose is also expressed by the Infinitive with zu (the so-called Supinum), and the latter frequently intensified with um; as, um sich zu zerstreuen hält sie sich in Bamberg auf (\$\varphi\$.), in order to recreate herself, she is living in Bamberg. Ich/tomme nicht zu bleiben, Abschied zu nehmen tomm' ich (Sch.); um Recht zu sprechen hat dich der Kaiser hergeschickt (Sch.).
- § 848. Instead of adverbial objects of manner, time, and causality, sometimes participles present (only in poetry and lofty style) and participles past (chiefly in lofty style) are employed; as, sie blieb nachsinnend stehen (in Nachbenten, voll Gesbanten); wir gingen zögernd (langsam) weiter; dies Alles bei mir

benkend schlief ich ein (unter soichen Gebanken schlief ich ein), (Sch.). Wir Schwestern sagen, Wolle spinnend in den langen Nächten; Gustav sprang erstaunt (voll Erstaunen, weil er erstaunt war) auf; in ihren Anblid verloren (bei ihrem Anblid) wußte ich nichts von der Außenwelt.

Such participles may sometimes govern completing or other objects, so that they cannot be rendered by one adverbial expression. The most remarkable case of this kind is found in sentences like the following: Da weint er und fleht, die hände zum Zeus erhoben, his hands raised to Zeus. Endlich bleibt er gebankenvoll stehen, die Augen zur Erde gesenket. Sie singt hinaus in die sinstere Nacht, das Auge vom Beinen getrübet (Sch.). Here a passive participle governs an Accusative which is its completing object.

Such expressions may be shortened by omission of the participle; as, die hand am Schwerte (gehalten or haltend) sehn sie sich brohend an (Sch.). Alle, Thränen in ben Augen (habend) siehen um Barmherzigkeit (Herder).

CHAPTER IX.

ACCENTUATION OF THE SENTENCE, AND CON-STRUCTION OF THE OBJECTS.

§ 349. The accentuation of the sentence, and the construction of the several objects, depend on the nature of the objects in each particular case. Whenever a predicate is only individualized, not particularized by an object, the predicate has the grammatical accent; but whenever it is particularized, whether it has individualizing objects besides or not, the particularizing object has the grammatical accent.

NOTE. — A particularizing object is that which confines the class of an action to a species or subdivision of said class; us, to drink wise, to seek refuge, to

listen to reason. But an individualizing object confines the class or species of an action to a single object; as, to drink wine now, or from these tumblers, or here, or with our friends; to seek refuge there, or then, or for these reasons, or in one's house, or with a companion; to listen to the song, or with one's won ears. or attentirely. In German - and the English language, in this respect, differs from it only in specialties - the word wine, refuge, reason, is here singled out from all the words of the sentence by the accent of the speaker, who pronounces the word a little louder, or in a higher key, than the other words, and at the same time by a particular place in the sentence, namely, the last before the predicate where there is a copula, and the very last where there is none: as, ich trant bamale in feinem Saufe mit ihm Bein; ich babe niemale in feinem Saufe mit ihm Bein getrunten; er fuchte bort aus guten Grunden mit feinem Gefahrten Ruflucht; er wollte bort aus auten Granden mit einem Befahrten Bufincht fuchen. Compare these sentences with the following: ich trant (bamale in feinem Saufe mit ibm) bas Glas Bein (the accent and the construction remain the same. whether we omit one or more of the objects in parenthesis, or not); er but bert feinen Beführten gefucht; er borte aufmertfam dem Befange ju; bat er nicht etwa aufmertfum dem Befange sugebort? This natural order of sentences and accentuation may, as we have seen in the chapter on construction, be inverted by the rhetorical accent and an inverted construction. In this case, that one of the objects so singled out - when it is not placed at the head of the sentence (§ 288. 6), which is the most prominent place, nor at the end, after the predicate (§ 292), which is the second in importance — is placed last before the predicate in sentences with a copula, or last in such as have no copula; as, ich trant damale mit ihm Bein in feinem Saufe (not elsewhere); niemals babe ich Bein mit ihm in feinem Saufe getrunten (but perhaps elsewhere); ich weiß, baf er bem Gefange aufmertfam juborte (by no means inattentively); er wollte bort Bufluche mit einem Beführten fuchen (not alone); er wollte bort mit einem Beführten Buflucht aus gmten Grunden suchen (not inconsiderately); et wollte aus guten Grunden bort Buflucht suchen (or Bustucht gerade bort suchen, - not anywhere else). This great pliability of the language with regard to accent and construction gives power to express the nicest shades of rhetorical emphasis, and the pupil must take pains to become familiar with it.

§ 350. The natural arrangement of the several objects is, therefore, the following:—

- 1. Accusative, Dative, and Genitive of personal pronouns.
- 2. Adverbial object of time (adverb of time).
- 8. Adverbial object of locality (adverb of place).
- 4. Adverbial object of causality (adverb of cause).
- 5. Completing personal object (Dative of substantives).
- 6. Completing suffering object (Accusative).
- 7. Adverbs of modality or negation.

- 8. Objects of manner.
- 9. Completing object of locality, or Genitive or Factitive object.

Norm. — This natural order cap be inverted, so that 1 and 2 may exchange places, and 8 and 4 exchange places with 5 and 6, for reasons given in § 291, notes 1 and 8, and § 292.

Examplum. Das Feuer ber Belagerer richtete unter ben Spaniern eine große Rieberlage an (Sch.). Reine Schafe fressen mit Bezierde Gras (Sch.). Dieser Anblide erfüllte bie geängstigte Grabt mit ben frohesten hoffnungen (Sch.). Die hosente bes Ralifen Sabt ridmeten ihm so häusig das Gläck feiner Unterthanen unter seiner götterzleichen Regierung bor, baf er durch ben Anblid es mitzugenlesen sich entschof (Palmbl.). In der einen hand das Schwert, in der andern die Gnade sieht man ihn (Gnstad Abolph) jest Deutspland von einem Ende zum andern als Sieger, Gesetzet und Richter durchscheiten (Sch.). Es ift ein anziehendes Schauspiel, den menschiehen Erstndungegeist mit einem mächtigen Etemente im Rampse zu erdlichen (Sch.). Pappenheim flarb am folgenden Tage zu Leipzig an seinen Wunden (Sch.). Troezene hat dereits den Sippolpe als Derrscher anerbanne (Sch.).

CHAPTER X.

OF THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

§ 351. An accessory sentence must be considered as originating from, and as used instead of, either the subject (or a substantive), or the attribute, or an adverbial object of the principal sentence. In the former case it is called a substantive accessory sentence; in the second, an adjective accessory sentence; in the third, an adverbial accessory sentence.

Examples. — 1. Alle Menschen wissen, daß sie fehlerhaft sind (ihre Fehlerhaftigkeit); 2. ein Mensch, welcher, gar nichts weiß (ein unwissender Mensch); 3. es glaubt ihm Niemand, weil er so oft lügt (wegen seiner Lügenhaftigkeit).

All accessory sentences have a particular construction. (See § 289.)

L SUBSTANTIVE ACCESSORY SENTENCES.

§ 352. A substantive accessory sentence, when affirmative, is introduced by the conjunction day, that; an interrogative, by sb, if, whether, or one of the interrogative pronouns and adverbs (wer? was? welcher, e, es? wo? wie? woran? warum? womit? etc.); as, ich welch, daß ich gesehlt habe; er wußte nicht, ob er gesehlt hätte; es handelt sich darum, wer das gethan hat; es ist unerstärlich, warum er nicht zusrieden ist.

§ 353. When the predicate of the principal sentence governs a preposition, a demonstrative pronoun or adverb, compounded with this preposition, must be added in this principal sentence, to which the conjunction refers; as, er beschäftigt sich bamit, was seine Nachbarn thun; mein größter Bortheil bestand barin, baß die Liebe zur Stille herrschend war (G.); es handelt sich barum, ob er es gethan.

NOTE 1. In § 289 it is already mentioned that bas may be emitted, as is sometimes done in English, and that in this case the construction of the simple or co-ordinate sentence returns; as, it wester, or hatte es gethan. But never so in the case of § 353.

It must be added here, that ob may likewise be omitted, and that the omission must be pointed out by giving the accessory sentence the construction of a simple sentence; as, er toufite nicht, follte er geben ober nicht (ob er geben follte); er betämmerte fich nicht im Minbesten barum, war ich justieden ober nicht (ob ich justieden war ober nicht). This may, as the above examples show, be done even in the case of § 358; but in all cases only when the accessory sentence is a double question. It is impossible to say, er tämmerre fich nicht barum, war ich justieden. Or when it is exceptionally done, as in ich tann mich nicht erinnern — waren Sie im Konjert? we have not an accessory sentence before us, but a simple one, and not an indirect question, but a direct oxie, joined to another without connection.

NOTE 2. Substantive accessory sentences stand sometimes in the place of a completing object; advertial accessory sentences in the place of a moscompleting object. But since it is in some cases dependent merely on the intention of the speaker whether an object is to be considered as completing or not completing, and sometimes a non-completing object may be elevated to the dignity of a completing one, there may be accessory sentences which may be classed both as substantive and adverbial; as, it folium mich, baff ich et bergeffen babe (ich folium mich meiner Bergeflichteit, or ich folium mich wegen meines Bergeffens).

Note 3. When the verb of the principal sentence governs an Accusative case the pronoun es is frequently superfluously added, to prepare the mind for the coming of an accessory sentence, but is not translated in English; as, ich fühl's, bas ich ber Mann bes Echicfals bin (Sch.), I feel that I am the man of destiny; wer tann es benn wiffen, ob bas in Matrheit betuft? who may know whether this is founded in truth?

NOTE 4. The omission of daß is always preserable when the accessory sentence contains the quoted words of another person than the speaker (oratio obliqua) in the Subjunctive mood; as, sag' nicht, du muffest der Rottwendigteit erborden (Sch.). Du walbuft ein naber Band werd' uns jum Giac vereinen (C.).

This is also the case where the accessory sentence depends on one of the verbs bitten, bestehlen, hossen, wanschen, sarchen, bersprechen, and the like, when the accessory sentence has one of the auxiliary verbs mögen, wollen, tonnen, sollen, barfen, mässen, cr werden in the Subjunctive; as, man wansche wohl, die Buhl möhte auf teinen fremden herrn gesalen sein (Sch.). Bithelm startete, man warde ihn beim Austalmen todt unter dem Schutte sinden (G.).

But daß is always in place when the accessory sentence precedes the principal; as, daß fein Berluft mich schmerze, dentet nicht (Sch.). Daß er fierben follte wanschre Riemand.

NOTE 5. Relative sentences standing in the place of a substantive may also be classed with substantive accessory sentences; as, wer lügt, der flichlt (der lügner flichlt auch); dergif nicht, was ein Freund wagt in der Roth (das Bugnif, etc.).

Note 6. There are some Germanisms arising from the omission of the principal sentence; as, daß feine, welche lebt, mit Deutschands Sprachen sich in den zu tähnen Wettstreit wage! (Klop.), (omitting ich rathe, I advise); daß Sie ja nichts betrathen, (I hope) that you will not reveal anything; daß er doch wate, we der Pfesser wächst! would he were where the pepper grows (sar away); daß du doch das Raul nicht halten kunst! wonder (or 'it is vexatious') that you cannot hold your tongue! daß ich nicht wässe, not that I know os; daß ich ein Nare wäre! (God sorbid) that I should de such a soo! ob das die Wahrheit ist? (how can you question) whether this is the truth?

II. ADJECTIVE ACCESSORY SENTENCES.

§ 354. Adjective accessory sentences replace an adjective or another attribute of a substantive (possessive genitive, possessive pronoun, appositive), and are as a rule introduced by the correlative pronouns berjenige—welcher, ber—welcher, ber—ber; as, Den bu hier siehst, bas ist ber Karl nicht mehr, ber in Alsala von dir Abschied nahm (Sch.). Ich solge gern dem edlen Beispiel, das der Jüngre giebt (Sch.). Hast du benjenigen Punkt erwähnt,

auf welchen Alles antommt ? bas haus, welches mir gehört (mein haus).

The relative pronoun is never omitted, as may be done in English, one case excepted (see § 226). But the demonstrative correlative may be omitted wherever it is omitted in English, except in the case mentioned in § 226, note 2.

§ 355. The relative (accessory) sentence allows a relative pronoun to be employed only in that case which is proper to it from the government of the sentence. The English, 'I am (the man) whom he speaks of' (where 'he of whom' would be more correct), cannot be imitated, but is to be translated, ich bin ber, von welchem er (pricht.

Norn 1. The relative adjectives welcher, e, es and der, die, das agree consequently only in gender and number with the substantive to which they refer; as, die Brant, deren du erwähntes, war meine Schwesser; das Jaus, sit welches ich sossets eingenommen din (which I am so sond of) geder einem Freunde; die Schüle, welche gerdrochen vourden, dezahlte et. Still, after the correlative demonstrative solcher, or where this pronoun may be supplied, the adverd wie may take the place of welcher, e, es; as, Bon solchen Schissen, wie jest gedaut werden, hat man frühre nichts gewusst (als instead of wie is here obsolete); mit leuten, wie er (18) läst sich nichts ansangen, such people as he are difficult to deal with; ein Derg wie Eures (18) wiegt Tonnen Goldes auf und Millionen (Sch.). (See § 226, note 4.)

Noux 2. When the relative refers to a sinditantive indicative of place, time, or manner, instead of the relative welder, e, es and is preposition, one of the adverbs we, wann (wenn, da), als, or wie is frequently used, just as in English; as, Rennft du das land, we die fitronen blaben (or in weldem), (G.). D schorer Lag, wenn (an weldem) endlich der Soldat in's leben beimtebre, in die Menschlichteit (Sch.). So seh war man in Sweifel über die Art, wie (auf welche) der Krieg geführt werden sollte. (See § 225, note 4.)

'Now that,' in sentences like 'now that he is dead, we know what we have lost,' can only be translated by nun ba, or ba. (See § 262, mote 2.)

Note 3. Participles, both present and past, may take the place of adjective sentences; as, gum Gewande white das Aunkaewede des Indiere, heliglingend wie der Schnee des Aetna. Dazu den Mantel widte, von glünzender Seide gewede, ingleichen Purpur schimmernd (Sch.). But this should only de done when the participle refers dack to a Nominative or Accusative case. It would be a grent poetical license, if not a bardarism, to say, ich erwies dem Dichter, getrönt mit sorbeer, meine Bereitung (docause getrönt would refer to ich, while it is an attribute of Dichter); in such cases we must form an apposition, and say, ich gab dem Dichter, dem mit sorbeer getrönten, etc., or else use an adjective, ich gab dem mit sorbeer getrönten Dichter, etc.

III. ADVERBIAL ACCESSORY SENTENCES.

§ 356. Adverbial accessory sentences express, instead of the corresponding adverbs, the locality, time, manner, causality, or intensity of an action.

1. Adverbial Accessory Sentences of Locality.

The principal sentence takes a demonstrative adverb of locality, and the accessory sentence a relative; as,—

Principal Sentence.

Accessory Sentence.

ba, bort, babin,

baber, von ba.

wohin, woher,

wo,

and similar adverbs.

and similar relatives.

NOTE 1. The demonstrative may be omitted when followed by a corresponding (not a different) relative; as, we die Reben glaben (bort) brunset der Rhein (Körner). Ich geste dahin, we noch tein Rensch gewesen (dahin cannot be omitted); er flate gerade da, wohin er sich zeitebens gesehnt hatte (da not omissible). Richt aberal, we Busser ift, sind Brosche aber we man Frosche hort, ist Busser (G.). Geben Sie, Graf, (bahin) wohin die Psicht Sie ruft (Sch.). Die Türten tamen (ebendaher), woher alle Rongolen tamen.

Note 2. Bohin, twoher, bahin, baher, are frequently separated; as, two gehst bu hin? two founds bu her? two ich hin'gehe? two ich her'tomme! ba geht er hin; ba fommt er her; ich war, two tein Connensitabl hin'scheint; bert stammt er her. This separation obtains both in common conversation and in poetry to a great extent, in a similar way as in English; for instance, bort steigt er binein, he descends therein; hier safe er gang oben darauf (barauf is here almost pleonastic, and added only to make the description more picturesque), he was sitting thereon; da hat er sich hineingesstat, and dahinein hat er sich gestärgt. Compare is 276 and 276.

2. Adverbial Accessory Sentences of Time.

§ 357. When synchronism is to be expressed, the accessory sentence takes wenn (wann), als, ba, wie, indem, indeß, indessent, weil, während (während daß is antiquated); and the principal sentence takes as correlative da, damals, dann, dazumal, but only when the time is to be more expressly fixed, and much more seldom when the principal sentence precedes; as, Sonst, wenn der Bater auszog, lieben Kinder, da war ein Freuen, etc. (Sch.) Damals war es, als ich mir in meinem herzen gelobte, etc.

Bie and indem point out the synchronism with greater emphasis; as, und wie er winte mit dem Jinger, auf thut fich der weite Bwinger (Sch.). Indem ich bier verweile, dingt er schon die Morter (Sch.); wie das geschah, da war ich leider nicht gugegen; indem er noch redete, nahten die Berfolger.

Indef and indessen express both the actions as filling up the same space of time, and well (antiquated) and withrend express besides that this space of time is of some duration; as, das Eisen muß geschmieder werden, well (while) es gliber (Sch.). Und withrend ihn die Rache suche, geniest er seines Frevels Fruche (Sch.). Sie gaben einander gegenseitige Bersicherungen von Freundschaft, indes die Berzen von Bas übersossen (Sch.); withrend alles dies geschah, da sas er, die Hande im Schoose.

Sobald (ale) in as soon as, and so lange (ale) in while; na, ich gebe felbff ju thm, sobald ich nur von dir erfahre, daß er ruhig ift; sobald ale er den towen erbitte, (da) nahm er Reisaus, or er hatte nicht sobald den towen erbitte, ale er Reisaus nahm, no sooner — than; wer wollte sich mit Grillen plagen, solang uns tenz und Jugend bithn? (Balis.) Das ift genug, solange als wir nicht mehr haben.

§ 358. When the predicate of the principal sentence precedes in time that of the accessory sentence, the or bever, before, ere, introduces the latter; and when the predicate of the former follows in time, nathern or als, after, is employed; as,

Rimm ber Stunde wahr, ebe fie entschifteft (Sch.). Der König verließ Rarmberg, nachdem er es mit einer hinlanglichen Besahung verseben hatte (Sch.) 3ch hab' bein Bort, bu wirft nicht eber handeln, bevor bu mich seiber überzeugt (Sch.). Und eb' ihm noch bas Bort entfallen, ba hort man's von ben Schiffen hallen (Sch.). (Rachdem daß is obsolete; but ehe daß is still in use.)

§ 359. Duration of time is, moreover, expressed by feithem (feit), which may be ushered in or followed by a correlative feithem in the principal sentence, pointing out the commencement of the time mentioned; while his points out the final

term (bis daß is almost antiquated), and may be followed by a correlative dis dahin or solange; as, so schöne Tage hat dies Eiland nie gesehen, seit eigne Fürsten es regiren (Sch.). Seitdem der König seinen Sohn verloren, (seitdem) vertraut er Wenigen der Seinen mehr (G.). Bis die Glode sich vertühlet, last die strenge Arbeit ruhn (Sch.). Ich will nicht eher meine Sterne loben, die (daß) ich das Ende dieser Tage sah (Sch.). Bis er kommt, die dahin bleibt nur ruhig hier. Die Deutschen können erst über Literatur urtheilen, seit sie selbst eine Literatur haben (G.).

3. Adverbial Accessory Sentences of Manner.

- § 360. Adverbial accessory sentences of manner are of a twofold kind: either they express a comparison, as, 'this is just as I had expected'; or the effect of an action, as, 'we laughed so that tears ran down our cheeks.'
- 1. When one action is compared with another, the accessory sentence is introduced by wie, as, if it is a reality; by als ob, als wenn, as if, as though, (followed by the subjunctive mood,) when it is no reality. The principal sentence may in either case take the correlative so, or also, which, however, is frequently omitted.

Examples. — Bie fich die Reigung anders wendet, also fleigt und fullt des Itrebeils wandelbare Boge (Sch.). Bie die Alten sungen, so swirschern auch die Jungen (Prov.). Bie Geifter in der inft verweben, (so) entschvand sie mir und ward nicht mehr gesehen (Sch.). Er sieht aus, als wenn (wie wenn) er trant ware (Sch.). Thut, als wenn (wie wenn) Ihr zu Sause wäret (G.). Ob or wenn is sometimes omitteil, and inversion takes place; as, er sieht aus, als ware er trant; thut als waret ibr zu Sause.

- 2. In longer allegorical comparisons wie wenn (with the Indicative) is used; as, und wie wenn Waffer mit Feuer fich menget, bis jum himmel spripet ber bampfenbe Gischt, und Welle auf Bell' sich ohn' Unterlag branget, 2c., so (tobt ber Strubel), (Sch.).
- 3. When not manner, but intensity, is compared, as in sentences with comparatives proper and improper, wit and als may be indifferently used, but wit belongs more to common life, als to the better style (see § 280. c, note 1).

- 4. When, in comparative correlative sentences, the accessory sentence precedes, it is introduced by so instead of wie; as, so schön sie sang, so häflich war sie von Gesicht (not wie schön); so groß auch Goliad sein mochte, so besiegte ihn ber kleine David boch; so hoch er stand, so tief war sein Fall (Sch.).
- 5. The English 'the more the better,' and similar comparative correlative sentences, are introduced by je in the accessory, and besto in the principal sentence (instead of besto a second je often appears); as, Je weiter man in der Ersahrung sortrudt, desto näher kommt man dem Unersorschlichen; je mehr man die Ersahrung zu nuhen weiß, desto mehr sieht man, daß das Unersorschliche keinen praktischen Ruhen hat (G.). Je länger die Sähe sind, je schwerer sind sie zu verstehen.
- § 361. The intensity no less than the manner of an action is expressed by its effect; in this case daß, that, introduces the accessory, preceded frequently by so in the principal sentence; as, nichts ist so gut, daß man es nicht verbessen könnte. The English so—as to, is translated in the same way; as, 'We find no people so rude as to be without any rules of politeness, nor any so polite as not to have any remains of rudeness' (Franklin), Bir sinden kein Boll so roh, daß es ohne Regeln der Hösslichteit wäre, und keines so hösslich, daß es nicht einige Spuren von Rohheit hätte.

NOTE 1. The English, however, is imitated in the following cases, where the subject is the same in both sentences; as, er tour so ting (gespeidt, psiss) teim Mussichen zu machen, he was smart enough to raise no excitement; er tour se dumm, sich zu derrathen, he was stupid enough (so stupid as) to reveal himself; seien Sie so gut, mir zu sagen, de kind enough to tell me; er tour so freundich, mich zurechzuweisen, he was so good as to direct me; ich din meiner Sache gewiß genug, (um) dies behaupten zu tonnen, I am certain enough about it to state it positively. In all these sentences so indicates an intensity just sufficient to have a certain effect.

NOTE 2. If the action is too intense to have a certain effect, as is introduced in the principal sentence, to which the correlative als bas with the Subjunctive Past answers in the accessory sentence; as, bies is a guer, als bas es vertoren genen fostes, this is too good to be lost; but sinb as southeath, als bas the est berse then theners. The English, however, may be imitated, when the subject is the

same in both sentences; as, bles ift ju gut, (um) berforen ju gehen; er ift ju ehrlich, (um) uns ju beftehlen.

4. Adverbial Accessory Sentences of Causality.

§ 362. A real cause or a motive is expressed by weil, because, and a reason in conclusions by ba, since, as, the principal sentence, when following the accessory, having sometimes the correlative adverb so; as, diese Kinder wissen nichts, weil sie nicht in die Schule gehen; weil wir arm waren, so wurden wir hintangesest. (Instead of so, the correlative adverb darum, deswegen, or deshald, occurs, with greater emphasis, both when the principal sentence concludes, and when it follows; as, Er hatte die Dienste seines Hoses deswegen verlassen, weil nicht alles nach seinem Sinne ging.) Du bist doch glüdlich? Ja, du mußt es sein, da du so groß bist und geehrt!— Ich bin's, da (weil would be better here) ich Euch wiedersehe, Eure Stimme vernehme (Sch.). Da er nicht krank war, so (not deswegen, darum) wird er wohl kommen.

Note 1. Since darum, definegen, deshalb can only correspond to weil, the question introduced by warum? can only be answered by weil; as, warum bift bu frant? weil du trant fein wills. Warum burfen wir ihrer lachen? weil wir einen furchtbaren haufen ausmachen (Sch.).

NOTE 2. Instead of da, the adverd nun or nun ba, now that, is used as conjunction; as, nun ich fie bir empfehle, flerb' ich rubig (G.); nun da dies fich fo berbalt, habe ich nichts einzuwenden.

NOTE 3. The adverbial expression, in Anbetracht beffen daß (weil) bu bestraft genug bift, will ich die Strafe erlaffen, considering that you are, etc., — is antiquated.

§ 363. The *means* through which an effect is produced is expressed by baburd, bamit, in the principal, and baß in the accessory sentence; as, baburd werden wir Menschen, baß wir unsere Bernunst gebrauchen; bamit wird es bewirkt, baß Friede im Lande wird, baß alle Guten zusammenhalten. In English, this is commonly translated by by, with the participle present; as, 'by making use of our reason, we grow to be men'; 'security in the country is effected by the good citizens uniting.'

§ 364. The intention is expressed by bamit in the accessory

sentence, instead of which baff is proper to common conversation (auf baff was the ancient form); as,—

Euch tund' ich's an, damit In's Alle wiffet (Sch.). Sprich beutlicher, daß ich nicht langer finnt (G.). Ehre Bater und Mutter, auf daß dir's wohlgebe und du lange lebeft auf Erden (Bible). Sometimes darum is correlative to damit; as, darum eben leiht er Keinem, damit er ftete zu geben habe (Lees.). Damit dies ge-fcabe, darum bab' ich soviel gearbeitet.

The English lest is translated by bamit nicht; as, he spoke low lest we should be overheard, er (prach leife, bamit wir nicht belauscht wärben.

§ 365. Condition is expressed by wenn (sofern, basern, wofern, — we is antiquated, — im Falle bas, salls) in the accessory sentence, to which, in the principal, the correlative so, ba, or bann, may refer; as, —

Wenn ich nicht finnen und bichten foll, fo ift bas leben mir tein leben mehr (G.); wenn ich wollte, ich tonnt' ihm recht viel Bofes bafür thun (Sch.). Bufrieden war'ich, wenn mein Bolt mich rühmte (G.). Gieb mir, wofern es bir gefallt, bes lebens Blat und Freuden (Gell.). Das wird bein loos fein, falls on es wagit.

NOTE 1. Wenn may be omitted, and inversion of the sentence take place, (see § 289. 8); but in this case the correlative so in the principal sentence can be omitted only in poetry; as, Steht's mur erst hier unten glactich, so bereben auch die rechten Sterne scheine (Sch.). Billst bu dich selber ertennen, so sich, wie die Andern versteben; tollst bu die Andern versteben; tollst die die Andern versteben; tollst die die Andern versteben; tollst die Andern versteben; die Andern versteben; die Andern versteben; tollst die Andern versteben; di

In this case, in poetry and daily conversation the principal sentence is sometimes turned into a question; as, tole film's um Eud, 15g' ich mein Deer jurut? (Sch.); tous toultest bu maden, thate ich bas? Or, in both kinds of style, the conditional sentence is turned into an imperative one; as, Set im Beside, und bu toohust im Recht (Sch.). Thus bas elumal, und du souls sentence, if you do that, (venture to do it, and) you shall seel the consequences.

NOTE 2. Wenn andere, wenn aberhaupt, denote if at all; as, er wird fich bar- aber ichamen, wenn andere er (wenn er andere, wenn er aberhaupt) noch ber Scham fabig ift.

The English 'inasmuch as,' 'in as far as,' are rendered by fefera (infefera als).

For the use of the Indicative and Subjunctive in conditional sentences, see § 314.

§ 366. The concession, or adversative cause or reason (that is, that which explains or is responsible for rather the contrary of the effect or conclusion), is expressed by obgleich, obschol, wenn gleich, wenn auch, wenn schon, and the principal sen-

tence, when following, is headed by so (both, bennoth, gleichwohl, etc.). (See § 280, g.)

NOTE 1. Concessive sentences assume frequently the form of interrogative sentences, the particles gleich, icon, auch indicating sometimes that ob or wenn is omitted; as, if es gleich Nacht, so leuchtet (boch) unser Recht (Sch.). Sind auch die alten Bücher nicht zur Sand, sie sind in unsre Berzen eingeschrieben (Sch.).

Note 2. Concessive sentences are expressed, as in English, by the corresponding pronouns and adverbs, by wer auch immer, was auch nur, we nur, wie auch, wann immer; as, wie sehr auch Euer Inn'res widerstrebe, gehorcht der Beit! (Sch.). Bas er auch bringen mag, er darf den Reutern nicht in die Sande fallen (Sch.).

§ 367. The accompanying circumstances of an action, as explaining it, are expressed by indem, to which the correlative so answers but seldom; as, Indem er sich auf sie stütte, sam er die Treppe langsam herauf (G.). Dies ist erstärlich, indem die Naturgesehe es so wollen. But this use of indem (when not expressing merely coincidence of time) is getting antiquated, da and weil being substituted.

The contrary of index is obse daß; as, der Sweitampf war verüber, obse daß ich etwas davon erfahren hatte (G.), the duel was over without my becoming aware of it. This is always translated by without with the Present Participle. In such sentences, the Subjunctive is more frequent than the Indicative; as, dies creigners sich, obse daß ich darum gewist hätte, without my knowing of it.

§ 868. After the adverbs baran, babei, barüber, barin, bazu, bafür, and some others, baß introduces accessory sentences expressive of such objects as in simple sentences are expressed by the corresponding prepositions an, bei, über, in, zu, für, etc.; as, baran erkenn' ich bein ebles Herz, baß bu schweigst bei solcher Berkennung; es kommt nichts babei heraus, baß (wenn) man alte Strümpse ausbessert; wer möchte sich barüber freuen, baß es schlechte Menschen giebt? Darin besteht ber Muth, baß man bie Gesahr verachtet; bazu giebt's za Geseße, daß sie besolgt werden; es wird basur gehalten (it is holden) daß dergleichen unmöglich sei.

CHAPTER XI.

CO-ORDINATE SENTENCES.

§ 369. When two sentences, not dependent on each other, are connected into a compound sentence, they are called co-ordinate sentences. Under this head, we shall mention only constructions different from the English.

The adversative conjunctions aber, allein, doch, nur, hingegen, bagegen, bennoch, sondern, are all translated by 'but'; they are, however, of different force. Aber is the most indefinite of them, and introduces sentences expressing difference from antecedent ones; as, der Haß ist parteiisch, aber die Liebe ist es noch mehr (Less.). Heilig achten wir die Geister, aber Namen sind uns Dunst; würdig ehren wir die Meister, aber frei ist uns die Runst (Uhl.).

Note. — Aber is preceded by one member of the sentence, when this is to be marked as in opposition to another one; as, er tennt did nicht; ich aber tenne dich (Sch.). Du vergift die Beleidigung, er aber thut es nie. This force is lost, when aber follows after the second or third member of the sentence; as, er versprace, er hat es aber vergeffen.

Ellein and boch introduce a partial negation of the preceding sentence, a hinderance, limitation, or improbability of the action; as, bu biff gefund, allein das iff nicht genug für einen Matrofen; er tönnte viel Gutes in der Belt ausstichten, allein (doch) er iff engherzig; gern ertenn' ich an, du willst mein Bohl—allein vertange nicht, daß ich auf deinem Beg es sinden soll (Sch.). Therefore ader may be employed instead of allein or boch, but not the contrary.

Rur may be employed for either aber or allein; as, darin war er meinem Baeter abnlich — nur hatte dieser dabei einen gewiffen Grad von Beicheit (aber dieser batte, etc. (G.); meine Mutter hatte von Jugend auf ahnliche Gefinnungen — nur waren sie (allein sie tvaren) bei ihr nicht jur Reife gediehen (G.).

Sondern, but, is peculiar to the German language. It contradicts positively the predicate or other part of a preceding negative sentence, asserting at the same time its contrary, and intensifies, therefore, the preceding negation; as, sie twagten sich nicht in die Rache des Jeindes, sondern kehrten unberrichterer Sache jurud (Sch.). Man muß reden und sich rübren, nicht m ju überwinden, sondern sich auf seinem Posten zu erhalten (G.). Gewisse Bücher scheinen geschrieben zu sein, nicht damit man etwas daraus lerne, sondern damit man wiffe, daß der Berfasser etwas gewußt habe (G.).

But aber has legitimate place instead of sesbern, whenever the preceding negative assertion is only partially contradicted, partially affirmed; as, et berfiebt stear nicht Griechisch, aber griechische Geschücke hat et klubitt; et klubit gerabe an ben Jolgen bieser Bunde, aber et wird ein Arshpel bleiben. And boch or dennech may follow a negation, when something entirely different from that negatived in the preceding sentence is asserted, but at the same time a logical similarity of both assertions exists; as, ich hade nicht geschlafen, und doch (dennoch) din the made; ich fann nicht doch en, doch assertions is very remote, a comical effect is produced in this case by aber, doch, etc.; as, ich soll mit Euch singen ich same es nicht; aber (doch) mein Bruder blast die Jiste.

1

1

i

ı

İ

ı

ì

Doch and dennoch (jedoch takes the place of both when no inversion is to be effected, see § 283, note) express in co-ordinate sentences what obgleich, etc., though, express in accessory sentences, namely, effects or consequences contrary to what was expected from the causes or premises; as, ich wellte gern den Biedermann retten, doch es if rein unmöglich (Sch.). Es if die schöfte Hoffnung boch es if nur eine Hoffnung (for the construction, see § 283, note). Wieles wansschied sich der Rensch, und dech bedarf er nur wenig (G.). Beistehen soll sie mir in meinen Planen, und dennoch nichts dabei zu fischen haben (Sch.). Die Umsetitaner sind schieder Russter, sie sind jedoch auf dem Wege besser zu werden.

While bed and branch in a majority of cases, wherever no strong logical distinction is made between cause and effect, or reason and consequence, are indifferently used, they must not be confounded, when both are to be logically distinguished; as, er war nicht eingetaben, unb boch fam er, where his coming is represented as not expected, but as possible; in er twar nicht eingetaben, unb bennoch fam er, his coming is represented as absolutely against expectation, akmost impossible, but in spite of it happening.

School, when heading the sentence, has but a feeble adversative power, and comes near to however; as, ich gehe, jeboch ich hoffe miederjutommen, I am leaving, I hope however to return. And so of indeffen.

Nore 1. Doch is employed elliptically, when the speaker passes over to another subject; as, die Chinesen haben juerst das Pulver erfunden; doch — ich wollte ja von den Ersindungen des Mittelalters reden. After doch a sentence like doch das gehört eigentlich nicht hierber, is to be supplied.

Of the use of bods as a mere adverb, we have spoken in § 268. 6.

NOTE 2. Singegen and bagegen occur less frequently, to contrast, particularly in scientific language, contrary assertions; as, Antonio geht frei umber und spricht mit seinem Jürsten; Taffo bagegen bleibt verbannt in seinem Bimmer und allein (G.).

Sonft and es sei benn baß (the latter more frequently with the Subjunctive) express a conditional negation, as do else and unless; sous pointing out the effect of an unsuffilled condition, es sei benn, baß, the cause as an indispensable condition (conditio sine qua non) of the effect; as, wir mußen fleißig sein, sons serven with the condition in the serven with the serven set sei benn daß wir sleißig find; Eigensein muß früh gegabent werden, sonst arte er spärer in Iros und Undundigteit aus. Sometimes es sei benn is shortened into the sollowing sorm: Riemand soll sange

Meden tomponiren, um die Leute ju befchamen, er mufte fie benn bor bem Spiegel halten wollen (G.).

§ 370. All other co-ordinating conjunctions are used like the corresponding English; as, und, and; benn, for; also, folglich, bennach, etc., accordingly, consequently; baher, behhalb, behwegen, therefore, on account of that; barum, for that purpose; as,—

Ich bin mein eigner herr, und ale folder thu' ich, was ich will. Soldaten waren theuer, benn die Menge geht nach dem Glad (Sch.). Der Deutsche bat Freibelt der Gesinnung, und daher mertt er nicht, wenn es ihm an Geschmacksfreibeit feblt (G.). Ich voolle ben Jungling seben, aber unerkannt, und defhalb hatre ich mich eigenetlich auf den Weg gemacht (G.). Ich viell sie befreien, drum bir ich hier (Sch.). Du willst den Bweck, also muft du auch die Rittel wollen (G.). Dieser Beweck ist bantig, demnach tonnen wir die Sache auf sich beruben laffen; alle Renschen muffen sterben, folglich auch du.

NOTE 1. Und has sometimes a causal meaning; as, sein patriotische Reuchelmord wird entbedt, und er muß entslieben (G.). Die Renge tann tüchtige Renschen nicht entbebren, und die Tüchtigen find ihnen jederzeit jur taft (G.). Urtheilt, ob ich mein herz bezwingen tann; ich sah den Jeind — und ich erschlug ihn nicht (Sch.).

NOTE 2. Det, or, is sometimes used for ober fonft, or else; as, bu fchiefeft, ober flirbft mit beinem Anaben (Sch.). Er muß es gestehen, ober es gebe ibm schleche. Sometimes ober and aber occur combined; as, Eines von Beibem muß gescheben, entweder er fiegt, ober aber er ift ganglich vernichtet.

NOTE 8. So occurs in the place of also; as, Er tann mir nicht mehr trauen, so tann ich auch nicht mehr jurud (Sch.).

NOTE 4. In all co-ordinate sentences, introduced by an adverb or object or predicate, and therefore inverted, the personal pronoun cannot be omitted, as is done in English, because it is the subject of several such sentences; as, Er nahm mid erst mit Chren auf, und bann berstieß er mid, he received me first with honor, and then (he) repulsed me; man hangt bie Reinen Diebe, die großen läße man lanfen.

CHAPTER XII.

OF VERBALS AND CONTRACTED SENTENCES.

§ 371. The German use of participles and infinitives is very different from the English, and is of much less frequency as regards the Participle Present and Supine.

A verbal is properly a contracted accessory sentence; as, Sterben if ein seiden, dying is a hardship (that we must die is hard); ich thue es gern, daß ich erwas iese, I am sond of reading; ich weiß, daß er ein Schurte iß, I know him to be a rascal; die verbenannte Stadt (the city which we mentioned besore) if weit von hier, the asoresaid city is far from here; daß er eine Niederlage erlitten hatte, war nicht sein größes Missessich, his being routed in battle was not his greatest missortune.

- § 872. The Infinitive without au is used:—
- 1. As the subject of a sentence; as, Geben ist seliger als Nehmen, giving is more blessed than receiving; handeln ist leicht, benten schwer, nach dem Gedachten handeln unbequem (G.), acting is easy, etc.; Borgen ist nicht viel besser als betteln, sowie leihen nicht viel besser als steblen (Less.).
- 2. As an object, especially after the following verbs (see § 340):—

lehren,	lassen,	hören,	gehen,	fahren,
lernen,	machen,	fehen,	bleiben,	nennen.
belfen,	beißen,	fühlen,	reiten,	

Also after the six auxiliary verbs of mood.

Examples. — Das nenne ich schwimmen! that I call swimming! Er thut nichts als tangen, he does nothing but dance; ihr habt gut reben, you may well talk so, it is easy for you to talk.

- § 373. The Infinitive with au (supine) is used: --
- 1. As the subject of a sentence, when the Infinitive is accompanied by objects; as, —

Euch ju gefallen war mein bochfer Bunich; euch ju ergeben war mein letter Bwed (G.). Es ift eine Bolluft, einen grofen Rann ju febeu. Still even here it is postical to omit ju; as, Giebe's fconre Pflichren für ein ebles herz, als ein Bertheibiger ber Unichulb fein (ju fein), bas Recht ber Unterbrückten ju beschirmen? (Sch.)

2. As an object or attribute (always with ju); as,—

Das Bermögen, Andern ju belfen; die Jurcht ju miffallen; der Eifer ju fiegen; die Reue dies gerhan ju baben; es glaubt der Renfc fein Leben ju leiten, fich felbft ju fibren (G.). (Soe §4 861 and 864.)

NOTE 1. After predicates that require a proposition, the preposition precedes the Infinitive in the adverbial forms daran, dabei, daju, etc.; as, er arbeitet daran, fich berübmt ju machen; er ift damit jufrieden, der Legte ju fein: wir freuten uns darüber, ihn entfernt ju haben; wir dachten darauf, Mittel ju finden, obc.

- NOTE 1. The supine is employed after the propositions sine, anfatt, and mm, as we have already seen; for instance: ich mag nicht leben, ohne frei zu fein; er febriet aurad, anfact permarks au tommen; fie ging, um zu flerben.
- NOTE 8. The supine appears frequently in the place of sentences formed from the supine and the verb sein, as in English; for instance, 'tickets to be had at,' etc. (are to be had), Billete (find) su haden bet, etc.; and instead of compound words; as, ein Besper sum Trinten, ein Bush sum tesen (ein Trintbesper, ein tesebush); and after adjectives and adverbs, to express the particular quality; as, bisses Bush if gut (nåklish, angenehm) su lesen; es ift beuteanmuthis su mandern; pråspig ansusebus; some tengens in the english 'I have to work,' may be imitated, ith hade su arbeiten; 'he has much money to spend,' et hat viel Gelb aussugeben.
- NOTE 4. The Germanisms: er fiel so, das er auf die Buse ju sieben tam, de sell so as to remain standing upright; dieses haus tommt mir theuer ju steben; das sold dir theuer ju steben tommen, for this you shall pay dearly! wir tamen in demosition Bette neden einander ju liegen, are pleonasms, the supine being superfluous.
- NOTE 5. In rendering the English, 'be so good as to rise,' and similar phrases, the 'as' is not translated; as, fein Sie fe gut aufunktheu.
- NOTE 6. The elliptical English use of the Infinitive may be rendered in German; as, 'to tell the truth he is mad,' um bie Bahrbeit au fagen er ift to ...
- NOTE 7. The English Infinitive after comparatives to determine the degree of intensity is imitated; as, er iff sief au foliau, um fic barin au irren, he is much too shrewd to blunder in that. See § 361, notes 1 and 2.
- § 374. Daily conversation shuns the use of the participle present, except those enumerated in § 177, and of the participles past, except those given in the list in § 191. But in poetical, rhetorical, and scientific language, a more extensive use is made of both participles to shorten sentences, viz.:—
- 1. When accompanying circumstances of an action are to be expressed (see § 848); as, er tangte fingend herum; wir sahen thn gerührt an; er tommt gesahren (geritten, gelausen, geslogen, getangt, gesprungen, geschritten).
- 2. To express imperative sentences (see § 315); as, aufge-ftanben! ausgetrunten.
- 3. To form attributive adjectives expressive of a moral or physical necessity, or possibility (see § 311); as, ein au ertragenbes Uebel.

- 4. Both kinds of participles are used as attributive adjectives, and as appositives (without inflection) to a great extent; as, ein reisender Raufmann, der betrogene Betrüger, beistimmende Antwort, das hierdurch zur Berzweislung gebrachte Mädchen; ein von Wassen bis an die Zähne stroßender Räuber; der Garten, von seiner eignen Hand gepstegt und süße Früchte bringend. In apposition, every participle may be employed in the uninflected or predicative form, though not always with elegance.
- 5. In elliptical sentences, instead of accessory sentences of all kinds, but only in phrases fully adopted by the language; as, bie Sache bei Lichte besehen (wenn die Sache bei Lichte besehen wird) so verlieren wir nicht viel an ihm. Einmal angefangen (da wir einmal angefangen haben) muffen wir auch vollenden. Dies einmal als wahr angenommen (wenn dies einmal als wahr angenommen ift) was folgt daraus? Diesen Jehler abgerechnet (ausgenommen), this fault excepted; dies anlangend (betreffend) ift meine Meinung, with regard to this, etc.
- 6. When the subject is the same in both sentences (the participial and the principal), every accessory sentence of the present or imperfect tense of the active may be turned into a participle present, every passive sentence in the perfect or pluperfect into a participle past; as, während ich im Bette lag, dachte ich darüber nach im Bette liegend tachte ich darüber nach; an der Schulter verwundet (da er an der Schulter verwundet war) suchte er zu entsommen; ausgebracht, wie er war, sonnte er nicht vernünstig reden, irritated, as he was, etc. Still, this use ought to be managed with great discretion, and sparingly, the language not savoring sentences thus shortened, except where great brevity is for some good reason intended.
- 7. In the case of factitive objects (see § 339); as, ich sehe mich genöthigt; ich sühle mich gerettet; ich gebe mich versoren; ich sinde mich ersahmt. But the pupil must be very discreet in this use, and not go beyond established model examples.
 - 8. In some Germanisms, as geflogen tommen, in ber Bogel

tam gestogen, the bird came slying; gegangen, geritten, zesafren tommen, to arrive on foot, on horseback, in a conveyance; verloren gehen, to be lost.

- § 375. No other constructions with Participles and Infinitives, common in English, can be imitated. We classify them, in order to show, by a few examples, how they may be best translated in German.
- 1. Accusative with Infinitive is incorrect, except in the case of § 372. 2; as, —

I know him to be a rascal, ich weiß daß er ein Schurte ift. I think him (to be) able to do it, ich balte ibn für fatig es zu thun. I allow his principles to be wrong, ich gebe zu, daß seine Grundfaße salich find. He made me to do his will, er brachte mich dazu, zu thun, was er wollte.

2. Elliptical or shortened sentences; as,—

He was at a loss what to say, er war verlegen, was er sagen follte. I cannot tell what to think of it, ich tunn nicht sagen, was ich davon denten soll. To look at him, one would think, wenn man ibn ansieht, sollte man denten. Ambition is a thing never to be satisfied, Etget; ift nie sufriedensussellen. A feeling not to be described, ein nicht zu bescheiden Gestähl, or das nicht pu beschrieden Gestähl, or das nicht

A letter to be forwarded to, ein Brief, ber nach (an) . . . beforbert werben foll.

- 3. After so and sold, when these words have the emphasis, the English Infinitive is rendered by the finite verb; as, he was so enraged as to be unable to speak, er war so wuthend, daß er nicht sprechen konnte.
- 4. The English Infinitive after verbs of believing, wanting, desiring, ordering, expecting, may be imitated in German where the subject of the principal and the dependent sentence is the same, and after verbs of command, even when the object of the principal is the subject of the dependent sentence; as, er befahl mir, es zu thun (that I should do it); ich wünsche bein Freund zu sein; ich benke, recht gehandelt zu haben; die Römer glaubten, von den Göttern zur Weltherrschaft bestimmt zu sein; wir gebenken morgen in's Schauspiel zu gehen. And colloquially, ich wünsche Ihnen, wohl zu leben (daß Sie wohl leben), which must not de imitated. The English 'he told me to be silent'

must not be translated by er fagte mir ftill gut fein, but by er befahl mir ftill gut fein.

The English 'I wait for him to come,' or 'for his coming,' is rendered simply it warte auf ibn.

- 5. Participial objects in oblique cases; as, --
- The recollection of his having been in danger, ber Gebante, bag er in Gefahr gewefen war.
- He concluded by saying, er schleß damit daß (indem) er sagte.
- I felt delight in having done so, ich fablte Freude baraber, baf ich's gethan.
- 6. Absolute participles (when the participial sentence has a subject different from that of the principal sentence); as, —
 This being settled, we started, naddem bies abgemant war, braden wir auf.
 The danger being passed, I resolved, ha bie Gefahr borbei war, befchieß ich.
- 7. Participles governed by prepositions or conjunctions; as,—

Upon my (while, in) going to church, I saw, als ith in die Rirche ging, fah ith.

The horse was unfit for service, as wanting an eye, das Pferd war untauglich, da
es nur ein Auge hatte.

- After surrendering, they were allowed to go free, nachdem fie fich ergeben hatten, erlaubte man ihnen, frei umberzugehn.
- 8. The Participle Present of all the auxiliary verbs (as, scient, habend, werbend, müssend, sollend, wollend, mögend, dürsend, ton-nend) is in use only in comical language; in common style, it must be avoided by means of the finite verb; as, being accused of treason, he sled, da er des Berraths beschuldigt war, so sloh er; or des Berraths beschuldigt, sloh er.
 - 9. For one other use of the Participles, see § 348. 2.

ı

١



PART IV.

FIRST GERMAN READER.

1.

Ein Rabe hatte einen Rase aus einem Sause gestohlen und flog damit auf einen Baum. Ein Fuchs sah ihn und wünschte den Rase zu bekommen. Er trat also unter ben Baum und sagte : D Rabe, wie schön ift bein Gesteder, so schön als das des Ablers, welcher der Bogel des Zeus ist. Wenn deine Stimme ebenso schön wäre, du wärst der erste aller Bögel. "Ci," dachte der Rabe, "ich muß ihm meine Stimme hören lassen— se ist nicht gar so schlecht." Und er trächzte laut; darüber siel ihm der Kase aus dem Schnabel, mit welchem der listige Fuchs entsloh. Nach Aesop.

2.

Ein hund stahl bem Roche ein Stud Fleisch aus ber Rüche und entfloh damit. Als er, es im Maule tragend, über einen Fluß schwamm, bemerkte er sein eigenes Bild im klaren Spiegel bes Waffers, hielt es aber für einen fremben hund, ber ebenfalls ein Stud Fleisch trüge. Boll Reid schnappte er nach dem Bilde, um es ihm abzunehmen, verlor aber babei sein eigenes Fleisch und war so zugleich für seinen Diebstahl und seine habgier bestraft.

Rach Aefop.

Midaelis.

8. Die Biene und bie Taube.

Ein Bienchen trank und fiel barüber in ben Bach; bas sah von oben eine Taube und brach ein Blättchen von ber Laube und warf's ihr zu. Das Bienchen schwamm banach und half sich glüdlich aus dem Bach. In kurzer Zeit saß unsre Taube in Frieden wieder auf der Laube. Ein Jäger hatte schon den hahn auf sie gespannt. Mein Bienchen kam,— pid! kach's ihn in die hand; puff! ging der ganze Schuß daneben. Die Taube slog bavon. Wem dankt sie nun ihr Leben?

Erbarmt euch willig frember Roth! Du giebst dem Armen heut' bein Brod! Der Arme kann bir's morgen geben.

85

4. Der Nordwind.

Der Nordwind ging einmal spazieren, aber ba er ein wilder Befelle mar, ba trieb er allerlei Unfug. Als er in ben Garten tam, ba zaufte er bie Rofe an ben Saaren, ber Lilie fnidte er ben Stengel, brach bie reifen Apritofen ab und warf die Bienen in ben Roth. 3m Relbe trieb er es noch arger. Da fließ er bie Achren in ben Ctaub, icuttelte bie unreifen Aepfel ab, rif bie Blatter von ben 3weigen und ftreute fie in ber Luft umber, ja, einen alten ichmachen Baum fturate er gang um, bag bie Burgeln in Die Bobe ftanden. Da gingen bie Leute flagen zu bem Bindfonige. ber in feinem Lufticoloffe bie Binbe nach Belieben gefangen balt. ober geben lant, und fie erzählten ibm, mas ber mufte Nordwind angerichtet batte, und wie ber Barten und bas Relb trauerten über bas Leib, bas er ihnen jugefügt hatte. Da lieg ber Konig ben Nordwind tommen und fragte ibn, ob es mabr fei, mas bie Leute flagten. Er tonnte es nicht leugnen, benn ber gerftorte Garten und bas gerftorte Relb lagen por Aller Augen. Da fragte ber Ronig : "Warum haft bu bas gethan ?" Der Rordwind antwortete: "Ei, ich habe es nicht bofe gemeint; ich wollte fpielen mit ber Rofe, und mit ber Lilie, und ber Aprifose, und mit ben Uebrigen. 3ch habe nicht gebacht, bag es ihnen weh thun murbe." Da fagte ber Ronig : "Wenn bu ein fo grober Spieler bift, bann barf ich bich nicht mehr hinauslaffen. Den gangen Sommer über muß ich bich eingesperrt halten ; im Binter, wenn es feine Blumen und feine Blatter und feine Gruchte mehr giebt, bann magft bu hinausgehen und fpielen. 3ch febe, bu paffeft nur fur bas Gis und ben Conce, aber nicht fur Die Blumen und Die Fruchte." Curtman.

5. Der Diftelfint.

Als ber liebe Gott die Böglein machte, da gab er ihnen Beine zum hüpfen und Flügel zum Fliegen und Schnäbel zum Fressen, aber auch zum Singen. Und als sie alle fertig waren und um ihn her standen, da nahm er einen großen Farbenkasten und malte ihnen bunte Federn. Da kam die Taube an die Reihe, und erhielt einen blauen hals und röthliche Flügel, und der Kanarienvogel wurde so gelb wie eine Citrone, und die Bachstelze wurde grau und bekam einen schwarzen Strich und einen weißen Fled daneben, und alle Bögel wurden prächtig gefärbt, wie es sich für seden schidt. Nur einer war übrig geblieben, weil er hinter den andern

È

ţ

į

ı

Ì

stand, und sich nicht vordrängen wollte, das war der Distelfink. Alls er endlich auch herbei kam, da hatte der liebe Gott alle Farben verbraucht, und es war nichts mehr übrig, als die leeren Schälchen. Da weinte das arme Bögelchen, daß es nicht auch ein so buntes Federkleid haben sollte, wie die andern. Der liebe Gott aber redete ihm zu und sprach: "Seiruhig, es ist noch in jedem Schälchen ein klein wenig Farbe zurückgeblieben, das will ich mit dem Pinsel austupfen und auf beine Federn streichen." Und er that es und malte den Distelsink ein bischen roth und ein bischen blau und ein bischen schwarz und ein bischen grün; aus allen Schälchen ein wenig, so daß er der bunteste unter allen Bögeln wurde und dem lieben Gott dankte, daß er ihn so schöngemacht hatte.

6. Das Rind unter ben Bolfen.

Auf dem Riesengebirge lebte einmal eine arme Frau, die hatte ein tleines Rind und auch eine große Berbe. Die Berte aber geborte nicht ber Frau, sonbern fie butete fie nur. Und ba faß fie einmal mit ihrem Rinte in bem Balbe und gab bem Rinte Brei aus bem Napfe, und Die Rube weibeten unterbeffen auf bem Grafe. In bem Balbe aber maren bofe Bolfe, und als bie Rube von bem Grafe in ben Wald gingen, mo es fühl mar und auch viel Gras muchs, bachte bie Frau, ber Wolf tonnte fommen und die Rube freffen. Und ba gab fie bem Rinte ben Rapf mit bem Brei und einen holzernen Loffel bagu und fagte: Rindchen, nimm und if; nimm aber ben Löffel nicht ju voll!" Und nun ftand fle auf und ging in ben Bald und wollte bie Rube beraus treiben. Und wie nun bas Rind fo allein ba faß und af. tam eine große, große Wölfin aus bem Walte berausgefprungen und gerabe auf bas Rind los, und faßte es mit ben Babnen hinten an ber Jade und trug es in ben Balb. Und ba bie Mutter wieder tam, mar tein Rind mehr ba, und ber Rapf lag auf ber Erbe, aber ber Löffel lag nicht babei; benn ben hatte bas Rind in ber Sand festgehalten. Und wie bas bie Mutter fab, bachte fle gleich : Das hat tein anderer gethan als ber Wolf, und lief in bas Dorf und ichrie entschlich, bag bie Leute beraus famen.

Unterbeffen tam ein Bote burch ben Wald gegangen, ber hatte sich verirrt und wußte nicht, wo er war. Und wie er so burch die Busche geht und ben Weg sucht, hört er etwas sprechen und benkt gleich: Da muffen wohl Leute sein! Und es sagte immer: "Geh', wber ich geb' dir was!" Und wie er nun das Gebusch von ein-

ander thut und sehen will, was es ift, fist ein Rinden auf der Erbe und sechs kleine Bölfchen herum, die fahren immer auf das Rind zu und schnappen ihm nach den Sanden,—aber die alte Bölfin war nicht babei, die war wieder in den Wald gelaufen; und wenn ihm nun die Bölfchen nach den Handen schnappen, schlägt das Kind sie mit dem hölzernen Löffel auf die Rase und

fagt immer bagu : "Geb', ober ich geb' bir was."

Und der Bote wunderte sich und lief geschwind hin und schlug mit dem Stode unter die kleinen Wölfe, daß sie alle davon liesen, und das Kind nahm er geschwind von der Erde in die Höhe und lief und lief; denn er dachte, die alte Wölsin könnte wieder kommen. Und da mährte es gar nicht lange, da kamen die Bauern aus dem Dorfe mit heugabeln und Dreschstegeln und wollten dem Wolf todt machen. Und die Mutter kam auch mit, und da sie sah, daß der Wolf das Kind nicht gefressen hatte, war sie sehr vergnügt und dankte dem guten Manne tausendmal, und noch mehr dem lieben Gott, daß er ihr Kind behütet hatte. Fr. Jacobs.

7.

Jemand hörte ein fcredliches Geschrei aus einem Rachbarhause bringen und eilte (um) zu sehen was es bedeutete. Bas fand er? — Der Rachbar hielt einen fremden Anaben und schlug ihn aus Leibesträften mit einem Stode. "Aber um himmels willen, Nachbar, warum schlagt ihr den armen Jungen so sehr? wer ift er? wie kommt er hierher?"—"Ach," antwortete der Nachbar, "es ist bloß meines Bruders Sohn, und er ist zu seinem Bergnügen hier."

8.

Ein Schuhmader hatte einen Lehrling, welcher bon ber Reisterin sehr schlecht gehalten wurde und nicht genug zu effen, sowie niemals Butter zu seinem Brote betam. Der Junge dachte auf ein Mittel, wie er dies am besten dem Meister bemerklich machen könnte. Sinmal bei Tische sing er an bitterlich zu weinen. "Bas ist dir, Junge," ricf der Meister, "was fehlt dir?"—"Ach, Reister," war die Antwort, "meine Augen werden alle Tage schlechter; ich tann nicht einmal mehr die Butter auf meinem Brote erkennen." Der Meister verstand den Wint und bat seine Frau, sie sollte ihm wenigstens etwas Kase zum Brote geben. Sie gab ihm also ein ganz dunnes Schnittchen Kase. Plöplich begann der Bursche laut zu jubeln und zu lachen. "Bas haft du denn nun wieder?" fragte der Meister. "Hurrah! meine Augen sind wieder besser

geworben," fdrie ber Lehrling ; "ich fann burch meinen Rafe (hinburch) bie Frau Meisterin feben."

9.

Der berühmte beutsche Maler Holbein tam nach England im Jahre 1526, und hatte das Glüd die Bekanntschaft des Kardinals Wolsey zu machen, welcher bei ihm verschiedene Bilder bestellte. Diese gesielen dem Kardinal so sehr, daß er sie dem König Heinrich VIII. zeigte, als dieser einmal bei ihm zu Gaste war. Der König bewunderte sie, und der Gunstling wollte sie ihm deshalb schenken. Allein der König verlangte den Maler zu sehen, und sagte, als ihm dieser vorgestellt wurde. "Run da ich den Maler habe, nun mögt ihr seine Bilder behalten." Und er nahm ihn mit sich in's königliche Schloß und gab ihm verschiedene Aufträge, welche er

zu bes Rönigs voller Zufriedenheit ausführte.

ì

۱

Einst war Holbein bamit beschäftigt, eine Dame zu malen, und hatte besoblen, baß man Niemand einlassen sollte. Ein gewisser Lord fam und verlangte Zutritt; und als man ibm den ausdrüdlichen Besehl des Malers meldete, gerieth er in Zorn, weil er glaubte, daß ein Mann wie er überall Zutritt habe, und trat die Thüre mit dem Fuße ein. Als Holbein den Eindringling sah, warf er ibn in der ersten Sibe die Treppe hinunter; dann aber eilte er zum König und dat ihn um Schutz gegen den Zorn des Weligen. Während er noch beim König war, kam der kord und sorderte, daß der Maler für das, was er gethan (batte), bestraft würde. "Bas denkt Ihr?" fragte der König. "Ich kann jeden Augenblid aus sieben Bauern sieben Lords machen; aber aus sieben Lords kann ich keinen einzigen Holbein machen."

10.

Mls ber Berzog Leopold von Destreich sich zu bemjenigen Einfalle in die Schweiz rüstete, welcher mit der Schlacht bei Moorgarten ein so schlechtes Ende nahm, hielt er mit seinen Räthen und Hauptleuten einen großen Kriegsrath, wie und auf welchem Wege man am besten den Schweizern in's Land siele. Sein hofnarr war auch zugegen und lächelte dazu. "Was ist denn deine Meinung?" redete ibn zulest der Herzog an. "An Eurer Stelle, herr Herzog," versetz jener, "würde ich nicht darüber berathen, wie ich in das Land (binein), sondern wie ich wieder heraus kommen möchte." Und er behielt Recht, denn Wenige von dem heere bes herzogs kamen wieder heraus.

35 *

11.

Es geschah öfter, daß Doctor Luther Besuch von Batern besam, welche ihre Sohne auf die hochschule zu Wittenberg brachten und ihm dieselben zur Aufsicht übergaben. Einst hatte ihm ein Raufmann seinen Sohn gebracht und wurde nehft diesem beim Doctor zu Tische eingeladen. Es gab natürlich dem Gaste zu Chren eine gebratene Gans. Während nun die Alten nach der Suppe ein Glas Wein tranken, machte sich der junge Mensch, welcher wenig Lebensart besaß; darüber der Gans die Haut abzuziehen und den ledern Bissen zu verschlingen. Luther bemerkte es und richtete an seinen Bater die Frage: "was sagt Ihr, daß Euer Sohn werden soll?"—"Ein Geistlicher, herr Doctor."—"Ich wüste wohl etwas Besseres für ihn," sagte Luther, indem er mit dem Finger auf den Studenten wies, "er scheint mir mehr Anlage zu einem Gerber oder Schinder zu haben."

12.

Dr. Johnson fuhr einst mit mehreren Damen in einem Rahne spaziren und blies ihnen die Flöte zur Unterhaltung vor, worin er Meister war. hinter ihnen her tam ein Rahn voll junger Lassen, von denen Einer seinen Spaß mit ihm haben wollte und ihn unter Drohungen aufforderte, ihm ein gewisses Stüd vorzuspielen. Da Johnson nicht gern mit diesem Unverschämten Streit bekommen wollte, um die Frauen nicht zu erschreden, fügte er sich mit großer Raltblütigkeit und spielte ihm das verlangte Stüd vor.

Sobald aber Johnson sich von den Damen getrennt hatte, folgte er dem anderen Kahne und behielt seinen Beleidiger im Auge. Die jungen Leute stiegen an's Land, und jest trat er auf ihn zu und sagte zu ihm: "Mein herr, Sie haben vorhin die Unschilichkeit begangen, mich in Gegenwart von Frauen zu beleidigen, wahrscheinlich weil Sie glaubten, daß in einem schwarzen Rode kein Muth stede. Ich bin Ihnen zu Willen gewesen und habe Ihnen etwas vorgespielt. Zest ist es nicht mehr als billig, daß Sie mir etwas vortanzen." Der junge herr weigerte sich ansangs, aber Iohnson zog ein gelabenes Pistol heraus und zwang ihn daburch, das Berlangte zu thun. Dann ließ er ihn stehen, indem er ihn warnte, sein ungezogenes Betragen ein ander Mal nicht zu wiederholen.

13.

Der Detan Swift ift befannt wegen feines fcnellen Dipca.

Einst tam er auf einer Reise in ben weniger besuchten Theilen Irlands in ein Birthohaus, wo er übernachten mußte, aber alle Betten besetzt fand. Der Mann, mit welchem er ein Bett theilen sollte, war kein einladender Schlastamerad, und Swift suchte also seiner los zu werden. Die Gelegenheit dazu war bald gefunden; der Bauer nämlich fragte ihn, ob er auch nach Kilkenny ginge, um der hinrichtung beizuwohnen, welche Tags darauf stattsinden sollte. "Ja wohl!" erwiderte Swist; "wie sollte ich denn nicht? ich bin sa der henter." Raum hatte er dies geäußert, als sein Bettnachbar voll Entsehen aus dem Bette sprang und im Pferdestalle ein Obdach für die Nacht suchte; so daß Swist allein im Besthe des Bettes blieb.

14

Unter ben Runftlern von Athen mar es Sitte ihre vollenbeten Berte auf ber Strafe auszuftellen, um bas Urtheil ber Borübergebenben barüber gu boren und vielleicht Binte über angubringenbe Berbefferungen zu erhalten. Gin Maler, ber einen Rriegsgott gefertigt hatte, ftellte ibn ebenfalls aus und verbarg fich Dabinter, Damit bie Beichauer befto offener ihr Urtheil außerten. Ein Schubmacher blieb vor bem Runftwerte fteben und bewunderte es; nur bie Schube fand er ungetreu und unicon. Der Runkler verbefferte, als er fort war, fogleich ben gerügten gehler, und ber Schuhmacher, welcher bes anbern Tages wieber vorbeiging, mar nicht wenig ftolg, daß fein Sabel beachtet worben war. Damit hielt er fich' fofort für einen Runfttenner und fing an, auch bie Beftalt, Die Befichteguae und ben Ausbrud bes Bilbmertes an tabeln. Raich fubr ber Bilbbauer aus feinem Berftede bervor und rief ibm bie Borte gu, welche feitbem fpruchwörtlich geworben find : .. Schufter, bleib' bei beinem Leiften."

15.

Als Octavianus nach dem Siege bei Actium nach Rom jurudtehrte und seinen Einzug in die Stadt hielt, hatten Biele fich beeifert, ihn mit Ehrenbezeugungen und Geschenken zu empfangen. Ein armer Schuhmacher, der um irgend eine Gunst zu bitten
hatte und sonst dem herrscher nichts bieten konnte, hatte einen
Raben abgerichtet, die Borte zu sprechen: "Sei gegrüßt, Casar
Augustus, herrscher der Belt!" Dem Raben siel das Lernen
schwer, und sein herr hatte oft im Unmuth darüber ausgerufen:
"An dir habe ich Del und Rübe verloren." (Er meinte das Del, welches er beim Abrichten des Raben verbrannt hatte.) Am Ende batte der Logel nicht bloß die Worte behalten, welche er sprechen soulte, sondern auch den Ausruf seines Lehrers; und als er deßehalb vor Cctavian gebracht wurde, freischte er zum Schrecken des Schuhmachers: "Sei gegrüßt, Casar Augustus, Herrscher der Welt! An dir habe ich Ocl und Mühe verloren!" Octavian mußte lachen und gewährte dem Schuster seine Bitte.

16. Bom Baumlein, bas anbre Blätter hat gewollt.

Es ift ein Bäumlein gestanden im Wald, in gutem und schlechtem Wetter; bas hat von unten bis oben nur Nabeln gehabt statt Blätter. Die Nabeln haben gestochen, das Bäumlein hat gesprochen:

Alle meine Rameraben baben icone Blatter an. Und ich babe nur Rabeln, Riemand fieht mich an. Durft' ich mir wunfchen,

mas ich wollt', municht' ich mir Blatter von lauter Golb.

Und über Nacht schläft's Bäumlein ein, und früh ift's aufgewacht: ba hatt' es goldene Blätter fein, bas war eine Pracht. Das Bäumlein spricht: nun bin ich ftol3; goldene Blätter hat kein Baum im Hol3.

Aber als es Abend warb, ging ein Jube burch ben Balb mit großem Sad und langem Bart. Der sieht die goldnen Blätter bald, er stedt' fie ein, geht eilends fort und läßt bas leere Baumlein bort.

Das Bäumlein spricht mit Grämen: meine goldnen Blätter bauern mich. Ich muß vor ben andern mich schämen, sie tragen so schönes Laub an sich. Durft' ich mir wunschen noch etwas, wünscht' ich mir Blätter von lauter Glas.

Und wieder schlief bas Bäumlein ein, und wieder fruh ift's aufgewacht: ba hatt' es glaferne Blätter fein — bas war eine Pracht. Das Bäumlein spricht: nun bin ich froh, tein Baum im Balde alizert so.

Das tam ein großer Birbelwind mit einem argen Better; ber fährt burch alle Bäume geschwind und tommt an bie gläsernen Blätter. Da lagen die Blätter von Glase gerbrochen in bem Grase.

Das Bäumlein spricht mit Trauern; mein Glas liegt in bem Staub; die andern Bäume dauern, mit ihrem grünen Laub. Wenn ich mir noch 'was wünschen soll, wünsch' ich mir grüne Blätter wohl.

Und abermal folice's Bäumlein ein und früh ift's aufgewacht:

ba hatt' es grune Blatter fein; bas Baumlein lacht und fpricht: nun hab' ich boch Blatter auch, bag ich mich nicht zu schämen brauch'.

Da tam mit vollem Guter bie alte Beis gesprungen, fie sucht fich Gras und Rrauter für ihre Jungen. Die ficht bas Laub und

fragt nicht viel - fie frift es ab mit Stumpf und Stiel.

Da war das Baumlein wieder leer. Es sprach nun zu fich selber: Ich begehre nun keiner Blätter mehr, weder grüner, noch rother, noch gelber; hatt ich nur meine Nadeln — ich wollte fie nicht tadeln.

Und traurig schlief bas Baumlein ein, und traurig ift es aufgewacht, ba besieht es fich im Sonnenschein und lacht und lacht. Und alle Baume lachen's aus; bas Baumlein macht sich nichts baraus.

Warum hat's Baumlein benn gelacht, und warum benn scine Kameraben? Es hat bekommen in einer Nacht wieder alle seine Nabeln, daß Jedermann es sehen kann. Geh 'naus, sieh's an, boch rühr's nicht an? Warum benn nicht? Weil's sticht.

Fr. Rüdert.

17. Der guche und ber Bolf.

Der Fuche und ber Bolf fprachen mit einander von ber Starte bes Menfchen. "Rein Thier," fagte jener, "tann ibm wiberfteben, er überwindet fle alle." "Wenn ich nur," erwiderte dieser "einmal einen Menfchen ju Geficht betame - ich wollte wohl auf ibn losgeben." "Wenn bu gern Schlage baben willft," meinte ber Fuche. "bagu tann ich bir icon belfen." Und er führte ibn am nachften Morgen hinaus an Die Landftrage. Rach einer Beile tam ein alter Golbat auf einer Rrude. "Ift bas etwa ein Denfch?" fragte ber Bolf. "Rein, bas ift einer gewesen," fagte ber Fuchs. Dann tam ein Heiner Junge, ber mit feinen Buchern in Die Schule ging. "Go ift bas mobl ein Menfch ?"- "Rein, bas will erft einer werben." Bulest tam ber Jager, Die Doppelbuchfe über bie Schulter geworfen, um auf bie Jago ju geben. "Run, ba tommt ein Menfch," fagte ber Fuchs; "auf ben mußt bu losgeben. 3ch aber will meine baut in Sicherheit bringen." Wolf lief nun auf ben Jager ju und wollte ibn angreifen. wie Schabe," bachte biefer, "bag ich blog Schrot, teine Rugel gelaben habe!" und er brannte bem Bolfe eines in's Geficht, bag es ihn gewaltig judte. Aber er ließ fich nicht abhalten und fiel ibn ein zweites Dal an. Da foog ibm ber Jager bie Labung aus dem andern Lause in's Gesicht, und es kam dem Wolfe vor wie Hagel und Donnerwetter. Als er aber noch nicht abließ, da zog der Jäger seinen Hirschlänger heraus und dieb dem Jsegrimm rechts und links über den Kopf, daß er blutig und heulend davon-rannte. "Aun, Bruder Wolf," fragte der Fuchs, als er ihn kommen sah, "wie dist du denn mit dem Menschen fertig geworden?" "Ach," flagte er, so habe ich mir die Stärke des Menschen doch nicht gedacht. Erst nahm er ein Blasrohr von der Schulter und blies dinein, daß mir Hören und Sehen verging; dann blies er nochmals hinein, das schmerzte ganz gewaltig. Inlett, als ich noch immer auf ihn losging, zog er eine blanke Rivpe aus dem Leibe und schlug mich damit in's Gesicht, daß mir grün und blau vor den Augen wurde." "Siehst du nun," sagte der Fuchs höhnisch, "was du für ein Prahlhaus bist?"

18. Man fann's nicht allen Leuten recht machen.

Ein Bauer wollte mit feinem Gobne in Die Stadt, um etliche Waaren einzufaufen, und nahm begwegen feinen Gfel lebig mit (fich). Unterwegs, ale fie neben bem Efel ber ju guge gingen, tam ein Reisender und rief : D ihr Thoren! ihr habt ein fo startes Thier, bas euch beibe recht wohl tragen konnte - und ibr lauft nebenber gu Fuge." "Er hat Recht," fagte ber Bauer, "tomm, mein Cobn, lag une beibe auffteigen." Und fie ftiegen auf ben Gel und ritten. Richt lange, und es tam ein anberer Reifender, ber fcbrie fcon von Beitem : "Schamt ihr euch nicht, ibr roben Gefellen, bağ ibr gugweit auffint ? 3br merbet bas arme Thier zugrunderichten." "Er hat nicht gang Unrecht!" fagte ber Alte, "wir wollen lieber bich ju Fuße geben laffen, und ich will reiten." Und fo thaten fie. Da nabte ein britter Banberemann und rebete ben Bauer an : "Dful Schanbe, alter Rerl, bift bu benn nicht groß und ftart genug, bag bu beinen armen Jungen ju Guffe einberlaufen läßt, mabrend bu felber geben tonnteft." "Run wohl," verfette ber Bater, "bu fannft ed auch einmal versuchen," und er lieg ben Buriden an feiner Ctatt reiten. Bulest fam noch ein Banberer und fprach : "Junge, wenn ich wie bu mare, ich ginge ju Fuße und ließe meinen alten Bater binauf; bu baft boch mobl gefunde Glieber?"

"Was nun? was sollen wir jest machen?" fragte ber Alte. "Wir sind beibe zu Fuß gegangen und haben beibe geritten; und bu sowohl, als ich habe allein geritten?"

Und fie überlegten fich's recht und banden bem Efel bie Border-

beine zusammen und die hinterbeine ebenfalls und stedten eine lange Stange burch, welche sie auf die Schulter nahmen und so ben Esel in die Stadt trugen. hier wurden sie natürlich brav ausgelacht.

So geht's, wenn man's allen Leuten recht machen will.

19. Rübezahl, ber Beift bes Riefengebirges.

Einst reiste ein Glaser über bas Gebirge und ward über die schwere Last des Glases, die er auf dem Rüden trug, müde und schaute sich daher um, wo er sich wohl hinsehen könnte. Rübezahl, der ihn beobachtete, vermerkte dies kaum, als er sich in einen runden Klop verwandelte. Der Glaser sah denselben nicht lange nachber im Wege liegen, ging mit frohem Muthe hin und setzte sich darauf. Doch die Freude dauerte nicht lange, denn kaum hatte er einige Zeit gesessen, so wälzte sich der Klop so geschwind unter ihm fort, daß der arme Glaser mit sammt seinem Glase zu Boden schug und es in tausend Stüde zerschellte.

Der betrübte Mann erhob sich von der Erde, blidte um sich, aber sah keinen Rlop mehr, auf dem er vorhin gesessen hatte. Da sing er an, bitterlich zu weinen und beseufzte mit herzlichen Rlagen den erlittenen Berluft; doch wandelte er seine Straße sort. Da gesellte sich Rübezahl in Gestalt eines Reisenden zu ihm und fragte ihn, was er doch so weine und worüber er ein Leid trage. Der Glaser erzählte ihm den ganzen Handel, wie er auf einem Blode gesessen, um sich auszuruhen; dieser habe sich schnell mit ihm umgedreht, sein ganzer Glasvorrath, wohl acht Thaler an Werth, sei zerbrochen, und der Rlop sei verschwunden. Er wisse nun nicht, wie er sich erholen und seinen Schaden zu gutem Ende bringen solle. Der mitseidige Berggeist tröstete ihn, sagte ihm, wer er sei, und daß er ihm den Possen gespielt habe; er solle aber gutes Muthes sein, denn sein Schaden solle vergütet werden.

Flugs verwandelte fich Rübezahl in einen Efel und gab bem Glafer den Befehl, ihn in einer Mühle am Fuße des Berges zu verkaufen, mit dem Gelde aber fich schnell von dannen zu machen. Der Glaser bestieg den verwandelten Berggeist sogleich und ritt ihn vom Gebirge hinunter zu der Mühle. Er zeigte ihn dem Müller und bot ihn für zehn Thaler feil. Für neun Ihaler erstand ihn dieser, der Glafer nahm ohne Säumen das Geld und machte sich davon. Das erkaufte Thier wurde in den Stall geführt, und der Rnecht legte ihm heu vor, aber Rübezahl sprach

sogleich: "Ich freffe tein hen, sondern lauter Gebratenes und Gebadenes." Dem Anechte sträubte sich das haar, er eilte zu seinem herrn und vertündete ihm die neue Mahr. Als der aber in den Stall trat, sand er nichts; benn der Esel und mit ihm die neun Thaler waren verschwunden. Aber dem Rüller geschahrecht, da er viele arme Leute betrogen hatte. So bestrafte Rübezahl geschene Unbill.

20. Der Binter.

Der Binter ift ein rechter Mann, ferufeft und auf bie Dauer : fein Bleifch fühlt fich wie Gifen an und ichent nicht fuß, nicht fauer. Er giebt fein bemb im Freien an und laft's vorber nicht marmen; er fpottet über Schmerz im Babn und Rrantbeit in Webarmen. Aus Blumen und aus Bogelfang weifi er fich nichts ju machen, haßt warmen Erant und warmen Rlang und alle warmen Sachen. Doch wenn bie Ruchfe bellen febr, wenne Sola im Dien fnittert, und um ben Dien Rnecht und herr bie banbe reibt und gittert; wenn Stein und Bein vor Froft gerbricht, und Teich und Geen frachen : Das flingt ibm gut, bas baft er nicht. bann will er tobt fich lachen. Gein Schlog von Gis liegt gang hinaus beim Rorbpol an bem Stranbe; boch hat er auch ein Sommerhaus im lieben Schweizerlande. Da ift er benn balb bort, balb bier, gut Regiment ju führen, und wenn er burchziebt. fteben wir und febn ibn an und - frieren. Claubius.

21. Der Solbat und bie Sternschnuppe.

Befanntlich fagt man, daß ein Stern schieße, wenn eine Sternschnuppe fällt; aber was man meint und was so aussieht, find nur Dunfte, die sich nicht sehr weit über uns in der irdischen Luft entzünden und wieder verlöschen. Die Sterne aber sind viele Millionen Meilen weit von uns entfernt. Jeder beobachtet seinen richtigen Lauf und hält auf die Minute ein, denn sie stehen unter einer scharsen Aussicht. Ein gewisser Soldat auf der Schildwache mußte die Betrachtung über das Beltgebäude im Kalender nie gelesen haben. Auf und ab und ab und auf in der Mitternacht machte er bald zum Zeitvertreib Abditionserempel, zählend die Ermunterungshiebe, die er bei verschiedenen schiedlichen Gelegenheiten schon eingethan hatte; bald betrachtete er zur Abwechslung die benachbarten häuser und die Thürme im Mondscheine des letten Viertels, unter andern auch den Sternthurm, auf welchem die Sternseber fich ausbalten und Acht baben, was

bei Rast am himmel geschieht, bamit fie es wiffen. Auf einmal ftedt einer von den Sternsehern ein Fernrohr heraus, ein Perspektiv, und schaut nach einem Sternlein hinaus. Der Soldat dachte: Bas will jeht der da oben mit seinem Blasrohre? Denn er sah das Perspektiv für ein Blasrohr an. Als er ihm eine Zeit lang undeweglich zugeschaut hatte, dachte er: Der zielt aber lange! Endlich schof ein Stern, wie man es nennt. Da gerieth der Goldat in Berwunderung und in Staunen. Ei, sagte er, der kanns! Rämlich er meinte, der Sternseher habe nach einen Sterne gezielt und ihn vom himmel heruntergeschossen, wie man einen Sperling vom Dache schieft. Der hat seinen Theil, der kommt nimmer! Also giebt es nicht nur Leute, die da meinen, daß die Sterne schießen, sondern Einer hat sogar gemeint, daß sie Sterne schießen, sondern Einer hat sogar gemeint, daß sie können geschossen werden.

22. Der Strobmann.

Ein Bauer batte einen gar iconen Beigenader, bie Aehren maren voll Rorner, und bie Rorner maren voll Mehl, und fie waren beinabe reif. Da tamen bie bofen Spapen und fielen ibm in feinen Beigen und fragen Die halbreifen Rorner, und wenn fie es fo fortgetrieben batten, fo batte ber Dann gar nichts betommen. Da ging er bes Morgens in aller Frube binaus, um auf biefe Spigbuben ju ichiegen, allein als er bintam, maren fle fcon ba gewesen, benn bie Spapen fteben noch fruber auf als bie Bauern. Und fie hatten ihm fcon wieber ein Stud Beigen ausgefreffen und fagen nun auf bes nachbars Ririchbaume und nafchten Ririden und larmten, als wenn fie fic über ibre Gpipbuberei freuten. Der Bauer fragte fich binter ben Ohren und befann fich, mas er machen follte, benn feinen guten Beigen wollte er ihnen boch nicht laffen. Auf einmal fiel ihm ein Mittel ein. Als er nach hause tam, nahm er einen Stod, so groß als ein Menfc, widelte Strob barum, bis er bid genug mar, und machte ibm zwei Arme, jog ibm bann feinen alten Rod an, feste ibm feinen alten but auf und gab ibm eine große Deitsche in Die band. Ale bie Spapen ichlafen gegangen maren, nahm er biefes Ungethum, trug es binaus und ftellte es mitten in feinen Beigenader, gerabe als wenn es ein lebenbiger Dann mare. andern Morgen, sobald bie Spapen aufwachten, flogen fie eiligft nach bem Ader, mo fie es fich gut fcmeden laffen wollten; aber als fie bintamen, flehe ba, ba ftand icon ber Bauer in feinem alten Rode und in feinem alten bute und brobte ibnen mit ber

Ì

1

Peitsche. Da es so geführlich aussah, getrauten fie fich nicht berbeignfliegen, fonbern lauerten in ber Rachbarfchaft, ob benn ber Deitschenmann gar nicht nach Sause geben murbe. Aber er aina nicht; fie mochten warten, fo lange fie wollten, er blieb immer fteben, und wenn ber Bind tam, fo fcwang er feine Deitsche fo boch, bag es ihnen ernftlich bange murbe. flogen fie mit hungrigem Magen nach hause; fie hofften aber, vielleicht wurde ber Bauer, ale er fo frube in bas gelb gegangen fei, fein Kenfter offen gelaffen baben ; und bann wollten fie fich über feine Rafe bermachen, welche er gewöhnlich ba trodnete. Aber bas betam ihnen noch übler. Als nämlich ber Bauer Die Spapen fo nach feinem offenen genfter lugen fab, verftedte er fich binter bie Thure, und ale nun die folimmen Rafebiebe bineinaeflogen maren und eben meinten, einen recht gludlichen gund gemacht zu haben, ba gog er bas genfter mit einem Saben au. und flebe ba, bie herren Spapen waren allesammt gefangen, und es ging ihnen, wie es allen Spitbuben geben muß.

Curtman.

23. Sier ift gegipft.

Benjamin Franklin nütte seinen Landeleuten, ben Rorbameritanern, nicht nur als Staatsmann, fonbern auch als Landmann bestrebte er fich, burch fein Beispiel ju nugen. Er benutte unter anderm ben Gips und erhielt baburch, mas jest jeber Bauer weiß, bamals aber noch wenigen befannt mar. - viel iconeren Rlee, als feine Rachbarn. Diefe aber wollten nicht glauben, bag bas Gipfen bie Urfache bes fconen Rlee's fei. Dies argerte Franklin, und er bachte anfange, nun, wenn ihr's nicht beffer haben wollt, fo lagt euern Riee ungegipft. Doch über Binter befann er fich anders, und im Fruhjahre mablte er einen Rleeader an ber Strafe aus, und ftreute in aller Stille bie Borte : "hier ift gegipft!" in mannegroßen Buchftaben mit Gips über ben Rlee, außerbem ließ er biefes Rleeftud ungegipft. Als nun fpater bie Leute vorbei tamen, faben fie bie buntlen fetten Streifen im Rlee, fingen an ju buchstabiren und brachten balb bie brei Borte beraus : "bier ift gegipft." Run manberte Alles an bem Ader bin, fab und las - und bag von jest an bie Belebrung wirlte, bas brauchen wir eigentlich nicht bingugufügen.

24. Strobhalm, Roble und Bobne. In einem Dorfe wohnte eine arme, alte Frau, bie batte ein Gericht Bohnen zusammengebracht und wollte fie tochen. machte auf ihrem Derbe ein Keuer jurecht, und bamit es besto beffer brennen follte, gundete fie es mit einer band voll Strob an. fie Die Bohnen in ben Topf fcuttete, entfiel ihr unbemertt eine, bie auf bem Boben neben einem Strobbalme zu liegen fam ; balb barnach fprang auch eine glübenbe Roble vom Berbe au ben beiben berab. Da fing ber Strobbalm an und sprach: "Liebe Freunde, von mannen tommt ibr ber ?" Die Roble antwortete : "3ch bin ju gutem Glude bem Feuer entsprungen, und batte ich bas nicht mit Bewalt burchgefest, fo war mir ber Tob gewiß, ich mare ju Afche verbrannt." Die Bohne fagte : "3ch bin auch noch mit beiler baut bavongefommen; aber batte mich bie Alte in ben Topf gebracht, ich mare ohne Barmbergigfeit ju Brei getocht worben, wie meine Rameraben." "Bare mir benn ein befferes Schidfal ju Theil geworben ?" fprach bas Strob, "alle meine Bruber bat bie alte Frau in Feuer und Rauch aufgeben laffen, fechzig bat fie auf einmal gepadt und ums Leben gebracht. Bludlicherweise bin ich ibr zwischen ben gingern burchgeschlüpft." "Bas follen wir aber nun anfangen ?" fprach bie Roble. meine," antwortete bie Bohne, "weil wir fo gludlich bem Tobe entronnen find, fo wollen wir uns als gute Gefellen gufammenhalten, und, bamit uns hier nicht wieder ein neues Unglud ereilt, gemeinschaftlich auswandern und in ein frembes Land gieben."

Der Borfdlag gefiel ben beiben anbern, und fie machten fic mit einander auf ben Beg. Bald aber tamen fie an einen fleinen Bach, und ba feine Brude ober fein Steg ba mar, fo mußten fie nicht, wie fie binuber tommen follten. Der Strobbalm fant guten Rath und fprach: "Ich will mich quer überlegen, fo tonnt ihr auf mir wie auf einer Brude hinübergeben." Der Strobbalm ftredte fich alfo von einem Ufer jum anbern, und bie Roble, bie von bipiger Ratur war, trippelte nach gang ted auf bie neugebaute Brude. Als fie aber in Die Mitte getommen mar und unter fich bas Baffer raufden borte, marb ihr boch Angft, fie blieb fteben und traute fich nicht weiter. Der Strobhalm aber fing an zu brennen, zerbrach in zwei Stude und fiel in ben Bach ; bie Roble rutschte nach, zischte, als fie in bas Baffer tam und gab ben Beift auf. Die Bobne, Die vorfichtiger Beife noch auf bem Ufer jurudgeblieben mar, mußte über bie Befdichte lachen, tonnte nicht aufhören und lachte fo gewaltig, bag fle gerplatte. war es ebenfalls um fie gefchehen, wenn nicht ju gutem Glude ein Schneiber, ber auf ber Banbericaft war, fic an bem Bache ausgeruht hatte. Weil er ein mitleibiges herz hatte, holte er Rabel und Zwirn heraus und nähete fie zusammen. Die Bohne bebantte fich bei ihm auf's schönste; ba er aber schwarzen Zwirn gebrancht hatte, so haben seit ber Zeit alle Bohnen eine schwarze Rath. Grimm.

25. Ergählung aus bem Morgenlanbe.

In ber Turtei trieb ein febr reicher und vornehmer Dann einen Armen, ber ibn um eine Bobltbat anflebte, mit Scheltworten und Schlägen von fich ab, und ale er ibn nicht mehr erreichen tonnte, warf er ibn noch mit einem Steine. Alle, Die es faben. verbroß es, aber Riemand tonnte errathen, warum ber arme Mann ben Stein aufbob und, ohne ein Wort ju fagen, in bie Tafche ftedte, und Riemand bachte baran, bag er ihn von nun an fo bei fich tragen murbe. Aber bas that er mirflich. Jahr und Tag verübte ber reiche Mann einen folechten Streich und murbe besmegen nicht nur feines Bermogens verluftig. fonbern mußte auch, nach bortiger Sitte, jur Schan und Schande rudwarts auf einen Efel gefest, burch bie Stadt reiten. Spott und Schimpf fehlte es nicht. Der Dann mit bem rathfelhaften Steine in ber Tafche fant unter ben Rufchauern eben auch ba und ertannte feinen Beleidiger. Jest fubr er fonell mit ber Sand in die Tafche; jest griff er nach bem Steine; jest bob er ibn icon in Die Sobe, um ibn wieber nach feinem Beleibiger au werfen. Aber wie von einem guten Beifte gewarnt, ließ er ibn wieder fallen und ging mit bewegtem Gefichte bavon.

Daraus kann man kernen erstens: Man soll im Glude nicht übermüthig, nicht unfreundlich und beleidigend gegen geringe und arme Renschen sein; benn es kann vor Nacht leicht anders werden, als es am frühen Morgen war, und: Wer dir als Freund nichts nüben kann, der kann vielleicht als Feind dir schaden. Zweitens: Man soll seinem Feinde keinen Stein in der Lasche und keine Rache im herzen nachtragen. Denn als der arme Mann den seinen auf die Erde sallen ließ und davon ging, sprach er zu sich selbst so: "Rache an diesem Feinde auszuüben, so lange er reich und glüdlich war, war thöricht und gefährlich; jeht, wo er unglüdlich ist, wäre es unwenschlich und schandlich."

3. D. Bebel.

26. Die Rube.

Es waren einmal zwei Brüber, bie waren Rriegelente, und ber

eine von ibnen war reich, ber andere arm. Da wollte ber arme fich aus feiner Roth belfen, jog ben Rriegerod aus und warb ein Bauer. Alfo grub und badte er fein Studden Ader und faete Ruben. Der Samen ging auf, und es muchs eine Rube, bie ward groß und ftart und ward jufebende bider und wollte gar nicht aufboren zu machfen, fo bag niemals mar folch eine Rube gesehen worben. Bulest mar fie fo groß, bag man fle auf einen Bagen legen mußte, um fle vom Plage ju bringen. Der Bauer mußte nicht, mas er bamit anfangen follte, und ob's fein Glud ober Unglud mare. Endlich bachte er: "Bertaufft bu fie, mas wirft bu Großes bafur betommen, und willft bu fie felber effen, fo thun die fleinen Ruben benfelben Dienft. Um beften ift's, bu bringft fie bem Ronige, und machft ibm ein Befchent bamit." Alfo lub er fie auf ben Wagen, fpannte feine Dofen vor, brachte fie an ben bof und ichentte fie bem Ronige. "Ei," fagte ber Ronig, "was für ein feltfam Ding ift bas ? Mir ift viel Bunberliches por bie Augen getommen, aber fo ein Ungethum noch nicht! Aus was für Samen mag bie gewachsen sein ? Dber bir gerath's allein, und bu bift ein Gludetind."- "Ach nein," fagte ber Bauer, "ein Gludefind bin ich nicht, ich bin nur ein armer Rriegsmann, ber fich nicht mehr nabren tonnte; barum bing ich ben Rriegerod an ben Nagel und baute bas Land. 3ch babe noch einen Bruber, ber ift reich und euch, herr Ronig, wohl befannt ; ich aber babe nichts und bin von aller Belt vergeffen."

Da empfand ber König Mitleid mit ihm und sprach: "Deiner Armuth sollst du überhoben sein und so von mir beschenkt werden, daß du wohl beinem reichen Bruder gleich tommst." Da schenkte er ihm viele Aeder, Wiesen und herben und machte ihn steinreich, so bas bes andern Bruders Reichthum bem seinen gar nicht konnte

verglichen werben.

Als biefer hörte, was fein Bruber mit einer einzigen Rube erworben hatte, beneibete er ihn und fann hin und her, wie er sich auch ein solches Glüd zuwenden könne. Er wollte es aber noch viel gescheiter anfangen, nahm sechs außerordentlich schine Pferde und brachte sie dem Könige. Er meinte nichts Anderes, als, der würde ihm ein viel größeres Gegengeschenkt machen; benn, hatte sein Bruder so viel für eine Rübe bekommen, was würde ihm für so schine Pferde nicht Alles werden.

Der Rönig lobte die Pferde über die Magen und ichien augerordentlich vergnügt über bas Geschent. "Aber," fprach er, "was für einen Dant foll ich euch für ein so treffliches Geschent 86. erweisen? Ich habe nichts in meiner Gewalt, bas an Seltenheit und wunderbarer Art diesen eblen Geschöpfen gleich fame. Doch halt!" rief er plöglich und winfte einem seiner Diener; "laß die große Rübe bringen, denn ich wüßte nichts, was feltener und außerordentlicher wäre; die will ich euch schenken." Also mußte der Reiche seines Bruders Rübe auf seinen Bagen legen und nach hause sahren laffen.

27. Der alte Sultan.

Es hatte ein Bauer einen treuen Bund, der Sultan hieß, der war alt geworden, und hatte alle Buhne verloren, so daß er nichts mehr fest paden tonnte. Bu einer Beit fand der Bauer mit seiner Frau vor der Baustoure und sprach : "den alten Sultan schieß morgen todt, der ift ju nichts mehr nut ... Die Frau, die Mitteld mit dem treuen Thiere hatte, antwortete : "da er uns so lange Jahre gedient hat und spride dei uns gehalten, so tonnen wir ihm wohl das Gnadenbrod geben." "Ei was," sage der Mann, "du bift nicht recht geschete, er hat teinen Jahn mehr im Raul, und tein Dieb färchert sich der ihm, er tann jest abgeben. Dat er uns gedienet, so dat er sein gutes Fressen dafür getriegt."

Der arme hund, der nicht weit davon in der Gonne ausgestredt lag, hatte alles mit angehört und war traurig, daß morgen sein lester Tag sein sollte. Er hatte einen guten Frund, das war der Wolf, ju dem schied er Abends hinaus in den Wald und klagte über das Schickal, das ihm bevorstände. "Hore, Gevatter," sagte der Bolf, "sei gures Muths, ich will dir aus deiner North heisen. Ich habe erwas ausgedacht. Worgen in aller Frihe geht dein herr mit seiner Frau ins den, und sie nehmen ihr kleines Aind mit, well niemand im Sause jurückbleibt. Sie pflegen das Rind während der Arbeit hinter die Sack in den Schatten zu legen: leg dich danneben, gleich als wolltest du es bewachen. Ich will dann aus dem Walde heraustraben und das Kind rauben, du must mir eistig nachspringen, als wolltest du mit es wieder abjagen. Ich lasse es fallen, und du bringst es den Eltern wieder zuräch, die glauben dann, du hättest es gerettet und sind viel zu danden, als daß sie dir ein Leid anthun sollten; im Gegentheil, du tommst in döllige Gnade, und sie werden es dir an uichts mehr feblen lassen."

Der Anschlag gefiel dem hund, und wie er ausgedacht war, so wurde er auch ausgeführt. Der Dater schrie, als er den Wolf mit seinem Rinde durche Feld laufen sate is des aber der alte Gultan jurikkbrache, da war er froh, fireichelte ibn man sagte : "dir foll tein Barchen gertamme werden, du war er froh, fireichelte ibn man stellen ulebil." Bu feiner Frau aber sprach er : "geh gleich beim, und toche dem alten Gultan einen Weckbrel, den braucht er nicht zu beißen, und bring das Ropftissen aus meinem Bette, das schent ich ihm zu seinem tager." Bon nun an hatte es der alte Gultan so gut, als er sich nur währschen tonnte. Bald bernach besucht ihn der Wolf und freute sich, daß alles so wohl gesungen war. "Aber, Gevatter," agte er, "du wirst doch ein Auge zubrächen, wenn ich dei Gelegenheit deinen derrn ein fertes Schaf weghole. Es wird einem heutzutage schwer sich durchzuschen, "Darauf rechne nicht," autworrere der hund, "meinem herrn delbe ich treu, das

barf ich niche jugeben." Der Bolf meinte, bas ware niche im Ernfte gesprochen, tam in ber Raufe berangeschlichen und wollte fic bas Schaf holen. Aber ber Bauer, bem ber treue Gutan bas Borbaben bes Bolfes berratten batte, pafte ihm auf und tammte ihm mit bem Dreschiegel garftig die Saure. Der Bolf mufte aus veiffen, schrie aber bem Sunde ju z "wart, du schiechter Gefelle, dafür sollst du balen."

Um andern Morgen fchitte ber Bolf bas Schwein, und ließ ben Sund binaus in ben Bald forbern, ba wollten fie ihre Sache ausmachen. Der alte Gultan tonnte teinen Beiffand finden ale eine Rate, die nur brei Beine batte, und ale fie julam. men binausgingen, bumpelte bie arme Rafe baber und firedte jugleich bor Schmera ben Schwang in die Bobe. Der Bolf und fein Beiftand waren fcon an Drt und Stelle : ale fie aber ihren Gegner baber tommen faben, meinten fie, er fabrte einen Sabel mit fich, weil fie ben aufgerichteten Schwang ber Rate bafur ansaben. Und wenn das arme Thier fo auf brei Beinen bupfte, dacten fie nicht anders, als es bobe jedesmal einen Stein auf und wollte bamit auf fie werfen. Da ward ihnen beiden augft, bas wilde Sowein vertroch fich ine laub, und ber Bolf fprang auf einen Baum. Der Bund und die Rate, ale fie berandamen, wunderten fich, baf fic niemand feben lief. Das wilbe Schwein aber batte fich im Laub nicht gang verfteden tonnen, fondern die Ohren ragten noch beraus. Bahrend Die Rate fich bedächtig umidaute, grinfie bas Schwein mit ben Dhren : Die Rate, welche meinte, es regte fic ba eine Maus, fprang barauf ju, und bif berghaft binein. Da erhob fic bas Schwein mit großem Beforei, lief fort und rief : "bort auf bem Baum ba fiet ber Schuldige." Der Bund und die Rate fcauten binauf und erblidten den Bolf, ber foamte fich, daß er fich fo furchtfam gezeigt hatte, und nahm von bem bund ben Brieden an.

Briber 3. u. 23. Grimm.

28. Frau Solle.

Gine Bittive hatte grei Tochter, babon war bie eine icon und fleifig, bie andere baflich und faul. Gie batte aber Die bafliche und faule, weil fie ibre rechte Tochter war, viel lieber, und die andere mufte alle Arbeit thun und ber Afdenputtel im Saufe fein. Das arme Madden mufte fich taglich auf Die große Strafe bei einem Brunnen feben und mußte fo biel fpinnen, bag ibm bas Blut aus ben Bingern fprang. Run trug es fich gu, baf bie Spule einmal gang blutig war, ba bucte es fic bamit in den Brunnen und wollte fie abwafden : fie fprang ihm aber aus ber Sand und fiel binab. Es weinte, lief jur Stiefmutter und ergablte ihr bas Unglad. Sie ichalt es befrig und war fo unbarmbergig, baf fie fprach : "baft du die Spule binunter fallen laffen, fo bol fie auch wieber berauf." Da ging bas Matchen ju bem Brunnen jurud und wufte nicht, was es aufungen follte, und in feiner Bergensangft fprang es in ben Brunnen binein, um bie Spule ju holen. Es berlor bie Befinnung, und ale es erwachte und wieber ju fich felber tam, war es auf einer iconen Biele : ta ichien die Sonne und waren viel taufend Blumen. Auf ber Biele ging es fort und tam ju einem Badofen, ber war voller Brob; bas Brob aber rief : "ad, gieb mich raus, fonft berbrenn ich, ich bin icon langft ausgebaden." Da trat es mit bem Brobichieber bergu und holte alles beraus. Danach ging es weiter und tam ju einem Baum, ber bing voll Mepfel, und rief ibm ant ... ad faletel mid. foartel mid, wir Mepfel find alle mit einander reif." Da foattelte es ben Baum. baf Die Bepfel fielen als reaneren fie, und fodertelte fo lange, bis teiner mebr sben war ; und ale es alle in einen Saufen jufammengelegt hatte, ging es wieber weiter. Enblich tam es au einem tleinen Saus, baraus gudte eine alte Frau : weil fie aber fo grobe Albne batte, ward ibm angft und es wollte fortlaufen. Die gies Rram aber rief ibm nach : "was farchreft bu bich, liebes Rind ? bleib bei mir, wenn bu affe Arbeit im Saufe orbentlich thun willft, fo foll bire gut gebn : nur mußt bu Miche geben, baf bu mein Bett gut machft und es fleifig auffchattelft, baf bie Rebern Giegen, bann foneit es in ber Belt; ich bin Die Fran Bolle." Beil Die Alte ibm fo ant jufprad, fo fafte fic bas Rabden ein Berg, willigte ein und beagb fich in ibrem Dienft. Es beforgte auch alles nach ihrer Bufriedenheit und fchttelte ihr bas Bect immer gewaltig auf, bag bie Jedern wie Schneefloden umber flogen; baffir hatte es auch ein gutes leben bei ihr, tein bofes Bort, und alle Tage Befottenes und Bebratenes. Run mar es eine Beitlang bei ber Rrau Golle, ba marb es traurig und wufte anfange feibit nicht, mas ibm fehlte: endlich mertre es, ball es Beimtoch mar : und ob es hier gleich biel taufendmal beffer mar als ju Saus, fo batte es boch ein Berlangen babin. Endlich fagte es zu ibr : "ich babe ben Sammer nach Sams triegt, und wenn es mir auch noch fo gut bier unten gebt, fo tann ich boch nicht lamger bleiben, ich muß wieder hinauf zu ben Meinigen." Die Frau Solle fagte : "es gefallt mir, bas bu wieder nach Saus verlangft, und weil bu mir fo treu gebient baft. fo will ich bich felbft wieder hinauf bringen." Gie nahm es darauf bei ber Sand und führte es bor ein groffes Thor. Das Thor ward aufgerhan, und wie bas Madden gerade barunter fant, fiel ein gewaltiger Golbregen, und alles Golb blieb an ibm bangen, fo baf es fiber und über babon bebedt ward. "Das follft bu baben. weil du fo fleiflig gewesen bif," fprach die Frau Solle, und gab ihm auch die Spule wieder, die ibm in ben Brunnen gefallen war. Darauf ward bas Thor verfchloffen, und bas Maden befand fich oben auf ber Belt, nicht weit von feiner Rutter Saus, und ale ee in den hof tam, fag der hahn auf dem Brunnen und rief:

"titeriti, unfere golbene Jungfrau ift wieber bie."

Da ging es hinein ju feiner Mutter, und weil es fo mit Gold bebatt autam, warb es gut aufgenommen und mufte alles erzählen.

Das Mabden erzählte alles, was ihm begegnet war, und als die Mutter borte, auf weiche Art es zu bem großen Neichthum getommen war, wollte fie der andern bafflichen und faulen Tochter gerne daffelbe Glad verschaffen. Sie mufte fich an den Brunnen sehen und spinnen; und damit ihre Spule blutig ward, flach fie fich in die Finger und zerfief fich die Jand an der Dornhede. Dann warf fie die Spule in den Brunnen und sprang seiber hinein. Sie tam, wie die andere, auf die solles und ging auf demselben Pfade weiter. Als sie zu dem Badofen gelangre, schrie das Brod wieder: "ach, zieh mich raus, zieh mich raus, sonft verdrenn ich, ich bin schon längst ausgedaden." Die Jaule aber antwortere: "da hatte ich luft mich schmuftig zu machen," und ging fert. Bald tam sie zu dem Apfelbaum, der rief: "ach, schrete mich, schöttel mich, wir Aepfel sind alle mit einander reif." Sie antwortere aber : "du tommst mit recht, es tonnte mit einer auf den Kopf fallen," und ging damit weiter. Als sie vor der Frau Dolle Saus tam, sürchere sie sich niche,

weil fie von ihren großen Sahnen icon gebore batte, und verdingte fich gleich zu ibr. Um erften Tag that fie fich Geivalt an, war fleifig und folgte ber Irau holle, wenn fie ihr etwas sagte, benn fie dachte an das viele Gold, das fie ihr Senten würde; am zweiten Tag aber fing sie schon an zu faullenzen, am dritten noch mehr, da wollte fie Morgens gar nicht auffiehen. Sie machte auch der Frau holle das Bett nicht, wie fiche gebahrte, und Schittelte es nicht, das die Febern aufstogen. Das ward die Frau holle bald made und sagte ihr den Dienst auf. Das war die Jaule wohl zu-frieden und meinte, nun würde der Goldregen tommen; die Frau holle sahle fahrte sie auch zu dem Thor; als sie aber darunter kand, ward fatt des Goldes ein großer Keffel voll Bech ausgeschlattet. "Das ist zur Belohnung deiner Dienste," sagte die Frau holle und schos das Ihor zu. Da tam die Jaule heim und war ganz mit Dech bebeckt, und der Jahn auf dem Brunnen, als er sie sab, rief:

"titeriti, unfere fomugige Jungfrau ift wieber bie."

Das Pech blieb aber an ihr hangen und wollte, fo lange fie lebre, niche abgeben. Briber J. u. 28. G rim m.

29. Das Riefenfpielzeug.

Im Elfas auf ber Burg Nibed, die an einem hoben Berg bei einem Wafferfall tiegt, waren die Ritter vor Beiten große Riefen. Einmal ging das Riefenfraulein berad ins Thal, wollte seben, wie es da unten ware, und tam die fust nach Daslach auf ein der dem Bald gelegenes Acerfeld, das gerade von dem Bauern bestellt ward. Es died vor Bervunderung stehen und scaute den Pflug, die Pferde und leute an, das ihr alles etwas Neues war. "Ei," sprach sie und ging berzu, "das nehme ich mir mit." Da twiete sie nieder zur Erde, spreitete ihre Schätze aus, strich mit der Dand über das Fold, sing alles zusammen und thats dinein. Run lief sie ganz vergungt nach Dans, den Kelsen humpfpringend; wo der Berg so jah ist, daß ein Rensch mithsant teetern mus, da that sie einen Schriet und war droben.

Der Mitrer faß gerad am Tifch, als fie einerat. "Et, mein Kind," sprach er, "was bringst du da? die Freude schaue bir ja aus den Augen heraus." Sie machte geschwind ihre Schärze auf und ließ ihn hinein schen. "Bas haft du so Zappeliches darin?" "Et. Baer, gar zu artiges Spieldingt so was Schänes dah ich mein lebtag noch nicht gebade." Darauf nahm fie eins nach dem andern heraus und sellte es auf den Aisch e Denauf nahm fie eins nach dem andern heraus und stellte es auf den Aisch e Dflug, die Bauern mit ibren Pferden; ließ herum, schaute es au, lacher und schüg vor Freude in die Hande, wie sich das teine Wesen daure hin und ber dewegte. Der Bater aber sprach ind, das ift tein Spielzeug, da hast du was Schönes angestiftet! Seh nur gleich und erags wieder hinab ins Thal." Das Fraulein weinte, es dalf aber niche. "Rie ist der Bauer tein Epielzeug," sagte der Auleiter ernstbaft, "ich leid's nicht, daß du mir murrst, tram alles sacher wieder ein und erag's an den nämlichen Plat, wo du's genommen hast. Baut der Bauer nicht sein Ackerschape gelennen delsennes

Braber 3. u. 23. Grimm.

30. Die Sachfen und bie Thuringer.

Die Gadfen jogen aus und tamen mit ihren Schiffen an ben Ort, ber Sabolaba heifit, ba waren ihnen die Landeseinwohner, die Thuringer, juwider und firitren heftig. Allein Die Gachsen behaupteten ben Safen, und es wurde ein Bund geichloffen : bie Sadfen follten taufen und bertaufen tonnen, mas fie beliebren, aber abfieben bon Menfchenmord und lanberraub. Diefer Ariede murbe nun auch biele Tage gehalten. Ale aber ben Sachfen Belb fehlte, bachten fie, bas Bunbnis mare unnit. Da gefcab, das einer ihrer Sanglinge aus den Schiffen ans land trat, mit bielem Gold beladen, mit galdenen Retten und galdenen Spangen. Gin Thuringer begegnete biefem und fprach : "was tragf bu fo viel Golb an beinem ausgehungerten Salfe ?" - .. Ich fuche Raufer." antwortete ber Sachfe, .. und trage bies Bold bloß bee hungere halben, ben ich leibe; wie follte ich mich an Gold vergnagen !" Der Thuringer fragte, toas es gelten folle. Sierauf fagte ber andere : "mir lieat nichts Daran, bu follft mir geben, mas bu felber magk." Lachelnd erwiederte jener : "fo will ich dir daffir beinen Rod mit Erde fallen ;" benn es lag an bem Ort gerade viel Erbe angehauft. Der Sachse bielt alfo feinen Rod auf, empfing bie Erbe und gab bas Gold bin : fie gingen bou einander, ihres Sandels beibe frob. Die Tharinger lobten ben Ihrigen, bag er um fo folechten Preis fo vieles Gold erlangt ; ber Sachfe aber tam mit ber Erbe gu ben Schiffen und rief, ba ibn etliche thoricht ichalcen, Die Sadfen ibm ju folgen auf: balb marben fie feine Iborbeit aut beifen. Die fie ibm nun nachfolgten, nabm er Erbe, freute fie fein banne auf die Relber aus, und bebedte einen grofen Raum. Die Thuringer aber, welche bas faben, foidten Gefandre und tlagten aber Friedensbrud. Die Sachfen liefen fagen : "ben Bund haben wir jederzeit und beilig gehalten, bas land, bas wir mit unferem Golb erworben, wollen wir rubig behalten ober es mit ben Baffen bertheibigen." Sierauf verwanfdren die Ginwohner bas Gold, und ben fie targlich gepriefen batten, bielten fie für ihres Unbeiles Urfacher. Die Tharinger rennten nun jornig auf Die Sachfen ein, Die Guchfen aber behaupteten burd bas Recht bes Rrieges bas umliegende Land. Rachbem von beiden Theilen lange und heftig geftritten war, und die Tharinger unterlagen, fo tamen fie aberein, an einem beftimmten Ort, jeboch ohne Baffen, bes neuen Friedens wegen jufammen ju geben. Bei ben Sachfen nun war es bergebrachte Sitte, große Reffer ju tragen, wie die Ungeln noch thun, und biefe nahmen fie unter ihren Rleibern auch mit in die Berfammlung. Mie bie Sachfen ihre Beinde fo wehrlos und ihre Fürften alle gegenwartig faben, achteten fie bie Gelegenheit für gut, um fic bes gangen landes ju bemachtigen, überfielen bie Thuringer unberfebens mit ihren Meffern und erlegten fie alle, baf auch nicht einer überblieb. Daburch erlangten die Sachsen groffen Ruf, und die benachbarten Bolter buben fie ju fardten an. Und Berfchiedene leiten ben Ramen von ber That ab, weil folde Reffer im ihrer Sprace Sachfe bieffen.

Briber 3. u. 2B. Grimm.

31. Der Dom ju Roln.

Als ber Bau bes Doms ju Roin begann, wollte man gerade auch eine Mafferteitung ausfihren. Da bermaß fich ber Baumeifter und fprach : "eber foll bas grofie Ranfter vollendet fein, als ber geringe Bafferbau!" Das fprach er, weil er alleim

mufte, wo ju biefem bie Quelle fprang, und er bas Bebeimnif niemanden als feiner Brau entdedt, ibr aber jugleich bei leib und leben geboten batte, es wohl ju bewahren. Der Bau bee Dome fing an und batte guten Fortgang, aber die Bafferleitung tonnte nicht angefungen werben, weil ber Meifter vergeblich Die Quelle fuchte. Ale beffen Grau nun fab, wie ber fic barüber gramte, verfprach fie ibm Gulfe, ging ju ber Grau bes andern Baumeifters und lodte ihr durch lift endlich bas Bebeimnif beraus, wornach die Quelle gerade unter dem Thurm des Manftere fprang : ja, jene bezeichnete felbft ben Stein, ber fie gubedte. Run war ihrem Ranne geholfen : folgenden Tages ging er ju dem Stein, flopfte barauf, und fogleich brang bas Baf. fer berbor. Als ber Baumeifter fein Bebeimniß berrathen fah und mit feinem flob gen Berfpreden ju Schanden werden mußte, weil die Bafferleitung ohne Bweifel nun in turger Beit gu Stande tam, berfluchte er gornig ben Bau, baf er nimmermebr follte bollendet werden, und farb barauf bor Traurigfeit. Sat man fortbanen wollen, fo war, was an einem Zag jufammengebracht und aufgemauert fand, am andern Rorgen eingefallen, und wenn es noch fo gut jufammengefigt war und aufs feftefte bafrete, alfo bag bon nun an tein einziger Stein mehr bingugetommen ift.

Undere erablen abweichend. Der Teufel war neibig auf bas fiolee und beilige Bert, bas herr Gerhard, ber Baumeifter, erfunden und begonnen batte. Um bod nicht gang leer babei auszugeben, ober gar bie Bollenbung bes Dome noch ju berhinbern, ging er mit herrn Gerhard bie Bette ein : er wolle eber einen Bach von Trier nach Roln, bis an ben Dom, geleiten, als Berr Gerbard feinen Bau vollenbet baben: bod maffe ibm, wenn er gewanne, bes Meiftere Seele jugeboren. Berr Berbard war nicht faumig, aber ber Teufel tann teufeleschnell arbeiten. Gines Tages flieg ber Deifter auf ben Thurm, ber icon fo boch war, als er noch beutzutag ift, und bas erfte, mas er bon oben berab gewahrte, waren Enten, Die ichnatternb bon bem Bad, ben ber Teufel berbeigeleitet batte, aufflogen. Da fprach ber Reifter in grimmem Born : ,,,ivar haft bu Teufel mich gewonnen, boch follft bu mich nicht lebendig haben!" Go fprach er und fidrite fich Sale aber Ropf ben Thurm berumter, in Beftalt eines Bundes fprang fonell ber Zenfel hintennad, wie beibes in Stein gebauen noch wirtlich am Thurme ju ichauen ift. Much foll, wenn man fic mit bem Dhr auf die Erbe legt, noch heute ber Bach ju boren fein, wie er unter bem Dome wegflieft.

Braber 3. u. 2B. Grimm.

32. Afchenputtel.

Einem reichen Manne bem ward seine Frau trant, und als sie fublte, daß ihr Ende beran tam, rief sie ihr einziges Töcherlein ju sich ans Bett und sprach : "liebes Kind, bleibe fromm und gut, so wird dir ber liebe Gort immer beistehen, und ich will vom himmel auf dich berad bliden und will um dich sein." Darauf that sie Augen zu und verschieb. Das Radden ging jeden Tag hinaus zu dem Grabe der Mutter und weinen, und blieb fromm und gut. Als der Binter tam, bedte der Schnee ein weises Tächlein auf das Grab, und als die Sonne im Frühiahr es wieder ber beradgezogen hatte, nahm sich der Mann eine andere Frau.

Die Fran hatte zwei Toderr mit ins Saus gebracht, die foon und weifi von Ungeficht waren, aber garftig und fowarz von Bergen. Da ging eine folimme Beit fur

bas arme Scieftind an. "Soll das alberne Geschopf bei uns in der Stube ficen ?"
(prachen fie, "wer Brod effen will, muß es berdienen; hinaus mit der Rüchenmagd."
Sie nahmen ihm seine schnen Rieiber toeg, jogen ihm einen grauen alten Airect an, gaben ihm bolgerne Schube, lachten es dann aus und fichren es in die Rüche. Da musfre es so schwere Arbeit thun, frich vor Tag auffieden, Wassfrer ragen, Jeuer ammachen, tochen und waschen. Obendrein thaten ihm die Schwestern alles erstunliche herzeteid an, versporteren es und schkreten ihm die Erdsen und linsen in die Afche, so daß es fien und sie twieder auslesen mußte. Abende, wenn es sich midde gearbeiter hater, kam es in tein Bett, sondern musfre sich neben den herd in die Asche Ergen. Und weil es darum immer standig und schwaftig aussch, nannten sie es

Es trug fich ju, daß der Bater einmal in die Meffe zieben wollte, da fragte er die beiden Stieftscher, was er ihnen mitbringen sollte. "Schone Aleiter," fagte die eine; "Berlen und Goeiffeine," die ziveite. "Aber du, Aschenvertel," sprach er, "was wills du haben?"—, Bater, das erfte Reis, das euch auf eurem heimweg an den hut fibft, das brecht fit mich ab." Er taufte nun für die beiden Stiefschweften schlene, Beider, Berlen und Ereffeine, und auf dem Rüctweg, als er durch einen grünen Busch rite, freifte ihn ein Haleiteris und fließ ihm den hut ab. Da brach er das Reis annt nahm es mit. Als er nach haus tam, gab er den Stiefschern, was sie sich gewünsche hatten, und bem Aschenvert gab er das Reis don dem haselbusch. Aschenvertel bandte ihm, ging zu seiner Autrer Grab und pflanzte das Reis darauf, und weinte so sehr, daß es don seinen Ibranen begoffen ward. Es wuchs aber und ward ein sichen Baum. Alchenvertel ging alle Tage dreimal darunter, weinte und betete, und allemal tam ein weises Wöglein auf den Baum, und das Böglein warf ibm berad, was es sich unt wünscher.

Es begab fich aber, baf ber König ein Feft anftellte, das brei Tage dauern follte, und woju alle schönen Jungfrauen im kande eingelaben wurden, damit sich sein Sohn eine Braut aussuchen mochte. Die zwei Griesschen, als sie hörren, daf sie auch dabei erscheinen sollten, waren guter Dinge, riefen Aschenvertel und spraschen; "tamm' uns die Haare, burfte uns die Schube und mache uns die Schallen sest, weil es auch gern jum Lang mirgegangen war, und dat die Stiesmutter, sie mochte es ihm erlauben. "Du Aschenputrel, voll Staub und Schmud," sprach sie, "du wills jur Hochzeit und haft teine Reider! willst tanzen und haft teine Schube!" Als es aber mit Bitten andielt, sprach sie endlich: "da babe ich die eine Schube!" Als es aber mit Bitten andielt, sprach sie endlich: "da babe ich die eine Schube!" Das Mäden ging durch die Hinterntstat nach gelesen hast, so solls mitgeben." Das Mäden ging durch die Hinterricht nach dem Garren und rieft "ihr zahmen Täubchen, ihr Turteltaubchen, all ihr Böglein unter dem Himmel, tommt und helft mit lesen.

Die guten ine Topfden, die flechten ine Rropfden."

Da tamen jum Richenfenfter zivet weife Taubchen herein und banach bie Turteltaubchen, und endlich ichwirrten und ichwarmten alle Boglein unter bem himmel berein und liefen fich um die Alche nieder. Und die Taubchen nickten mir ben Asspie den und fingen an pit, pit, pit, pit, und ba fingen die abrigen auch au pit, pit, pit, pit, und lafen alle guten Körnlein in die Schffel. Wie eine Stunde berum war, waren fie foon forig und flogen alle wieder hinaus. Da bundte bas Maden die Schaffel der Stiefmutter und freute fich und glaubte, es darfte nun mit auf die Sochzie geben. Aber fie sprach: "mein, Afchenputtel, du tommft doch niche mit, du haft teine Rielber und taunft nicht tangen." Als es nun weinet, fprach fie : "wenn du mir zwei Schaffeln voll insen in einer Stunde aus der Afche rein lesen tannft, so sollt du mitgeben," und dachte : "das tann es ja nimmermehr." Nun schäteter fie zwei Schaffeln Linsen in die Afche; aber das Maden ging durch die Sinterthar nach dem Gatten und rief: "ibr zahmen Täubden, ibr Turreickaubchen, all ihr Bog-lein unter dem Simmel, tommt und beist mir lesen,

•

ì

ı

ŧ

ı

ŧ

ŧ

Ì

ŧ

t

1

1

t

1

ı

١

1

t

t

1

1

ı

i

ı

Die guten ine Tapfchen, Die fchlechten ine Rropfchen."

Mie nun niemand mehr babeim war, ging Michemputtel ju feiner Rutter Grab unter ben Saleibaum und rief :

"Baumden, rattel bich und fcattel bich, Birf Gold und Silber aber mich."

Da warf ihm ber Bogel ein golben und filbern Rleid herunter, und mit Geide und Gilber ausgeflicte Pantoffeln. Da jog es bas Rleid an und ging jur hochzeit. Seine Schweftern aber und die Stiefmutter kannten es nicht und meinten, es mafte eine fremde Ronigsrochter fein, so soch est in bem goldnen Rleide aus. An Afchenputtel bachen fie gar niche und glaubern, es läge babeim im Schmust. Der Rönigssohn kam ihm entgegen, nahm es bei der Sand und taugte mit ihm. Er wollte auch mit sonft niemand tangen, also baf er ihm die hand nicht sos lief, und wenn ein anderer kam, es aufzufordern, sprach er: "das ift meine Tängerin."

Es tangte bis es Abend war, da wollte es nach Saufe geben. Der Königesohn aber sprach : "ich gebe mit und begleite bich," benn er wollte seben, wem das sobne Maden angebore. Sie entwissert aus mad fagte ihm, das Taubenhaus. Nun warrete ber Königesohn bis der Bater tau und sagte ihm, das fremde Radden fei in das Taubenhaus gesprungen. Da beche er: "sollte es Alchenputrel sein il" und sie musten ihm Art und Sacken bringen, damit er das Taubenhaus enrivei schlagen tonnte; aber es war niemand darin. Und als sie ins Saus tamen, lag Afchenputrel in seinen schweigen Reibern in der Ache bei und ein trübes Dellampchen brannte im Schornstein; benn Afchenputrel war geschwind aus dem Taubenbaus binten beradgesprungen und war zu dem Sackbaumchen gelausen, d batte es die sobne Aleider ausgarban und ausse Grab geloge, und der Wogel batte sie wieder

484 GERMAN GRAMMAR. Pontouving.

toeggenomen, und dann hatte es sid in seinem graush Kittelden in die Käche gur
Risch erseit.

Um andern Tag, ale bae fieft bon neuem aubub, und die Eltern und Stieffcwe-fiern wieber fort waren, ging Afdenputtel ju dem Safelbaum und fprach:

"Baumden, ractel bid und fontrel bid, Birf Gold und Silber aber mid."

Du mitt ber Bogel ein noch biel fiolgeres Rleib berab, als am vorigen Lag. Und ale es mit biefem Rleibe auf ber Docheit erfcbien, erffaunte jebermann aber feine Schönheit. Der Ronigefohn aber batte gewartet, bis es tam, nahm es gleich bei ber Sand, und tangte nur allein mit ibm. Benn bie anbern tamen und es aufforberten, fprach er : "bas ift meine Tanserin." Als es nun Abend wat, wollte es fort, und ber Ronigefobn ging ibm nach und wollte feben, in welches Saus es ging; aber es fprang ibm fort und in ben Barten binter bem Saus. Darin fant ein ichoner groffer Baum, an bem bie berrlichften Birnen bingen; auf ben tletterte es bebend wie ein Eichbornden, und der Ronigesohn wußte nicht, wo es hingetommen war. Er martete aber bie ber Bater tam und fprach ju ibm : "bas frembe Rabden ift mir entwifcht und ich glaube, es ift auf ben Birnbanm gefprungen." Der Bater bachte : "follte es Afdenputtel fein ?" und ließ fic bie Art bolen und bieb ben Baum um, aber es war niemand barauf. Und als fie in die Rache tamen, lag Afdenputtel ba in ber Afde, wie fonft aud, benn es war auf ber andern Seite bom Baum berabgefprungen, batte bem Bogel auf bem Safelbaumden Die foonen Rleider twieber gebracht und fein graues Rittelden angezogen.

Um britten Tag, ale die Eltern und Schweftern fort waren, ging Afcenpurrel wieder ju feiner Mutter Grab und fprach ju bem Baumden :

"Baumden, rattel bich und fouttel bich, Birf Golb und Silber aber mich."

Run warf ibm ber Bogel ein Rleid berab, das war fo prachtig und gianjend, wie es noch teins gehabt hatte, und die Pantoffeln waren gang golden. Als es in bem Rleid ju der Dochzeit tam, wußten fie alle nicht, was fie bor Berwunderung fagen follen. Der Ronigsfohn tangte gang allein mit ibm, und wenn es einer aufforderte, fprach er : "das ift meine Tangerin."

Als es nun Abend war, wollte Afchenputrel fort und ber Königssohn wollte es begleiten; aber es entsprang ihm so geschwind, daß er nicht folgen tonnte. Der Königssohn hatte aber eine Lift gebraucht und hatte die gange Treppe mir Bech be-ftreichen lussen, das es binabsprang, der linte Pantossel des Raddens bangen geblieben. Der Königssohn hob ihn aus; und er war tlein und zierlich und gunz golden. Um nächsten Morgen ging er damit zu dem Rann und sierlich und gunz golden. Um nächsten Morgen ging er damit zu dem Rann und sagte zu ihm, teine andere sollte seine Gemablin werden als die, an deren Ius dieser goldene Schub paster. Da freuren sich die beiden Schvestern, denn sie hatten schwe Idse. Die Alteste ging mit dem Schub in die Rammer und wollte ihn anprodiren und die Mutter saus des ihr zu kern sie konnte mit der großen gebe niche hineintommen, und der Schub war ihr zu tlein; da reichte ihr die Mutter ein Messer zu Sussen just zu geben." Das Rädchen hieb die Bebe ab, wahngte den Ius in den Schub, verbis

den Schmerz und ging heraus jum Königssohn. Der nahm fie als feine Braut aufs Pferd und ritt mit ihr fort. Sie mußten aber an dem Grabe borbei, da fagen die zwei Taubon auf dem Safelbaumden und riefen :

"rude bi gud, rude bi gud, Blut ift im Soud (Sout) : ber Soud ift ju tiein, Die rechee Braut fite noch babeim."

Da blidte er auf ibren Juf und sah, wie das Blut herausquoll. Er wendere sein Pferd um, brachte die fulsche Braut wieder nach Saus und sagte, das ware nicht die rechte, die andere Schwester sollte den Schub anziehen. Da ging diese in die Rammer und tam mit den Jeben gladlich in den Schub, aber die Jerse war zu groß. Da reichte ihr die Mutter ein Messer und sprach: "hau ein Stud von der Jerse ab; wenn du Abugin bist, draucht du nicht mehr zu Just zu geben." Das Mäden dies ein Stud von der Ferse ab, zwangte den Just zu geben." Das Mäden dies ein Stud von der Ferse ab, zwangte den Auf in den Schub, verdiß den Schwerz und ging heraus zum Königssohn. Da nahm er sie als seine Braut auss Pferd und ritt mit ihr fort. Als sie an dem Sassbaumen verbeitamen, sasen die zwei Tändeden darauf und riefen:

"rude bi gud, rude bi gud, Blut ift im Schud: ber Schud ift ju tlein, bie rechte Braut fift noch babeim."

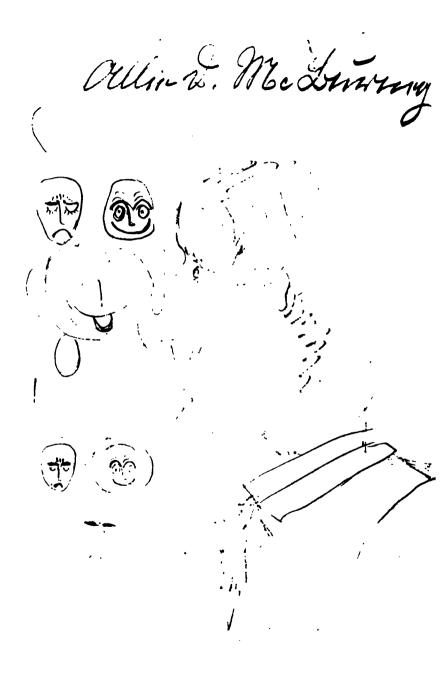
Er blidte nieder auf ihren Auf und fab, wie bas Blut aus dem Soub quoll und an ben weißen Strampfen gang roth beraufgefliegen mar. Da wendete er fein Pferb und brachee bie falfche Braut wieber nach Saus. "Das ift auch niche bie rechte," fprach er, "habt ihr teine andere Tochter ?" "Rein," fagte ber Mann, "nur bon meiner berfforbenen grau ift noch ein tleines berbuttetes Afchenputtel ba, bas tann nnmöglich die Braut fein." Der Ronigefohn fprach, er follte es beraufschiden, Die Mutter aber antwortete : "ach nein, bas ift biel ju fcmubig, bas barf fich nicht feben laffen." Er wollte es aber burdaus baben, und Afdenputtel mufte gerufen werben. Da wuld es fich erft Sande und Ungeficht rein, ging bann bin und neigte fich vor bem Ronigefohn, ber ihm ben goldenen Schub reichte. Da jog es ben linten Anf aus bem ichweren Solsichub, feste ibn auf ben goldenen Bantoffel und brudte ein wenig, fo fand es darin, als war' er ihm angegoffen. Und als es das Geficht erhob, ba ertanute er es wieber und fprach : "bas ift bie rechte Braut!" Die Stief. mutter und die beiben Schweffern erfdraten und wurden bleich bor Merger; er aber nahm Afdenputtel aufe Pferd und ritt mit ibm fort. Ale fie an bem Safelbaumden porbeitamen, riefen die zwei weifen Taubden :

"rude bi gud, rude bi gud, tein Blut ift im Soud : ber Soud ift nicht ju tlein, bie rechte Braur bie fibrt er heim."

Und als fie das gerufen hatten, tamen fie beibe herabgeflogen und festen fic dem Afchenputtel auf die Schultern, eine reches, die andere lints, und blieben da fisen.

Als die Sochzeit mit dem Königssohn sollte gehalten werben, tamen die falschen Schweftern, wollten fich einschmeicheln und Theil an seinem Glad nehmen. Als die Brautleute nun zur Airche gingen, war die alteste zur rechten, die jungste zur ihre Beite, da pickten die Tauben einer jeden das eine Auge aus; bernach, als sie berausgingen, war die alteste zur linten und die jungste zur rechten, da pickten die Tauben einer jeden das andere Auge aus : nud waren sie also für ihre Bosheit und Galfcheit mit Blindheit auf ihr bedag gestraft.

Braber 3. u. 2B. Grimm.



INDEX.

N. B. The numbers refer to pages, except those in parentheses, which refer to

Abstract nouns, their terminations, 82 - 86; their articles, 166.

Accessory sentences, 818; substantive, 390 - 892; adjective, 393 - 895; adverbial, 895 - 400.

Accompanying circumstances of an action, 899, 888, 404, 405.

According to, transl., 296.

Accusative, governed by prepositions, 299-302, 307; governed by the pred-icate, 361-864; double, 868, 864, 874, 875; with intransitives, 864; of measure, age, weight, distance, 864; of time, 879 – 882; with lang affixed, 882.

Active, different in meaning in Germ. and Engl., 119, 830.

Active verbs, which may be turned into passive, 881, 882.

Addressing persons, 284.
Adjectives, their declension, 211 – 215, 219; predicative and attributive, 211; used only as predicates, 215, 216; used only as attributes, 215, 216; indeclinable in et, 215; degrees of comparison, 219; not susceptible of degrees of comparison, 222, 225; not susceptible of superlative, 228; with irregular comparative and superlative, 224.

Adverbial objects, 877 - 887; of locality, 877 – 879; of time, 879 – 882; of manner, 882; of cause, motive, means, purpose, 888 - 886; of effect, 887; their arrangement with regard to accent, 388.

Adverbs, 276-296; formed from adectives (predic.), 277; with lich and lings, 277, 278. — Of manner, 279; 87 🕈

those in end, 280; irregular comparat. and superl., 280; by the prefix 44, 280. — Of place, her, hin, 281, 282; of locality or repose, 288; of direction, 284; of originating, 285.—Of time, 286; of causality, 288; of intensity and modality, 288, 299, 856. - Accent of adverbs, 289; peculiarities of their use, 289 - 296; fo - wie, ale, ebenfo, andere, ju, wohl, 289; eben, jeft, nun, nunmehr, gerade, gern, lieber, am liebften, erft, icon, bann, 290, 291; noch, doch, 291; auch, ja, benn, fonft, 292; erwa, irgend, ba, bann, giemlich, eber, vielmehr, beinabe, faft, 298; gar, fogar, recht, 294; mur, blof, lauter, 294; ale, wie, gleich, 296; einmal, immer, immerbin, meinetwegen, fort, 296; mit, lang, binnudwieder, je, jemals, je nachdem, 296. — Used as predicates, 829.

After, as a preposition, an adverb, and a conjunction, 811; as a preposition, 298; as an adverb, 283 - 287; as a conjunction, 809, 811.

All, transl., 271 (he is all energy, all of us, 271).

Am scriting, transl., 850. Am going to, 852.

Anglicisms, with a, as a Schiller, etc., 167; with article omitted, as virtue is no illusion, 168; with adverbs of all kinds, 281 - 296; each, each other, every, 270; first, 390; he solo, 260; his every cent, 270; I hope, 291; it-self, 286; like, 296; mine, thine, etc., 238, 239 (a friend of mine, 240); much the best, 275; no such thing, 245; now that, 897; numerals, 262–269, 276; INDEX.

one James Buchanan, 280; one anys, people say, 257; pray, 292; some wine, 255; I have some, 255, 273; somebody, something, 256, 257; such, 244; such as, 245, 254; such with adject., 245; there is, there are, 236; the bearer of this, 244; then, 290, 292; very (the very best), 290; who, when elliptically used, 251.

Another, transl., 267.
Answering to questions, 842.
Any, anybody, anything, transl., 256, 267, 269, 270, 278, 274.

Apprehension expressed, 848.

Apposition, 819, 856; when preceding its substantive, the appositive only is inflected, 857.

Article, definite, declension of, 160; use of, 161 - 167; contracted with prepos., 161; with proper nouns, 164, 165; after both and all, 163; serves for possess. pronoun, 240. — Indefinite, declension of, 161; use of, 161 - 167.

Articles, their use with names of materials, 166; with collectives, 166; with abstract nouns, 166.

As, transl., 288 – 291, 877, 897; as much more, as many again, 275; inasmuch as, in as far as, 898.

At (prepos.), transl., 280, 281, 286 – 289, 297, 801.

Attributive group of the sentence, 826, 256 - 260.

Attributive adjective, 215, 216, 356, 357.

"genitive, 357; is replaced by preposition, 357, 358.

Auxiliary verb paten, conjug. 182; use of, 151, 152.

" fein, conjug., 128; use of, 151, 152.

" omitted in poetry, 851; in the perfect passive, 851.

Auxiliary verbs of mood, conjug., 149, 150; not defective, as in Eng., 149; irregular partic, 150; infinitive omitted after them, 328; express possibility or necessity: fönnen, 243; bärfen and mögen, 348; måffen, teolen, felten, 344; laffen, 345; laffen, feben, fören, beifen, used thus, 150.

Before, as a preposition, an adverb, and a conjunction, \$11; as a preposition, \$01; as an adverb, 288 - 286, 290; as a conjunction, 309, \$11.

Be sure, 292.

Both — and, transl., 275, 813; both of us, 275; both these, 275.

But, transl., 318, 400.

Came near (losing), 294.
Can, could, transl., 343, 353.
Cannot but, cannot help (doing), 343.
Comparative proper, improper, and compound, 220.

Comparison of adjectives, 219 - 224.
Complements of comparative and superlative, 223, 228, 228.

Composition, anomalous, of substantive, 105.

Compound words, formed, 90 – 105. Compound substantives, formed, 91; gender, 90, 186; with Girr, Begierde, Eust, Art, Annbe, 91; with Ane, Urr, Auss, Aberr, Afterr, Crys, Rifs., 98; their accent, 98; with Ibell, 189; Rai and Rabi, 175; CL, 177.

Compound adjectives, with rrich, bell, leer, los, massing, rece, batcin, ferring, une, and otherwise, 94; their accent, 94.

Compound adverbs and prepositions, 95; their accent, 95.

Compound verbs, their formation, 96; with nouns, 96, 157; with adverte and prepositions, 96; with inseparable prefixes, ge, 96; with be, ent-, 97, 862; with emp-, 98; er-, 98; with per-, 98; with ser-, 99; with mif-, 99, and their accent, 99, 159; with boll., 99, and their accent, 99, 159; with miter, 99, and their accent, 99, 159; with mieter, 100, and their accent, 99, 159; with binter, 100, and their accent, 99, 159; with burds, 100, and their accent, 99, 159; with um-, 100, and their accent, 99, 159; with oper, 101, and their accent, 100, 159; with unter-, 102, and their accent, 102, 159; with prepositions: with 26, 108; with an, 108; with auf, 108; with auf, 104; with bei, 104; with ein, 104; with mit, 104; with nach, 104; with obe, 104; with bor-, 104; with pu-, 105; with prepositions and prefixes, 158.

Compound sentences, 808-811; doubly compounded, 865; their construction, 889-406.

Condition, expressed, 810, 811; inverted sentence (when teem is omitted, 817), 848, 858.

Conditional mood, 346. Conjugation, ancient, 108-119, 125 130, 138 - 150; modern, 108 - 125, 181 - 183; of reflexive verbs, 164; of compound verbs, 155-159; of verbs in eln and ern, 113; of auxiliary verbs, 115, 128 - 185; of irregular verbs, 148.

Conjunctions, subordinating, 898 - 812; of substantive accessory sentence, 308; of adjective accessory sentence, 309; of adverbial accessory sentence, 809; of place, we, and its compounds, 809; of time, als, ba, wenn, wann, 800; wabrend, indeffen, indem, 809; folange ale, 809; nachdem, 809; ebe, bevor, 809; feit, feitdem, 809; bis, 809; fobald, fowie, 809; of manner, wie, ale, ale ob, ale wenn, 809, 810; (fo) baff, 809; of cause, weil, ba, nun, jumal, troftem, 310; of purpose, daß, damit, auf daß, 810; of condition, wenn, falls, we, wofern, wenn anders, 810, 811; of concession, obgleich, obschon, etc., wie - auch, etc.,

Conjunctions that are also adverbs: le, da, damit, indem, indeffen, nun, fo-lange, fobald, etc., 812.

Conjunctions, co-ordinative, \$12-\$14; genuine co-ordinative conjunctions, und, aber, benn, fondern, allein, ent-weber, ober, mimlich, 812; sometimes used thus: alfe, awar, both, 812; copulative, adversative, concessive, and causative, 813.

Consecutio temporum, 854, 855.

Construction of the sentence, 815 - 826, 887. 888.

Co-ordinate compound sentences, 400 -402.

Dative case, governed by preposition, 297, 298, 801, 802, 806, 807; by the prodicate, 864 - 870; by intransitives, 865; by impersonal verbs, 866; by verbs compounded with prefixes and prepositions, 867; by compound verbal expressions, 868; by adjectives, 868.

Dative of interest or benefit, 870.

Declension of adjectives, 210 - 218; of articles, 160, 161; of substantives, 189 - 210 ; foreign, 202 ; proper nouns, 208; ancient, 191, 194 - 197; modern, 191; mixed, 198, 199, 201; its terminations omitted with nume als, 208.

Dependent sentences, 818; their place 224.

Derivation of words, 76 (24 - 80). Derivatives, primary, 77 (28, 29); secondary, 79 (30 - 52); verbs, 79.

Derivative substantives in er, 80 ; in ling, 81; in in, 81; in chen and fein, 82; in e, beit and feit, 83; in foaft and thum, 88; with prefix Gr., 84; in niff, fal, fel, 84; in ei, 85; in ung, 85; in ung, ig, rig, ich, iche, uth, ath, end, 86.

Derivative adjectives in ic. 87; in ico, 87; in lid, 88; in en, bar, fam, baft, 89.

Diminutives are neuters, 185; pronouns refer back to them in the natural gender, 827.

Double gender, 187. Double plural, 197, 201-208. Double nominative singular, 198.

Either, transl., 275, 276.

Elements of the simple sentence, 326 -830.

Emphasis expressed by change of accent, 289; change of construction, 816, 818.

Cs cannot be subject, when a personal or demonstr. pronoun is predic., it is 1, 234; it is subject when a noun is pred., 234.

Euphonic es, 236. Euphony, general laws in inflection, 111, 112; requires the omission of e in verbs, 112; of e in nouns, 190; of e in adjectives, 214, 222; causes nouns to end in er, 196; in the degrees of compar. of adj., 222, 228, 228; in possess. pron., 288.

Eren, transl., 292. Ever, transl., 295, 296.

Feminine monosyllables, list, 171 ; with prefixes, 172, 178; declension, 192. Feminines of several syllables with prefix Ge., 178; in el, 179; et, 181; ė, 188; nif, 185; fal, 165.

Foreign words, their gender, 186; declension, 202 - 204.

Full of, transl., 857, 878.

Future and past future tenses, their use, 851, 852; used for the Engl. present, 853.

Gender of substant., 167 - 189; of ani- | mals, 168; of young animals, 169; names of things, determined by their class, 169-171; by their termina-171-189; of seasons, months, and days, 169; of stones and mountains, 170; of raw materials, 170; of proper names, 170; double gender, 187.

Generic names of animals, 168. Genitive case, declension, see Declension; use, 856 - 860; crowding of genitives is un-German, 869; governed by reflexive verbs, 871; transitive, 871; impersonal and intransitive, 872; governed by adjectives, 872; of accompanying circumstances, 888; of time, 879, 880.

If, conjunction, is expressed when conditional, 810, 811, 817, 848, 858, 898; interrogative, 842, 847, 890.

Imperative, conjugation, see Conjugation; otherwise expressed, 846, 849. Imperfect tense, its use, 852, 858; exresses the contrary of reality, 852; English idioms not to be imitated,

858; German idioms, 855. Impersonal verbs, 840, 841.

In, transl., when adverb, 288, 286; when preposition, 302, 803.

Indicative mood, its purport, 841, 846; used instead of the imperative, 846. Indirect questions, 842; must be in the

subjunctive, 847

Infinitive, dependent on auxiliary verbs, 149, 150; on those of mood (often omitted), 828; factitive object, 877; instead of sentences, 886; without ju, 828, 403; with ju, 403; English and German idioms, 408, 404. Interjections, 814.

Intransitive verbs, 881; their passive, 881, 832.

Inversion of the sentence, 816, 817, 822. R, transl., 232, 286, 287. It is said, transl., 844.

Just, transl., 289, 290, 295.

Like to, transl., 290; I don't like, 848; I should like, 848.

May, might, transl., 843. Mixed declens. of adject., 215; of subst., 193, 199, 201. conjug. of verbs, 148.

Modern declension of masculines, 193; a complete list of such, (127 6), 198. - Of feminines, 192, 193, 199.

Moods, declens., see Verbs and Declens. : use of the moods, 841 - 849. Must, transl., 844, 858.

Nay, transl., 294.

Necessity expressed: when enforced by law or nature, 844; by the will of another person, 844, 845.

Neither, transl., 275, 276.

Neuter monosyllables, list of, 174; with prefixes, 175, 177.

Neuters, not moulded for abstract notions, 177. - Of several syllables, in el, 181; et, 182; en, 188; e, 184; in den, lein, fal, fel, nif, thum, icht, 185. Never mind, 295.

No, no one, nobody, not any, etc., transl., 269.

Not a single, transl., 270.

Now, transl., 290, 298; now that, 897.

Numerals, 260 - 276; definite, 260 - 269; cardinal, 261; distributive, 268; 🕶 riative and multiplicative, 264; cinfad, einzeln, zwiefad, boppelt, 264; reiterative, 265; addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division of, 266; ordinal, 266; days of the month, 267; felbanber, etc., 267; distinctive, 267; fractional, 268; anderthalb, 268; hours of the day, 269. Indefinite, 269 – 276; trin, 269; jeber, 270; aller, 271; alle, at an end, 272; allebem, 272; mander, 272; einiger, 272; ettoas, 272; einige — andere, 278; viel, wenig, mehrere, 274; beide, 276. — Which cannot be used as predicates, 828.

Objective group of the sentence, 326, 860 - 877; its construction, 815 - 826. **887, 888.**

Objects, the suffering, expressed by accus., 860 - 864; the personal, by dat., 864 - 870; the genitive, by gen., 871-874; the factitive, by accus or nom.

or prepos., 874, 877. Odd, (30 and odd.) transl., 226. Of, transl., 297, 366, 367, 358, 359, 366. One, after Engl. adjectives and adj. pronouns, not translated, 228. Only, transl., 294.

Optative sentences, inverted constr., 816.

Or, or else, transl., 289, 292.

P/4 127 1 201. 1

Oratis cilique, 346, 347, 886. Ought to, expressed, 844.

Participles, present, used as adjectives. only predicatively, 217; past, must not be formed of neuter verbs, 218; past and present, susceptible of degrees of comparison, 225, 227; past, of which no verb exists, 227; past, idlomatism in berieven geben, 877; instead of whole sentences, 886, 867; proper rather to high style, 404 - 408; idioms in English and German, 406 407; incorrect, except in comical language, 407.

Parts of speech, 71 (1-23).
Passive voice of verbs, its purport, 119; conjugated, 119 - 125, 881, 882; when

preferred, 882.

Perfect tense, its use and purport, 850, 351, 355; used instead of the Engl. imperfect, 351; of the passive, omits the auxiliary verb werben, 851.

Perhaps, transl., 292, 298. Pluperfect, its use, 854, 855.

Plural, declens., see Declension. - In

English, when not in German, \$80; in German, when not in English, 880. Possibility expressed, 848 - 846.

Predicate, what person of the verb, \$29; what words may be so, 827, 828; is in singular (when in Engl. in plural), 329.

Predicative form of adjectives, 211; in compar., 221; and superi., 229; is

adverbially used, 280.

Predicative group of the sentence, \$26. Prepositions, with dative alone: aus, 297, (in compounds, 104,) 874, 878, 884, 885 ; aufer, 297 ; bei, 298, (in compounds, 104,) 828, 878, 881, 888; binnen, 299, 881; mit, 298, (in compounds, 104,) 874, 882, (superfluous, 882,) 384; sad, 298, (in compounds, 104.) 878, 882 - 885; nebft, 298, 299; fammt, 299; feit, 299; bon, 299, 828, 878, 874, 862 - 884; ju, 298, (in compounds, 105,) 828, 874, 875, 879, 881, 884, 885. — With accusative alone: burch, 299, (in compounds, 100,) 884, 885; für, 299, 878, 876, 884, 885; gegen, teiber, 800; ohne, 299, 828, 880, 882, (superfluously, 882); um, 800, (in compounds, 100,) 878, 874, 879, 880. — With dative and accusative: an, 801, (in compounds, 108,) 872, 878, 878, 880, 885; auf, 801, (in com-

pounds, 108,) \$72-874, 878, 581-888; binter, 802, (in compounds, 100); in, 802, (ein, 104,) 818, 878, 876, 878, 881 - 388; neben, 802; fiber, 801, (in compounds, 101,) 878, 880, 382; unter, 301, (in compounds, 102,) 880, 888; por, 801, 878, 879, 881, 884, 885; swiften, 802. — With genitive: fatt (anftatt), auferhalb, innerhalb, (881,) oberhalb, unterhalb, bieffeite, jenfeite, halber, toegen, traft, bermöge, laut, lange, trot, ungeachtet, unweit, unfern, um - willen, bermittelft (mittels), wahrend, jufolge, 808 - 805, 884 reis), martero, paroige, 305 - 306, 305 - 386. Spurious prepositions, with dative: nachft, gendf, gegensber, probler, 306, 384, 385; with accurative: absolute, anticate, bintoarte, berwarter, entlang, binauf, binab, binsunter, bis (381, 382), fender, 306. Joined to adverbs, 307; used as predicates, 829.

Present tense, its use and purport, 849, 850; instead of the English perfect,

850.

Principal sentences, construction of,

816 - 818.

Pronouns, division of, 284. - Personal, 281; their third person singular must be referred to the gramm. gender, 282; to the natural, 282; for genitive and dative, beffen, bem, beren used, 288; contracted with prepos. into adverbs, 288; reflexive, 285; reciprocal, 286. - Possessive, 287; predicative and attributive form. 287. 288; definite article serves instead, 240; used substantively, 240. - Demonstrative, 240 - 246; contracted with prepos. into adverbs, 248; when not, 248; express the Engl. the former - the latter, 244; the neuter is subject with predicates of all genders and numbers, 244; berfelbe used instead of personal pronoun, 245; berjenige, with following genitive, 246. — Interrogative, 247 - 249; contracted with prepos. into adverbs, 247; to4s Laufend, 248; was, instead of toarum, 248. - Relative and correlative, 249; fo used instead, 250; he who, that which, 250; was and welches, tous and bas, used interchangeably, 251; must always take the first place, 258; is omitted in German only in one case, 258; demonstr. cor-relative omitted, 254; when not omitTHE PARTY

ted, 254; contracted with and into adverbs, 254; unlosecoef, 254; unlosecoef, 254; perider, some, 256. — Indefinite, 256, 260; 3ebermann, 256; 3emanb, 257; Riemanb, niches, 257; man, 257; etwas, 258; tegenb, 250; Einer, Reimer, 250; Elles, 260.

Proper, nouns, declension, 208; gender, 198-199, 202-204.

Questions, direct, invert the construction, \$16; not inverted, \$18; without transl. to do, \$43; indirect, \$43, \$49. Quotations, in inverted construction, 317.

Rather, 298.

Reflexíve pronouns, 285, 236.

Reflexive verbs, classification, 333; list of the proper and idiomatic reflexives most in use, 335 – 339; list of reflexives improper, 339, 340.

Belative and correlative pronouns, 249 – 255; sentences, 889 – 406, 892, 898.

Self, to be translated, 225, 226, 859. Separable prepositions of compound verbs, 96-102; not separable, 108-105, 155-158.

Should, expressed, 118, 844.

Sid befinden, used with adverbs, as a copula, instead of fein, 828.

Since, as an adverb, a preposition, or conjunction, 311; as an adverb, 286, 287; as a preposition, 299; as a conjunction, 809.

So answers to es as an object or predicate, 284.

80 — as to, expressed, 896, 404.

So much better, so much the better, 275. Stepen, used with prepositions, as a copula, instead of felia, 828.

Subjunctive mood, its purport, \$46, \$47; used interchangeably with the conditional, \$48, \$49; with the indicative, \$47; used in indignant questions, \$49; imperfect, \$58; of magen, famen, barren, has another force, \$56.

Substantives, used only in plural, 207; in singular, 204; in English only in plural, 207; in genitive as predicates, 338.

Such, which, 254.

Superlative degree of adjectives, 222; absolute, 223; relative, 228; predicative form, 229.

Teness of the verb, 107; their purport, __849 - 856.

That, conjunction, expr., 890, 391, 396 - 899.

The — the, with comparatives, 222, 896. Then, transl., 290, 292.

To, translated, 281, 282, 284 - 287, 289; when a prepos., 297 - 300, 357. Too, transl., 288, 289, 396.

Transitive verbs, may be turned into the passive voice, 881, 882; not so often as in English, 883; become intransitive by assuming the reflexive form, 888; classification, 861; extensives and a list of them, 861; with the prefix es, 582, 864; with the prefixes, buttle, mm, \$600, matter, \$600,

Umlant in verbs of ancient form, 136; in the subj. imperf., 126, 138, 139, 142, 146, 147; in the second and third pers. sing. pres., 138, 139, 142, 145—147; in substantives, in the plural, 194—202; in the comparison of adjectives, 230.

Verbals, two participles and two infinitives, 107.

Verbs, division of, 106; their number of moods, 107; of tenses, 107; of persons, 107; their conjugation, 108— 159; of the ancient conjugation, 108; of the modern, 108; irregular, 148.

Will, would, expressed, 118, 344, 352, 858.

Wishes, expressed, 816, 848, 847.

Yet, transi., 291.

THE END.

Ting.

ing is

1 VEYC 41 77. ごえこ 15 > \ \ 11 Dr. 110 "L

亚 ` C

